E09004

A List of Books

for the

Study of Foreign Languages

published by

Julius Groos.

Heidelberg.

Most of the books contained in the following list have been composed after Dr. E. OTTO'S "CONVERSATIONAL METHOD OF TEACHING LANGUAGES", either by himself, or by other eminent professors. This method combines the grammatical and logical exposition of the rules with their constant application to SPEAKING and WRITING. The LARGER GRAMMARS are divided into two PARTS, the FIRST of which contains the complete ETYMOLOGY, viz. the exposition of the TEN PARTS OF SPEECH, considered in their nature and inflections, including THE IRREGULAR VERBS. The SECOND comprises the SYNTAX, systematically explained in clear and accurate rules illustrated by examples and followed by appropriate EXERCISES and READING-LESSONS. FREE EXERCISES and MATERIALS FOR CONVERSATION form the conclusion. As to the arrangement of the contents, the book is divided into LESSONS, each complete in itself, and containing in systematic order a portion of the grammar, followed by a READING EXERCISE, in which the preceding rules are applied to numerous sentences. An EXERCISE FOR TRANSLATION into the foreign language comes next: the lesson being concluded by an easy and familiar CONVERSATION re-embodying the matter introduced in the previous exercises.

It is impossible to conceive a more practical method of acquiring the art of SPEAKING a modern language, than that adopted in these books: the teacher questioning the pupil on subjects already familiar to him by translation, and the pupil endeavouring to give a fitting reply. In a short time the EAR becomes familiar with the strange sounds, that the teacher is underst and meanwhile the TONGUE acquires a fluency which can be attained by any other method.

.. 5 —

glish, American,
d (cloth or board).

The advantage of such CONVERSATIONAL practice is evident. Every student of modern languages is well aware that by far the most difficult thing is, to understand the foreign idiom. Accustomed from the very beginning to comprehend the easy questions the teacher addresses to him in the foreign language, on subjects already known to him from the preceding translations, and to answer in the same idiom, the learner exercises equally his EAR and his TONGUE, and in a short time will be enabled to express his thoughts correctly and with ease and fluency.

The SMALLER ELEMENTARY GRAMMARS are based on the same system, but contain only the Etymology simplified for younger pupils and beginners.

The same CONVERSATIONAL principle is applied to the READERS, passing on from the easiest to more difficult Readings, with 'QUESTIONS' subjoined to the same.

Moreover, there are MATERIALS for translating English into some foreign language, MANUALS FOR CONVERSATION, and other books, all having for their object the theoretical and practical knowledge of foreign languages.

The following books have been very favourably reviewed in the leading critical papers. But the most striking proof of their usefulness may be found in the number of editions through which they have passed, and the fact that they are extensively used throughout Europe and America.

Every new edition being most carefully revised, the publisher is constantly and successfully aiming at raising these writings to the rank of STANDARD BOOKS, combining the results of scientific investigation with a sound practical tendency.

Those pupils who study foreign languages without the aid of a master, are greatly assisted by the various "Keys" containing a correct translation of all the Exercises.

HEIDELBERG.

The Editor.

	Sh.	P.
For the use of Englishmen.		
Otto, German Conv.-**Grammar** . . . New Ed.	5	6
— **Key** to the **German** Conv.-**Grammar.** New Ed.	2	—
— **Supplementary Exercises** to Otto's **German** Grammar	2	—
— Elementary **German Grammar** . New Ed.	2	6
— **First German Book** . . . . . New Ed.	2	—
— **German Reader.** A Selection of Readings in German literature with explanatory Notes and a Vocabulary. In 3 Parts.		
Part I. Containing: Anecdotes, fables, descriptions, stories, parables, tales, and easy poems New Ed.	3	—
Part II. Containing: Select **Readings** in German literature. New Ed.	3	—
Part III. Containing: Select **German Plays** New Ed.	3	—
— **Materials** for translating **English** into **German.** Part I. . . . . New Ed.	3	—
— — Part II.	3	—
— **Key** to **Materials** for translating **English** into **German.** Part I.	2	—
— **German-English Conversations**	2	—
— **French** Conv.-**Grammar** . . . . New Ed.	5	6
— **Key** to the **French** Conv.-**Grammar.** New Ed.	2	—
— **Materials** for translating **English** into **French.** New Ed.	3	—
Sauer, Italian Conv.-**Grammar** . . New Ed.	5	6
— **Key** to the **Italian Grammar** . New Ed.	2	—
— **Spanish Grammar** . . . . . New Ed.	5	6
— **Key** to the **Spanish Grammar**	2	—
For the use of Frenchmen.		
Otto, Grammaire allemande. Contenant, outre les principales règles de la langue allemande, *des Thèmes, des Lectures* et *des Conversations,* d'après une méthode à la fois théorique et pratique . . . . . Nouvelle éd.	5	—

All the grammars, keys and "readers" for English, American, French, Italian, and Spanish students are bound (cloth or board).

	Sh.	P.
Otto, Corrigé des Thèmes de la **Grammaire allemande** . . . . . Nouvelle éd.	2	—
— Petite **Grammaire allemande abrégée,** à l'usage des commençants . . . Nouvelle éd.	2	6
— **Lectures allemandes.** I. partie. Petit recueil de versions allemandes contenant des anecdotes, des descriptions, des fables, des traits de caractère, des historiettes, des contes de fées, des paraboles, des contes moraux et des poésies, accompagnées de notes explicatives et d'un vocabulaire . . . . Nouvelle éd.	3	—
— — II. Second recueil de versions allemandes. Nouvelle éd.	3	—
— — III. Choix de comédies allemandes . .	3	—
— **Conversations allemandes**	2	—
Sauer, Grammaire italienne, avec des dialogues . . . . . Nouvelle éd.	5	—
— **Corrigé des Thèmes et Versions** contenus dans la Grammaire italienne . Nouvelle éd.	2	—
— **Grammaire espagnole,** avec des dialogues .	6	—
— **Corrigé des Thèmes et Versions** contenus dans la Grammaire espagnole	2	—
Mauron-Gaspey, Grammaire anglaise. Nouv. éd.	5	—
— **Corrigé des Thèmes** de la **Grammaire anglaise**	2	—
Mauron, Petite **Grammaire anglaise** ou *Eléments de la Langue anglaise* avec de nombreux exercices de traduction, de lecture et de conversation	2	6
Mauron, Lectures anglaises	3	6
Fuchs, Grammaire russe	6	—
— **Corrigé des Thèmes** de la **Grammaire russe**	2	—

For the use of Germans.

Fuchs, russische Conv.-**Grammatik**	6	—
— **Schlüssel** zur **russischen** Convers.-**Grammatik.**	2	—
Gaspey, Englische Convers.-**Grammatik.** (Real-, Handelsschulen und Gymnasien.) **19.** Aufl.	5	—

	Sh.	P.
Gaspey, Englisches Convers.-**Lesebuch.** (Real-, Handelsschulen und Gymnasien.) **5.** Aufl.	3	6
— **English Conversations.** (Anleitung zum Englisch-Sprechen.) (Für obere Klassen.) **3.** Aufl.	2	—
Kordgien, G. C., Kleine **portugies. Sprachlehre.**	2	—
Künsberg, Questionnaire français. Ein Hilfsbuch zur Erlernung der notwendigsten grammatikalischen Regeln der französischen Sprache, insbesondere zum Gebrauche bei der Vorbereitung zum Examen für **Einjährig-Freiwillige**	2	—
Lardelli, Übungsstücke zum Übersetzen aus dem **Deutschen** ins **Italienische**	2	—
Otto, Französ. Conv.-**Grammatik.** (Realschulen, Gymnasien, Handelsschulen.) . . **21.** Aufl.	5	—
— **Französ.** Convers.-**Lesebuch.** Erster Cursus. (Realgymnasien, Bürgersch. obere Klassen.) **7.** Aufl.	2	6
— — Zweiter Cursus. (Realschulen, Gymnasien, Handelsschulen.) . . . . . **4.** Aufl.	2	6
— Kleine **französische Sprachlehre.** (Realgymnasien, Bürgerschulen untere Klassen, Töchterschulen und erweiterte Volksschulen.) **4.** Aufl.	2	—
— Kleine **englische Sprachlehre** für Anfänger. (Realgymnasien etc.) . . . . . **2.** Aufl.	2	—
— **Conversations françaises.** (Method. Anleitung zum Französ.-Sprechen.) . . . . . **4.** Aufl.	2	—
— **Materialien** zum Übersetzen ins Englische mit Wörterbuch. (Für obere Klassen.) . .	2	—
— **'The Guardian',** ein englisches Lustspiel mit erläuternden Anmerkungen z. Schulgebrauch	—	8
Reinhardstöttner, Holländ. Convers.-**Grammatik** **2.** Aufl.	6	—
Riedel, Französ. Lese- und Conversations-**Büchlein.** (Anfangsgründe.) . . . . . **5.** Aufl.	1	6
— **Vorschule zur franz. Grammatik.** (Bürgerschulen und Gewerbschulen.) . . . **5.** Aufl.	2	—
— **Maman, apprends-moi le français!** (Anfangsgründe.) . . . . . **3.** Aufl.	1	6
Sauer, Italienische Schul- und Conversations-**Grammatik** . . . . . **7.** Aufl.	5	—

	Sh.	P.
Sauer, Neues **ital.** Convers.-**Lesebuch** . **3.** Aufl.	3	6
— Kleine **Ital. Sprachlehre** . . . . **3.** Aufl.	2	—
— **Dialoghi Italiani.** (Methodische Anleitung zum Italienisch-Sprechen.) . . . . **2.** Aufl.	2	—
— **Spanische** Convers.-**Grammatik.** . . **3.** Aufl.	6	—
Under the press:		
— **Spanisches** Convers.-**Lesebuch**	6	—
— **Diálogos castellanos.** Spanische Gespräche. Ein Hilfsbuch zur Übung in der spanischen Umgangssprache	2	6
Süpfle, Französ. Schulgrammatik. (Für theor. Unterricht in Gymnasien und höheren Lehranstalten.) . . . . . **5.** Aufl.	3	6
— **Französ. Lesebuch.** (Für mittlere Klassen von Gymnasien etc.) . . . . . **9.** Aufl.	3	6
— **Französ. Chrestomathie.** (Für theor. Unterricht in Gymnasien und höheren Lehranstalten.) . . . . . **4.** Aufl.	6	—
Süpfle, Englische Chrestomathie. (Für Schulen und Privat-Unterricht.) . . . . . **7.** Aufl.	3	6

For the use of Italians and Spaniards.

Sauer, Grammatica inglese, con dialoghi ed una esatta spiegazione della pronunzia	6	—
Sauer-Ferrari, Grammatica tedesca, con temi, letture e dialoghi, seconda edizione riveduta e notabilmente accresciuta dagli autori. Nuova ed.	5	—
Otto, Grammatica tedesca elementare, con temi letture e dialoghi, aggiustata ai bisogni degli allievi principianti	2	6
— **Letture tedesche.** Piccola raccolta di versioni tedesche	3	—
— **Gramática** sucinta de la lengua **alemana** .	2	6
— **Gramática** sucinta de la lengua **francesa** .	2	6
— **Gramática** sucinta de la lengua **inglesa** . .	2	6

Printed by Julius Groos at Heidelberg.

Extract

from the Literary Review (Litterarische Rundschau) of J. B. Stamminger, at Würzburg.

Educational Works and Class-books

for the Study of modern Languages,

published by **Julius Groos** at **Heidelberg.**

Julius Groos, Publisher at Heidelberg, has for the last thirty years been devoting his special attention to educational works on modern languages, and has published a large number of class-books for the study of those modern languages most generally spoken. In this particular department he is in our opinion unsurpassed by any other German publisher. The series consists of 65 volumes of different sizes which are all arranged on the same system, as is easily seen by a glance at the grammars which so closely resemble one another, that an acquaintance with one greatly facilitates the study of another. — This is no small advantage in these exacting times, when the knowledge of one language is hardly deemed sufficient.

The system referred to is easily discoverable: 1st. In the arrangement of the grammar — 2nd. In the endeavour to enable the pupil to understand a regular text as soon

as possible, and above all to teach him to ***speak*** *the foreign language; this latter point was considered by the authors so particularly characteristic of their works, that they have styled them — to distinguish them from other works of a similar kind —* ***Conversational Grammars.***

The grammars are all divided into ***two*** *parts, commencing with a systematic explanation of the rules for pronunciation, and are again subdivided into a number of* ***Lessons.*** *Each Part treats of the Parts of Speech in succession, the 1st. giving a rapid sketch of the fundamental rules, which are explained more fully in the 2nd. In the 1st. Part attention is given rather to the* ***Etymology;*** *in the 2nd. Part more to the* ***Syntax*** *of the language; without however entirely separating the two, as is generally the case in Systematic Grammars. The rules appear to us to be clearly given, they are explained by examples, & the exercises are amply sufficient. — We must confess that for those persons who, from a* ***practical*** *point of view, wish to learn a foreign language sufficiently well to enable them to* ***write*** *&* ***speak*** *it with ease, the authors have set down the grammatical rules in such a way, that it is equally easy to understand & to learn them. —*

Moreover we cannot but commend the elegance & neatness of the ***type*** *&* ***binding*** *of the books. It is doubtless on this account that these volumes have been received with so much favour & that several have reached such an extensive circulation.*

Our admiration of this rich collection of works, of

the method displayed & the fertile genius of certain of the authors, is increased when we examine the different ***series,*** *especially those intended for the use of foreigners.*

The first series comprises manuals for the use of ***Englishmen.*** *It consists of 19 volumes, 15 of which are adapted for the study of* ***German*** *and* ***French:***

Dr. **E. Otto, German Conversation-Grammar,** and Key to it;

Dr. **E. Otto, Supplementary exercises** to the **German Grammar;**

Dr. **E. Otto, Elementary German Grammar;**

Dr. **E. Otto, First German Book;**

Dr. **E. Otto, German Reader,** 3 vols.;

Dr. **E. Otto, Materials** for translating **English** into **German,** 2 vols. and Keys;

Dr. **E. Otto, German Conversations;**

Dr. **E. Otto, French Conversation-Grammar,** and Key to it;

Dr. **E. Otto, Materials** for transl. **English** into **French;**

C. M. Sauer, Italian Conversation-Grammar, and Key;

C. M. Sauer, Spanish Grammar, and Key.

The series for the use of ***Frenchmen*** *comprises 17 volumes, 7 of which adapted for the study of* ***German:***

Dr. **E. Otto, Grammaire allemande,** and Key to it;

Dr. **E. Otto,** Petite **Grammaire allemande;**

Dr. **E. Otto, Lectures allemandes,** 3 vols.;

Dr. **E. Otto, Conversations allemandes;**

4 adapted for the study of ***English:***

Mauron-Gaspey, Nouvelle **Grammaire anglaise,** and Key;

Dr. **A. Mauron,** Petite **Grammaire anglaise;**
Dr. **A. Mauron, Lectures anglaises;**

two each adapted for the study of ***Italian, Spanish, Russian:***

C. M. Sauer, Nouvelle **Grammaire italienne,** and Key;

C. M. Sauer, Grammaire espagnole, and Key;

Paul Fuchs, Grammaire russe, and Key.

The series for ***Italians*** *comprises 4 vols. (one for the* ***English,*** *and 3 for the* ***German*** *language):*

C. M. Sauer, Grammatica inglese;
Sauer-Ferrari, Grammatica tedesca;
Dr. **E. Otto,** Piccola **grammatica tedesca;**
Dr. **E. Otto, Letture tedesche.**

There are three volumes for the use of ***Spaniards:***

Dr. **E. Otto, Gramática** sucinta de la lengua **alemana.**
Dr. **E. Otto, Gramática** sucinta de la lengua **francesa.**
Dr. **E. Otto, Gramática** sucinta de la lengua **inglesa.**

The series for the use of ***Germans*** *comprises the* ***French*** *subdivision with the following books:*

Dr. **E. Otto, Franz. Conversat.-Grammatik;**

Dr. **E. Otto, Franz. Conversat.-Lesebuch,** in 2 parts;

Dr. **E. Otto, Franz. Conversat.-Lesebuch** (for the spec. use of Schools for young ladies, in 2 parts);

Dr. **E. Otto,** Kleine **französische Sprachlehre;**
Dr. **E. Otto, Conversations françaises;**

the ***English*** *subdivision comprises:*

Dr. **Th. Gaspey, Englische Conversations-Grammatik;**

Dr. **Th. Gaspey, Englisches Conversations-Lesebuch;**

Dr. **Th. Gaspey, English Conversations,** containing subjects taken from daily life, & extracts from history and literature;

Dr. **E. Otto**, Kleine **englische Sprachlehre;**

Dr. **E. Otto, Materialien zum Uebersetzen ins Englische** for proficients (short pieces of consecutive prose, with conversational exercises).

*the **Italian** subdivision comprises:*

C. M. Sauer, Italienische Conversations-Grammatik;

C. M. Sauer, Italienisches Convers.-Lesebuch, which chiefly aims at conversational language;

C. M. Sauer, Kleine **italienische Sprachlehre;**

C. M. Sauer, Dialoghi italiani, adapted not only for schools, but also for persons who intend to travel in Italy;

*in the **Spanish** subdivision we have:*

C. M. Sauer, Spanische Conversations-Grammatik;

C. M. Sauer, Dialogos castellanos;

*in the **Portugeese** subdivision:*

G. C. Kordgien, Kleine **Portugiesische Sprachlehre;**

*in the **Dutch** subdivision:*

Dr. **C. v. Reinhardstöttner, Holländische Conversations-Grammatik;**

*in the **Russian** subdivision:*

Paul Fuchs, Russische Conversations-Grammatik.

*The works of Dr. **L. Supfle,** edited by the same publisher, do not follow the conversational method. The **„Französische Schulgrammatik"**, for lower and middle Classes, a work answering both for scientific and practical purposes, though perhaps somewhat too bulky for the above-mentioned classes, contains very good exercises, and may also be useful for reference. The **„Lesebuch"** (or French Reader), and especially the*

*„**Chrestomathie**“, for upper Classes, contain careful selections, of pieces of prose and poetry, from the different periods of French literature.*

*(These three works have been revised and enlarged by Professor Dr. **Mauron**, who joined to the last a „**Résumé** (Compendium) **de l'Histoire de la Littérature française**“, and a „**Petit Traité de la Versification française**“, that enhance its value.)*

*The „**Engl. Chrestomathie**“ of Dr. **L. Supfle** is a very good companion to the French one.*

In these works the chief difficulty under which several of the authors have labored, has been the necessity of teaching a language in a foreign idiom; not to mention the peculiar difficulties which the German idiom offers in writing school-books for the study of that language.

We willingly testify that the whole collection gives proof of much care & industry, both with regard to the aims it has in view & the way in which these have been carried out, & moreover reflects great credit on the editor, this collection being in reality quite an exceptional thing of its kind. —

Paderborn 1881. . . . . *t.*

The Publisher is unweariedly engaged in extending the range of the educational works issuing from his press; a certain number of new books are now in course of preparation.

Printed by Julius Groos at Heidelberg.

GRAMMATICA ITALIANA

CON DIALOGHI

COMPILATA

DA

CARLO MARQUARD SAUER,

DIRETTORE DEL PUBBLICO CORSO SUPERIORE D'INSEGNAMENTO COMMERCIALE DI FONDAZIONE REVOLTELLA IN TRIESTE, GIÀ PROFESSORE ALL' ACCADEMIA DI COMMERCIO A PRAGA E ALLA PUBBLICA SCUOLA DI COMMERCIO DI LIPSIA.

EDIZIONE QUARTA.

HEIDELBERG.

GIULIO GROOS, Editore.

LONDON. 1879. **PARIS.**

DAVID NUTT, 270 Strand.
DULAU & COMP., 37 Soho Square.

FR. VIEWEG, 67 Rue Richelieu.

AGENCIES FOR AMERICA:

NEW-YORK.
L. W. SCHMIDT, 24 Barclay Street.
(Box 1817).

BOSTON.
SCHOENHOF & MOELLER,
40 Winter Street.

ITALIAN

CONVERSATION-GRAMMAR

A

NEW AND PRACTICAL METHOD OF LEARNING THE ITALIAN LANGUAGE

BY

CHARLES MARQUARD SAUER,

DIRECTOR OF THE SUPERIOR COMMERCIAL ACADEMY REVOLTELLA AT TRIESTE, FORMERLY PROFESSOR AT THE COMMERCIAL ACADEMY OF PRAGUE AND AT THE PUBLIC COMMERCIAL SCHOOL OF LEIPZIG.

FOURTH EDITION.

HEIDELBERG.

Published by JULIUS GROOS.

LONDON. 1879. **PARIS.**

DAVID NUTT, 270 Strand. **FR. VIEWEG**, 67 Rue Richelieu.
DULAU & COMP., 37 Soho Square.

AGENCIES FOR AMERICA:

NEW-YORK.
L. W. SCHMIDT, 24 Barclay Street.
(Box 1817.)

BOSTON.
SCHOENHOF & MOELLER,
40 Winter Street.

All Rights are reserved.

Preface to the First Edition.

In England the melodious language of Italy, immortalized by Dante, Tasso, and Ariosto, has always boasted numerous students and admirers. The appearance of a new Italian Grammar will, therefore, scarcely excite surprise. Though there is no want of works of this kind, yet by far the majority of them seem little fitted to acquaint the learner fully with the foreign language, chiefly because they are not sufficiently practical, in the strict sense of the word. There are, indeed, some so-called practical Italian grammars which, however, try to justify their name only by avoiding the difficulties of the language, instead of explaining and facilitating them to the learner. Other grammars, on the contrary, are exclusively theoretical, i. e. the Italian language is treated by them exactly like the Latin or Greek. Such books, in which practice is entirely superseded by theory, and which seem to be written only to show the learning of their authors, will never prove successful with modern languages. They give one part of speech after another, with all the rules and exceptions, instead of beginning with the easy, simple rudiments of the language, and not until the learner has overcome the first difficulties, proceeding to those peculiarities wherein the character of the language appears. Besides, they entirely neglect the most important element in the study of modern languages, *conversation*, without which the learner will never be enabled readily to understand a foreign idiom, or to speak it fluently.

In order to exhibit the great difference between this grammar and those that have been published hitherto, the author begs leave to say a few words about the method on which it is based. The so-called Conversation-Method, originated by Dr. Gaspey in his "English Conversation Grammar for Germans", and first applied by Dr. Emil Otto in his "French Conversation-Grammar", his „German Conversation-Grammar for English", and by

the author in his "Italian Conversation-Grammar for Germans", has everywhere, in Germany and of late years in England, met with the greatest success. The advantage this method offers to the teacher as well as to the pupil, consists especially in the arrangement of the whole grammatical material and in the intrinsic combination of theory and practice.

We begin by dividing the grammar into *two* Parts, the first of which contains the principles of the language, whereas the second gives the Syntax. The lessons of the first part, each complete in itself, consist of a few short *rules*, exemplified by a *Reading Exercise* and a *Translation*, and followed by a *Vocabulary*. At the end of each chapter we subjoin a *Dialogue* which, written entirely in the foreign tongue, exhibits once more, by showing how they are to be employed, the *rules* and the *words* which the pupil has learned in this particular lesson.

The advantage of these dialogues is evident. Every one who has occupied himself with the study of modern languages knows that by far the more difficult task is to *understand* the foreign language. Accustomed from the very beginning to having the questions of those dialogues, about subjects with which he has become familiar through the preceding translation, put to him in Italian, and to answering them in the same language, the learner at once practises his ear and tongue, and, in a very short time, is enabled to express his thoughts fluently and correctly in the foreign idiom.

In the *second Part*, the *Syntax*, the learner finds a choice selection of Reading Exercises, taken from the best authors, and forming the topic of "Conversations". The Appendix contains a few specimens of Italian poetry and prose with explanatory notes, an alphabetical list of poetical forms of verbs, and finally, a Vocabulary containing all the words of the Translations in the second Part.

Hoping that this new Grammar will prove an efficient means to familiarize the student with one of the most beautiful languages of Europe, I beg to offer my best thanks to Dr. Gaspey, who has kindly revised the English text.

Leipsic, May 1858.

Charles Marquard Sauer.

Preface to the Second Edition.

The second edition of this grammar was preceded by two new editions of the French-Italian (1865 and 1868) and of the German-Italian Grammar (1864 and 1868). The author was thus enabled to improve this new edition of the English-Italian Grammar by all the numerous emendations introduced into the French and German editions. The method as well as the whole arrangement of the book remained unaltered. On the other hand, the rules are now given with greater precision; some important chapters, for example the exercises on the three regular conjugations, and the alphabetical list of irregular verbs, have been considerably increased, more than two hundred compound or poetical and ancient forms having been added, a knowledge of which is indispensable to the student of Italian poetry. The chapter on the prepositions has undergone much alteration, the pronunciation of the vowels forms a special feature of the Second Part, and an alphabetical list contains all the verbs of the 1st conjugation which, in the 3rd person of the Plural, are accented on the last syllable but three. A change no less important has been introduced in the Dialogues of the Reading Exercises of the Second Part. Formerly the answers were added to the questions. In this second edition the questions only are given, and the pupil must now find the answers himself, a mental exercise which I have found to be most useful and agreeable, and by which fluency in speaking is easily acquired. The author having abstained from altering the original arrangement of the book, this new edition may without inconvenience be used side by side with the first.

Prague, May 1869.

Charles Marquard Sauer.

Preface to the Third Edition.

The third edition of this grammar differs in some important points from the preceding ones. As a new element some rudiments of **comparative grammar** have been introduced. As, however, this book is principally destined for practical purposes, the author has been obliged to be rather abstemious on this subject. Since it is not, with a few exceptions, treated in the text, but limited to some foot-notes, pupils may, if they choose, simply lay aside this part of the grammar. But let me hope that many others will be glad to find some indications that enable them to understand the history of the Italian idiom and its affinities with the other Romance languages (French, Spanish etc.). Without entering into a scientific system, I wanted to direct the attention of the learner to this interesting study, and besides, to facilitate several parts of the grammar. Thus, f. i., the pupil will certainly remember more easily the formation of the Italian **Futuro** and **Condizionale**, if he knows that in all Romance languages these tenses are but compounds of the Infinitive with the Present and Imperfect of the auxiliary "to have". These new observations, which I beg leave to qualify as a first essay, are based on the excellent "*Dictionnaire d'étymologie française*" by Dr. A. Scheler, *Bruxelles* 1862.

Besides, a good many exercises have been added, especially on the Irregular verbs; this important part of speech not having been sufficiently exemplified in the former editions. Finally, upwards of a hundred Italian sentences have been inserted, to elucidate the rules of grammar. They were all selected from the works of classical authors, chiefly from Manzoni's »Promessi sposi«, that master-piece of modern Italian prose. All these examples are marked M(anzoni).

Notwithstanding these numerous improvements, the character of my book has undergone no change, and I may say that in its present shape it may without any difficulty be used together with the second edition.

Salzburg, September 1873.

Charles Marquard Sauer.

Preface to the Fourth Edition.

The new edition of this grammar has been *most carefully* revised by the author as well as by Prof. Cattaneo at Stuttgart and Dr. Worthmann at Heidelberg. As the great distance of my present residence from the publisher's and the printing-office prevented my superintending the publication, Prof. Cattaneo bestowed his attention on the Italian part, and Dr. Worthmann undertook the revision of the English text. I beg leave to return my best thanks to my learned collaborators, by whose exertions this grammar has greatly improved.

Thus I may venture to hope that the fourth edition will prove no less successful than its predecessors.

Trieste, March 1879.

Charles Marquard Sauer.

CONTENTS.

First Part.

	Page.
On Pronunciation. Letters of the Alphabet	3
On the Signs of Punctuation. On Vowels	4
On the Diphthongs	4
Reading Exercises	7
First Lesson. On the Article	9
Second Lesson. The Substantive	12
Third Lesson. Declension of Substantives	15
Fourth Lesson. On Prepositions	21
Fifth Lesson. On the Genitive Partitive	24
Sixth Lesson. Continuation	27
Seventh Lesson. On terminations modifying the meaning of Substantives	31
Eighth Lesson. On Proper Names	34
Ninth Lesson. The Auxiliary Verb *avere,* to have	37
Tenth Lesson. Exercises on *avere*	41
Eleventh Lesson. The Auxiliary verb *essere,* to be	43
Twelfth Lesson. Exercises on *essere*	46
Thirteenth Lesson. Determinative Adjectives	48
Fourteenth Lesson. Possessive Adjectives	52
Fifteenth Lesson. Numerals	56
Sixteenth Lesson. Ordinal Numbers	59
Seventeenth Lesson. Indefinite Numerals	63
Eighteenth Lesson. On the Adjective	67
Nineteenth Lesson. Degrees of Comparison	71
Twentieth Lesson. On the Regular Verb	76
Reading Exercise: *Un padre e tre figli*	81
Twenty first Lesson. Peculiarities of Different Verbs	86
Twenty second Lesson. On Pronouns	90
Twenty third Lesson. Conjunctive Personal Pronouns	95
Reading Exercise: *Il mattino fortunato*	99
Twenty fourth Lesson. Demonstrative Pronouns	100
Reading Exercise: *Il mattino fortunato*	105
Twenty fifth Lesson. Possessive Pronouns	106
Twenty sixth Lesson. Indefinite Pronouns	111
Twenty seventh Lesson. On the Passive Voice	114
Neuter Verbs	119
Twenty eighth Lesson. Reflective or Pronominal Verbs	121
Twenty ninth Lesson. Impersonal Verbs	127
Reading Exercise: *L'astrólogo*	131
Thirtieth Lesson. On Adverbs	131
Thirty first Lesson. Adverbs continued	135
Reading Exercise: *Creso e Solone*	140
Thirty second Lesson. On Prepositions	141
Reading Exercise: *Creso e Solone*	146

Page.

Thirty third Lesson. On Conjunctions 147
Reading Exercise: *Il sofista convinto* . . . 150
Thirty fourth Lesson. On Interjections 151
Thirty fifth Lesson. On the Irregular Verbs . . . 154
Reading Exercise: *Sonetto all' Italia* 168
Thirty sixth Lesson. The Irregular Verbs continued . 169
Thirty seventh Lesson. Exercises 177
Reading Exercise: *Le mie prigioni* 180
Thirty eighth Lesson. Defective Verbs 181
Reading Exercise: *Le mie prigioni* 182
Alphabetical List of the Irregular Verbs 184

Second Part.

On Pronunciation. Consonants 197
Vowels 197
On the Accent 201
First Lesson. Of the Gender of Substantives . . . 204
Reading Exercise: *La patria* 209
Second Lesson. On the Plural of Substantives . . . 210
Reading Exercise: *La patria* 216
Third Lesson. On the Article 217
Reading Exercise: *Cristoforo Colombo* . . . 223
Fourth Lesson. On the use of *di, a,* and *da* . . . 224
Fifth Lesson. Exercises 232
Reading Exercise: *Cristoforo Colombo* . . . 233
Sixth Lesson. Some particular remarks on the use of Proper Names 234
Reading Exercise: *Cristoforo Colombo* . . . 236
Seventh Lesson. On Possessive Adjectives and Pronouns . 238
Reading Exercise: *Cristoforo Colombo* . . . 241
Eighth Lesson. On Adjectives and Numerals . . . 242
Reading Exercise: *Luigi Cornaro* 248
Ninth Lesson. On the Pronouns 250
Reading Exercise: *Le mie prigioni* 255
Tenth Lesson. Interrogative Pronouns 257
Reading Exercise: *Le mie prigioni* 261
Eleventh Lesson. Indefinite Pronouns 262
Reading Exercise: *Le mie prigioni* 268
Twelfth Lesson. Continuation 269
Reading Exercise: *Le mie prigioni* 274
Thirteenth Lesson. On Adverbs 275
Reading Exercise: *L'incendio* 279
Fourteenth Lesson. On Prepositions 281
Reading Exercise: *L'incendio* 285
Fifteenth Lesson. On Conjunctions 287
Reading Exercise; *Lettera del Ganganelli sopra l'Italia* 294
Sixteenth Lesson. On Complements of Verbs . . . 295
Reading Exercise: *I lavori* 300
Seventeenth Lesson. Verbs whereof the Complements are different in both languages 301
Reading Exercise: *Lettera del Ganganelli* . . . 307

Page.

Eighteenth Lesson. On Neuter, Pronominal, and Impersonal Verbs 309
Reading Exercise: *Lettera del Ganganelli* . . . 313
Nineteenth Lesson. Peculiarities of some Verbs . . . 315
Reading Exercise: *Lettera del Ganganelli* . . . 320
Twentieth Lesson. On Moods. On the use of the Tenses . 321
Reading Exercise: *Lettera del Ganganelli* . . . 330
Twenty first Lesson. On the Consecution of Tenses . . 331
Reading Exercise: *Fine della lettera del Ganganelli* . 340
Twenty second Lesson. On the Infinitive Mood . . . 341
Reading Exercise: *Qual fa tal riceve* . . . 352
Twenty third Lesson. On the *Participio* and *Gerundio* . 354
Reading Exercise: *Beniamino Franklin* . . . 357
Twenty fourth Lesson. I. On the *Participio Passato* . . 359
II. On the *Participio assoluto* . . 363
Reading Exercise: *Beniamino Franklin* . . . 365

Appendix.

I. Materials for Conversation 368
II. Proverbs 371
III. Specimens of Italian Poetry 372
1. *I due ladri* 372
2. *Il gallo, il cane e la volpe* 373
3. *Il rosignuolo e 'l cardellino* 375
4. *La rondinella*, by *Tommaso Grossi* . . . 376
5. From Petrarca's *Canzone* to the Holy Virgin . 377
6. Third Canto of Dante's *Inferno* 378
Prose:
Le grotte di Catullo, by *Atto Vannucci* . . 385
L'addio di Lucia, by *Manzoni* 387
Alcune lettere 389
Una giornata in città ed alla campagna, by *C. M. Sauer* 392
Alphabetical List of poetical and obsolete Forms . . 399
Vocabulary 410

NB. The fourth edition had to be printed within such a very short time, that a great many misprints, most of them, however, of a very slight description, could hardly be avoided. As shown by the following list, the minutest attention has been bestowed on their discovery.

Errata.

Page 26, 1st line, "shall" instead of "shal".
" 36, left column, 11th line, read "capitále" inst. of "cápitale".
" 37, Ninth Lesson, read "Presénte" inst. of "Présente".
" 38, 1st line, read "avrò" inst. of "avró".
" 45, 11th line, read "Passato indefinito" inst. of "Passato Infinitivo".
" 46, left column, 2nd line above "Reading Exercise", read "chase" inst. of "chose".
" 54, 13th line, read "phrases" inst. of "turns".
" 60, Remarks, 7th line from below, read 2) inst. of 1).
" 62, Traduzione 1., last line, read "Napoleóne" inst. of "Napoléone".
" 69, footnote 5), read "embassy" inst. of "ambassy".
" 77, Imperfetto, 3. pers. pl., read "servivano" inst. of "serviváno".
" 78, Soggiuntivo Presente, 2. pers. sing, read "that thou find" inst. of "that you find".
" 79, Part. passato, *trovato, a*, read "found" inst. of "fond".
" 80, Soggiuntivo Passato, read "that thou have" inst. of "that thou hast".
" 84, III. Conjugation, 1st line, read "it will" inst. of "il will".
" 89, 4th line from the bottom of Traduzione 1, read "Charles's" inst. of "Charles'".
" 97, Words, left column, 1st line, read "Accompagnáre" inst. of "Accompagnàre".
" 103, Words, right column, 2nd line, read "accustomed" inst. of "accostumed".
" 106, Words, right column, 2nd line, read "the toy" inst. of "they toy".
" 109, Words, 2nd line from the bottom of the right column, read *"altrettánto"* inst. of *„altrettanto"*.
" 109, footnote 8), 6th line from below, read *"la carta-moneta"* inst. of "It *carta-moneta"*.
" 115, Compound Tenses, read "Infinito Passato" inst. of "Passato".
" 120, 2nd line, read "Teodóro" inst. of "Teódoro".
" 123, Compound Tenses, read "Infinito Passato" inst. of „Infinito".
" 125, Words, 4th line from the bottom of the left column, read "to get up" inst. of "to gut up".
" 126, Dialogo, 10th line of left column, read "been staying" inst. of "stayed".
" 127, 11th line, right column, read "it snows" inst. of "il snows".
" 143, 3., 3d line from the bottom of the left column, read "amidst" inst. of "admidst".
" 150, Dialogo, 7th line of the right column, read "incómodi" inst. of "incómmodi".
" 167, 12th line of Traduzione 62, read "appeared" inst. of "appear".
" 168, Dialogo, 11th line from the bottom of the left column, read "cappelli" inst. of "capelli".
" 170, 16th line from the bottom of the left column, read "to inflame" inst. of "to inflamy".
" 182, 16th line, read *"Lícere"* inst. of *"Licere"*.
" 183, Words, last word of the right column, read "ricorrere" inst. of "riccorrere".
" 191, 1st column, last word, read "to choose" inst. of "to chose".
" 197, 12th line, read "così" inst. of "cosi".
" 198, the rule in the *Note* to 2) should be read thus: "When a syllable is *accented*, the vowel is always open" (instead of: . . . . "it always becomes open".

Page 213, 7th line from below, read "one thousand" inst. of "some thousand".
„ 214, right column, 15th line from below, read "rottenness" inst. of "rottennes".
„ 216, last line, read "ricordanze" inst. of "ricordance".
„ 222, Traduzione 1., 6th line from below, cross out the word "man" after "youth"!
„ 228, 3d line, read "sì" inst. of "sí" [Dico di sì.]
„ 242, 8th line, read "prostrarsi" inst. of "prostarsi".
„ 242, 7th line of the *Dialogo*, read "confidava" inst. of "sonfidava".
„ 243, line above *C.*, read "dost love me" inst. of "dost not love me".
„ 245, 1st line, read "next of kin" inst. of "nearest of of kin".
„ 245, 7th line, read "unequal" inst. of "unequai".
„ 296, 2nd line from below, read "I allow you" inst. of "I are allow you".
„ 313, 2nd line from below, read "here" inst. of "her".
„ 324, line above § 8, read "told me so" inst. of "told so me".
„ 333, 1), read "that I should" inst. of "that I sould".
„ 335, last line of 6), read "Show me" inst. of "Thow me".
„ 340, 10th line from below, read "autorità" inst. of "aurorità".
„ 341, 1st line of the "*Dialogo*", read "di Genova" inst. of "die Genova".
„ 345, 3), 3d line from below, read "I am" inst. of "Im am".
„ 356, 2., 3d line from below, read "seeing" inst. of "sceig".
„ 369, 4., left column, 9th line, read "I giorni" inst. of "I giorno".
„ 372, Proverbs, last line of right column, read "swallow" inst. of "swallows".
„ 389, 1st line, read "da per tutto" inst. of "da par tutto".
„ 391, 2nd line, after "motivi", read 2) inst. of 1).
„ 392, 7th line, read "incómodi" inst. of "incónmodi".
„ 393, 12th line from below, read "non ho altro" inst. of "no ho altro".
„ 397, 9th line, read "e colla" inst. of "a colla".
„ 411, left column, arm, read "braccio" (in the sing.) inst. of "braccia".
„ 413, after the word "day", read "oggi otto" inst. of "oggi a otto".
„ 418, after the word "lion", read "leóne" inst. of "léone".
„ 423, after the word "Sicily", read "Sicília" inst. of "Sicília".
„ 424, after the word "talk": *parlare* should be followed by a semicolon.

FIRST PART.

On Pronunciation.

§ 1. Letters of the alphabet.

The Italian alphabet consists of 22 letters, which are exhibited as follows:

Character.	Name.	Character.	Name.
A, a,	ah.	M, m,	emme.
B, b,	be.	N, n,	enne.
C, c,	tshe.	O, o,	o.
D, d,	de.	P, p,	pe.
E, e,	ey.	Q, q,	koo.
F, f,	effe.	R, r,	erre.
G, g,	dshe.	S, s,	esse.
H, h,	akkah.	T, t,	te.
I, i,	e.	U, u,	oo.
J, j,	yey (*i lungo*).	V, v,	vey.
L, l,	elle.	Z, z,	dseyta.

Of these letters **a, e, i, o, u** are vowels (*vocáli*); the others are consonants (*consonánti*). *K, X, Y, W* do not occur in Italian.

§ 2. On the signs of punctuation.

1) The *Apostrophe* (') indicates, that a *vowel* has been *dropped*, as: *l'óro*, instead of ***lo*** *oro; dell' ánima*, inst. of *della anima; l'ángelo*, inst. of ***lo*** *angelo.*

2) The *accent* (`). It is met with in Italian on the *last* vowels of some words only, and is used to mark either a *contraction* as: città (formerly citt*ate*), or a *termination* of the verb which must be *sharply* pronounced, as: *avrà, amò, cessò.**)

It must be observed that the acute accent (´) is *never* written in Italian. We put it on every word, in order to show the pupil, on which syllable the *stress* is laid. As a general rule, we

*) This accent also occurs on the last syllable of some *foreign* words as: *lacchè, taffetà, caffè* etc.

at once state that in Italian the stress is laid on the *penultimate.* From the *twelfth* Lesson forward we shall only make use of the accent with such words that offer a *deviation* from the general rule, or where the pronunciation might perhaps appear dubious. In the Reading Exercises, on the contrary, we shall *never* employ the accent, in order to accustom the pupil early to read Italian without the assistance of this guide.

§ 3. On the pronunciation of the vowels.

A, a sounds like *a* in the English words *are, father, last,* but never like *a* in *name* or *ball.* Examples: *áma, cára, farà* etc.

E, e has two different sounds, a broad one, almost like the *a* in the English words *hate, name* (the French è), as: *pèssimo* (very bad), *mènsa* (table), and an acute one like *ey* in *they, grey* (the French é), as: *céna* (supper), *péra* (pear), *séte* (thirst).

Note. The e at the end of a word is *never mute;* its sound, however, is less open and much shorter than at the beginning or in the middle of a word.

I, i sounds like the English *i* in *milk, sister, children, field,* but never like the *i* in *child, fire, idle.* Examples: *ínni, ívi, bríndisi.* At the end of a *monosyllable* its sound is *short* and *sharp* as: *mi, ti, si, vi.*

O, o has a double sound: an open one like the English *o* in *off, loss,* as: *cóllo* (neck), *Giòve* (Jove), *pórco* (pig), and an acute one like the English *o* in *stove, alone,* as: *córre* (runs) *sólo* (alone), *stólto* (fool).

U, u sounds like *oo* in *boots,* but never like the English *u* in *union.* This vowel is sometimes *short* as in *tu* (thou), and sometimes long as in *cúra* (care).

NB. Further observations on pronunciation are given in the second Part of this grammar.

§ 4. On the Diphthongs.

Real Diphthongs, as we have them in English, French and German, do not exist in Italian, where *every vowel must be distinctly* pronounced. For instance: *miéi,* pron. mi-é-i; *Európa,* pr. E-u-ro-pa; *buói,* pr. bu-o-i etc.

See: Second Part, On pronunciation.

§ 5. Pronunciation of the consonants.

B, b, as in English: *béllo, buóno, bírra.*

C, c, has a double sound:

1) Before *a*, *o* and *u* and before consonants it is pronounced like the English *k*, as: *cárro*, *córso*, *cúlto*, *créta*, *crédere*.

2) Before *e* and *i* its sound is almost like *tsh* or *ch* (in the word *church*), as: *città*, *céra*, *cecità*.

Note. Whenever **c** before **e** and **i** is to be pronounced like **k**, an **h** is put after the **c**, as: *chiésa*, pr. ki-é-sa; *ócchio*, pr. ok-ki-o.

On the contrary **c** before **a**, **o** or **u** often requires the *soft* sound = *tsh*. For this purpose an *almost inaudible* **i** is put after the **c**. Example: *ciárlare*, pr. tshar-la-re; *cioccoláta*, pr. tshok-ko-la-ta.

cc before *e* or *i* sounds like *ttsh*, as: *Eccellénza*, pr. ett-shel-len-tsa; Pecci.

D, d, as in English: *dúro*, *dáre*, *délla*.

F, f, has the same sound as in English: *fáre*, *fiéro*, *felíce*.

G, g, has a double sound:

1) before *a*, *o* or *u* and before consonants (except *l* and *n*) it corresponds with the English *g* in the word *God*. Example: *gállo*, *góla*, *gránde*.

2) Before *e* or *i* its sound resembles *dsh*, but very softly pronounced, as: *género*, pr. dshé-né-ro; *gíro*, pr. dshee-ro.

Note. In order to harden the soft sound of this letter before **e** or **i**, an **h** is added to it, as in *stréghe*, pron. stré-gé (**g** as in *God*). If before **a**, **o** or **u** the soft sound is required, **g** must be followed by an *almost inaudible* **i**, as in *giardíno*, pr. dshar-dí-no; *giuraménto*, pr. dshoo-ra-men-to.

gg before *e* and *i* sound like *ddsh*, as: *Corréggio*, pr. Kor-redd-sho.

H, h, is never pronounced.

J, j, sounds like the English *y* in the words *youth*, *year*, as: *jéri*, *ajutáre*.

NB. Modern Italian orthography very seldom admits of this consonant, usually putting **i** in its stead, as: *iéri*, *aiutáre*, *aiuóle*.

L, l, as in English: *licve*, *lénto*, *béllo*.

The beginner must not forget, that where *compound consonants* occur (ll, mm, nn, pp, rr etc.), each must be *very distinctly* pronounced, as: *bello*, pr. bel-lo; *cárro*, pr. car-ro.

M, m,
N, n,
O, o,
P, p, } as in English.

Ph, ph, are in Italian always rendered by F, f, as: Philosophy = *filosofía;* Sappho = *Sáffo.*

Q, q, which never occurs without *u,* sounds like the English *qu* in the word *quire,* as: *quésto, quéllo, cínque, nácque* etc.

R, r, as in English, but somewhat shriller. Example: *ráro, réndere, réfe.*

S, s, as in English: *sérvo, séta, séme.* Between two vowels its sound is less hissing. Example: *rósa, cósa, rése.*

sce and **sci** sound like *shey* and *shee.* Ex.: *Scirócco, scélta, scéndere, scísso* etc.

T, t*)
V, v, } as in English.

Z, z, the sound of this letter is sometimes soft like *ds,* as: *zélo,* pr. dsé-lo; *mánzo, brónzo;* sometimes sharp like *ts,* as: *zío,* pr. tsí-o; *sénza, fórza, bálza.*

§ 6. On the pronunciation of gn and gl.

The sound of *gn* is not unlike *ni* before *on* (the French *gn* in *montagne*) in the words *pinion, minion, union,* as: *montágna,* pr. mon-ta-nia; *campágna,* pr. cam-pa-nia.

gl sounds almost like *lli* in the word *postillion* (harder than the French *l mouillé*). Ex.: *égli, méglio, convóglio.*

(Exceptions: *negligere* (to neglect), where it sounds exactly as in English, and its derivations, as: *negligénza, negligénte* etc.; furthermore the poetical word *Ánglia* (England), *geroglífico* (hieroglyphical), *anglicismo* (anglicism), *glífo* (glyph, an expression of Architecture) and its derivations like *glittografía, glíttica, glittotéca, geroglífico,* and finally *gánglio* (ganglion).

§ 7. Promiscuous Examples.

1) La mádre, il pádre, il fratéllo, la sorélla, il líbro, la vácca, il cárro, la léttera, le pénne, i temperíni, il gátto, la fébbre, l'érba, la távola, il cérvo, l'inchióstro,

*) *T never* has the sound of *t* in the English word *nation.*

la chiésa, lo schióppo, la lámpada, il ciélo, celéste, céneri, ceneréntola, Girólamo, Gioachíno, Giácomo, scélta, schérma, ócchio, ghiótto, ghirlánda, ghermíre, che, fóglio, vantággio, bigliétto, sconosciúto, scórrere, infelíce, bellézza.

2) Negligénza, neglétto, gíglio, fíglio, meravíglia, ognúno, magnánimo, púgno, cotógno, mignátta, guadágno, falegnáme, lóglio, glífo, chiáro, mácchina, chícchera, finócchio, ghiribízzo, gorgheggiáre, preghiéra, gelicídio, címa, giórno, giornáta, gémma, gingéllo, fulíggine, maneggévole, gúscio, scímia, cóscia, ambáscia, tózzo, ózio, orgóglio, formággio, strapazzáre, schérzo, schiéna, scuóla, schifóso, reggénte.

Reading Exercise.

Lasciáte che ciaschedúno s'ingégni e travágli a procacciársi la sussisténza, conciossía ognúno che ha l'effígie d'uómo pórti séco púre l'imprónta dégli stéssi privilégi che ha qualúnque áltro délla súa spécie; soltánto gli sfaccendáti ed oziósi, i quáli secóndo la consuetúdine dei gióvani agiáti d'oggidì pássano i lóro giórni nélla scioperatézza e trascurággine, meriterébbero a mío giudízio l'abbandóno ed il disprézzo délla società.

From the novel **Nicolò de' Lapi** by *Mássimo d'Azéglio.*

Quélla piazzétta per la quále al dì d'óggi si passéggia ad ogn' óra liberaménte, incontrándo soltánto o contadíni tranquílli, e che vi rispóndono corteseménte in quélla lóro armónica e corrétta língua, o brigáte di cittadíni villeggiánti ne' contórni; quélle casúcce che preséntano óggi giórno l' immágine della povertà quiéta e conténta; quégli úsci, ingómbri di bambíni di túttc le misúre, di dónne che atténdono all' útile e pulíto lavorío dei cappélli di páglia; túttо, al púnto che vi giúnse Fanfúlla, éra piéno di génti stráne, di disórdine, di schiamázzi. Il suólo fangóso, immóndo, pésto pel gran passáre d' uómini e caválli: le cáse piéne di soldáti, le múra sudíce ed affumicáte, la chiesuóla ridótta una tavérna, e la piázza ingómbra di frascáti sótto i quáli éran vivandiéri con páne, grásce, baríli di víno ecc., ed avéan rizzáta quívi la lóro bottéga con assái buón giudízio, sapéndo che la vísta della córda e delle fórche éra un óttimo trattáto di mnemónica per quégli avvéntori che potéssero scordársi di pagáre.

Méntre Fanfúlla s' aggiráva considerándo a chi gli convenísse dirígersi per domandár di Troílo, udì levársi un bisbíglio tra la génte, s' accórse d' un agitársi di persóne nel láto ov' éran le fórche, e víde pói che appoggiátavi una scála salíva un uómo ad acconciáre il láccio, e preparár l' occorrénte per far giustízia. Accostátosi per curiosità, víde póco lontáno dal patíbolo a piè d'un múro la persóna che paréva destináta al supplízio. Era úna dónna, cólle máni legáte diétro le réni, e, pósta ginocchióni a piédi d' un cappuccíno, si confessáva. Fanfúlla si maravigliáva che avéssero ad impiccáre una fémmina, ma gli crébbe la maravíglia vedéndo che di sótto i pánni le spuntáva fuóri il fódero d' úna spáda.

First Lesson.

On the article. Dell' artícolo.

The article indicates the gender of the substantives. The Italian language has two genders, *viz.* the masculine *(maschíle)* and the feminine *(femminíle)*.

There are two articles in Italian as in English: the definite art. *(l'artícolo definíto)* and the indefinite art. *(l'articolo indefinito)*.

The definite article for *masculine substantives* is ***il*** and ***lo;*** for *feminine substantives* ***la.***[1])

The article ***il*** is used before masculine substantives beginniug with *consonants*, except the *impure s* (s impúra), as:

il pádre, the father; *il fratéllo*, the brother; *il ciélo*, the heaven.

NB. The Italians call the s *impure*, when it is followed by another consonant, as: *sb, sc, sd, sf, sg, sm* etc. In this case the article is not *il* but ***lo.*** Examples: ***lo sbáglio***, the mistake; ***lo sdégno***, the anger; ***lo spécchio***, the looking-glass. The reason is, that the Italian ear cannot bear a meeting of *three* consonants (*il **sb**áglio*). This rule is so strictly observed that, whenever a substantive beginning with *s impura* is preceded by a preposition ending with a consonant, as *in, per, con* etc., an *i* is prefixed to the substantive. Thus they say: *In Isvezia* (in order to avoid *in Svezia*), *con Isvézia*, with Sweden etc.

The article ***la*** is used before every feminine noun beginning with a consonant, as: *la cása*, the house; *la stánza*, the room; *la piánta*, the plant.

1) The article of the Romance languages is derived from the Latin demonstrative pronoun *ille, illa* etc. It deserves to be noticed that the Italian *Nominative* case is not derived from the Lat. Ablativus, but from the Accusativus.

In the singular number all masc. and femin. nouns beginning with *a vowel* take the article *l'*; the vowel of the articles *lo* or *la* being dropped, and an *apostrophe* put in its stead, as:*)

l'óro,[1]) the gold; *l'ávo,* the grandfather; *l'ángelo,* the angel; *l'ánima,* the soul; *l'érba,* the grass; *l'óca,* the goose.

The indefinite article *(l'articolo indefinito)* is for masc. nouns **un,** for femin. nouns **una.** Masc. nouns beginning with an *impure s* take the article *uno.* Before *fem.* nouns beginning with a vowel the indef. article is *un'.* Before *masc.* nouns beginning with a vowel the indef. article is *un without* the apostrophe. Examples:

un pádre, a father; *una mádre,* a mother; *un líbro,* a book; *una pénna,* a pen; *un ángelo,* an angel; *un amíco,* a friend; *uno spéttro,* a spectre; *uno scoláre,* a scholar; *un' ánima,* a soul; *un' óca,* a goose.

Note. In the following list of words the gender is indicated by the letters *m.* (masc.) and *f.* (fem.) We recommend the pupil, when learning these words by heart, to add the defin. article as well as the indefinite to each of them, before proceeding to the subsequent exercises.

Words.

Pádre, m. father.
mádre, f. mother.
fanciúllo, m. child.
líbro, m. book.
cavállo, m. horse.
rósa, f. rose.
spécchio, m. looking-glass.
péra, f. pear.
álbero, m. tree.
scéttro, m. scepter.
cáne, m. dog.
ábito, m. coat.
giardíno,[2]) *m.* garden.
uccéllo,[3]) *m.* bird.
fióre, m. flower.
onóre, m. honour.
fratéllo, m. brother.
zía, f. aunt.

*) This rule, however, is not always strictly observed. In the Plural feminine nouns usually retain their full article, as: *le ánime,* the souls: *le óche,* the geese. But the Apostrophe must be used, when the *same* vowels meet, e. g. *gl'ínni (gli inni), l'óro (lo oro)* etc. etc.

1) *Oro* from the Lat. *aurum.* The sound of the vowel *o* is *open,* if it stands for the Lat. *au,* whereas it is *closed,* when it stands for the Lat. *u.* Thus *sono* from *sum* or *sunt.* 2) From the ***OHG.*** (Old High German) *garâ (gart);* ***Sp.*** (Spanish) *jardin;* ***Prov.*** (Provençal) *gardin, jardin, jerzin;* ***Fr.*** (French) *jardin;* ***Grm.*** (German) Garten. 3) From the ***LL.*** (Low Latinity) *aucellus;* Prov. *auzel;* Fr. *oisel, oiseau.*

capello,[1]) *m.* hat.
schióppo, m. gun.
ciriégia, f. cherry.
páne, m. bread..
pénna, f. pen.
óca,[2]) *f.* goose.
re, m. king.
regina, f. queen.
si, yes; *no,* no.
mío, m. / *mía, f.* my.
e (before vowels *ed*) and.

S. *Io ho,* I have — *Ho io,* have I?
tu hái, thou hast — *hai tu,* hast thou?
egli / *esso* *ha,* he has — *ha* *egli,* / *esso,* has he?
ella / *essa* *ha,* she has — *ha* *ella,* / *essa,* has she?

P. *noi abbiámo,* we have — *abbiamo noi,* have we?
voi avéte, you have — *avete voi,* have you?
eglino / *essi* *hanno,* they (*m.*) have — *hanno* *eglino,* / *essi,* have they?
elleno / *esse* *hanno,* they (*f.*) have — *hanno* *elleno,* / *esse,* have they?

Reading Exercise. 1.

Io ho la rosa. Io ho una rosa. Tu hai il libro. Hai tu un libro? Egli ha uno specchio. Il padre ha il giardino. La madre ha il pane. Il fanciullo ha lo specchio. Il fanciullo ha uno specchio. La zia ha un' oca. Mio fratello ha un cane. Il re ha lo scettro. Il re ha uno scettro. Noi abbiamo un fiore ed una pera. Voi avete l'onore. Avete voi un fiore? Io ho l'abito. Ha egli un abito? Ella ha un cane. Il fanciullo ha un fratello ed una zia.

Traduzione. 2. (Exercise for translation.)

I have the book. I have a rose. Thou hast the hat. Hast thou a dog? Hast thou a looking-glass? He has the coat. My father has the bird. Has she a pear? Has he the bread? We have a hat. Have we the gun? You have the goose. They have a garden. Have they *(f.)* a horse? The king has a horse. Have they *(m.)* a cherry? They *(f.)* have the honour. Have they *(m.)* a gun? The child has a book. The queen has a rose. My aunt has the bird. My brother has the dog. My mother has a pen.

Dialogo (Conversation).

Ho io la rosa? — Voi avete la rosa.*)
Hai tu il libro? — Sì, io ho il libro.

*) The personal pronouns: I, thou, he, she, we, you, they; *io, tu, egli, ella, noi, voi, eglino, elleno* may also be omitted (see Less. IX. Note 1). For the *polite mode* of addressing a person, see the same lesson, Note 4.

1) From the ***L.*** (Latin) verb *capere;* ***OFr.*** (Old French) *chapel;* ***Fr.*** *chapeau.* 2) From LL. *auca* = *avica;* OFr. *oe, oue;* Fr. *oie;* ***Sp.*** ***Port***(uguese) *oca.*

Avete voi un libro?	Sì, io ho un libro.
Ha il fanciullo un fiore?	Sì, il fanciullo ha un fiore.
Ha il fratello uno schioppo?	Sì, il fratello ha uno schioppo.
Avete voi l'abito?	No, voi avete l'abito.
Hanno essi una pera ed una ciriegia?	Sì, essi hanno una pera ed una ciriegia.
Ha egli il pane?	Sì, egli ha il pane.
Ha ella un fiore?	Sì, ella ha un fiore.
Ha il fratello un amico?	Sì, il fratello ha un amico.

Second Lesson.

The substantive. Il sostantivo.

On the Plural of the nouns substantive.

The following general hints will enable the pupil to learn the formation of the Plural without difficulty:

1) All nouns ending in *o* form their Plural in *i*, as: *fratéllo — fratelli*; *cárro* (cart) *carri*; *cappéllo — cappelli*; *la máno* (hand), *le mani*.

2) All substantives in *e* form their Plural likewise in *i*, as: *il príncipe* (the prince) — *i príncipi*; *la mádre* — *le madri*; *la mérce* (the merchandise) — *le merci* etc.

3) All *feminine* nouns in *a* form their plural in *e*, as: *la cása — le case*; *la stráda* [1]) (street) — *le strade* etc.

4) All *masculine* nouns in *a* form their Plural in *i*, as: *il poéta* (poet) — *i poeti*; *il téma* (task) — *i temi*.

Note. Words ending in *a* preceded by *c* or *g*, take in the Plural an *h* after these consonants, in order to retain the *hard* sound. Ex.: *il dúca* (the duke) — *i duchi*; *l'óca — le oche*; *la spiga* (corn-ear) *le spighe*.

Words ending in *co* or *go* form the Plur. partly with *h*, partly without. In the first Part we always indicate the Plur. of these words.

5) *Monosyllables* and all nouns with the *accent* (') on their *last syllable* undergo *no change at all*, as: *il re — i re*; *la città* (town) — *le città*; *il canapè* (sopha) *i canapè*.

The words terminating in *i*, *ie* and the very limited number of those ending in *vonsonants* are also *alike*

---

1) L. *strata* (from *sternere*); Sp., Port., Prov. *estrada*; OFr. *estrée*; Dutch *straat*; Engl. *street*; Grm. Straße.

in Singular and Plural, as: Il dì, the day, *i dì*, the days; *il guardaportóni* [1]) (door-keeper) *i guardaportóni*; *la spécie* (species) *le spécie*; *il toccalápis* or *il lapis* (pencil) — *i toccalápis*; *il cáos* (chaos) *i cáos* etc.

6) The *fem.* nouns in *cia*, *ccia*, *gia*, *ggia* and *scia drop* their *i* in the Plural as superfluous, e. g. *la márcia* (the march), Plur. *le marce*; *la spiággia* (the coast), *le spiagge*. Except those fem. nouns where a stress is laid on *i*, as: *la bugía*, the falsehood, Pl. *le bugíe*.

Irregular are the following:

Dío (God) — *gli déi*; *l'uómo* (man) — *gli uómini*; *la móglie* [2]) (wife) — *le mógli*; *mílle* (a thousand) — *míla*; *l'uóvo* (egg) — *le uóva*; [3]) *il frútto* (fruit) — *le frútta*; *il búe* (ox) — *i buói*.

(For further observations on irregularities in the formation of the Plural see the second Part of this grammar.)

The Plural of the article *il* is *i*, as:
il pádre — *i* padri; *il* ciélo — *i* cieli.

The Plural of the article *la* is *le*, as: *la* cása — *le* case; *la* mádre — *le* madri: *l'*ánima — *le* anime.

The Plural of the article *lo* is *gli*, as: *lo* scéttro — *gli* scéttri; *lo* spécchio — *gli* spécchi; *l'*ávo — *gli* ávi; *l'*ingannatóre (*cheat*) — gl'ingannatóri.*)

Words.

il temperíno, the penknife.
la sorélla, the sister.
il cugíno, the cousin.
la pórta, the door (gate).
l'úscio, the room-door (*pl. usci*).
il castéllo, the castle.
il palázzo, the palace.
il quádro, the picture.
il gátto, [4]) the cat.
il paése, [5]) the land, country.
la cása, the house.
il giuóco, [6]) the play, game (*pl. —chi*).
il sórcio, the mouse.
il monárca, the monarch (*pl. monárchi*).
il médico, the physician (*pl. —ci*).
il dúca, the duke (*pl. —chi*).
il nóme, the name.
la spáda, [7]) the sword.

*) The *i* of *gli* is only rejected when the subst. begins with an *i*. Ex.: *l'ínno* (hymn) — *gl'inni*; *l'infelice* (the unhappy man) *gl'infelici* etc. (See Note * pag. 10.)

1) Comp. of *guardare*, to keep, and *portone*, street-door. — 2) Lat. *mulier*. 3) The Plur. in *—a* is Lat.: *ovum* — *ova*. 4) L. *catus*; Sp. *pato*; Fr. *chat*; Engl. *cat*; Grm. Katze. 5) From the L. *pagense* (from *pagus*); Sp. Port. *país*; Prov. *paes*; Fr. *pays*. 6) Lat. *jocus*; Sp. *juego*; Prov. *joi*, *juec*; Fr. *jeu*. 7) From L. *spatha* (σπάθη); Sp., Port., Pron. *espada*; Fr. *épée (espée)*.

il coltêllo,[1]) the knife. *la stúfa,*[2]) the stove.
il canâle, the channel, canal. *la cárta,*[3]) the paper.

écco,[4]) here is *or* here are; vi è, vi sono, there is, there are; *grande,* large; *dúe,* two; *tre,* three; *quáttro,* four; *ánche,* also; *vedúto,* seen.

Io avéva, I had	*Aveva io,* had I?
tu avévi, thou hadst	*avevi tu,* hadst thou?
egli avéva, he had	*aveva egli,* had he?
ella avéva, she had	*aveva ella,* had she?
noi avevámo, we had	*avevamo noi,* had we?
voi aveváte, you had	*avevate voi,* had you?
eglino avévano, they had	*avevano eglino,* had they?
elleno avévano, they had.	*avevano elleno,* had they?

Reading Exercise. 3.

Noi avevamo un coltello. Voi avevate due coltelli. Mio fratello ha i temperini. La casa ha due porte. Aveva io lo smoccolatoio[5]) *(snuffers)*? Avevate voi le frutta? Sì, noi avevamo le frutta. Il re aveva due castelli. La regina ha i palazzi. Ella ha anche i quadri. Noi abbiamo veduto quattro sorci. I fanciulli avevano tre pere. I duchi ed i monarchi avevano i paesi. Mia zia aveva una stufa. Il duca aveva tre cavalli. Le zie avevano i gatti. Mia madre ha due sorelle. Ecco il palazzo del (of the) duca.

Traduzione. 4.

I had three brothers. The duke has the sword. The children have the flowers. (The) men had (the) gods. We had also seen the pictures. Here are the games, the pencils, and the coats. Here are also the houses, the castles, and the palaces. Had she the hats? No, she had the coats. The countries have the canals. My father has three sisters. Hadst thou a physician? Yes, I had a physician. I have seen the four cats. Had they *(f.)* three dogs and four cats? No, they had four dogs and three cats. The wives have the eggs and the fruit. The eye *(ócchio)*[6]) is large. I have two eyes *(ócchi).*

Dialogo.

Avevamo noi un temperino?	Voi avevate un temperino.
Aveva io i coltelli?	Sì, tu avevi i coltelli.

1) L. *cultellus,* Dim. of *culter;* OFr. *coltel;* Fr. *couteau;* Prov. *coltelh;* Sp. *cuchillo.* 2) From LL. *stuba, stuffa,* sudatory, steam-bath, from the OHG. *stupa,* bathing-room; Germ. Stube; Sp. Port. *estufa;* Prov. *estuba;* Engl. *stove;* Fr. *étuve (estuve).* 3) Lat. *charta* (χάρτης). 4) Lat. *ecce.* 5) Lat. *mucus;* Fr. *mouchettes* from the verb *moucher,* to snuff. 6) L. *oculus;* Sp. *ojo;* Port. *olho;* Fr. *œil;* OFr. *oil, oel;* Prov. *olh.*

Hai tu gli smoccolatoi?	Sì, io ho gli smoccolatoi.
Hanno gli uomini veduto gli dei?	No, gli uomini non (not) hanno veduto gli dei.
Avevano i fanciulli i quadri?	I fanciulli non avevano i quadri.
Hanno i duchi le spade?	No, i monarchi hanno le spade e gli scettri.
Avevano eglino veduto i castelli ed i palazzi?	Sì, eglino avevano veduto i castelli ed i palazzi.
Ha la zia *le* frutta?	No, il fanciullo ha *le* frutta.**)
Avete voi un uovo?	Sì, io ho un uovo.
Ha mio padre i giuochi?	Sì, egli ha tre giuochi.
Quanti *(how many)* fratelli avevi tu?	Io aveva due fratelli e tre sorelle.
Quanti fanciulli aveva l'uomo?	L'uomo aveva tre fanciulli.
Avevate voi veduto i poeti?	No, non avevamo veduto i poeti.

Third Lesson.

Declension of substantives. Declinazione.

The Italian nouns substantive form the different *cases* of their numbers by means of prepositions. These prepositions, however, are not, as in English, simply put before the article, but undergo a *contraction* with the article into *one* word.

There are *five* cases in Singular and Plural; the *nominative* (nominativo) and *accusative* (accusativo) are *always alike.*

1) The *genitive*, answering to the question *whose?* or *of which?* is formed with the preposition ***di*** (of), thus contracted with the article:

Singular.

of the father — *di* il padre,	contr.	**del** pádre.
of the mother — *di* la madre,	»	**della** mádre.
of the pupil — *di* lo scolare,	»	**dello** scoláre.
of the soul — *di* l'anima,	»	**dell'** ánima.
of the angel — *di* l'ángelo,	»	**dell'** ángelo.

) Most of the words in *-io* form their Plur. by *dropping o;* thus *specchio,* Plur. *specchi* etc.

**) The nouns in *-o* which form their Plur. in *-a,* as: *frutto,* Pl. *frutta,* become *feminine.* (See II. P. the Plural.)

Plural.

of the fathers — *di* i padri,	contr.	**dei** padri.
of the mothers — *di* le madre,	»	**delle** madri.
of the pupils — *di* gli scolari,	»	**degli** scolari.
of the souls — *di* le anime,	»	**delle** anime.
of the angels — *di* gli angeli,	»	**degli** angeli.

2) The *dative*, answering to the question *to whom?* is formed with the preposition **a** (to, at), contracted with the article as follows:

Singular.

to the father — *a* il padre,	contr.	**al** pádre.
to the mother — *a* la madre,	»	**alla** mádre.
to the pupil — *a* lo scolare,	»	**allo** scoláre.
to the soul — *a* la anima,	»	**all'** ánima.
to the angel — *a* l'angelo.	»	**all'** ángelo.

Plural.

to the fathers — *a* i padri,	contr.	**ai** padri.
to the mothers — *a* le madri,	»	**alle** madri.
to the pupils — *a* gli scolari,	»	**agli** scolari.
to the souls — *a* le anime,	»	**alle** anime.
to the angels — *a* gli angeli,	»	**agli** angeli.

3) The *ablative*, a case peculiar to the Italian language, is formed with the preposition *da* (from, by, at). It is used to express a *derivation*, *distance* or *removal*, but also a *dwelling* upon, a *characteristic token* or *fitness* for anything. Like *di* and *a*, this preposition is joined with the definite article, and forms the following contractions:

Singular.

from, by the father*) — *da* il padre,	contr.	**dal** padre.
from, by the mother — *da* la madre,	»	**dalla** madre.
from, by the pupil — *da* lo scolare,	»	**dallo** scolare.
from, by the soul — *da* l'anima,	»	**dall'** anima.
from, by the angel — *da* l'angelo,	»	**dall'** angelo.

Plural.

from, by the fathers — *da* i padri,	contr.	**dai** padri.
from, by the mothers — *da* le madri,	»	**dalle** madri.
from, by the pupils — *da* gli scolari,	»	**dagli** scolari.
from, by the souls — *da* le anime,	»	**dalle** anime.
from, by the angels — *da* gli angeli,	»	**dagli** angeli.

*) The English terms formed with the preposition *at*, as: *at* the merchant's, milliner's etc. are usually rendered by ***da***, Ex.: Sugar, coffee, and wine are to be found at the merchant's: *Si trova del zúcchero, del caffè e del vino **dal** mercante.*

Before the *indefinite* article these prepositions are liable to no contraction. It may be observed, however, that *di* commonly drops its final *i* and takes an apostrophe in its stead, as:

un padre, a father; *una madre,* a mother.
G. *d'un* padre, of a father; *d'una* madre, of a mother.

Da, on the contrary, is *never* apostrophised, and instead of *a,* for the sake of euphony, *ad* is preferred.

Note. The *demonstrative* adjectives *questo* (m.), *questa* (f.), this, and *quello* (m.), *quella* (f.), that, are declined precisely in the same manner. Also the *possessive* adjectives ***mio, mia,*** my; *tuo, tua,* thy; *suo, sua,* his, her, its; ***nostro, nostra,*** our; *vostro, vostra,* your, and *loro* (for both genders and numbers), when *immediately before* a substantive expressing a *relation* (but only in the singular), are declined with *di, a,* and *da;* and so are all the pronouns, if no article be required before them.

Perspicuous exhibition of the declensions.

a) With the definite article.

Femminile.

Singular.

Nom. Acc. ***la*** *madre,* the mother.
Gen. ***della*** *madre,* of the mother.
Dat. ***alla*** *madre,* to the mother.
Abl. ***dalla*** *madre,* from, by the mother (at the mother's).

Plural.

Nom. Acc. ***le*** *madri,* the mothers.
Gen. ***delle*** *madri,* of the mothers.
Dat. ***alle*** *madri,* to the mothers.
Abl. ***dalle*** *madri,* from, by the mothers.

Maschile.

(before consonants, except *s impura*).

Singular.

Nom. Acc. *il padre*, the father.
Gen. *del padre*, of the father.
Dat. *al padre*, to the father.
Abl. *dal padre*, from, by the father (at the father's).

Plural.

Nom. Acc. *i padri*, the fathers.
Gen. *dei padri*, of the fathers.
Dat. *ai padri*, to the fathers.
Abl. *dai padri*, from, by the fathers.

Maschile.

(before *s impura*).

Singular.

Nom. Acc. *lo scolare*, the pupil.
Gen. *dello scolare*, of the pupil.
Dat. *allo scolare*, to the pupil.
Abl. *dallo scolare*, from, by the pupil.

Plural.

Nom. Acc. *gli scolari*, the pupils.
Gen. *degli scolari*, of the pupils.
Dat. *agli scolari*, to the pupils.
Abl. *dagli scolari*, from, by the pupils.

Femminile.

(with apostrophe).

Singular.

Nom. Acc. *l'ánima*, the soul.
Gen. *dell' anima*, of the soul.
Dat. *all' anima*, to the soul.
Abl. *dall' anima*, from, by the soul.

Plural.

Nom. Acc. *le anime*, the souls.
Gen. *delle anime*, of the souls.
Dat. *alle anime*, to the souls.
Abl. *dalle anime*, from, by the souls.

Maschile.

(with apostrophe).

Singular.

Nom. Acc. *l'angelo*, the angel.
Gen. ***dell'** angelo*, of the angel.
Dat. ***all'** angelo*, to the angel.
Abl. ***dall'** angelo*, from, by the angel.

Plural.

Nom. Acc. ***gli** angeli*, the angels.
Gen. ***degli** angeli*, of the angels.
Dat. ***agli** angeli*, to the angels.
Abl. ***dagli** angeli*, from, by the angels.

b) With the indefinite article.

Maschile.

Nom. Acc. ***un** padre*, a father.
Gen. ***d'un** padre*, of a father.
Dat. ***ad un** padre*, to a father.
Abl. ***da un** padre*, from, by a father.

Femminile.

Nom. Acc. ***una** madre*, a mother.
Gen. ***d'una** madre*, of a mother.
Dat. ***ad una** madre*, to a mother.
Abl. ***da una** madre*, from, by a mother.

c) With a demonstrative adjective.

Maschile.

Nom. Acc. ***questo** palazzo*, this palace.
Gen. ***di questo** palazzo*, of this palace.
Dat. ***a questo** palazzo*, to this palace.
Abl. ***da questo** palazzo*, from, by this palace.

Plural.

Nom. Acc. ***questi** palazzi*, these palaces.
Gen. ***di questi** palazzi*, of these palaces.
Dat. ***a questi** palazzi*, to these palaces.
Abl. ***da questi** palazzi*, from, by these palaces.

Femminile.

Nom. } ***questa strada***, this street.
Acc. }
Gen. ***di questa strada***, of this street.
Dat. ***a questa strada***, to this street.
Abl. ***da questa strada***, from, by this street.

Plural.

Nom. } ***queste strade***, these streets.
Acc. }
Gen. ***di queste strade***, of these streets.
Dat. ***a queste strade***, to these streets.
Abl. ***da queste strade***, from, by these streets.

Note. In the same manner are declined the above mentioned possessive adjectives *mio*, my, *tuo*, thy, *suo*, his, her etc.

Words.

Dío, God.
il creatóre, the creator.
il móndo,[1]) the world.
il cugíno,[2]) the cousin (*m.*).
la cugína, the cousin (*f.*).
l'amíco, the friend.
la città,[3]) the town.
la finéstra, the window.
il vicíno, the neighbour.
il figlio, the son.
l'animale, the animal.
il sónno, (the) sleep.
la mórte, (the) death.
il fóglio, the sheet (paper).
la foglia, the leaf.
lo scrígno,[4]) the chest, box.
il nemíco, the enemy (*pl.* —*ci*).
la piánta, the plant.
la térra, the earth.
il ritratto, the portrait.
io do, I give.
voi date, you give.
di chi, whose?
è, is; *sono*, are.

Reading Exercise. 5.

Il padre del fanciullo. La madre dei figli.*) La porta della casa. Le porte delle case. Le finestre dei palazzi. Il gatto è un animale. I gatti sono i nemici dei sorci. Io do lo scrigno all' amico. Io do le rose ai cugini ed alle cugine. Voi date gli scrigni agli amici ed alle amiche. I nemici degli uomini. I fogli dei libri e dei quaderni (*writing-books*). Le finestre di questa casa. Le foglie di questi fiori.

*) *Fanciullo* means *lad; fanciulla*, a young lady, a girl; a *little* girl is *ragazza*, a little boy *ragazzo*. *Figli* (Pl.) means the *children* of a family, without regard to sex. Thus a lady would say: ***Ho cinque figli, due maschi e tre femmine,*** I have five children, two boys and three girls.

1) L. *mundus* (the *o* is therefore *closed*). 2) L. *consobrinus;* Prov. *cosin;* Fr. *cousin.* 3) Lat. *civitas;* Sp. *ciudad;* Prov. *ciutat, ciptat;* Fr. *cité;* Engl. *city.* 4) Lat. *scrinium;* Fr. *écrin;* Engl. *shrine;* Grm. Schrein.

Traduzione. 6.

1. The brother of the cousin (*m.*). The sisters of the cousin (*f.*). The gates of the town. The houses of the towns. The windows of the houses. God is the creator of the world. The dog is the enemy of the cat. I give the coats to the brothers and (to the)*) sisters. The dog is the friend of (the) man.

2. I give the book to the brother. The sleep of the child. Of the death of my (*del mio*) friend (*m.*).**) The leaves of the roses and (of the) trees of the garden. Here are the clothes (*ábiti, m.*) of the children. We speak (*noi parliámo*) of the trees and (of the) plants of the earth.

Dialogo.

Ho io il libro del cugino?	Tu hai il libro del cugino.
Hai tu il ritratto della zia?	Sì, io ho il ritratto della zia.
Ha egli veduto il giardino del re?	Sì, egli ha veduto il giardino ed il castello del re.
Hanno i fanciulli gli scrigni?	Sì, i fanciulli hanno gli scrigni.
Chi (*who*) ha lo smoccolatoio del fratello?	Ecco lo smoccolatoio del fratello!
Di chi sono queste pere?***)	Sono di mio fratello.
Di chi sono questi giardini?	Sono del re e della regina.
Di chi sono questi libri?	Questi libri sono di vostro padre.
Avete voi veduto il cane dell' amico?	Ecco il cane dell' amico.
Di chi sono queste oche?	Sono di vostra cugina.

Fourth Lesson.

Frequently the cases of substantives are governed by prepositions, which appear almost in every sentence, and should therefore be learned early. Properly speaking the Italian prepositions govern no particular case, i. e. *they are simply put before the noun with or without its*

*) In Italian the article must always be repeated.

**) The English inversion (Saxon genitive): *of my friend's death,* cannot be imitated in Italian.

***) *Di chi è* and *di chi sono* corresponds to the English: To whom belongs? and: to whom belong? The sentence *Di chi sono le pere?* might also be rendered thus: Whose pears are these?

article. In elegant speech, however, some of them are constructed with the genitive and dative case, whereby a slight variation in the original signification is effected. See P. II. Lesson 14.

a, at, to, in.	*su*, on, upon.	*durante*, during.
di, of.	*sotto*, under, beneath.	*dopo*,[5]) after.
da, from, by, at.	*tra*,[2]) / *fra*, } between.	*dinanzi*,[6]) before (place).
in, in.		
senza,[1]) without.	*sopra*,[3]) upon.	*dietro*,[7]) behind.
con, with.	*avanti*,[4]) before (time).	*contra*, against.
per, for, through.	*davanti*, before (place).	*verso*, towards.

Note. The prepositions *in* (in), *con* (with), *su* (on), *tra*, *fra* (between), and *per* (for) are often *contracted* with the article in one word; such is usually the case with *in*, *con*, and *su*, and sometimes with *tra*, *fra*, and *per*, as the pupil may learn from the following table.

in il = nel.	*con* il = col.		il = sul.
lo = nello.	» lo = collo.		lo = sullo.
la = nella.	» la = colla.		la = sulla.
i = nei.	» i = coi.		i = sui.
gli = negli.	» gli = cogli.		gli = sugli.
le = nelle.	» le = colle.		le = sulle.

per il = pel.*)	*tra* il = tral.*)	
(» lo = pello.)	(» lo = trallo.)	
(» la = pella.)	(» la = tralla.)	
» i = pei.	» i = trai.	
(» gli = pegli.)	(» gli = tragli.)	
(» le = pelle.)	(» le = tralle.)	

Words.

la scuóla, the school.	*il tétto*, the roof.
il maéstro, the master.	*la cámera*, the room.
l'ácqua, the water.	*la chiésa*,[9]) the church.
la máno, the hand.	*la notte*, the night.
la pióggia,[8]) the rain.	*il giórno*,[10]) the day.

*) Generally *per* is only contracted with *il* and *i* (= *pel* and *pei*) into one word. The contractions with *tra* and the article are very rare.

1) L. *sine;* OFr. *sens;* Prov. *senes, sens, ses;* Olt. *sanza;* Sp. *sin;* Port. *sem.* 2) L. *intra, infra;* Fr. *entre;* Sp. *entre.* 3) L. *super;* Sp. *sobre.* 4) *Avanti* and *davanti* from the L. *ante.* 5) L. *de-post;* Sp. *despues;* Fr. *depuis.* 6) = *di* and *anzi* (Lat. *ante*). 7) LL. *de-retro.* 8) Lat. *pluvia.* 9) *ecclesia* L. (ἐκκλησια); Sp. *iglesia;* Prov. *gleiza, glieysa;* Fr. *église.* 10) Lat. *diurnus;* Fr. *jour;* OFr. Prov. *jorn.*

la cucína,[1]) the kitchen. *allóggia,*[3]) } lives, dwells,
il cortíle, the yard (of a house). *sta,* } resides.
la tásca,[2]) the pocket. *la tavola,* the table.
Luigi, Lewis; *dove (ove),* where? *chi,* who?

S.	*Io sóno,* I am.	*Sono io,* am I?
	tu séi, thou art.	*sei tu,* art thou?
	egli è, he is.	*è egli,* is he?
	ella è, she is.	*è ella,* is she?
P.	*noi siámo,* we are.	*siamo noi,* are we?
	voi siéte, you are.	*siete voi,* are you?
	eglino sóno, they (*m.*) are.	*sono eglino,* are they?
	elleno sóno, they (*f.*) are.	*sono elleno,* are they?

Reading Exercise. 7.

Io sono nel (= in il) cortile. L'uccello è sul (= su il) tetto. La porta è alla casa. Sei tu in*) giardino. Siete voi sull' (= su l') albero? Luigi è da mio padre. I cavalli sono alla porta. Dopo la pioggia. Durante la notte. Avanti il giorno. Il fanciullo è sotto l' albero. Trai (= tra i) fanciulli. Questo libro è pel (= per il) maestro e pello (= per lo) scolare. Questa pera è per mia zia. Il cane è nell' (= in la) acqua. Mia zia è in chiesa. Senza danaro (*money*). Coi (= con i) cavalli di mio zio. Cogli (= con gli) amici di mio cugino. Mia cugina sta a Parigi (*Paris*) nella casa di mia zia.

Traduzione. 8.

1. In the yard. During the rain. I am before the house. Lewis is in the garden. Are you in the yard (courtyard)? Before (the) night. The birds are on the roof. I speak (*io párlo*) of the coat (*Gen.*), — of the flowers, — of my father, — of my mother.

2. The two knives are upon the table. Where are the cats? They are in the kitchen. The three children of my cousin (*m.*) are in (the) town. The roofs are on the houses. The horses are in the water. The penknife of the boy is on the table. Without my father. I am gone (*andáto*) with my sister.

*) Before the names of places used in a general sense, the article is often left out in Italian, as sometimes in English. Ex.: in town, in church, at school etc. *in città, a (in) chiesa, in iscuola* etc.

1) LL. *coquina* for *culina;* OHG. *kuchina;* Grm. Küche; Fr. *cuisine;* Sp. *coccina;* Prov. *cozina.* 2) From Grm. Tasche. 3) From the It. *loggia.* The root is the OHG. *lauba (laubja);* LL. *laubia;* Engl. *lodge;* Fr. *loge;* Port. *loja;* Prov. *lotja.*

Dialogo.

Dove è Luigi?	Egli è in cortile.
Dove è mio figlio?	Egli è in giardino.
Sono dal maestro i fanciulli?	No, essi giuócano (*play*) davanti la casa.
Di che cósa (*what*) parli (*speakest*) tu?	Io parlo del re.
	Io parlo dei cavalli.
Ove sono le finestre?	Sono alla casa — al castello — al palazzo.
È vostra cugina in iscuola?	No, ella è in chiesa.
Chi è andato a chiesa?	Mia sorella è andata*) a chiesa.
Siete voi alla pioggia?	No, noi siamo sotto il tetto.
È tuo padre nel giardino?	No, egli è in cucina.
Sono eglino alla finestra?	Sì, eglino sono alla finestra.
Avevate voi veduto le ánitre (*ducks*) nel cortile?	Noi avevamo veduto le anitre e le oche.
Con chi (*with whom*) siete andati?	Noi siamo andati con nostro padre.

Fifth Lesson.

On the genitive partitive.

In English the word *some* (or *any*) often precedes a substantive when taken in an indefinite sense, no particular kind, measure or quality being meant, as: *some* wine, *some* bread, *any* ink etc.

In Italian this relation is expressed in quite a peculiar way. As in French, it takes the form of the *genitive*,**) which is now considered as a *nominative* or *accusative* case, and with it constitutes a new declension, as will be seen hereafter.

Thus *the* wine, *the* beer, *the* oil means: *il* vino, *la* birra, *l'*olio: but *some* wine, *some* beer, *some* oil means: *del* vino, *della* birra, *dell'* olio.

Note. If such words are understood in quite an *indefinite* and *general sense*, both languages agree, and *no* article pre-

*) In Italian the past participle, joined to the auxiliary verb *éssere*, to be, must always agree with its substantive in *gender* and *number*. Ex.: *Mio fratello è andato (m.); mia sorella è andata (f.); i fratelli sono andati (m. p.); le sorelle sono andate (f. p.).*

**) Of the singular as well as of the plural.

cedes the substantive. Ex.: He sells paper, pencils, and ink, *egli vende carta, tocealapis ed inchiostro.*

The pupil is advised to compare the following examples:

Io vedo ***le*** *ánitre,* I see the ducks.
Io v[illegible]o ***delle*** *anitre,* I see some (a few) ducks.
Io vedo anitre, I see ducks (but no geese).
Egli vende ***del*** *tabacco,* he sells tobacco (and other articles).
Egli vende tabacco, he is a tobacco-merchant.

Note. In *negative* sentences the partitive sense is only expressed by the *omission* of the article. Thus:

We have *no* flowers.
Non abbiamo ***fiori*** (not ***dei*** *f.*).

You have neither money nor friends.
Non avete nè ***danaro*** *nè* ***amici.***

Words.

La farína, the flour, meal.
la carne, the meat.
il férro, the iron.
l'óro, the gold.
l'argénto, the silver.
il danáro,[1]) the money.
lo spírito, the spirit.
il piómbo,[2]) the lead.
il sále, the salt.
la scárpa,[3]) the shoe.
il mercánte, the merchant.
il (lo) zúcchero, the sugar.
il caffè, the coffee.
la prúgna, the plum.
il formággio, the cheese.
l'impiégo,[4]) the office (pl. *—ghi*).
lo straniéro,[5]) the foreigner.
la matita, the red-chalk.
il butírro (búrro), the butter.
l'inchióstro,[6]) the ink.
il ragázzo, the boy.
la ragázza, the girl.
la fíglia, the daughter.
la cálza,[7]) the stocking.
il latte, the milk.

Che, what? *ma,* but; *là,* there; *vi è,* there is; *vi sono,* there are.

S. *Io avrò,*[8]) I shall have. *Avrò io,* shall I have?
tu avrái, thou wilt have. *avrai tu,* shalt thou have?
egli avrà, he will have. *avrà egli,* will he have?

1) Lat. *denarius.* 2) L. *plumbum* (the *o* is closed). 3) From the OHG. *scarf;* Grm. ʃȼharf; Engl. *sharp.* — From the LL. *scarpus,* a kind of shoe. Span. *escarpa* and *escarpin;* Fr. *escarpe* (a term of fortification) and *escarpin* (a dancing-shoe). The original idea denotes something pointed. 4) Lat. *implicare,* in the LL. with the signif. "to employ". Fr. *employer;* Sp. *emplear.* 5) Lat. *extraneus;* Fr. *étrange, étranger;* Sp. *estraño, estranjero;* Prov. *estranh;* Engl. *strange.* 6) Lat. *encaustum* (ἔγκαυστον); Fr. *encre.* 7) Lat. *calceus;* Fr. *chausse;* Sp. *calza;* Prov. *calsa; caussa.* 8) On the formation of the *Future* see the ***Regular verbs,*** Lesson XX.

P. *noi avrémo*, we shal have. *avremo noi*, shall we have?
voi avréte, you will have. *avrete voi*, shall you have?
essi avránno, they will have. *avranno essi*, will they have?

Reading Exercise. 9.

Io avrò del pane e della farina. Avrete voi anche del sale? I re avranno dell' oro e dell' argento.*) Eglino avranno anche del danaro. Tu avrai del formaggio. Luigi avrà della carta e dell' inchiostro. Questo mercante vende carta ed inchiostro. Luigi avrà anche dei libri e delle matite. Avevano elleno dei fiori? Io do a tuo cugino delle pere e delle susine (*prunes*). Nel cortile sono le oche e le anitre. Vi sono oche nel cortile, ma non anitre. Gli stranieri avranno del danaro. Mia cugina ha gatti, ma mia zia avrà uccelli. Nel giardino vi sono alberi, frutta e fiori.

Traduzione. 10.

1. We shall have some butter and (some)**) cheese. You will have milk and eggs. Here is (*ecco*) *the* bread. There is some bread. My father had lead and iron. This child had some flowers. My cousin *(f.)* will have some flour and bread. There are eggs and fruit *(pl.)*. The merchant had sugar and coffee. The queen had gold and silver. I give (to) the boys books, pencils, and pens.

2. They will also have some paper and ink. My uncle sells paper, pencils, pens, and ink. Lewis has horses and dogs. We have seen horses, but no dogs. Thy sister will have shoes and stockings. I give (to) thy brother clothes and flowers. Shall you have (any) friends *(m.)*? They *(f.)* will have friends *(f.)*. At thy uncle's***) there are books and pictures.

Dialogo.

Abbiamo noi della farina? / Abbiamo noi anche del sale? — Noi abbiamo del sale e della farina.
Avete voi del butirro e del pane? — No, Signora (*Madam*), ma noi abbiamo delle frutta.
Che cosa (*what?*)†) avete voi là? — Abbiamo carne e pane.

*) There are a great many examples like this to be found, where the Italians, for the sake of euphony, put a word in the "genitive partitive" which in English requires no article at all. Besides, they never observe the foregoing rules on the genitive partitive so strictly, as the French do.

**) Article always repeated.

***) See the note page 16.

†) *What?* is *che?* or *che cosa?* (which thing?) In conversation the Italians frequently say *cosa?* which, however, is not quite correct.

Ha ella delle matite?	No, ma ella ha delle penne.
Hanno essi delle pere?	No, ma essi hanno delle prugne.
Che cosa hai tu sotto il braccio (*arm*)?	Io ho dei libri e della carta.
Per chi (*whom*) sono questi libri?	Essi sono per mio cugino.
Dove c'è*) dell' oro?	Vi è dell' oro in Rússia.
Ha tua sorella del zucchero?**)	Ella ha dello zucchero e del caffè.
Avrà dei quaderni tuo cugino (*Nom.*)?	Sì, egli avrà dei quaderni, dell' inchiostro e delle penne.
Chi ha formaggio?	Il mercante vende (*sells*) formaggio.
Avete delle frutta in casa? (*at home*).	Sì, Signore (*Sir*), abbiamo delle frutta.
Che cosa c'è da mia zia (*at my aunt's*)?	Vi sono libri e quadri.

Sixth Lesson.

Continuation. Continuazione.

As we hinted in the foregoing lesson, this so-called "genitive partitive" has its own declension, i. e. particular forms for the genitive, dative and accusative case. The *dative* of this declension, however, is very rare. It is formed by putting *a* or *ad* before the partitive articles *del, della, dello, dell'*; pl. *dei, delle, degli,* and *degl'*. Ex.: you always think of***) money, of wine, of books, *voi pensate sempre* ***a (del)*** *danaro,* ***a (del)*** *vino,* ***a (dei)*** *libri.*

The *genitive* case of this declension is of frequent occurrence and very simple. Here the article is entirely omitted, *di* taking its place before the substantive, as:

Nom. *(del) vino,* some wine.	*(della) birra,* some beer.
Gen. *di vino,* of wine.	*di birra,* of beer.

*) *C'è?* instead of *ci (= vi) è?* (in French *y a-t-il*) corresponds to the English: *is there?*

) Before *masc.* nouns beginning with *z* the article *lo* may, be used, as well as *il:* thus ***lo* *zúcchero;* ***lo*** *zio.* The Plur. is only *gli,* e. g. ***gli*** *zii,* the uncles.

***) In Italian "to think" governs the *Dative.*

Such is the case, when the substantive is governed by another word importing *measure, weight, number* or *quantity*, as:

Una bottiglia di vino, a bottle *of* wine.
Un bicchiére d'acqua, a glass *of* water.
Dieci libbre di carne, ten pounds *of* meat.
Una quantità di zucchero, a great deal *of* sugar.

English *compound* substantives are often rendered by this genitive, as:

Il maestro di scuola, the school-master.
Il mercante di vino, the wine-merchant.

In the same way *adjectives* expressing *metals* or other *materials* are rendered by *substantives* with *di*, as:

Un anello d'oro,*) *gold* ring.
Una tavola di legno, a *wooden* table.

This genitive is also governed by some *adverbs* of *quantity* as: *niénte*, nothing; *qualchecósa*, something etc. as:

Niente di buono, nothing good**).
Qualchecosa di grande, something grand.

The nominative and accusative case of this partitive form are always *alike*.

Perspicuous exhibition.

Singular.

N. Ac.	*(del) vino*, some wine.	*(dell') inchiostro*, some ink.
G.	*di vino*, of wine.	*d'inchiostro*, of ink.
D.	*a (del) vino*, (to) on wine.	*a (dell') inchiostro*, (to) on ink.

N. Ac. *(della) carta*, some paper.
G. *di carta*, of paper.
D. *a (della) carta*, (to) on paper.

*) In poetry there are also adjectives like *aúreo*, golden, *marmóreo*, of marble, *argénteo* of silver etc.

**) It must be well understood, that the word governed by these *adverbs* of quantity can be no *substantive*. The pupil would be entirely wrong in saying: *poco* di birra, little beer, *poco* being in such a case considered as an *adjective*. But he may say: *un* poco *di* birra, because here *un poco* is considered as a substantive. The usual manner of rendering such expressions does not differ from the English. They say: little money, *poco danaro;* little beer, *poca birra;* much gold, *molto oro*, many books,

Plural.

N. Ac.	*(aeи) libri*, some books.	*(degli) specchi*, some looking-glasses.
G.	*di libri*, of books.	*di specchi*, of looking-glasses.
D.	*a (dei) libri*, (to) on books.	*a (degli) specchi*, (to) on glasses.

N. Ac. *(delle) scárpe*, some shoes.
G. *di scarpe*, of shoes.
D. *a (delle) scarpe*, (to) on shoes.

Words.

Una bottiglia, [1]) a bottle.
un bicchiére, [2]) a glass.
scátola, [3]) a box.
libbra, [4]) a pound.
un chilogramma, **a kilogram.**
il panno, [5]) the cloth.
la birra, [6]) the beer.
la persóna, the person.
la lettera, the letter.
riccvúto, received, got.
compráto, [7]) bought.
qualchecósa / *niénte* — *di* something / nothing.
un centináio, a hundred-weight.
una quantità, a great deal.
la bocca, [8]) the mouth.
il metro, **the meter.**
il bráccio, the arm.
il litro, **the liter.**
una dozzina, a dozen.
lo stiválc, the boot.
la cálza, the stocking.
il légno, the wood.
il número, the number.
quáttro, four.
cínque, five.
séi, six.
sétte, seven.
ótto, eight.
nóve, nine; *diéci*, ten.
bevuto, drunk.
venduto, sold.
datemi, give me.
che, than, as.
non — niénte, nothing.

Reading Exercise. 11.

Ecco una bottiglia di vino. Noi abbiamo comprato tre chilogrammi di zucchero. Ella ha ricevuto due libbre di caffè. La regina aveva un gran numero di cavalli. Io penso a dell' oro e a dell' argento. Tu pensi sempre a balli ed a concerti. Mio zio avrà una dozzina di calze. Voi avrete un foglio di

---

molti libri etc., where these adverbs of quantity are considered as adjectives. (See Part. II: the *Adjective*.)

1) From the OHG. *butte* = *tub, coop*, the LL. (dimin.) *buticula*, bottle; Fr. *bouteille;* Sp. *botella, botija.* 2) From the Grm. Becher, goblet, cup. 3) From the Grm. Schachtel, box. 4) Lat. *libra.* — 5) Lat. *pannus.* 6) From the MHG. (Middle High German) *bier*, beer, the Fr. *bière.* 7) From the L. *comparare*, to acquire, OFr. *compaver, comprer*, to buy; Sp. *comprar.* 8) From the Lat. *bucca;* Fr. *bouche;* Sp. *boca;* Port. Prov. *boca.*

carta. Eglino non*) avevano niente di buono. Voi avevate cinque buoi, dieci vacche ed un gran numero di porci (*pigs*). Egli ha bevuto troppo (*too much*) vino. Voi avrete un oriuólo[1]) (*watch*) d'oro. Eglino avranno comprato un centinaio di cioccolata (*chocolate*).[2]) Ho ricevuto una lettera e una scatola da mia zia.

Traduzione. 12.

1. I shall have some pens. Thou wilt have a sheet of paper. She will have some pencils. We shall have a glass of wine. My brother will have nothing good. I shall also have a bottle of wine. I had drunk two glasses of water and a bottle of beer. We had received two kilogram of sugar, six kilogram of coffee and ten liter of wine. You will have a great many (of) looking-glasses and (of) boots. I have bought ten oxen and a wooden house.

2. In this box are seven meter of cloth. These persons have sold a dozen (of) boots. We had a silver watch and a gold ring. Shall you have a wooden table or a *stone one***)? *How many (quante, f.)* persons have you seen? We have seen three — six — nine persons. He has received a letter and a great deal of money. We shall have nine meter of cloth. Have you drunk a bottle of wine? We have not drunk a bottle of wine, but a glass of beer. Give me a sheet of paper. My sister has bought two gold rings and three silver spoons (*cucchiái*).[3]) What have you seen?***)

Dialogo.

Che cosa avete bevuto?	Noi abbiamo bevuto un bicchiere d'acqua.
Quanti chilogrammi (chili) di zucchero avete comprati†)?	Noi abbiamo comprato tre chili di zucchero.
Dátemi una dozzina di guanti!	Súbito (*directly*), Signore.
Sapete (*do you know*) qualche-cosa di nuovo (*new*)?	No, non so (*know*) niente di nuovo.

*) *Before* the verb, when *followed* by *niente* or *nulla* (nothing), the negative particle *non* is always required.

**) Expressions like this can by no means be literally translated. The sentence must be rendered thus: *Avete una tavola di legno o di pietra,* have you a table of wood or *of stone?*

***) As *che cosa?* is considered an interrogative *pronoun,* an adjective or participle following cannot agree with *cosa.*

†) The *adjective* or *participle* agrees with its noun in *gender* and *number;* when *following* it, or when used with *essere.*

1) Lat. *horologium.* 2) Most probably from the Mexican *choco,* cacao; and *lattle,* water; Sp. *chocolate;* Fr. *chocolat.* 3) Lat. *cochlearium;* Fr. *cuiller;* Prov. *cuchier;* Sp. *cuchara.*

Quanto (*how much*) danaro hai?	Io ho cinque lire (*franks*).
Avevano eglino ricevuto la scatola di legno?	Non so.
Dove avete veduto il maestro di musica?	Noi abbiamo veduto il maestro nel giardino.
Aveva egli dei fiori?	Sì, aveva fiori e frutta.
Avete voi delle case?	Abbiamo due case.
Pensi (*thinkest*) tu a del vino?	No, io penso a della birra.
Quanti metri volete (*will you*) di questo panno?	Dátemi due metri.
Dove avevano essi bevuto del vino?	Dal mercante.
Avete voi un paio (*pair*) di stivali?	Ho un paio di stivali e due paia*) di scarpe.

Seventh Lesson.

On terminations modifying the meaning of substantives. De' nomi alterati.

The Italian language abounds in *terminations* that serve to augment or diminish the original idea of a word. By the addition of these syllables the same word undergoes so many modifications, that sometimes two and more adjectives are not able to render the meaning expressed by those terminations.

Thus, for instance, *avaro* means: a miser; ***avarone*** a covetous, scraping fellow, and ***avaraccio*** an old, clutching sinner. *Un gióvane* means a youth; ***un giovanotto,*** a smart young man.

The diminutive terminations afford a still greater variety of modifications. A word already diminished may, by the addition of other diminutive syllables, express the most singular gradations of the original signification.

Thus *libro* means book, ***libretto*** a little book, also the text or words of an opera: ***librettino,*** a nice little book; ***libriccino,*** a dear little book; ***libruccio,*** a nasty little book. *Librettuccio, libricciuolo, libretticciuolo* cannot be rendered exactly in English.

Of these terminations the following are most in use:**)

*) See Lesson II. on the irregular plural.

**) Yet these syllables cannot be used indifferently. There are, e. g., substantives which are never found with *ella* or *ello* etc., whereas they admit *etta* or *etto* and *vice versa* etc.; and be-

1) *one* (by which every word becomes masculine) indicates *augmentation* in general, as: *libro*, — *libróne* (large b.); *porta*, door, *portóne* (large gate); *sala* (saloon), *salóne* (large saloon).

2) *otto (m.), otta (f.).* These terminations express *strength, bigness,* and *greatness.* For example: *contadína,* (countrywoman), *contadinótta* (a strong c.).

3) *accio (m.), accia (f.); astro (m.), astra (f.); azzo (m.), azza (f.)* suggests an idea of something *bad, despicable* etc., as: *dottore* (doctor), *dottoráccio* (a bad, ignorant d.); *médico* (physician), *medicástro* (a quack).

4) *ino (m.), ina (f.); etto (m.), etta (f.); ello (m.), ella (f.),* indicate diminution with the accessory idea of *fondness, loveliness, compassion,* and *tenderness,* as: *póvero* (poor), *poverino* (my poor boy);*) *mano* (hand), *manina* (charming little hand); *vecchio* (old man), *vecchietto* (poor old man).

The syllable *—ino* frequently serves to denote a *younger* member of a noble family. Thus *conte* means *count,* and *contessa* countess, whereas *contino* and *contessina* mean the *young* count and the *young* countess (viz. the *daughter* or the *daughter-in-law*). It is understood that in this case the *conte* (father) and the *contessa* (mother) must still be living.

5) *úolo, úccio, úzzo, fem. uola, uccia, uzza* express *diminution* and at the same time *baseness* and *disdain,* as: *frate* (monk, friar), *fratúzzo* (a contemptible priest); *casa* (house), *casúccia* (a miserable house).

For the sake of euphony a letter or a syllable is often *inserted* before these terminations, as: *rete,* net, *reticella,* little net; *ésta,* head, *testolina,* little head; *pazzo,* fool, *pazzerello,* little fool.

NB. It must be well understood that the use of these syllables is not obligatory in Italian. On the contrary, they are rather seldom used, provided the speaker does not intend to express a certain modification of the original idea. Besides

---

sides, the same syllable has sometimes very different significations. Thus *casella* (from *casa,* house) will hardly ever be met with; the usual form being *casetta. Casino* signifies a cottage; *casaccia* with *fare* = *far casaccia* means "to marry beneath one's self." *Giovinotto* means a smart young man, whereas *aquilotto* does not mean a strong eagle, but a young eagle still unfledged. — The pupil can only become familiar with these syllables by frequent reading.

*) Adjectives also may be used with these syllables.

not every word that appears with one of these syllables is really modified by them. In some words, e. g. *canzone*, song, the original signification of the termination has been lost in the course of time; in others, as in *scodella*, dish, the termination is merely accidental; and in *figliastro*, step-son, the syllable *astro* denotes, of course, nothing contemptible.

6) Other terminations of this kind are:

a) *áglia* (for substantives), as: *plebáglia*, populace.

b) *iccióla, iccióla* (for substantives) as: *terriccióla*, little village; *resticciólo*, a little remainder.

c) *iccio, igno, ógnolo* (for adjectives), as: *giallógnolo*, yellowish, fallow; *verdiccio*, greenish; *asprigno*, somewhat harsh.

d) *uto* (augmentative, for adjectives), as: *nasuto*, long-nosed, *corpacciuto*, stout.

Words.

il gigante, the giant.	*la bárca*, the boat.
il tétto, the roof.	*il pescatore*, the fisherman.
la chiáve, the key.	*la finéstra*, the window.
la céra, the wax.	*l'odóre*, the smell.
il díto, the finger (*pl. le dita*)	*il náso*, the nose.
la spálla,[1]) the shoulder.	*la guancia*, the cheek.
il tuóno, the thunder.	*il cóllo*, the neck.
la bárba, the beard.	*vezzoso*, nice.
gli occhiali, the spectacles.	*ignorante*, ignorant.
il principe, the prince.	*ridicolo*, ridiculous.
la néve, the snow.	*molto*, much, very.

Io éra, I was	*Era*, was I?
tu éri, thou wast	*eri*, wast thou?
egli éra, he was	*era*, was he?
noi eravámo, we were	*eravamo*, were we?
voi eraváte, you were	*eravate*, were you?
eglino érano, they were	*érano*, were they?

Reading Exercise. 13.

Io aveva un salone con due finestroni. Egli è un medicastro. Dove sono i libri di questo poetastro? Dove alloggia questo poverino? Egli sta in questa casuccia. Questa Signorina ha una bellissima manina. Che cosa vuóle (*wants*) questo vecchietto? Il gigánte aveva una barbetta ridicola. Egli è un povero fratuzzo. Le signorine (*young ladies*) erano nella barchetta del pescatorello. Questo giovinotto è vostro

1) Lat. *spatula*. Dimin. of *spatha* (See p. 14), something flat. Fr. *épaule;* OFr. *espalde;* Sp. *espalda;* Prov. *espatla.*

cugino? Sì, signore, è mio cugino. Questo pedante *col**) suo cappellaccio sulla testa, col suo librone sotto il braccio e coi suoi occhialoni sul nasuccio è molto ridícolo.

Traduzione. 14.

1. Have you seen the little child of the foreigner? He was a vigorous young man of much spirit. This hardy country-woman has two nice little children. The young lady had a fine little hand. You will have three thick books. This quack was very ignorant. Give the (*dat.*) little boy these little books. Thou wast very unhappy, my poor boy.

2. Give the (*dat.*) poor old man a little bit (*pezzo* = a piece, bit) of bread! Who is this tall young man? There are many (*molti*) bad physicians and bad poets in this country. This little dog (*cagnolino*) belongs to (*è del*) my little brother and (to my little) sister. Have you seen the large palace of the young prince? Who is that young lady (*signora*, lady)? She is the sister of our young count.

Dialogo.

Di chi è questo libretto?	Della (*See the Poss. Pron.*) mia sorellina.
Da chi avete comprato questo libraccio?	Dal libráio (*bookseller*) dietro la chiesetta.
Volete entrare (*enter*) nella mia barchetta?	No, grazie (*thank you*), Signorino!
Che cosa volete fare (*do*) con questo cappellone?	Lo darò (*I shall give it*) a questo povero vecchierello.
Avete dato (*given*) un poco di latte al nostro cagnolino?	No, non ancora (*not yet*).
Che cosa hai perduto (*lost*), poverina (*my poor girl*)?	Ho perduto il danaro del mio fratellino.
Non è egli un bellissimo (*very fine*) ragazzino?	Hai ragione**) (*you are right*); egli è bellissimo.
Apri (*open*) la tua manina!	No, non vóglio (*I will not*)!
Che cosa pensi (*dost thou think*) tu del tuo fratellino?	Egli è un pazzeréllo (pazzo, *fool*).

Eighth Lesson.

On proper names.

There are in Italian:

1) Proper names of *persons* and *towns*, as: *Luígi*, Lewis; *Cárlo*, Charles; *Emília*, Emily; *Metastásio*; *Lóndra*, London; *Róma*, Rome.

---

*) In Italian *possessive* adjectives are frequently preceded by the definite article. See Lesson 14.

**) Literally: Thou hast reason *(Tu as raison)*.

2) Names of *countries, provinces, mountains, rivers, lakes,* as: *l'Európa,* Europe; *l'Austria,* Austria; *l'Itália,* Italy; *il Réno,* the Rhine.

As a rule, the *former* have no article, whèreas the latter usually take the *definite* article; being, of course, declined like all other substantives, as: *la* Fráncia, France, *della* Fráncia, of France; *alla* Francia, to France; *dalla* Francia, from France.

The declension of proper names of *towns* or *persons* is very simple; they merely take *di, a,* and *da* in order to form their respective cases. Ex.:

Nom. } *Enríco,* Henry.
Acc. }
Gen. *di Enríco,* of Henry or Henry's.
Dat. *ad Enríco,* to Henry.
Abl. *da Enríco,* from, by Henry.

Nom. } *Giúlia,* Julia.
Acc. }
Gen. *di Giúlia,* of Julia or Julia's.
Dat. *a Giúlia,* to Julia.
Abl. *da Giúlia,* from, by Julia.

Nom. } *Firénze,* Florence.
Acc. }
Gen. *di Firénze,* of Florence.
Dat. *a Firénze,* at, to Florence.
Abl. *da Firénze,* from Florence.

Note. 1) In Italian we may not say, as we do in English: *William's* hat, *Henry's* book, *Julia's* mother. Expressions like these must be rendered thus: *Il cappello di Gugliélmo* (the hat of William); *il libro di Enríco* (the book of Henry); *la madre di Giúlia* (the mother of Julia); the nominative or accusative always *preceding* the genitive case.

2) *To* and *in* before Proper names of *countries* are rendered by *in,* as: *In Italia, to* Italy, *in* Italy. *Vado in Germánia,* I go *to* Germany; *Sono in Inghilterra,* I am *in* England.

3) *To* and *at* before names of *towns* must be translated with *a* or *ad* (before vowels), as:

He goes *to* Paris, *egli va a Parigi.*
He lives *at* Aix-la-chapelle, *egli dimóra ad Aquisgrána.*
(Further explanations will be given in the 2nd Part.)

Words.

Il guánto,[1]) the glove.
la fávola, the fable.
il tabárro,[2]) the cloak.
il córso, the course (also the principal street of a town).
il signóre, Mr., Sir.
la signóra, Mrs., Madam.
la signorina, Miss.
Viénna, Vienna.
Nápoli, Naples.
la cápitale, the capital.
l'Inghiltérra, England.
la Germánia, Germany.
Miláno, Milan.
Roma, Rome.
la Sassonia, Saxony.
la Spagna, Spain.

Carlo, Charles.
Guglielmo, William.
Federigo, Frederick.
Emília, Emily.
María, Mary.
Giórgio, George.
Giúlio, Julius.
Sofía, Sophia.
Enrico, Henry.
la Svizzera, Switzerland.
la Lombardía, Lombardy.
dáte, give (2. pl.).
létto, read (past part.).
lungo, long.
arrivato, arrived.
partito, set out.
morto, dead.

Reading Exercise. 15.

Ecco le favole di Esopo. Ho veduto il castello del re di Sassónia. Date la scátola a Sofia. Date la penna ad Enrico. Dove è il*) signor Ambrosi? Dove sono i figli della signora Brown? Ecco la casa della signora Camozzi. Siamo a Firenze. Eravate voi a Vienna? Mio cugino è in America. Il corso del Reno è lungo. Ecco una carta (*map*) della Germania. Io fui (*was*) ieri da Giácomo e da Pietro (*at P.'s*). Tuo fratello è arrivato da Venezia. Luigi Filippo, re di Francia, è morto in Inghilterra. Ecco i cavalli di Carlo. Dove erano gli specchi di Luigia? Avete letto le ópere (*works*) di Gœthe?

Traduzione. 16.

1. My father is at Paris. My uncle is at Vienna. Paris is the capital of (*della*) France, and Vienna is the capital of Austria. Thy mother is in America. Where was my sister Emily? Where are Sophia's gloves? Where are Frederick's books? France was always the friend (*f.*) of Switzerland. I have seen the Alps of Switzerland and the Pyrenean Mountains (*i Pirenéi*) between France and Spain.

*) The titles *signore*, *signora* and *signorina* are preceded by the *definite article* (except when used to address a person); Thus: *il signor Tardini*, Mr. Tardini; *la signora Uberti*, Mrs. Uberti.

1) From LL. *wantus* (probably of German origin: Ge-wand); Sp. and Port. *guante;* Fr. *gant;* OFr. *wanz;* Prov. *guan.* 2) Unknown origin. *Tabard (tabar)* is in OFr. a little cloak, thence *tabarin*, a clown dressed in such a cloak. The Sp. and Port. has *tabardo*, a large coat. In English we have *tabard*, coat of arms.

2. I come (*véngo*) from Florence. Yesterday (*iéri*) I was at William's and (at) Sophia's. I have got this book from Lewis. The king of Spain and the queen of England are at Paris. The course of the Po is long. I know (*conósco*) (the) Lombardy, France and Germany; I also know Milan, Paris, and London.

Dialogo.

Dove eri tu?	Io era a Parigi.
Donde vieni tu? *(Where dost thou come from?)*	Io vengo *(I come)* da Nápoli.
Dove sono i guanti di Teresa?	Sono sulla tavola.
Che (*which*) paese è questo?	La Germania.
Che città è questa?	La città di Londra.
Quale è la capitale della Sassónia?	Dresda.
Quale è la capitale dell' Austria?	Vienna.
Chi è qui (*who is there*)?	I figli del Signor Camozzi.
A chi date voi questi libri?	Li (*them*) diámo (*we give*) al Signor Giorgio.
Dove ci è molto oro?	In California.
Avete letto le poesie (*poems*) di Leopardi?	No, Signore, ma abbiamo *(we have)* letto le tragédie di Niccolini.
Dove foste *(were you)* ieri?	Fummo *(we were)* dalla Signora Sciavossi e da Teresa.

Ninth Lesson.

The auxiliary verb (verbo ausiliáre)

avére, to have.

Indicativo (Indicative Mood).

Présente (Present).

Io ho, I have	*noi abbiámo*, we have
tu hái, thou hast	*voi avéte*, you have
egli ha, he has	*eglino hanno* } they have.
ella ha, she has	*elleno hanno* }

Imperfétto (1st Imperfect).

Io avéva, I had	*noi avevámo*, we had
tu avévi, thou hadst	*voi aveváte*, you had
esso avéva, he had	*essi avévano*, they had.

Definito (2nd Imperfect).

Io ébbi, I had	*noi avémmo*, we had
tu avésti, thou hadst	*voi avéste*, you had
egli ébbe, he had	*eglino ébbero*, they had.

Futuro (1st Future).[1])

Io avró, I shall have	*noi avrémo*, we shall have
tu avrái, thou wilt have	*voi avréte*, you will have
egli avrà, he will have	*eglino avránno*, they will have.

Condizionale (Conditional Mood).[1])

Presente.

Io avréi, I should have	*noi avrémmo*, we should have
tu avrésti, thou wouldst have	*voi avréste*, you would have
egli avrébbe, he would have	*eglino avrébbero*, they would have.

Compound Tenses.

Avuto, had.

Passato Indefinito (Perfect).

Io ho avuto, I have had	*noi abbiamo avuto*, we have had
tu hai avuto, thou hast had	*voi avete avuto*, you have had
egli ha avuto, he has had	*eglino hanno avuto*, they have had.

Primo Anteriore (First Pluperfect).

Io aveva avuto, I had	had	*noi avevamo avuto*, we had	had.
tu avevi avuto, thou hadst		*voi avevate avuto*, you had	
egli aveva avuto, he had		*eglino avevano avuto*, they had	

Secondo Anteriore (2nd Pluperfect).

Io ebbi avuto, I had	had	*noi avemmo avuto*, we had	had.
tu avesti avuto, thou hadst		*voi aveste avuto*, you had	
egli ebbe avuto, he had		*eglino ebbero avuto*, they had	

Futuro Passato (2nd Future).

Io avrò avuto, I shall have had
tu avrai avuto, thou wilt have had
egli avrà avuto, he will have had
noi avremo avuto, we shall have had
voi avrete avuto, you will have had
eglino avranno avuto, they will have had.

Condizionale.

Passato.

Io avrei avuto, I should have had
tu avresti avuto, thou wouldst have had
egli avrebbe avuto, he would have had
noi avremmo avuto, we should have had
voi avreste avuto, you would have had
eglino avrebbero avuto, they would have had.

1) On the etymological formation of these tenses See the regul. verb Less. 20.

Imperativo (Imperative Mood).

Abbi, have (thou). *abbiamo*, let us have
non avére, have not (thou). *abbiate*, have (you).

Soggiuntivo (Subjunctive Mood).

Presente.

Che io (ch'io) } *abbia* that I (may) } have *che noi abbiámo*, that we } have.
che tu (abbi) } that thou } *che voi abbiáte*, that you }
che egli (ch'egli) } that he } *ch'eglino ábbiano*, that they }

Imperfetto.

Ch'io avéssi, that I had *che noi avéssimo*, that we had
che tu avessi, that thou hadst *che voi avéste*, that you had
ch'egli avesse, that he had *ch'eglino avéssero*, that they had.

Compound Tenses.

Passato indefinito.

Ch'io abbia avuto, that I (may) have had
che tu abbi avuto, that thou have had
ch'egli abbia avuto, that he have had
che noi abbiamo avuto, that we have had
che voi abbiate avuto, that you have had
ch'essi ábbiano avuto, that they have had.

Anteriore.

Ch'io avessi avuto, that I had had
che tu avessi avuto, that thou hadst had
ch'egli avesse avuto, that he had had
che noi avessimo avuto, that we had had
che voi aveste avuto, that you had had
ch'essi avessero avuto, that they had had.

Infinito (Infinitive Mood).

Presente. *Passato.*

Avére, to have. *avere avuto*, to have had.

Gerundio.

Presente. *Passato.*

Avéndo, having. *avendo avuto*, having had.

Participi (Participles).

Presente. *Passato.*

(avente) having. S. *avuto* (m.) *avuta* (f.) } had.
P. *avuti* (m.) *avute* (f.) }

Remarks.

1) As we hinted in one of the former lessons, the Italian verb does not always require the personal pronouns *io, tu, egli* etc., the persons being sufficiently marked by the *terminations* of the verb. For example: *Avete*, have you? *Avrete*, will you have? *Aveste*, had you? etc.

2) *Avere* also means *to receive, to get*, as: *Avrò del danaro*, I shall get some money.

3) The negative, interrogative and negative-interrogative forms differ but slightly from the English, in so far as *the negative particle non is always placed immediately before the verb.* The learner may compare:

a) With the pronoun.	*b*) Without the pronoun.
Io aveva, I had.	*Aveva*, I had.
Aveva io? had I?	*Aveva?* had I?
Io non aveva, I had not.	*Non aveva*, I had not.
Non aveva io? had I not?	*Non aveva?* had I not?

4) The *polite form of addressing* a person in Italian is *Ella**) (she). This mode of address is quite peculiar to the Italian language. Formerly the term *Vossignoría* was used (not unlike the English *"your Lordship"* or the Spanish »*Vuestra merced* = *Usted*«), which being *feminine* requires *the third person sing. femin.*, as: *Vossignoria ha*, your Lordship *has*. At present this word »Vossignoria« is obsolete; the construction, however, remains, and is always employed when a person is politely spoken to, as: Have you? *ha Ella?* (has *she* i. e. Vossignoria); will you have? *avrà Ella?* (will *she* have); are you? *è Ella?* (is she); *Comanda?* (*Ella* left out) What do you want? (literally: *does she command?*)

In mercantile style and in familiar conversation *the second person plural* is used, as in English and French, as: *Avete voi?* have you (avez-vous)? *Volete?* will you (voulez-vous)?

The *second person singular* (thou) is more frequently employed than in English. It is used by relations and intimate friends, and whenever employed, marks, a high degree of intimacy. For ex.: *Hai?* (hast thou) have you? *Vuoi?* will you? *Avevi tu?* had you?

---

*) Commonly written with a capital letter. Instead of *Ella* the Accus. *Lei* may be used as *Nom.*, if a stress is laid on the pronoun. This form is very frequently met with in Tuscany and at Rome, whilst at Naples *Voi* is preferred, and in the North of Italy *Ella*. For the *Imperative* of the polite form, see Less. 20: the Note ** on the *Pres. Subj.*

Tenth Lesson.

Words.

La bórsa,[1]) the purse (also exchange).
la carrózza,[2]) the carriage.
il calamáio,[3]) the inkstand.
il régolo, the ruler.
il libro da scrivere \ the copy-
il quaderno / book.
l'affáre \ the business.
la faccénda /
la visita, the visit.
la paúra,[4]) the fear.
la versióne, the translation.
diligénte, diligent.
lodévole, praiseworthy.
utile, useful.
óggi, to-day.
dománi,[5]) to-morrow.
la nuóva, the news.
nuovo, new.
buono, good.
la fortúna, (the) fortune, happiness.
l'affánno, (the) sorrow.
i genitóri, the parents.
il sarto, the tailor.
la lámpada,[6]) the lamp.
il cortigiano, the courtier.
felice, happy.
infelice, unhappy.
gentile, gentle.
ábile, clever.
amábile, amiable.
gióvine young.
mangiáto,[7]) eaten, *scritto,* written, *trovato,* found, *perduto,* lost — past part.

Reading Exercise. 17.

Io ho un amico. Tu avevi una casa. Ebbe due lire. Avrà Ella domani un nuóvo libro? Un abile maestro avrà molti scolari. Gli scolari avranno buoni maestri. Ha Ella veduto quell' (*that*) amabile fanciullo? Gli*) amabili ragazzini avevano tre sorelline gentili. Questo infelice aveva perduto molto danaro. Chi è il padre del ragazzo? Il signore che (*whom*) Ella ha veduto ieri da mio cugino. Ha un libro vostra madre? Non ha libri, ma ne (*some*) avrà. Non aveva io dell' inchiostro nel mio calamaio? No, Signore, ma (Ella) aveva molte penne. Che cosa hai dato al sarto? Del danaro per gli abiti di mio fratello. Avete veduto gli scrigni della regina? Abbiamo veduto i begli (*beautiful*) scrigni della regina. Egli aveva avuto piacere. La ragazza ebbe una maestra abile e gentile. Se (*if*) io avessi del danaro, avrei anche dei libri e delle matite. Abbia pazienza! Non aver**) paura!

*) Before *masculine* adjectives beginning with *vowels* the article is *lo* instead of *il*, as: *L'amabile ragazzo,* pl. *gli amabili ragazzi.*

**) The final *—e,* of the *Infinitive* is very often dropped before words beginning with a consonant, except *s impura.*

1) LL. *byrsa, bursa* (Gr. βύρσα, skin, leather); Fr. *bourse;* Prov. *borsa;* Sp. Port. *bolsa.* 2) From *carro,* cart; Lat. *carrus;* Sp. *carruaje;* Fr. *char* (the Fr. *carrosse* is derived from the It. *carrozza*). 3) LL. *calamarius,* the case which held the *calamus.* 4) Lat. *pavor.* 5) From the Lat. *de* and *mane* (morrow); Prov. *deman;* Fr. *demain;* Sp. *mañana.* 6) Lat. *lampas, —adis.* 7) *Mangiare,*

Traduzione. 18.

1. Had you (any) friends? Yes, we had many (*mólti*) friends. Shall you (*Ella*) have some money? They would have horses and carriages. Have you (*Ella*) had much pleasure? You have good parents. These children will have ink and pens. He would have an inkstand. They would have some paper, pencils, and pens. What have you had? Had you (*Ella*) (any) enemies? Our parents had much pleasure. The king and (the) queen had castles and palaces, soldiers (*soldáto*) and courtiers. You would have had useful books. Yesterday we have eaten bread and fruit.

2. This diligent pupil had written many translations. Thou wilt have thy money to-morrow. He had had unfortunate friends. The pupil's writing-book had ten sheets. The tailor has brought the clothes for Charles and William. You had the visit of the count yesterday. We shall have seen the garden of the prince. This praiseworthy pupil has had a great fortune. He says (*dice*) that you have lost the spectacles. We have had a translation. You had (*def.*) amiable sisters. Let us have patience! The brothers would have news (*pl.*) of the parents. Have (thou) not [= no] fear!

Dialogo.

Chi ha avuto danaro?	Il ricco mercante ha avuto molto danaro.
Ebbe lo scolare diligente una ricompensa (*reward*)?	Sì, ebbe una ricompensa da suo padre.
Quale (*which*) fu (*was*) la sua ricompensa?	Ha ricevuto un bellissimo (*very fine*) libro e cinque scellini (*shillings*).
Che cosa avrà la Signora Matilde?	Avrà un bell' orologio.
Ha Ella mangiato le frutta del giardiniere (*gardener*)?	No, *non* ho mangiato *niente*.*)
Quante**) (*how many*) ore (*hours*) ha il giorno?	Il giorno ha venti quattro (24) ore.
Avete molti affari (*much business, much to do*)?	I mercanti hanno molti affari.

*) The negat. particles *niente* and *nulla* (nothing) must always be accompanied by *non*, which, as we said Note 3, immediately *precedes* the verb.

**) *Molto* (much), *poco* (little), *tanto* (so much, so many), *quanto* (how much, how many) are, as we hinted on p. 28, adjectives, and therefore agree with their nouns. *Più* (more), *meno* (less), *abbastanza* (enough), *assai*, and *molto* (very), being adverbs, are *invariable*.

to eat, from the Lat. *manducare*, used instead of *comedere*; Fr. *manger*; Prov. *manjar*.

Dátemi (*give me*) il mio danaro!	Abbia pazienza! (Ella) avrà *fra poco (soon)* il Suo*) (*your*) danaro.
Che cosa avete mangiato ieri dal mercante?	Abbiamo mangiato della minéstra (*soup*), del manzo (*beef*) e diversi legúmi (*vegetables*).
Avresti amici, se avessi danaro.	Io non amo (*like*) tali (*such*) amici.
Non aver paura!	No, Signore, non ho paura.

Eleventh Lesson.

The auxiliary verb

Essere, to be.

Indicativo.

Presente.

Io sóno, I am	*noi siámo*, we are
tu séi, thou art	*voi siéte*, you are
egli è, he is	*eglino sóno*, they are
ella è, she is	*elleno sono*, they are.
(*Ella è*, you are)	

Imperfetto.

Io éra, I was	*noi cravámo*, we were
tu éri, thou wast	*voi craváte*, you were
egli éra, he was	*eglino érano*, they were
ella éra, she was	*elleno érano*, they were.
(*Ella éra*, you were)	

Definito.

Io fúi, I was	*noi fúmmo*, we were
tu fósti, thou wast	*voi fóste*, you were
egli fu, he was	*eglino fúrono*, they were
(*Ella fu*, you were)	

Futuro.

Io sarò, I shall be	*noi sarémo*, we shall be
tu sarái, thou wilt be	*voi saréte*, you will be
egli sarà, he will be	*eglino saránno*, they will be.
(*Ella sarà*, you will be)	

*) Literally: *She* will soon have *her* money. The possessive adjective *Suo*, *Sua*, answering to the polite mode *Ella*, is here written with a capital letter. This practice, however, is not universal in Italian.

Condizionale.

Presente.

Io saréi, I should be
tu sarésti, thou wouldst be
egli sarébbe, he would be
(*Ella sarébbe,* you would be)
noi sarémmo, we should be
voi saréste, you would be
eglino sarébbero, they would be.

Compound Tenses.

Stato, a, been.

Passato Indefinito.

Io sono stato, a, I have been
tu sei stato, a, thou hast been
egli è stato, he has been
ella è stata, she has been
noi siamo stati, e, we have been
voi siete stati, e, you have been
eglino sono stati, they have been
elleno sono state, they have been.

Primo Anteriore.

Io era stato, a, I had been
tu eri stato, a, thou hadst been
egli era stato, he had been
noi eravamo stati, e, we had been
voi eravate stati, e, you had been
eglino erano stati, they had been.

Secondo Anteriore.

Io fui stato, a, I had been
tu fosti stato, a, thou hadst been
egli fu stato, he had been
noi fummo stati, e, we had been
voi foste stati, e, you had been
eglino furono stati, they had been.

Futuro Passato.

Io sarò stato, a, I shall have been
tu sarai stato, a, thou wilt have been
egli sarà stato, he will have been
noi saremo stati, e, we shall have been
voi sarete stati, e, you will have been
eglino saranno stati, they will have been.

Condizionale.

Passato.

Io sarei stato, a, I should have been
tu saresti stato, a, thou wouldst have been
egli sarebbe stato, he would have been
noi saremmo stati, e, we should have been
voi sareste stati, e, you would have been
eglino sarebbero stati, they would have been.

Imperativo.

Sii (sia), be (thou)
non essere, be not (thou).
Siamo, let us be
siate, be (you).

Soggiuntivo.

Presente.

Ch'io sia, that I be
che tu sia (sii), that thou be
ch'egli sia, that he be
che noi siámo, that we be
che voi siáte, that you be
ch'eglino siano (sieno), that they be.

Imperfetto.

Ch'io fóssi that I were
che tu fóssi, that thou were
ch'egli fosse, that he were
che noi fóssimo, that we were
che voi fóste, that you were
ch'eglino fóssero, that they were.

Compound Tenses.

Passato Infinitivo.

Ch'io sia stato, a, that I have been
che tu sia stato, a, that thou have been
ch'egli sia stato, that he have been
che noi siamo stati, e, that we have been
che voi siate stati, e, that you have been
ch'eglino siano stati, that they have been.

Anteriore.

Ch'io fossi stato, a, that I had been
che tu fossi stato, a, that thou hadst been
ch'egli fosse stato, that he had been
che noi fossimo stati, e, that we had been
che voi foste stati, e, that you had been
ch'eglino fossero stati, that they had been.

Infinito.

Presente. — *Essere*, to be.

Passato. — *Essere stato*, to have been.

Participi.

Gerundio. — *Essendo*, being.

Passato. — *Stato, a / stati, e* } been.

Notes.

The *compound* tenses of this verb are formed with the auxiliary verb ***essere,*** as: *Io sono stato,* I have been (liter. I *am* been); *Io sarò stato,* I shall have been (I shall *be* been).

After *se* (if) the *Imperfetto del Soggiuntivo* or the *Anteriore del Soggiuntivo* must always be employed. It would be quite wrong to say: *Se io avrei* (If I had), instead of *se io avessi; se io sarei stato* (if I had been), inst. of *se io fossi stato etc.*

NB. It is a peculiarity of the Italian language, that the *condition* as well as the *consequence* may also be expressed

by the *Imperfetto dell' Indicativo;* but in this case the *simple* tenses are used in lieu of the *compound ones.* Thus: *Se io aveva amici, io era contento,* does not mean: If I had friends, I should be satisfied, but: *If I had had* friends, *I should have been satisfied.*

Io order to become familiar with these verbs, the learner is requested to conjugate them in the interrogative *(ho io? sono io?),* negative *(io non ho; io non sono),* and the interrogative-negative form *(non ho io? non sono io?),* the former *(avere)* with a substantive, the latter *(essere)* with an adjective.

Twelfth Lesson.

Words.

Il generále, the general.
il luogotenénte / *il tenénte* } the lieutenant.
la fórma, the form.
il péro, the pear-tree.
il zolfanéllo,[1]) the match.
lo strépito, the noise.
il duómo, the dome (cathedral church).
la cúpola, the cupola.
la scála,[2]) the stairs.
il soldáto,[3]) the soldier.
la colónna, the column.
la battáglia,[4]) the battle.
il lúpo, the wolf.
il leóne, the lion.
la chicchera,[5]) the cup.
la (l') iéna, the hyena.
l'osteria, the tavern.
il tempo, the time.
la caccia, the chose.
il tiranno, the tyrant.
l'armata, the army.
la primavera, the spring.
il campanile, the steeple.
stimato, esteemed.
ammalato, sick.
tranquillo, quiet.
largo, broad.
sempre, always.
corto, short.
alto, high.
valoroso / *coraggioso* } courageous.
crudéle, cruel.
la scélta,[6]) the choice.
magnánimo, magnanimous.
pauróso, afraid.
caúto, cautious.
quanto tempo, how long.
molto tempo, a long time.
ma, but. *sólo,* alone.
o (before vowels *od*), or.

Reading Exercise. 19.

Il generale era magnanimo. Il luogotenente fu coraggioso. Non sarà bella la cupola di questa chiesa? Le colonne

1) From the It. *zolfo,* sulphur. 2) Lat. *scala* from *scandere.* 3) From the verb *soldare,* to pay. The verbal subst. are: It. *soldo;* Sp. *sueldo;* Prov. *sout;* the Partic. used as subst. are: It. *soldato;* Sp. *soldado;* Fr. *soldat;* Engl. *soldier.* 4) From the LL. *batualia* fr. *batuere,* a corruption of *battere;* Fr. *bataille;* Sp. *battala;* Engl. *battle.* 5) Probably from the Lat. *ciccum,* a trifle. 6) From the It. verb *scegliere (scerre),* to choose. This verb is derived from L. *cligere,* whilst the Fr. *choisir* is derived from the Goth. *kiusan,* to choose or *kausjan,* to examine.

saranno anche belle. Sono io stato pauroso? No, non sei stato pauroso, ma cauto. Era la scelta buona? Il luogotenente ed i soldati sono stati valorosi nella battaglia. Se io avessi questa chicchera, la (*it, acc.*) darei *(should give)* a mia madre. S'egli fosse ricco, egli avrebbe molti amici. Il lupo, la iena ed il leone sono animali crudeli. La forma della cupola del duomo sarà bella (beautiful). Il generale non sarebbe morto *(dead)*. Siete stati nella battaglia? Siete state nel duomo di Milano, Signorine? Noi no, ma nostra madre vi *(there)* è stata. Chi non è stato alla cáccia? Saranno alla caccia i cacciatori *(huntsman, game-keeper)* del conte? No, saranno all' osteria. Il tempo è troppo corto. Quanto tempo fu il principe a Parigi? Egli non è stato molto tempo a Parigi. Non furono i fanciulli ad Aquisgrana? Neróne *(Nero)* era un imperatore crudele. Napoleone era il più grande *(the greatest)* generale dei tempi moderni.

Traduzione. 20.

1. We were all three *(tutti e tre)* at Rome, Milan, Venice and Ravenna. Shall you have been cautious? The emperors of Rome were cruel tyrants. Will this cruel tyrant be quiet? The armies of France and England have been in (the) Crimea. The soldiers of the army have been brave. Were *(def.)* you not at Constantinople *(Costantinópoli)*? Would you *(Ella)* not have money? Should we not be rich? If I were (a) prince! Where have you *(Ella)* been? Have you *(Ella)* not been in the emperor's garden? Why *(perchè)* are you alone? The staircase was high and broad. The stairs were not so *(così)* high. How long have they *(m.)* been in England? Who is this gentleman? Who are these gentlemen? These gentlemen are the cousins of these young ladies.

2. The dome at *(di)* Milan is not so *(così)* high as *(come)* the steeple of St. *(Sánto)* Stephen *(Stéfano)* at Vienna. Shouldst thou have been satisfied? Would the children be cautious? If he were honest, he would be esteemed. (The) honest men are always esteemed. Where are you *(Ella)*? Where were you *(Ella)*? Have you not been (a) soldier? He has been (a) lieutenant. If you *(Ella)* had friends, you would be satisfied. My brother says *(dice)*, that you *(Ella)* have been sick. Were you this spring in Italy or in France? The general has been long in Spain *(Ispágna)*. Have you *(Ella)* been at the general's?

Dialogo.

Dov' è stato suo (*your*) padre? È stato due mesi (*months*) a Parigi.

Dove fu la madre di questo ragazzo? Fu a Firenze.

Erano a casa (*at home*) le sorelle di vostra cugina?	No, erano in chiesa.
Chi fu il primo re dei Romani?	Romolo.
E l'último (*last*) imperatore?	Romolo Augustolo.
Quanto tempo eravate a Venezia?	Due mesi e quíndici (15) giorni (= *a fortnight*).
Non sono stati i Signori Brown a Trieste?	Vi sono stati ed anche a Verona.
Sarete domani (*to-morrow*) a Francoforte?	No, saremo a Magónza (*Mayence*).
E dove sarete posdománi (*the day after to-morrow*)?	Saremo a Cologna o ad Aquisgrana.
Come (*how*) sono i contórni (*outskirts*) di Vienna?	I contorni di Vienna sono bellíssimi.
Quale è il migliore albergo (*inn*) di Venezia?	L'albergo della Luna (*moon*) sul Canal Grande.
Sarebbe felice la ragazza?	Sì, se avesse ancora (*still*) sua madre.
Quando sarà (Ella) a Napoli?	Sábbato (*Saturday*).

Seventh Lesson.

Determinative Adjectives. Aggettivi determinativi.

These words are considered as *pronouns* when employed *without* a substantive. When followed by a substantive, they have the value of adjectives, and are declined with *di*, *a* and *da*. Some of them take the article (as: ***lo stesso***, ***la stessa***, the same) and are, therefore, declined like substantives. They are divided into:

1. *Demonstrative adjectives.* Aggettivi dimostrativi.

Questo,[1]) fem. *questa*, this.
pl. *questi*, fem. *queste*, these.

Lo stesso,[2]) fem. *la stessa*, \
pl. *gli stessi*, fem. *le stesse*, / the same.

Quello,[3]) fem. *quella*, that.
pl. *quelli*, fem. *quelle*, those.

1) From the Lat. *ecce, iste;* OFr. *icest, cest;* Fr. *ce;* Prov. *aquest, aicest;* Sp. *aqueste* (= *este*). 2) From Lat. *iste, ipse.* 3) Lat. *ecce, ille;* OFr. *icel;* Prov. *aicel;* Sp. *aquel.*

il medésimo,[1]) fem. *la medésima,*
pl. *i medesimi,* fem. *le medesime,* } the same.
cotésto (codésto), fem. *cotêsta (codésta),* this.
pl. *cotesti (codesti),* fem. *coteste (codeste),* these.

Remarks.

1) Before words beginning with a vowel, *questo* and *quello* in the singular sometimes drop their final vowel, as: *quest' anima, quell' uomo.*

2) Before words beginning with a vowel or *s* impúra, the plur. masc. *quelli* is, for the sake of euphony, usually changed into *quegli,* as: *quegli abiti,* those clothes; *quegli onóri,* those honours.

3) Before masculine nouns beginning with a consonant (except *s* impúra), the Italians commonly say *quel* instead of *quello,* and *quei (que')* instead of *quelli,* as:

Quel cane, that dog; *quei (que') libri,* those books, instead of *quello cane, quelli libri.*

4) *Cotesto* denotes a person or a thing near the person addressed, and frequently corresponds to the English *your,* as: *cotesto cappello,* your hat; *cotesti libri,* your books.

2. *Interrogative adjectives.* Aggettivi interrogativi.

Quale,
pl. *quali,* } m. and f. which? what?

Note. Before words beginning with a *consonant* (except *s* impura), *qual* is used (of course *without* an apostrophe), as:

Qual bicchiere, which glass?

Before *vowels* the *full* form is commonly used, as:

Quale amore, which love?

Quali is sometimes contracted into *quai,* as: *quai libri,* which books?

The interrogative *what,* followed by a substantive (as: *what master?*), and the exclamation *what a!* are very often rendered by ***che***[2]), for *both* genders and numbers, as: *Che maéstro avete?* what master have you? *Che ragázzo!* what a boy! *Che ragázze!* what girls!

Words.

La piánta, the plant. *il colóre,* the colour.
il cámpo, the field. *la térra,* the earth.

1) Lat. *(se)met ipsissimus;* Prov. *smetessme, medesme;* OFr. *meïsme;* Sp. *mismo (meismo);* Port. *mesmo;* Fr. *même.* 2) The conjunction *che* from the Lat. *quod* and *quam;* the pronoun *che* from *quem* and *quam.*

il gátto, the cat.
il pómo, (plur. *le poma*), the apple.
la vácca, the cow.
l'óra, the hour.
álto, a, high.
béllo,*) *a*, fine; pl. masc. *béi* (*bégli* before vowels and s impúra).
il piacére,[1]) the pleasure.
gránde,*) great, large, big, tall.
grósso, big (of animals).
buóno,*) *a*, good.
mólto, much, very.
tróppo,[2]) too.
ma,[3]) but.
létto, (past part.) read.
Conósce Ella? Do you know?

Reading Exercise. 21.

Questo bicchiere. Questo pomo. Quest' uomo. Queste calze (*stockings*). Quegli stivali. Cotesta scatola è molto alta. Questi fanciulli sono poveri. Il fratello di questo ragazzo. Due chili di quel caffè. Io vengo da quella casa. Io do queste pere a quella ragazza. Il medesimo colore. La stessa persona. Abbiamo comprato le stesse penne dal medesimo mercante. Io ho veduto quei cani. Quai cani avete veduti? Che bel cavallo! Che bella casa! Il figlio di quell' uomo è molto grande. Abbiamo un gran libro e una gran penna.

---

*) Before substantives beginning with *consonants* (exc. *s impura*), the adj. *bello, grande*, and *santo* commonly drop their last syllable.

Grande drops *de* before *masc.* nouns in *Sing.* and *Plur.* Before *fem.* nouns *gran* and *grande* are indifferently used, as: *gran casa* or *grande casa.* When followed by a vowel, this adj. is apostrophised: *grand' uomo; grand' anima.* The *Plur.* is *grandi* before vowels or *s impura*: *grandi uomini.*

Bello drops the last syllable before *consonants* (exc. *s imp.*): *Bel libro.* The *Plur.* of this form is *bei* or *be': Bei (be') libri.* Before vowels *bell'* is used (both for *masc.* and *fem.*): *Bell' angelo, bell' anima.* The *Plur.* of *bell'* or *bello* (before *s imp.*) is *begli: Begli ángeli; begli specchi.* The form *belli* is rather obsolete, and now only met with, when the adject. is separated from its noun; f. inst. *Questi libri son belli.*

Santo drops the last syllable before *masc.* nouns beginning with a *consonant*, exc. *s impura: San Carlo.* Before vowels this word is apostrophised (*masc.* and *fem.*)! *Sant' Eusebio; Sant' Élena.* Before *s impura* and *fem.* nouns *not* beginning with a vowel, the *full* forms are used: *Santo Stefano; Santa Scolastica; Santa Chiara.*

Buono follows the same rules as the *indefinite article*: ***Buon*** *ragazzo (un ragazzo); **buona** ragazza (una r.); **buono** scolare (uno sc.); **buon'** amica (un' a.); **buon** uomo (un uomo).*

1) From the Lat. Inf. *placere;* Sp. *placer;* Fr. *plaire* (verb); *plaisir* (subst.). 2) The It. *troppo*, like the Fr. *trop*, are properly substantives, and signify a *great many*, a *multitude*, a *heap* etc. The origin of the word is doubtful. The LL. *troppus* means a multitude. Hence the Fr. *troupe*, the It. *truppa*, the Sp. *tropa* and *tropel* and the Engl. *troop.* 3) *Ma*, like *mai*, never, from the Lat. *magis;* Fr. *mais;* Sp. and Port. *mas*, with the signif. *more.*

Che bel fanciullo! Que' begli specchi sono rotti (*broken*). Che ora è?*) È un' ora. Sono le dieci.

Traduzione. 22.

1. This king is rich. This queen is also rich.**) This man is poor. These men are poor. That child is not happy. That woman is not satisfied. That (*cotesto*) tree is not high. Those trees are very high. The colour of that coat is not very fine. That girl is near (*presso*) the door. What a large field! The field of this man is very large.

2. The hat of that boy is too large. These oxen are bigger than (*di*) those cows. I give this pen to that boy. I give the books to those boys. The parents of these children are very good. Are those boys ill? No, Sir, they are not ill. What a fine apple! What fine (*fem.*) apples! Those apples are not good (*fem.*). The pleasure of these girls is great. The eggs of those geese are very large (*grosso*). What o'clock is it?*) It is five o'clock (*lit.* [They] are the five). We have read the same books. The same gentlemen were ill.

Dialogo.

Di chi è questo temperino?	È di mia sorella.
Di chi sono questi guanti?	Sono di Madamigella (*Miss*) Giulietta.
Come si chiama (*what is the name of*)***) la figlia di cotesta donna?	Si chiama Emilia.
Conosce (Ella) questa pianta?	Sicúro (*To be sure*)! È una rosa.
E cotesta?	È un garófano (*pink*).
Che carta voléte?	Vóglio (*I will*) quella bella carta.
Sono buone queste penne?	Sì, sono buonissime (*very good*).
È alta questa chiesa?	Sì, è molto†) alta.
Che lettera è cotesta?	È una lettera di mia madre.
A chi da (Ella) questi fiori?	Li (*them*) do a quella ragazza.
A chi da queste matite (*pencils*)?	Le do a questo ragazzo.
Si trova dell' oro in questo paese (*country*)?	Sì, Signore, questo paese è ricchissimo d'oro.

*) *Che ora è?* what hour is it? — It is one o'clock, *è un' ora;* It is two o'clock, *sono le due* (*ore*, understood); It is three o'clock, *sono le tre* etc.

**) The pupil must not forget that the Italian adjective *always agrees with its substantive* in *gender* as well as *number*.

***) Literally: *How calls herself . . .*

†) *Molto* before an adjective becomes an *adverb* and is therefore *invariable*. (See the Note pag. 42.)

Vuol Ella (*will you? do you want?*) queste calzette o quegli stivali?

Mi dia (*give me*)*) quegli stivali.

Che ora è?

È un' ora. Sono le tre. Sono le cinque. Sono le otto.

Fourteenth Lesson.

Possessive Adjectives. Aggettivi possessivi.

These adjectives are preceded by the definite article, and also sometimes by the indefinite. They are:

masc.	*fem.*	*pl. m.*	*pl. fem.*
il mio,	*la mia,*	*i miéi,*	*le mie,* my.
il tuo,	*la tua,*	*i tuói,*	*le tue,* thy.
il suo,	*la sua,*	*i suói,*	*le sue,* his, her (*your*, polite form).
il nostro,	*la nostra,*	*i nostri,*	*le nostre,* our.
il vostro,	*la vostra,*	*i vostri,*	*le vostre,* your.
il loro,[1])	*la loro,*	*i loro,*	*le loro,* their.

Examples:

mio padre, my father.
tua sorella, thy sister.
il mio cappello, my hat.
la tua veste, thy dress.
il loro palazzo, their palace.
la loro casa, their house.
la sua lámpada, his (her) lamp.
la Sua mano, your hand.

There is no difference in Italian between *his* and *her*, as there is in English. Here the *number* of the *possessing person* or *thing* must be considered, as well as the *gender* of the person or thing *possessed*. The pupil will easily find the difference by the following table:

1.

Possessor, *singular.*	Possessed object, ***masc.*** *sing.*
il padre ama	*suo* figlio (*his* son).
la madre ama	*suo* figlio (*her* son).
Possessor, *singular.*	Possessed object, ***fem.*** *sing.*
il padre ama	*sua* figlia (*his* daughter).
la madre ama	*sua* figlia (*her* daughter).

*) The Italian *Mi dia* (3. pers. sing. fem.) corresponds to the English: *Do give me;* or *please to give me.*

1) From the Lat. *illorum;* Fr. *leur.*

Possessor, *sing.*	Possessed object, ***masc.*** *pl.*
il padre ama	*i suoi* figli (*his* sons).
la madre ama	*i suoi* figli (*her* sons).
Possessor, *sing.*	Possessed object, ***fem.*** *pl.*
il padre ama	*le sue* figlie (*his* daughters).
la madre ama	*le sue* figlie (*her* daughters).

Loro is *invariable* and answers precisely to the English *their*. It also requires the *article* by which the gender of the *possessed* object is expressed, as:

II.

Possessor, *plur.*	Possessed object, ***sing.*** *masc.*	*sing. fem.*
I padri amano / le madri amano	*il* loro onore (*their* honor)	*la* loro famiglia (*their* family).

Possessor, *plur.*	Possessed object, ***plur.*** *masc.*	*plur. fem.*
I padri amano / le madri amano	*i* loro figli (*their* sons)	*le* loro figlie (*their* daughters).

NB. *Loro* is invariable, and also takes the article with nouns importing a *near relation* (See 1) as:

***Il** loro cugino*, their cousin.

Remarks.

1) These possessive pronouns, when *followed* by a substantive in the *Singular*, importing a *near relation* or *dignity*, take no article, as:

Mio padre, my father.
Suo fratello, his (her) brother.
Scrivo a sua Altezza, I write to his Highness.
Fui con sua Eccellenza, I was with his Excellency.

In the *Plural*, however, or when the substantive is *preceded* by *another adjective*, they require the article, as:

***I** vostri genitori*, your parents.
***Il** mio **caro** padre*, my dear father.

Such is also the case when the possessive adjective *follows* the noun, as:

L'Altezza sua, his Highness.*)

*) Except an address, as: *figli miei!* children! Yet these rules are not strictly observed. When the article is omitted (but only in the Sing.), the words express a wider meaning than when it is used. Thus: *Carlo è mio amico*, means: Charles is a friend of mine; and *Carlo è **il** mio amico*, Charles is my (only) friend. It appears from these examples, that the use as well as the omission of the *article* before the possessive pronoun is rather arbitrary.

2) For the sake of greater distinctness the forms: Il (la) *di lui* (his), *pl.* i (le) *di lui* (his); il (la) *di lei* (her), *pl.* i (le) *di lei* (her) are employed instead of *suo, sua; suoi, sue,* in sentences like the following:

Giuséppe ama sua sorella ed i di lei figli.
Joseph loves his sister and her children.
(*I suoi figli* means: his (Joseph's) own children.)

These forms are also used for the *polite mode* of address, as:

Il Suo cappello, \
Il di Lei cappello, / your hat.

3. Sometimes the *Fem.* of the possessive pronoun is used without a substantive, which then must be understood. Such turns are *Italicisms* and must be rendered by periphrase, as:

Gli dirò la mia (i. e. *opinione*)!
I shall tell him my opinion.

Delle sue! (i. e. *azioni,* actions) *sclamò Perpetua.* (*Manz.*)
That is like him! cried P.

NB. The masculine form, too, of the possessive pronoun is often used without the substantive, if the latter may be easily understood, as:

Hai trovato i tuoi (i. e. *parenti* etc.) *in buona salute?*
Have you found your relations in good health?

4) "A friend of mine" must be rendered thus:
Un mio amico *or* Un amico *mio.*
fem. Una mia amica *or* un' amica *mia.*

Words.

l'oriuólo, the watch.
la bórsa, the purse.
il bastóne,[1]) the stick.
la berrétta,[2]) the cap.
lo sbáglio, \
l'erróre, / the mistake.
la tásca, \
la saccoccia, / the pocket.
il nónno[3]) (*l'ávo*), the grandfather.
la nónna (*l'áva*), the grandmother.
la via, \
la contrada, / the street (of a town).
arriváto,[4]) arrived (*p. p.*)
partíto,[5]) set out.

Reading Exercise. 23.

Mio padre è buono. Mia madre è buona. Tuo fratello è grande. Tua sorella non è grande. Nostro zio è stato ricco.

1) From the LL. *bastum,* support. *Bastone* is the augment. of the Sp. It. *basto;* the Fr. *bâton (baston)* is of the same origin. 2) From the LL. *birretum;* Lat. *birrus (byrrhus),* a dress made of rough stuff. Sp. *birreta;* Prov. *berreta, barreta;* Fr. *barrette (beret).* 3) From the LL. *nonnus,* an equivalent for *pater,* frequently met with in the writings of the Apostolic Fathers. The origin of the word is unknown. 4) From the LL. *adripare,* to land. 5) From the Lat. *partiri.*

Vostra zia è povera. I loro genitori sóno contenti. Le mie cugine ed i miei cugini sono arrivati. I padri amano i loro figli. Nostra nonna ha perduto la sua borsa. Ha Ella trovato la sua (*di Lei*) borsa? Sua madre è arrivata. Il Suo Signor*) padre è partito con un mio amico. Vieni (*come*, 2nd *sing.*), figliuolo (*son*) mio! Egli scrive (*writes*) a sua cugina ed ai di lei figli. Le vie di questa città sono molto grandi.

Traduzione. 24.

1. My book and (my) pen. My books and (my) pens. Our field is large. Have *you your***) hat? A friend of mine has it (*l'ha*). My aunt has lost her watch. Our aunts have found their letters. These children have lost their father. Where is your mother (*Signora madre*)? My soul is immortal (*immortále*). My clothes were good.

2. These cherries have not been good. *Your* cousins (*f.*) have been in their garden. We have found *your* purse. We have received these boots from our aunt. Our cousins (*m.*) will be at Rome to-morrow. I have found the penknife of *your* father. My mother loves her sister. Where is *your* sister (*Signora sor.*)?

Dialogo.

Dov' è mio fratello?	È andato in giardino.
Dov' è il tuo libro?	Éccolo qui (*there it is*) sulla tavola.
Chi ha perduto la sua berretta?	Federigo ha perduto la sua berretta.
Chi ha trovato i nostri lapis?	Enrico li (*them*) ha trovati.
Di chi è questa lettera?	È di nostro nonno.
Di chi è questo bastone?	È del nostro buono zio.
Di chi sono questi guanti?	Sono della di Lei Signorina sorella.
Vuol Ella i miei fiori?	No, grazie tante! (*I thank you*).
Conosce Ella una mia amica?	Sì, conosco la Signora Storti.
Hanno quei ragazzi (*children*) perduto la loro madre?	Questa ragazza ha perduto suo padre, e quel povero ragazzo non ha più (*more*) i suoi genitori.
Che ritratto è cotesto?	È il mio ritratto.
Da chi avete ricevuto quel bel bastone?	Mi fu regalato (*given*) da mia zia.

*) When speaking politely, the Italians insert the words *Signore, Signora, Signorina* before words expressing relationship.

**) By *you, your,* when printed in Italics, we shall henceforth indicate the *polite mode.*

Fifteenth Lesson.

Numerals. Aggettivi numeráli.

There are three kinds of numerals, *viz.* 1) Cardinal numerals, 2) Ordinal numerals and 3) Indefinite numerals.

1. *Cardinal numbers.* Númeri cardinali.

Zéro, zero.
un, uno, una, one.
dúe, two.
tre, three.
quáttro, four.
cínque, five.
séi, six.
sétte, seven.
ótto, eight.
nóve, nine.
diéci, ten.
úndici, eleven.
dódici, twelve.
trédici, thirteen.
quattórdici, fourteen.
quíndici, fifteen.
sédici, sixteen.
diecisétte, *diciasétte*, *(diciassétte)* — seventeen.
diciótto, *dieciótto* — eighteen.
diecinóve, *dicianóve* — nineteen.
vénti, twenty.
vent' uno, twenty one.
venti due, twenty two.
venti tre, twenty three etc.
trenta, thirty.
quaránta, forty.
cinquánta, fifty.
sessánta, sixty.
settánta, seventy.
ottánta, eighty.
novánta, *(nonánta)* — ninety.
cento, a hundred.
due cento, *ducénto*, *(dugénto)* — two hundred.
tre cento, three hundred.
quattro cento, four hundred.
mille, a thousand.
due míla, two thousand.
dieci míla, ten thousand.
cento míla, a hundred thousand.
un miliône, *un millióne* — a million.

Notes.

1) The numerals *cento* and *mille* are *never* accompanied by the indefinite article, as in English: *a* hundred or *one* thousand.

2) *Cento* is always invariable, as: *due cento*, *tre cento etc.*

3) When a substantive *follows* the numbers *vent' uno*, *trent' uno etc.* it remains in the *singular*, as: *vent' uno* scudo, 21 dollars. When, on the contrary, the substantive *precedes* the number, it must be put in the *plural*, as: scudi *trent' uno*, 31 dollars.

4) Days of the month (except *il primo*, the first, and *l'último*, the last) are expressed by *cardinal numbers*, as: London, the 6th April, *Londra, il* sei *Aprile*. They also admit of the antiquated article *li: li cinque, li sei*, the 5th, the 6th. Finally, the *dative* may be used: *ai cinque, ai sei*. For example: Paris, January 15th, *Parigi li (ai) (il) 15 (quindici) (di) Gennaio*.

5) Sentences such as "I am 20, 30, 40 etc. years old" cannot be rendered literally, but must be expressed thus: I *have* 20, 30, 40 years, *io ho 20, 30, 40 anni. How old are you?* is translated either: *quanti anni avete* (how many years have you)? or: *che età avete* (what age have you)?

6) *È* (sing.) and *sono* (plur.) or *fa* (it makes)*) correspond to the English word *ago*, as: A year ago, *è un anno*, or *un anno fa;* twelve years ago, *sono dodici anni*, or *dodici anni fa.*

7) *In* or *within* (a certain time) is generally expressed by *fra*, as: *in* or *within* two months, fra *due mesi.*

8) *Both, all three, all four* must be rendered by *tutti e due, tutti e tre, tutti e quattro*; the following substantive takes the *article*, as:

Tutti e due i fratelli, both brothers.
Tutte e tre le sorelle, all three sisters, the three sisters.
Both is also translated by *ambe* (but only *fem.*) — as: *ambe le mani*, both hands.**)

Collective numbers are:

una novéna, nine days.
una decina, a number of ten (some ten).
una dozzina, a dozen.
una ventína, a score.
una sessantína, threescore.
una centína, a hundred (some hundred).
un migliáio, a thousand (some thousand).

---

*) *fa* always follows the substantive, as: *due anni fa*, two years ago.

**) *Ambo*, for *masc.* and *fem.*, is somewhat obsolete: *Ambo i fratelli*, both the brothers; *ambo le sorelle*, both the sisters. Another form is *ambedue*, sometimes written *ambe due*, likewise for both genders: *Ambedue i soldati; ambedue le sorelle.*

Words.

L'età, the age.
l'ánno, the year.
il giórno, the day.
la nótte, the night.
il mése, the month.
la fébbre, the fever.
il pórco (pl. *porci*), the pig.
il vitéllo, the calf.
la pécora, the sheep.
ancóra, still.
la lépre, the hare.
la settimána, [1]) the week.
l'abitánte, the inhabitant.
náto, a, born.
il minúto, the minute.
il capriuólo, the doe, roe.
il piede, the foot.
vivéva, lived *(Imperf.)*.
morì, died.
vía, times. *o*, or.

Reading Exercise. 25.

Io ho tre figliuoli. Voi avete quattro figlie. Mio zio ha avuto dieci figli. Ha perduto cinque figlie e due figliuoli. Domani (*to-morrow*) avremo 35 buoi, 42 vacche, 88 vitelli e 76 porci. Il nostro vicino ha avuto 495 pecore. Ho avuto sei errori nel mio tema. Abbiamo ucciso 23 lepri e 14 capriuoli. Sette ed otto fanno (*make*) quindici. 2[illegible] e 36 fanno 60. 4 via 8*) trenta due. 7 via 9, — 63. 21 via 32, — 672. Io sono nato nell' anno 1827, e mio padre nell'anno 1796. Mia madre è nata nell' anno 1801. La città di Vienna ha più di (*more than*) 500,000 abitanti. La città di Londra ha 8000 contráde (*streets*), 500 chiese, 149,500 case e presso a poco (*nearly*) tre millioni d'abitanti. Licurgo viveva 800 anni avanti Cristo.

Traduzione. 26.

1. My cousin has 24 sheep. My cousin *(f.)* has had 39 pigs. She has lost 18 pigs. My uncle has three houses. My grandfather had ten horses and four carriages. My sister has an old house, but (*ma*) I have a new one.**) 30 days make a month. 12 months or 52 weeks make a year. A year has 365 days. I was born in the year 1849; I am 30 years old. My sister was born *(f.)* in the year 1852, she is 17 years old. How much are (*quanto fa*) 3 times 9? 3 times 9 (are) 27. — 6 times 8 are 48. — 35 and 42 are 77.

2. How much is 125 and 264? My mother has had the fever during (*per*) 6 weeks. A (the) day has 24 hours, an

*) The verb *fanno* is usually omitted.

**) It must be observed once for all, that the English *one* or *ones*, preceded by an adjective, may *never* be translated in Italian. The above sentence: I have a new *one*, is rendered thus: *Io* (ne) *ho una nuova*.

1) From. the Lat. *septimana (hebdomas)*; Sp. *semana*; Fr. *semaine*; Prov. *setmana*.

(the) hour 60 minutes. Give *(2. pl.)* (to) Charles 26 florins (*fiorino*) and (to) Lewis 18 lire. There are 80 pens. Here are 200 pounds of sugar. Our king has 87 horses. We were *(def.)* (out) shooting (*alla cáccia*) yesterday. We have shot 12 roes and 74 hares.

Dialogo.

Quanti anni ha?	Ho adesso[1]) (*now*) venti nove anni.
E Suo fratello?	Egli avrà presso a poco diciotto anni.
Quando (*when*) è nato il di Lei fratello?	È nato nell' anno 1861.
E Lei (*you*), quando è nata?*)	Sono nato nell' anno 1850.
Quanto danaro ha Ella in tasca?	Ho 160 lire e 54 centésimi (*cents*).
Quanto danaro ha Ella ricevuto da Venezia?	Ho ricevuto ieri 280 lire e 72 centesimi.
Quanto fa 3 via 7?	3 via 7, 21.
Quanto fanno 6 via 6?	6 via 6, 36.
Quanti giorni ha un anno?	Un anno ha 365 giorni e 6 ore.
Quanti mesi ha un anno?	Un anno ha 12 mesi.
Foste ieri alla caccia?	Sì, Signore, tutto il giorno (liter. *the whole day*).
Avete ucciso molte lepri?	Abbiamo ucciso 26 lepri.
Avete anche ucciso dei capriuoli?	Furono (*there were*) uccisi 6 capriuoli.
Ha sua cugina abbastanza (*enough*) danaro?	Sì, ne**) ha abbastanza; ha cinque cento fiorini.
A chi ha Ella dato dei regáli (*presents*)?	A tutti e tre.
Non sapéte niénte (*you know nothing*) tutte e due?	Non siamo state qui (*here*) ieri l'altro *(the day before yesterday)*.

Sixteenth Lesson.

2. *Ordinal Numbers.* Numeri ordinali.

They are formed from the cardinal numbers:

*) The polite mode *Ella* being always considered feminine, all *adjectives* and *participles*, even when belonging to masculine nouns, should agree with it. — This rule is often neglected.

**) *ne* (the French *en*) properly means *of it*, and in English is either omitted or rendered by *some, any etc.*

1) From the Lat. *ad-ipsum.*

Il primo, *la prima*, the first.
il secóndo, *la secónda*, the second.
il térzo, the third.*)
il quárto, the 4th.
il quínto, the 5th.
il sésto, the 6th.
il séttimo, the 7th.
l'ottávo, the 8th.
il nóno, the 9th.
il décimo, the 10th.
l'undécimo, the 11th.
il duodécimo, the 12th.
il décimo terzo, the 13th.
il décimo quarto, the 14th.**)
il décimo quinto, the 15th.
il decimo sesto, the 16th.
il decimo settimo, the 17th.
il decimo ottavo, the 18th.
il decimo nono, the 19th.
il ventésimo, *(il vigésimo)*,***) the 20th.
il ventesimo primo, the 21st.†)
il ventesimo secondo, the 22nd.
il trentésimo, *(il trigésimo)*, the 30th.
il quarantésimo, *(il quadragésimo)*, the 40th.
il cinquantésimo, *(il quinquagésimo)*, the 50th.
il sessantésimo, *(il sessagésimo)*, the 60th.
il settantésimo, *(il settuagésimo)*, the 70th.
l'ottantésimo, *(l'ottuagésimo)*, the 80th.
il novantésimo, *(il nonagésimo)*, the 90th.
il centésimo, the 100th.
il duc centésimo, *(il dugentésimo)*, the 200th.
il millésimo, the 1000th.
l'último, the last.
il penúltimo, the penultimate.
l'antipenúltimo, the antipenultimate.

Remarks.

1) The *distinctive* numbers, *firstly, secondly* are: *primo, secondo*, or *primieraménte, secondariaménte. Thirdly, fourthly etc.* are expressed thus: *in terzo luógo* (in the 3d place), *in quarto luógo etc.*

1) Proper names of princes take the ordinal numbers *without* an article, as: *Carlo secondo*, Charles II. *Luigi decimo sesto*, Lewis XVI.

3) *Fractional numbers* are expressed by ordinal numbers, as in English: *un terzo* (1/3). *Un mezzo*, a half, when preceding a noun, is considered as an adjective, and therefore agrees with the substantive, as: *una mezza*

*) Feminine: la terza, la quarta etc.

**) Besides, *dodicésimo* (12th), *tredicésimo* (13th), *quattordicésimo* (14th), *quindicésimo* (15th), *sedicésimo* (16th), *diciasettésimo* (17th), *diciottésimo* (18th), *dicianovésimo* (19th) are much used.

***) The forms in parenthesis are antiquated.

†) Also *vent' unésimo* (21st), *ventiduésimo* (22nd) etc. are sometimes met with. Euphony alone decides whether such forms may be used or not. Thus *ventiseiésimo* (26th) or *trentatreésimo* (33d) will scarcely be found anywhere.

libbra, half a pound. When, however, the *substantive* precedes, *mezzo* is always invariable, as:

un' ora e mezzo, one hour and a half.
due libbre e mezzo, two pounds and a half.*)

4) The question: *what day of the month is it to-day?* is translated: *quanti ne abbiamo del mese?* As we observed in the foregoing lesson, *cardinal numbers* are employed in the answer, as: *Ne abbiamo cinque* (the 5th).

The *hours of the day* are expressed thus:

3 o'clock, *le tre (ore)*.
a quarter past 3 o'clock, *tre ed un quarto* (three and a quarter).
half past 3 o'clock, *tre e mezzo* (three and a half).
a quarter to 4 o'clock, *tre e tre quarti* (three and three quarters).
4 o'clock, *le quattro etc.*
12 o'clock (noon), *mezzo giorno* or *mezzodì*.
midnight, *mezzanótte*.
1 o'clock, *un'ora* or *al tócco*.

Note. a) The pupil must never say: *quindici cento*, fifteen hundred, but always *mille cinque cento*, one thousand (and) five hundred.

b) The hours from *noon* to *midnight* are called *pomeridiane* (commonly marked thus *p. m.*) and those from *midnight* to *noon: antimeridiane (a. m.)*. Thus *alle sei p. m.* means: at six o'clock (afternoon); *alle 8 a. m.* at 8 o'clock (morning).

5) *Multiplicatives* are:

sémplice, simple.
dúplo, *dóppio*, *duplice*, } double, twofold.
tríplo, *triplice*, } threefold.
quádruplo, *quadrúplice*, } fourfold.
quíntuplo, *quintúplice*, } fivefold.
séstuplo, sixfold.
décuplo, tenfold.
céntuplo, *centúplice*, } hundredfold.

Words.

Gennáio, January.
Febbráio, February.
Márzo, March.
Aprile, Aprile.
Mággio, May.
Giúgno, June.
Lúglio, July.
Agósto, August.
Settémbre, September.
Ottóbre, October.
Novémbre, November.
Dicémbre, December.

*) *mezzo*, when following a noun, takes no article.

Doménica, Sunday.	*la clásse*, the class.
Lunedì, Monday.	*la párte*, the part.
Martedì, Tuesday.	*il pósto*, *il luógo*, the place.
Mercoledì, Wednesday.	
Giovedì, Thursday,	*il sécolo*, the century.
Venerdì, Friday.	*óggi*, to-day.
Sábbato, Saturday.	*un incendio*, a great fire.

Reading Exercise. 27.

Io sono nel mio sessantesimo primo anno. Ieri fu il sei Maggio; oggi è il sette. Carlo è il primo della sua classe. Luigi è il nono, Enrico il decimo ottavo e Giulio è l'ultimo. Il papa Gregorio VII era il nemico di Enrico IV. Noi viviamo (*we live*) nel decimo nono secolo. Romolo era il primo, Numa Pompilio il secondo re di Roma. Pietro primo aveva il soprannome (*surname*) di (*the*) Grande. Gennaio è il primo, Marzo il terzo. Giugno è il sesto e Dicembre è l'ultimo mese dell' anno. La settimana è la cinquantesima seconda parte dell' anno. Mia sorella Lucía è nata il venticinque di Luglio mille otto cento trenta cinque. Ho ricevuto tre libbre e mezzo di zucchero e cinque libbre e mezzo di caffè. Carlo XII era re di Svézia (*Sweden*). Ho comprato (*bought*) una mezza dozzina di camice (*shirts*). Il 27 Settémbre 1729 un incendio distrússe (*destroyed*) a Costantinópoli 12,000 case; 7000 persone perírono (*perished*) nelle fiamme (*flames*).

Traduzione. 28.

1. A month is the twelfth part of a year. What day of the month is (have we) to-day? To-day we have the 28th of December. I am the third of my class. My sister Lucy (*Lucía*) is the twenty-second. Take (*prendéte*) the 30th, 50th, 60th and 100th part. An Italian lira has 20 soldi or 100 centesimi. A soldo is the twentieth part of a lira. Napoleon (*Napoléone*) died at St. Helena (*Élena*), the 5th of May 1821.

2. Lewis XVI of France was *(def.)* beheaded (*decapitáto*) at Paris the 21st January 1793. Here are $10\frac{3}{4}$ pounds of coffee and $1\frac{1}{2}$ pounds of sugar. My grandmother is now in her 67th year. Peter the Great of Russia died at St. Petersburg (*Pietrobúrgo*) the 8th (of) February 1725, in the 53rd year of (*di, without art.*) his age. (The emperor Francis Joseph (*Francésco Giuséppe*) of Austria was born at Vienna the 18th August 1830. Yesterday was *(def.)* the 16th May.

Dialogo.

Che posto hai?	Ho il ventesimo posto.
Che posto ha tuo fratello?	Egli è il tredicesimo della classe, e mio cugino è il decimo quinto.

In che classe è Riccardo?	È nella seconda classe.
Quando è Ella arrivata?	Sono arrivato Domenica il diciotto Marzo.
La signorina Sofia è la prima o la seconda della classe?	Credo (*I think*) ch'ella sia la seconda.
Quanti anni ha?	Ha quindici anni.
In che anno è Ella nata?	Nel*) mille otto cento sessanta.
In che mese?	Nel mese d'Ottobre
In che giorno?	L'undici.
Di qual imperatore parlate?	Parliamo dell' imperatore Francesco Giuseppe.
Quando nacque (*was he born*)?	Il 18 Agosto 1830.
Che ora è?	Sono le sette ed un quarto; le sette e mezzo.
A che ora è Ella partita?	Sono partito alle sette e tre quarti.
Quanti ne abbiamo del mese?	Ne abbiamo venticinque.
Che età ha Suo padre?	È adesso nel suo sessantesimo secondo anno.

Seventeenth Lesson.

3. *Indefinite numerals.* Aggettivi numerali indeterminati.

When used *without* a noun substantive, these words are *pronouns*. With a substantive, however, they are *adjectives*.

Ogni,[1]) m. and f. (only used in the singular) each, every, all, as: *Ogni casa,* every house.

tutto,[2]) *a,* the whole, all (is followed by the article), as: *Tutta la città,* the whole town.

alcúno,[3]) *a,* some, any, as: *Alcuna cosa,* any thing.

nessúno,
(nissúno, a),
niúno, a,[4]) no, as: *Nessuna pianta,* no plant.
verúno, a, *In verun modo,* by no means.
núllo, a,

*) The word *anno (year)* may be omitted.

1) Lat. *omnis.* 2) Lat. *totus.* 3) From the Lat. *aliquis unus.* 4) *Ne — unus.*

talúno, a, many a, a certain, as: *Taluna storia,* many a story.

ciaschedúno, a, / *ciascúno,*[1] *a,* each, every, as: *Ciascun uomo,* each man. / *Ciascuna donna,* each woman.

quálche,[2]) m. and f. some, as: *Qualche cosa,* something.

alquánto, a, (singular) a little; (plural) a few, as: *Alquanto vino,* a little wine; *alquante donne,* a few ladies.

qualúnque,[3]) m. and f. whatever, as: *Qualunque paese,* whatever land.

tále, / *cotále,* m. and f. such, as: *In tale modo,* in such (this) way.

un cérto, una certa, a certain, as: *Un certo signore,* a certain gentleman.

parécchi,[4]) *parécchie,* several, as: *Parecchie signore,* several ladies.

divérsi, e (only in the plural), divers, as: *Diversi sbagli,* divers faults or mistakes.

differénti, m. and f. pl. different, as: *Differenti intraprese,* different enterprises.

Observations.

1) *Alcuno, a,* when used without the negative particle *non,* has the above signification of *some* or *any,* as: *alcuna cosa,* any thing. With the negation *non,* however, it means *no,* as: ***Non** ho **alcun** amico,* I have *no* friend.

2) *Nessuno, niuno, veruno* mean *no,* and when *preceding* the verb, dispense with a *negative particle,* as: ***Nessun** uomo vi conosce,* nobody knows you. When, on the contrary, the *verb* precedes, the negative particle is always required, as: ***Non** vi conosce nessun uomo,* nobody knows you. Such is also the case with *nullo, a.*

(The pupil must be careful to employ no such construction, as: ***Nessun** uomo **non** vi conosce,* where both *nessun* and *non* precede the verb, although such phrases be met with in the ancient language.)

3) All compounds with *uno,* when used *negatively,* have no Plural. Thus we may not say:

*Non ho **alcuni** amici,* but only:
*Non ho **alcun** amico,* or
*Non ho **amici**.*

1) *Quisque unus.* 2) *Qualisquam,* formed after the analogy of *quisquam.* 3) *Qualiscunque.* 4) LL. *pariculus,* Dim. of *par;* Sp. *parejo;* Fr. *pareil;* It. also *pariglia.*

Words.

La spína, the thorn.
la lezióne, the lesson.
la versióne, the version.
la cósa,[1]) the thing.
la víta, the life.
il nóme, the name.
il bósco,[2]) the wood, forest.
il témpo, the time, weather.
l'animále, the animal.
il difétto, the defect.
la nazióne, the nation.
il rammárico,[3]) the sorrow.
áma, loves, likes.
il nemíco, the enemy.
la gióia,[4]) (the) joy.
ricco,[5]) *a*, rich.
il contadíno,[6]) the peasant.
l'uffiziále, the officer.
póvero, *a*, poor.
fréddo,[7]) *a*, cold.
ráro, *a*, rare, seldom.
mortále, mortal.
etérno, eternal.
parlàto,[8]) spoken.
una volta, at a time, formerly.
da, since. *dà*, gives.
Mi présti, (Do) lend me (pol. f.).

Reading Exercise. 29.

Nessun uomo è senza difetti. Il nostro maestro di musica dà sei lezioni ogni giorno. Parecchie persone sono arrivate da Vienna. Dio è il padre di tutti gli uomini. Ogni età ha i suoi rammárichi e le sue gioie. Ciascun uomo è mortale. Abbiamo bevuto alquanto vino. Ogni cosa ha il suo tempo. Tutto quel paese è povero. Conosco alcune famiglie ricche in questa città. Non conosco alcun uffiziale. Non ho nessun piacere. Niuna gioia è eterna. Oggi abbiamo ricevuto diverse lettere. Parecchi uomini hanno il medesimo nome. Fu parlato di differenti intraprese. Mi presti (*do lend me*) alcuni libri! Nessun uomo è sempre contento. Mio padre è ammalato (*ill*) da alcune settimane. Rispondéte (*Answer! 2nd pl.*) qualche cosa! Una certa Signora Schiavini è arrivata.

Traduzione. 30.

1. Many countries are very cold. Every child likes playing (*il giuóco*). You have several mistakes in your translation.

1) Lat. *causa*. 2) LL. *boscus* or *buscus* (probably of Germ. origin. Sp. and Port. *bosque;* Prov. *bosc;* Fr. *bois*. 3) Probably from the Goth. *marzjan;* OHG. *marrjan*, to ache. Hence the Fr. *marri*, Partc. of the old verb *marrir*, to vex. 4) From the L. (plur.) *gaudia*. The It. *gioia* also means *jewel*. The Sp. and Port. *joya* has only the latter signification, whilst the Prov. *joia* means both *joy* and *jewel*. From the derivate *gaudiale* the Ital. *gioiello;* Sp. *joyel;* Germ. Juwel; Engl. *jewel;* OFr. *joel;* Fr. *joyau*. 5) From the Goth. *reiks;* OG. *rihhi;* Prov. *ric;* OF. *rice;* Fr. *riche;* Engl. *rich;* Sp. *rico;* Germ. reich. 6) Deriv. from *contado* = *contea*, country. LL. *comitatus;* Fr. *comes;* count. Thus the *contadino* is properly the inhabitant of the country, i. e. *countryman*. 7) Lat. *frigidus;* Fr. *froid;* Sp. *frio*. 8) *Parlare;* from the subst. *parola* (= *parolare*, like the Fr. *parler* = *paroler*, from *parole*). The subst. *parola* from the L. *parabola*, like the Sp. *palabra* by metath. from *parabla* (= *parabola*).

Charles has no mistake. A certain Mr. Bell has sent (*mandato*) this book. Every man is liable (*soggetto*) to (the) error (*erróre*). My cousin has found some pencils; whose (*di chi*) are they? The whole night was cold. Both (*ambedue i*) soldiers are dead. Both sisters are departed (*partito, a*). Every state (*státo*) has its joys. Certain books are not good for *young people* (*la gioventù* = youth.)

2. My father speaks (*parla*) of certain merchants. No rule (*régola*) is without exception (*eccezióne, f.*). This father has lost all his children. All the houses of this town are very fine (*bellíssime*). Such a translation would be easy (*fácile*). Several gentlemen and (several) ladies are arrived from Venice. He has had different motives (*motívo*). It is rare, to have (*d'avere*) many good friends. Have you found any thing? We have found several pens. Give me (*Dátemi, 2nd pl.*) a little wine!

Dialogo.

Ho io degli sbagli nella mia versione?	Sì, caro mio (*my dear*), hai parecchi sbagli.
Dove sono gli sbagli?	Éccoli (*here they are*).
Chi ha detto (*said*) ciò (*that*)?	Tutta la città lo (*it, acc.*) díce (*says*).
Dove si trova questa pianta?	Si trova in ogni paese dell' Europa.
Avete libri?	Non abbiamo nessun libro.
Qual è il motivo che (Ella) ha avuto?	Ho avuto diversi motivi.
Perchè non ha verun amico?	Perchè (*why*) ha offesi (*offended*) quelli che aveva una volta.
Chi è soggetto all' errore?	Ciascun uomo è soggetto all' errore.
Hai molti sbagli?	Non ho alcuno sbaglio.
Che cosa ha trovato quell' uffiziale?	Ha trovato diversi libri.
Hanno i miei figli avuto dei fiori?	Sì, Signora, hanno avuto diversi fiori.
Vuol Ella farmi (*do me*) questo piacere?	Non posso (*I cannot*) farlo (*do it*) in verun modo.

Eighteenth Lesson.

On the Adjective. Dell' Aggettivo.

The Italian adjective may be placed *before* or *after* the substantive, and must always *agree* with it in *gender* and *number*. No precise rules can be given, whereby the pupil may learn whether the adjective must precede or follow the noun. Euphony requires, that the adjective, when *shorter* than the substantive, should precede it, as:

Un buon ragazzo, a good boy.
Un bel ritratto, a fine picture.

After the substantive stand:

1) Adjectives denoting *materials*, *nation*, *dignity*, *shape*, *colour*, *taste*, *smell etc.*, as:

Carta bianca, white paper.
la música italiana, the Italian music.
un consigliére áulico, an aulic counsellor.
un frutto amáro, a bitter fruit.
un uomo ciéco, a blind man.

2) All *participles*, as:

Una figlia amáta, a beloved daughter.
uno sguárdo commovénte, a touching glance.

3) Adjectives preceded by an *adverb*, as:

Un odóre molto aggradévole, a very agreeable smell.
una casa troppo piccola, too small a house.*)

On the gender.

1) *Masculine* adjectives ending in *o* form their feminine in *a*, as:

buon*o*,	fem.	buon*a*.
larg*o*,	„	larg*a*.
pover*o*,	„	pover*a*.

2) Adjectives terminating in *e* serve for both masculine and feminine, as:

L'amábile ragazzo, the amiable boy.
L'amabile ragazza, the amiable girl.

*) The English practice of putting the indefinite article *after* an adjective, as: *Too small a house; so great a king*, is not admissible in Italian.

Il felice contadino, the happy peasant.
La felice contadina, the happy countrywoman.

The adjectives form their plural like the substantives, *viz.:*

o is changed into *i*.
a „ „ „ *e*.
e „ „ „ *i*.

Remarks.

Adjectives terminating in *ca* and *ga* take, like the substantives, in the Plural an *h* after *c* or *g*, in order to retain the *hard* sound, as:

la casa bianca, the white house.
le case bianche, the white houses.

Those ending in *co* and *go*, when of *two syllables*, form their Plural in *chi* and *ghi*, as:

bian*co* — bian*chi*.
lar*go* — lar*ghi*.

When these adjectives are of *more than two syllables*, the question is on which syllable the *stress* is laid. Those that have the accent on the *last but one*, form, with rare exceptions, *chi*, e. g.:

tedésco (German), Pl. *tedeschi*.
antíco (ancient), „ *antichi*.

When, on the contrary, the stress is on the *antepenultimate*, *ci* predominates, e. g.:

barbárico (barbarous), Pl. *barbarici*.
clássico, „ *classici*.

(There are also many adject. ending in -- *co* with *both* terminations. See Part. II.: the formation of the Plural.)

Note 1. One and the same adjective or participle belonging to *two* substantives of *different* genders, must be put in the *Plural masculine*, as: *Il fratello e la zia sono partiti*, the brother and aunt are departed. When, however, belonging to *more* than two substantives of different genders, it agrees with the *two last nouns*, as: *Il padre, la cugina e le sorelle sono partite.*

2. A substantive in the *Plural* may also be followed by two or more adjectives in the *Singular*, as:

I plenipotenziari francese è russo.
The French and the Russian plenipotentiaries.

(The article before the *last* adjective is, of course, omitted in this case).

Words.

La penna d'acciáio, the steel-pen.
il gilè,[1]) the waistcoat.
il nástro, the ribbon.
l'úva, the grape.
il cigno, the swan.
il pittóre, the painter.
la róndine, the swallow.
il mérlo, the black-bird.
l'appetito,[2]) the appetite.
la piázza,[3]) the place.
l'aria, the air.
il tórdo, the thrush.
il cardellíno, the gold-finch.
il lucarino, the green-finch.
básso, *a*, low.
magnífico, magnificent.
dólce, sweet.
célebre, famous.
distánte, distant, far.
brútto, *a*, ugly.
i parénti, the relations.
la lódola, the lark.
l'usignuólo,[4]) the nightingale.
grósso, *a*, big.
grásso, *a*, fat.
l'ambasciatóre,[5]) the ambassador.
leggiéro,[6]) easy.
pesánte,[7]) heavy.
aggradévole, agreeable.
spiacévole,[8]) disagreeable.
terréstre, terrestrial, earthly.
turchíno,[9]) *a* / *azzúrro*, *a* } blue.
néro, *a*, black.
vérde, green.
giállo,[10]) *a*, yellow.
laborióso, *a*, diligent.
céde (Ella), do *you* see?
mi piace, I like, I am fond of.

Reading Exercise. 31.

Non ho ricevuto quel bel temperino che mia zia ha comprato. I colori dell' Austria sono nero e giallo, quelli della Francia azzurro, bianco e rosso. Vede (Ella) la piccola lodola nell' aria? La musica francese non è così (*so*) bella come (*as*) la musica italiana. Io preferisco (*I prefer*) la musica tedesca. Gli autori (*authors*) tedeschi sono laboriosi. La poesia inglese è famosa. Le novelle del Boccaccio ed i sonetti

1) From the Fr. *gilet*. This word probably comes from *gille*, a comical character of the play. 2) Lat. *ap-petitus* from *ap-petere*. 3) From the Lat. *platea*, a wide street (πλατεία from πλατύς); Sp. *plaza*; Port. *praça*; Prov. *plassa*; Fr. *place*; Engl. *place*; Germ. Platz. The form *platea* still exists in Ital. with the signif. *pit* in the play-house. 4) Lat. *luscíniolus*, Dim. of *luscinia*; OF. *lousignol*, *lurcignol*; Ital. also *rossignuolo*; Sp. *ruiseñor*; Port. *roucinhol*; Prov. *rossinhol*. 5) From the It. *ambasciata*, ambassy. This word derives from the Goth. *anobahti*; OG. *ampaht*; Germ. Amt, office. From the Goth. the Lat. *ambactus* (Caes. B.G. 6, 15), from this the subst. *ambactia* = *ambassia* = *ambascia*. 6) From a Lat. form *levíarius*, der. fr. *levis*; Prov. *leugier*; Sp. *lijero*; Fr. *léger*. 7) From a Lat. form *pensare*, freq. of *pendere*, derives the It. verb. *pesare*, to weigh, Fr. *peser*, Sp. *pesar*. 8) *Piacevole*, pleasant, *spiacevole*, unpleasant. The prefix *s* is the Lat. *dis*. 9) From *turco*, Turkish. The blue colour seems to have had some relation to the Turks; the words *turchese*; Fr. *turquoise*; Sp. Port. *turquesa*, turkois, turquois, confirm this opinion. 10) From the OHG. *gelo*, yellow. The Lat. *galbinus* may be of another origin.

del Petrarca*) sono magnifici. Mio cugino ha un gilè ed una berretta rossi. Il padre, la cugina e la zia sono partite. Mi piace il dolce canto dell' usignuolo. I miei stivali e la mia camicia sono nuovi. Il cardellino, il lucarino, il tordo, il merlo e la rondine sono begli uccelli. Vede quel bell' uccello bianco? Sì, è un cigno. Che begli occhi azzurri! Questa è una canzonetta (*little song, carol*) molto dolce. Gli uomini e le donne sono soggetti alle stesse passioni. Datemi della carta bianca e dell' inchiostro turchino. Egli è un uomo dotto (*learned*) e celebre. Gli ambasciatori spagnuolo e portoghese (*Portuguese*) sono partiti. I classici italiani sono ammirati in tutta l'Europa.

Traduzione. 32.

1. These geese are big and fat. That gentleman is not so tall as this. Michel Angelo was a famous sculptor (*scultóre*), and Raphael (*Rafaéllo*) Sanzio a very great painter. These steel-pens are too thick and heavy. What beautiful houses and gardens! These books are useful and agreeable. The Italian songs are very sweet. My cousin lives (*sta*) in a distant place. The blue eyes of this girl are very fine. Many plants always have green leaves.

2. The black hats of those gentlemen are too low. (The) iron is a heavy metal. Do *you* see (transl. *See you*) that large house? Do you also see those large doors? St. Peter's (*San Piétro*) at Rome is a magnificent church. The steeple (*il campanile*) of St. Stephen's at Vienna is very high. On the round place (there) is a little house. Tight (*stretto,*[1]) *a*) boots are very disagreeable. These gardens are large enough (*abbastánza*)**). Cimabue and Tiziano were very celebrated painters. The modern (*modérno, a*) Italian music is less (*meno*) beautiful *than the* (*della*) German music.

Dialogo.

È (Ella) contenta, Signore?	No, non sono contento.
Chi era Raffaéllo Sanzio?	Era un celebre pittore italiano.
Come trova (Ella) i sonetti del Petrarca?	Li (*them*) trovo come ognuno li trova; sono magnifici.
Chi è partito oggi?	Mia madre e mio padre sono partiti.

*) In Italian a few proper names of very celebrated persons take the def. article, as: *il* Dante, *il* Tasso, *il* Petrarca. (See II P. the *Article.*)

**) This adverb precedes the adjective.

1) Lat. *strictus;* Prov. *estreit;* Fr. *étroit;* Sp. *estrecho.* The Engl. *strict* is of the same origin.

E chi è arrivato?
Il cugino, la cugina e mia sorella sono arrivate.
Le piace (*Do you like*) la musica francese?
No, preferisco la musica italiana.
Conosce (Ella) quel signore?
Sì, è un ricco mercante inglese.
Di che colore è il lucarino?
Il lucarino è verde.
Di chi è quel cappello nero sulla tavola rotonda?
Appartiene (*it belongs*) all' uffiziale francese.
Da chi ha (Ella) pranzato[1]) (*dined*) ieri?
Dal consigliere áulico Signor Salvetti.
Perchè non cómpra (*why do you not buy*) quella gran casa?
Perchè (*because*) non ho il danaro necessário (*necessary*).

Nineteenth Lesson.

Degrees of Comparison.

The Comparison of Italian adjectives is quite analogous to the English. The comparative degree is formed by the word *più*, more, and the superlative by *il più* (fem. *la più*) the most. Examples:

Comparative.

bello, \
f. *bella*, / beautiful. — *più bello*, \ *più bella*, / more beautiful.

Superlative.

il più bello, \
la più bella, / the most beautiful.

A *negative* comparison is effected by the words *meno*, less, for the comparative degree, and *il meno**) (f. *la meno*), the least, for the superlative, as:

bello, \
f. *bella*, / beautiful. — *meno***) *bello*, \ *meno bella*, / less beautiful (not so beautiful).

il meno bello, \
la meno bella, / the least beautiful.

Moreover, there is a *Superlativo assoluto* (without comparison) by which a *high degree* is expressed. It is formed by the addition of the syllable *issimo* for masculine, and *issima* for feminine, as:

---

*) *Meno*, being an *adverb*, is invariable.

**) The final *o* of *meno* is sometimes dropped (except before s impura) as: *men bello*. In poetry *manco* is sometimes used for *meno*, as: *Manco infelice di me*, less unhappy than I.

1) The subst. *pranzo*, dinner, from the Lat. *prandium*.

cattivo, bad. Superl. ass. *cattivissimo* (fem. *cattivissima*), *very* bad, *extremely* bad.
diligente, diligent. Sup. ass. *diligentissimo* (fem. *diligentissima*), very diligent.

(For further observations on the degrees of comparison see the 2nd Part.)

The following adjectives have, besides their regular form, an *irregular* (Latin) one:

	Comp.	*Sup.*
Alto, a, high.	*superióre*, higher, superior.	*il suprémo* | the highest, *la supréma* / the supreme.
buóno, a, good.	*miglióre*, better.	*il, la miglióre*, the best.
cattivo, a, bad.	*peggióre*, worse.	*il, la peggióre*, the worst.
grande, great.	*maggióre*, greater.	*il, la maggióre*, the greatest.
piccolo, a, little.	*minóre*, less. (also younger).	*il, la minóre*, the least.

*Superl. assol.**)

sómmo, a, very high; the highest.
óttimo, a, very good; the best.
péssimo, a, very bad; the worst.
mássimo, a, very great; the greatest.
ménomo, a, (*mínimo*) very little; the least.

The irregular Latin forms are not to be used of material things; thus, for instance, not: *il maggior giardino*, but *il più gran giardino.*

Five adjectives form their *superl. assol.* (in the Latin way) in ***errimo.*** They are:

acre, sharp — *acérrimo.*
célebre, famous — *celebérrimo.*
íntegro, unblemished — *integérrimo.*
misero, miserable — *misérrimo.*
salubre, healthy — *salubérrimo.*

Observations.

The English *than* is rendered in two different ways, viz.:

1) When followed by a *substantive with* or *without an article* (or by a *pronoun*), *than* is *not* translated, and the substantive or pronoun is put in the *genitive case*, as:

*) The *superlativo assol.* of these adjectives has the *highest degree* in comparison. Thus *sommo* means *very high* or *extremely* high as well as the *highest.*

Il sole è più grande ***della*** *luna,* the sun is larger than the moon.

Tu sei più grande ***di*** *me,* thou art taller than I.

Egli è più eloquente ***di*** *Cicerone,*)* he is more eloquent than Cicero.

2) It is translated *che,* when the comparison is merely expressed by *più* or *meno, without* an adjective following, as:

V'è più ***oro*** *che* ***argento,*** there is more gold than silver.

3) When two *different adjectives* are compared with one another, *than* must likewise be rendered by *che,* as:

Egli è più fortunato ***che*** *prudente,* he is more happy than prudent.

4) When two *verbs* are compared, *than* is rendered by *che* and followed by *non,* if no *negation* precedes, as:

Voi parlate più ***che non*** *pensate,* you speak more than you think.

NB. When two or more *substantives* are compared, not by means of an adjective (as 1), but by a *verb,* the conj. *che* must likewise be used, as:

Il fratello ***scrive*** *più* ***che*** *il cugino.*
The brother writes more than the cousin.

5) *Adverbs* are always compared with one another by *che,* as:

È meglio oggi ***che*** *domani,* better to-day than to-morrow.

The English *as — as* or *so — as,* which precedes the adjective, is rendered by *così (sì) — come,* as:

Il nostro giardino è ***così*** *bello come il vostro,* our garden is as fine as yours.

The comparison of *several* qualities *belonging to one and the same object* is expressed by *così — che,* as:

Quella ragazza è ***così*** *bella che innocente,* that girl is as beautiful as innocent.

*) Before *proper names* and before the word *uno,* we may just as well employ *che,* as: *Egli è più eloquente* ***che*** *C.* In general *che* expresses the *measure,* whilst *di* only denotes the *higher degree.* When I say: *Il sole è più grande* ***della*** *luna,* the sense is: The moon is *small,* but the sun is *large.* These examples show, that the use of *di* or *che* is often rather arbitrary. In sentences, where several Genitives following each other would offend the ear, *che* is used instead of *di;* thus: *I libri della cugina sono migliori* ***che*** *i libri dei cugini,* in order to avoid ***dei libri dei cugini.***

As much (as many) — as, corresponds to *tanto, a — quanto, a*, as:

Ho tanti libri quanti voi, I have as many books as you.

NB. As, when meaning *in the same condition*, is *tale — quale* (adjective): as:

Vi rendo i libri tali quali li ho ricevuti.
I give you the books back as I have received them.

Words.

Lo scarafággio,[1]) the beetle.
l'insetto, the insect.
l'ápe, the bee.
il vérme, *il báco*, the worm.
la montágna,[2]) the mountain.
la séta, the silk.
la séra,[3]) the evening.
l'Olánda, Holland.
l'elefánte, the elephant.
il camello, the camel.
la natúra, the nature.
il móndo, the world.
l'árte, the art.
l'ásino, the ass.
il pázzo, the fool.
il savio, the wise man.
fedéle, faithful, true.
caldo, warm.
fértile, fertile.
fórte, strong.
popoláto, a, peopled, populous.
amáto, a, loved, beloved.
disprézzato,[4]) *a*, despised.
ordinariaménte, adv. usually.
spésso,[5]) often.

Reading Exercise. 33.

L'Europa è più piccola dell' Asia. La Germánia è più fértile dell' Olanda. L'ape ed il baco da seta sono utilíssimi insetti. Il sávio è più felice del pazzo. Mia sorella è più grande di me. Questo scarafaggio è più grosso di quello. Il tetto della chiesa è più alto che largo. La strada è più lunga che larga. Queste sale sono più larghe che lunghe. Questa serva ciárla (*chatters*) più che *non* lavora (*works*). Egli sa (*knows*) più che *non* dice. I palazzi dei duchi sono grandíssimi e bellíssimi. Era un ragazzo póvero povero.*) L'elefante è il più grande di tutti gli animali terrestri. Il

*) By the repetition of an adjective the expression becomes more emphatic, as: *povero*, poor; *povero povero*, very poor, poor as a churchmouse. Similar forms are: *bel bello*, quite at one's ease, *pian piano*, softly etc. Ex.:

Don Abbondio tornava bel bello dalla passeggiata verso casa (M.).
D. A. went home from his walk quite slowly.

1) From the Lat. *scarabaeus;* Fr. *scarabée;* Sp. *escarabajo.* — 2) From the Lat. *montanea (montana);* Fr. *montagne;* Sp. *montaña.* 3) Lat. *serum;* Prov. *ser* (m.); Fr. *soir.* 4) *Dis-prezzo;* the word *prezzo*, price, from the Lat. *pretium;* Fr. *prix;* OFr. *preis, pris;* Prov. *pretz;* Sp. *prez* (glory) and *precio* (price); Germ. Preis; Engl. *price.* 5) Lat. *spissus*, thick. Fr. *épais;* OFr. *espais;* Sp. *espeso.* The It. *spesso* also means „thick, dense" etc.

cavallo è più bello del camello. La di Léi zia è più laboriosa della di léi figlia. La città di Venezia è più bella della città di Trieste. Era una péssima faccénda (*business*). Queste poma sono migliori di quelle pere. Queste susine sono óttime. I metalli sono utilissimi agli uómini. I mesi di Lúglio e d'Agosto sono caldissimi. L'uomo (il) più ricco non è sempre il più felice.

Traduzione. 34.

1. This wine is worse than water. That beer is not so (less) bad. December and January are the coldest months of the year. Also (the) November is often very cold. (The) dogs are the most faithful of all (the) animals. She is a very poor girl. Thy brother is older than thy cousin. (The) simple nature is more amiable than (the) art. The count's palace is more high than broad. This house is not so high. These books are not so good as those. (The) iron is a very useful metal; [it] is more useful than (the) gold and (the) lead (*piómbo*). The most useful insects are the bee and the silk-worm (*baco da seta*).

2. The children of the poor (*pl.*) are often happier than the children of the rich (*pl.*). Emily is a very fine girl; she is also better than her sister Lucy. This mountain is very high, higher than all the other mountains of this country. It is the highest mountain which I know (*che io conosca*). The 22nd of June is the longest, the 22nd of December the shortest (*corto, a*) day of the year. Mr. Calamari is a very polite (*cortése*) man; he is more polite than his brother. The rose is the finest of all (the) flowers. Mr. A. is a *very respectable* (from *integro*) man.

Dialogo.

Signorina Maria, è felice?	Oh sì, sono felicissima; più felice di mia sorella Giulietta.
È infelice il suo (*your*) vicino?	È meno infelice di suo fratello ch'è in America.
Qual è il metallo*) più utile?	Il ferro.
Quali sono i metalli più pesanti?	L'oro ed il piombo sono i più pesanti metalli.
Come trova (*do you find*) questa birra?	È cattivissima.
Avete della birra migliore?	No, Signore, non ne abbiamo altra (*no other*).
Qual è il mese più freddo dell' anno?	I mesi di Gennaio e di Febbraio sono ordinariamente freddissimi.

*) When the *Sup. relat.* follows its noun, the article is frequently omitted.

È salubre il clima di quel paese?	Sì, è saluberrimo.
Che cosa ha (Ella) fatto (*done*) nella contrada?	Ho dato un soldo ad una ragazza povera povera.
Come parla egli la lingua italiana?	Parla benóne;*) meglio (*better*, adv.) di suo fratello Luigi.
Come scrive sua (*your*) cugina?	Ella scrive meglio di me.
Qual' è l'animale più crudele?	La tigre è un animale crudelissimo; essa (*he*) è più crudele di tutti gli altri animali.
Dove si trova il miglior ferro?	Il ferro migliore si trova in Isvézia.

Twentieth Lesson.

On the regular verb. Verbi regolari.

The verb consists of two elements, viz. the *root* and the *terminations*. The former is always *invariable* in regular verbs; the latter, however, undergo certain variations, by which *persons* and *tenses* are distinguished.

By the *termination* of the *Infinitive Mood* we distinguish *three* different forms of conjugation, viz.:

The *first* conjugation, with the Infinitive Mood ending in ***are,*** as: *trováre*, to find.

The *second* conjugation, with the Infinitive ending in ***ere,*** as: *véndere*, to sell.

The *third* terminating in ***ire,*** as: *sentire*, to feel.

N o t e.

The vowel preceding the last syllable *-re* is *characteristic* of the whole conjugation. The inflexions *after* these characteristic vowels are nearly alike in all three conjugations.

Some terminations are even always the same; they are:

The 2nd pers. Sing. ending in **i.**
„ 1st „ Plur. „ „ **mo.**
„ 2nd „ Plur. „ „ **te.**

*) Adjectives and adverbs sometimes take the terminations by which the meaning of substantives is modified, as: *lene*, well, *benone*, very well; *póvero*, poor; *poverino*, poor little.

I. Conjug.	II. Conjug.	III. Conjug.
Infinit.	*Infinit.*	*Infinit.*
trov-are,	**vénd-ere**,	**serv-íre**,
to find.	to sell.	to serve.
(Charact. vowel *a*)	(Charact. vowel *e*)	(Charact. vowel *i*).

Indicativo.

Presente.

Io tróv-*o*, I find	vénd-*o*, I sell	serv-*o*, I serve
tu —*i*, thou findest	—*i*, thou sellest	—*i*, thou servest
egli —*a*, he finds	—*e*, he sells	—*e*, he serves
noi —*iámo*, we find	—*iámo*, we sell	—*iámo*, we serve
voi —*áte*, you find	—*éte*, you sell	—*ite*, you serve
eglino tróv*ano*, th. find	vend-*ono*, they sell.	sérv*ono*, they serve.

Imperfetto.

Trov-*áva*, I found	vend-*éva*, I sold	serv-*iva*, I served
—*ávi*, thou foundst	—*évi*, thou soldst	—*ivi*, thou servedst
—*áva*, he found	—*éva*, he sold	—*iva*, he served
—*avámo*, we found	—*evámo*, we sold	—*ivámo*, we served
—*aváte*, you found	—*eváte*, you sold	—*iváte*, you served
—*ávano*, they found.	—*évano*, they sold.	—*iváno*, they served.

Definito.

Trov-*ái*, I found	vend-*éi*, I sold	serv-*ii*, I served
—*ásti*, thou foundst	—*ésti*, thou soldst	—*isti*, thou servedst
—*ò*, he found	—*è*, he sold	—*ì*, he served
—*ámmo*, we found	—*émmo*, we sold	—*ímmo*, we served
—*áste*, you found	—*éste*, you sold	—*iste*, you served
—*árono*, they found.	—*érono*, they sold.	—*írono*, they served.

1) Concerning the *formation* of the Italian verb we give the following hints: The verbs of the I. Conj. are partly verbs of the first Latin conjugation, partly they derive from verbs of the II. and III. Lat. conjugation. Thence the great number of the verbs belonging to the I. Ital. conjugation, whereas those of the II. and III. are by far less numerous. The *irregular* Ital. verbs, however, belong almost exclusively to the II. and III. conjugation.

The Lat. *Praesens*, *Imperfectum*, and *Perfectum* are still extant as the It. *Presente*, *Imperfetto*, and *Definito*. This is also the case with the *Praesens Conjunctivi*, whereas the *Imperfetto Soggiuntivo* derives from the Lat. *Plusquamperf. Conjunct.* (*amassi* = *amavissem.*). The composition of the tenses with *habere*, though rarely, already occurs in Latin. The Romance *Futuro* is but a blending of the *Infinitive* with the *Praesens* of *habere*. Thus: *venderò* = *(a)vendere ho* (i. e. *habeo*), I have to sell = I shall sell. In the same way the *Condizionale* is but the *Infinitive* with the *Perfectum* of *habere*, as: *sentirei* = *(a)sentire habui* = *(a)sentir* = *e(bb)i*, literally: I had to feel = I should feel.

Futuro (semplice).

Trov-*erò*, I shall	vend-*erò*, I shall	serv-*irò*, I shall
—*erái*, thou wilt	-*erái*, thou wilt	—*irái*, thou wilt
—*erà*, he will	—*erà*, he will	—*erà*, he will
—*erémo*, we shall	—*erémo*, we shall	—*irémo*, we shall
—*eréte*, you will	—*eréte*, you will	—*iréte*, you will
—*eránno*, th. will	—*eránno*, th. will	—*iránno*, th. will

Condizionale.

Presente.

Trov*eréi*, I should	*éi*, I should	serv*iréi*, I should
-*erésti*, thou wldst.	-*erésti*, thou wldst.	-*irésti*, th. wouldst
-*erébbe*, he would	-*erébbe*, he would	-*irébbe*, the would
-*erémmo*, we shld.	-*erémmo*, we shld.	-*irémmo*, we shld.
-*eréste*, you would	-*eréste*, you would	-*iréste*, you would
-*erébbero*, they w.	-*erébbero*, they w.	-*irébbero*, they w.

Imperativo.

Tróva, find (thou).	*véndi*, sell (thou).	*sérvi*, serve (thou).
*non trováre**) do (thou) not find.	*non véndere*, do (thou) not sell.	*non servire*, do (thou) not serve.
troviámo, let us find.	*vendiámo*, let us sell.	*serviámo*, let us serve.
trováte, find (you).	*vendéte*, sell (you).	*servíte*, do (you) serve.

Soggiuntivo.

Presente.

Ch'io tróv-*i*, that I find	vénd-*a*, that I sell	serv-*a*, that I serve
che tu —*i*, that you find	—*a*, that thou sell	—*a*, that thou serve
ch'egli —*i*,**) that he find	—*a*,**) that he sell	—*a*,**) that he serve
che noi —*iámo*, that we find	—*iámo*, that we sell	—*iámo*, that we serve
che voi —*iáte*, that you find	—*iáte*, that you sell	—*iáte*, that you serve
ch'eglino tróv-*ino*, that they find.	vénd-*ano*, that they sell.	sérv-*ano*, that they serve.

*) In the ancient form of languages in Greek for inst., the infinitive is used for the imperative. Little children are apt to do the same.

**) The *3rd. pers. Sing.* of the *Pres. Soggiunt.* is of great importance, because, used *without* the pronoun *(Ella)*, it stands for the *Imperative* of the *polite form*, fs inst.: *Trovi!* (Do) find! *Venda!* (Do) sell! *Serva!* (Do) serve! This form is, perhaps, *elliptical*, a verb such as *voglio* (I will) or *dico* (I say) etc. being understood, so that the whole construction would be properly: (*Voglio* or *dico che Ella*) *venda!* The difference from the affirmative and inter-

Imperfetto.

Se io trov-*ássi*, If I	vend-*éssi*, If I	serv-*íssi*, If I
se tu -*ássi*, if thou	-*éssi*, if thou	-*íssi*, if thou
s'egli -*ásse*, if he	-*ésse*, if he	-*ísse*, if he
se noi -*ássimo*, if we	-*éssimo*, if we	-*íssimo*, if we
se voi -*áste*, if you	-*éste*, if you	-*íste*, if you
s'eglino -*ássero*, if they	-*éssero*, if they	-*íssero*, if they

Infinito Passato.

Aver trov-*áto*, having found. | aver vend-*úto*, having sold.
aver serv-*íto*, having served.

Participi e Gerundi.

Presente.

Part. trov-*ánte*,*) finding. vend-*énte*,*) selling.
Gerund. trov-*ándo*, finding. vend-*éndo*, selling.
serv-*énte*,*) serving.
serv-*éndo*, serving.

trov-*áto*, *a*, fond. vend-*úto*, *a*, sold.
Gerund. avendo trov-*ato*, having found. avendo vend-*uto*, having sold.
serv-*íto*, *a*, served.
avendo serv-*ito*, having served.

Compound tenses. Tempi composti.

Passato indefinito (indeterminato).

Io ho	*trovato, venduto, servito,*	I have	found.
tu hai		thou hast	sold.
egli ha		he has	served.

Passato più perfetto.

Io aveva	*trovato, venduto, servito,*	I had	found.
tu avevi		thou hadst	sold.
egli aveva		he had	served.

rogative form, with which the Imperative of the polite form is easily confounded, will be best seen in the following table:

I. Conj.	**II. Conj.**
You find, *(Ella) trova.*	You sell, *(Ella) vende.*
Do you find? *trova (Ella)?*	Do you sell? *vende (Ella)?*
Do find! ***trovi!***	*Do* sell! ***venda!***

III. Conj.

You serve, *serve.*
Do you serve? *serve?*
Do serve! ***serva!***

*) Seldom used.

Primo anteriore.

Io ebbi trovato, venduto, servito, I had found, sold, served.

Futuro composto.

Io avrò trovato, venduto, servito, I shall have found, sold, served.

Condizionale.

Passato.

Io avrei trovato, venduto, servito, I should have found, sold, serv.

Soggiuntivo.

Passato.

Ch'io abbia	that I have	found.
che tu abbi	*trovato, venduto, servito,* that thou hast	sold.
etc. etc.	etc. etc.	served.

Più Passato.

(Se) Ch'io avessi trovato, venduto, servito, (If) that I had found sold, served.

Note.

The interrogative, negative and negative-interrogative forms of all regular and irregular verbs are exactly like those of the auxiliary verbs, *with* or *without* personal pronouns, as:

With pronoun.	*Without pronoun.*
Io compro, I buy.	*Compro,* I buy.
compro io? do I buy?	*compro?* do I buy?
Io non compro, I do not buy.	*non compro,* I do not buy.
Non compro io? do I not buy?	*non compro?* do I not buy?

Words of the following Reading Exercise.

Divíse (def.) he distributed.
il béne, goods, wealth.
riserbáre, to keep, to reserve.
solaménte, solely; but.
l'anéllo, the ring.
disse (def.), he said.
a chi, to him who . . .
saprà (will know) will be able to.
l'azióne, the action.
generóso, a, generous.
partíre, to depart, to set out.
ritornare,[1]) to return.
dopo, after.
lo straniéro, the stranger, foreigner.
mi, me, to me.
affidáre,[2]) to entrust.
la cassétta,[3]) the chest.
piéno, a, full, filled with.

1) Lat. *tornare,* to turn on a lathe; Sp. *tornar;* Fr. *(re)tourner.* 2) From a Lat. type *ad-fidere* instead of *confidere.* 3) Dim. of *cassa.* This word, Sp. *caja;* Prov. *caissa;* Fr. *caisse;* Engl. *case* and *cash,* from the Lat. *kapsa* (κάψα), trunk.

prèndere,[1]) (irreg.), to take.
la sicurézza (*sicurtà*), security.
potúto (past part. of *potére*), been able.
rubáre,[2]) to steal.
la máno, the hand.
sálvo, a, sure, saved.
invéce, in (its) stead.
il ritorno, the return.
d'altrúi, of another, other people's.
fedelménte, adv. faithfully.
béne, adv. well.
non — che / *se non* } only.
il dovére, the duty.
scelleráto, a, wicked.
il móndo, the world.
restituíre, to render, to give back.
passáre,[3]) to pass by.
la peschiéra, the fish-pond.
precipitáre, to precipitate.
l'aiúto, help, assistance.
si, himself.
córsi (def.), I ran.
prónto, a, ready, quick.
caváre, to draw out.
tenúto, a (past part.), obliged.
soccórrere (irr.), to assist.
il pericolo, the danger.
scambievolménte,[4]) adv. mutually.
allóra,[5]) then.
addormentáto, a, fallen asleep.
l'órlo,[6]) the brink.
il precipízio, the precipice.
éi, (inst. of *egli*), he.
vi (added to the Infinitive), there, in, into.
cadúto, a (past part.), fallen.
lo (acc.), it, him.
liberáre, to deliver, to free.
abbracciáre, to embrace.
teneraménte, adv. tenderly.
déve, must (3rd. sing. pres.).

Reading Exercise.

Un padre e tre figli.

Un ricco padre divise a tre figli i suoi beni. Si riserbò solamente un anello prezioso (*precious*) e disse: Questo sarà dato a chi di voi saprà fare l'azione più bella*) e più generosa. I figli partirono e ritornarono dopo tre mesi.

Il primo disse: Uno straniero mi ha affidato una cassetta piena d'oro senza prénderne (*to take for it*) sicurtà alcuna. Avrei potuto *rubarla (to steal it)* a man salva *(without any danger)*; ma invece al suo ritorno gliel' (*it him*) ho fedelmente restituita. Il padre rispose (*answered*): Tu hai fatto bene, ma però (*nevertheless*) non hai fatto che il tuo dovere; saresti stato il più scellerato uomo del mondo a rubarla (liter.: *to*

*) The superlative is often placed after the substantive.

1) From the Lat. *prehendere*. The family of this word is very numerous in the Romance languages. 2) From the LL. *de-raubare, derobare* = *robam* i. e. *vestem eripere*. Sp. *robar;* Engl. *to rob;* Fr. *(dé-)rober*. 3) Probably from a freq. of *pandere* (Supin. *passum);* Fr. *passer;* Sp. *pasar;* Port. Prov. *passar;* Engl. *to pass*. 4) This adverb from the Infin. *cambiare*, to change, from the Lat. *cambiare* in lieu of *cambire;* Sp. Port. *cambiar;* OFr. *cangier;* Fr. *changer;* Engl. *to change*. 5) Lat. *ad illam horam;* Fr. *alors*. — 6) Lat. *orula*, Dim. of *ora*, brink; Fr. *orle;* Sp. *orla, orilla*.

steal it = if you had stolen it). Ognuno deve restituir*) fedelmente quel ch' (*that which*) è d'altrui.

Il secondo disse: Io passava un giorno *vicino ad* (*close by*) una peschiera; vidi (*I saw*) precipitarvi un fanciullo. Senza il mio aiúto ei *si sarebbe annegato* (*had been drowned*). Io corsi pronto e lo cavai salvo dall' acqua (*water*).

Anche la tua azione è buona, rispose il padre, ma anche tu non hai fatto che il tuo dovere. Siamo tutti tenuti a soccórrerci (*to assist each other*) nei pericoli scambievolmente.

Il terzo allora disse: Un giorno io ho trovato un mio nemico (*See Lesson* 14, *Note* 3) addormentato sull' orlo d'un precipizio. Voltándosi (*on turning round*) ei vi sarebbe caduto; io *l'ho* (*have him*) liberato dal pericolo. Ah figlio! disse il padre, abbracciándolo (*embracing him*) teneramente; a te (*to you*) si deve (*must be given*) l'anello.

Il fare (*doing*) del bene *agli stessi nemici* (*even to enemies*) è l'azione più bella e più generosa.

Exercises**)

on the three regular Conjugations.

I. Conjugation.

Yesterday I found (*Def.*) my book on the bench in the garden. Did you (*Ella*) find (*Def.*) what you sought? I have found nothing. To-morrow I shall pass by your house. Do not buy (2. *Plur.*) these cherries; they are not yet ripe. What do you buy? I shall buy a silk waistcoat for my brother, and I shall send *it him* (*glielo*) by (*per mezzo di . . .*) the footman. Our old nurse often told (*Impf.*) us this story, when we were still children. Do you stay at home this afternoon? I should stay at home, if I were not invited. Stay where thou art! (*Do*) call the servant (maid)! I shall call her directly. Three thirds form a whole. I would still hope, if I *did* not *know* (*sapessi*) that all hope is vain. Do not (thou) always speak! It is not good (*bene*), if (*che*) the children always speak. *Do* (you) speak! What *do* you *want* (*vuole*)? I *shall see* (*vedrò*), whether I can do what you wish. We should also buy these flowers, if we had not bought too many (*troppi*) other flowers. You (*Ella*) would surely find your umbrella, if you would seek better. How should I *seek*, if I am sure (*certo*), that it is not here? We shall stay here, till (*finchè*) our father *will have* (*sarà*) arrived from London. When *do* you *think* (*crede*), that he will arrive? If [the] men loved [the] truth, [the life] would be more agreeable.

*) Before consonants (except s impura) the Infinitive sometimes drops its final *e*.

**) In these Exercises the English expressions are accommodated to the Italian translation.

the bench, *la panchetta*,[1]) *lo scanno*.
what, *quel che*.
to seek, *cercare*.
to pass, *passare*.
by, *presso*[2]) *di . . .*
to buy, *comprare*.
ripe, *maturo*.
waistcoat, *il gilè*.
to send, *mandare*.
the footman, *il servitore*.
nurse, *la balia, la nutrice*.
old, *vecchio*.
to tell, *raccontare*.
the story, *la storia*.
still, *ancora*.
children, *ragazzi*.
to stay, *restare*.
afternoon, *dopopranzo*.
to invite, *invitare*.
to call, *chiamare*.[3])
the maid-servant, *la serva*.
directly, *subito*.
to form, *formare*.
a whole, *un intiero*.[4])
to hope, *sperare*.
all, *ogni* (invariable).
the hope, *la speranza*.
vain, *vano*.
whether, *se*.
to wish, *desiderare*.
the flower, *il fiore*.
surely, *certamente*.
umbrella, *ombrella, (f.)*[5]).
how, *come*.
here, *quì*.
to arrive, *arrivare*.
to love, *amare*.
truth, *la verità*.
life, *la vita*.

II. Conjugation.

Why dost thou beat this dog? I beat it, because it has bitten me. *Do* not beat the poor boy! He is innocent. I thought (that) you had repeated your lesson. Repeat every day carefully what (*quel che*) you have learned. Believe me, Sir, I tell you the truth! I would not say it, if I *did* not *believe* (*credessi*) it. What dost thou fear? I do *not* fear *anything* (*nulla*). Do not be afraid, Miss! I shall protect you. I fear, you *might fall* (*Pres. Sogg.*). It is better to be loved than to be feared. God wishes (*transl.* will) that we love him, but not that we fear him. If I did not fear to offend you (*di offenderla*), I should repeat you the words [which (*che*)] he has said (*dette*). We are glad to see you in good health. *Has* the child fallen? No, but I was afraid that it *should fall* (*Imperf. Sogg.*). Why did you fear lest (*che*) it *might fall* (*Pres. Sogg.*)? The enemies retreated. I shall not leave this place, till you have told me, why you have slandered me! Do repeat the last verse of this song! I should have repeated the whole song, if I had not been

1) Dim. of *panca*, bench; from the OHG. *banc;* Prov. *banc;* Sp. Port. *banco;* Fr. *banc.* The femin. forms Fr. *banque;* It. Sp. Prov. Port. *banca* mean bank (exchange). 2) From the Lat. *pressus*, thronged. Fr. *près;* Prov. *pres.* 3) Lat. *clamare.* 4) Lat. *integer;* Sp. *entero;* Prov. *enteir;* Port. *inteiro;* Fr. *entier;* Engl. *entire.* 5) Lat. *umbrella.*

too tired. The ship parted (*Imperf.*) the waves majestically. I tremble, *when I think of it* (*a pensarci*). *He who* (*Chi*) will not sow, shall also not reap. Do you sell your house? He sold (*Def.*) his house and got 20,000 francs for it.

to beat, *báttere.*
the dog, *il cane.*
because, *perchè.*
bitten, *morsicato.*
me, *mi* (precedes the verb).
innocent, *innocente.*
to think, *crédere.*
to repeat, *ripétere.*
the lesson, *la lezione.*
every day, *ogni giorno.*
carefully, *sollecitamente.*
to learn, *studiare; imparare.*[1])
to believe, *crédere.*
to see, *vedére.*
with my own eyes, *coi miei propri occhi.*
I tell you, *Le dico.*
I would say it, *lo direi.*
it, *lo* (precedes the verb).
to fear, to be afraid, *temére.*
Miss, *Madamigella.*
to protect, *protéggere.*
to fall, *cadére* (with *essere*).
it is better, *è meglio.*
to be loved, *essere amato.*
than, *che.*
to be, *di essere.*
(he) will (wants, wishes), *vuole.*
him, *lo* (precedes the verb).
you, *Le* (Dat. precedes the verb).
the word, *la parola.*
to be glad, *godére.*
to see you, *di vederla.*
health, *salute* (*f.*).
the enemies, *i nemici.*
to retreat, *cédere.*
to leave, *lasciare* (fut. *lascerò*).
the place, *il posto.*
till, *finchè* (with *sogg.*).
why, *perchè.*
to slander, *calunniare.*
last, *último, a.*
verse, strophe, *la strofa.*
song, *canzone,* (*f.*).
whole, *tutto, a,* (with *def. art.* following).
too, *troppo.*
tired, *stanco.*
ship, *bastimento.*
to part, to divide, *féndere.*
majestically, *maestosamente.*
wave, *onda,* (*f.*).
to sow, *seminare.*
to reap, *miétere.*
also, *anche.*
to get, *ricévere.*
francs, *franchi.*
for it, *ne* (precedes the verb).

III. Conjugation.

Does the water boil? It has not yet boiled, but il will boil directly. Hot (transl. *boiled*) water has a disagreeable taste. Who sews this fine linen shirt? My sister sews it, and I sew half a dozen (transl. *a* half d., See the Numerals) collars for papa. How have you slept? Not very (*troppo*) well. I do not sleep well, when it is as hot as now. You (*Ella*) sleep too much. Sleeping (*Infinit.*) too much is *quite*

1) From LL. *parare,* to make sure. With the signif. *to master, to seize on:* Fr. *s'emparer;* Port. *emparar;* Prov. *amparar.*

as (*così*) bad as eating too much. *I beg your pardon (perdoni),*[1]) I think (*mi pare*) it is (*sogg.*) not too much, if we sleep 8 hours. The child will not sleep, because it is ill. I avoid the society of this man, because I feel that he *does not love me (non mi vuol bene)*. The hours fly and do not return. When shall you depart? I shall depart at 10 o'clock, and my mother and (my) sisters will depart at 4 o'clock in the afternoon. I do not think (that) he will depart still today. *Do* follow me, Sir! I shall have the honour to accompany you (*di accompargnarla*). Hark! Was not this the report of a gun? I follow the advise which you gave me. Do you feel the importance of this decision? Do you hear the music? The maid-servant serves since (*già da*) 12 years in our house. If he served (*Imperf. Sogg.*) his master with zeal and fidelity, he would have a better situation. When do you go out? I go out at 11 o'clock in the morning. If I would go out (*Imperf. Sogg.*) in the morning, I should not go out in the afternoon. *Do* dress yourself more warmly. You are not clad warmly enough. He clothes the poor (*Plur.*) every year.

to boil, *bollire.*
directly, *súbito.*
disagreeable, *disaggradévole.*
taste, *gusto,* (*m.*).
to sew, *cucire.**)
fine, *bello, a.*
shirt, *camicia,* (*f.*).
linen, *di tela.*
dozen, *dozzina,* (*f.*).
half, *mezzo, a* (preced. by the def. art.).
collar, *collaretto,* (*m.*).
papa, *babbo.*
to sleep, *dormire.*
well, *bene.*
it is hot, *fa caldo.*
as — as, *così — come.*
now, *adesso.*
too much, *troppo.*
bad, *male.*
eating, *mangiare.*
ill, *ammalato.*
to avoid, *fuggire.**)
the society, *il commercio.*
to feel, *sentire.*
to fly, *fuggire.*
to return, *ritornare.*
to depart, *partire.*

---

*) *Cucire* and *fuggire* are perfectly regular, although, for the sake of pronunciation, they offer some *seeming* orthographical variations. Their conjugation is as follows:

Pres. Ind.	io fu*gg*o	io cu*c*io
	tu fuggi	tu cuci
	egli fugge	egli cuce
	noi fuggiamo etc.	noi cuciamo etc.
	eglino fu*gg*ono.	eglino cu*c*iono
Pres. Sogg.	che io fu*gg*a.	che io cu*c*ia.

1) From the LL. *perdonare,* probably formed in analogy of the German ver-geben, to for-give; Fr. *pardonner;* Sp. *perdonar;* Engl. to *pardon.*

in the afternoon, *pomeridiane* (See the Numerals).
to think, *crédere.*
still, *ancora.*
to follow, *seguire.*
honour, *onore,* (*m.*).
hark! from *sentire.*
the report of a gun, *il colpo*[1] *di fucile.*[2])
advice, *il parere.*
you gave me, *mi diede.*
which, *che.*
to feel, *sentire.*
importance, *importanza,* (*f.*).
dicision, *decisione,* (*f.*).
music, *música.*
year, *anno,* (*m.*).
master, *padrone.*
zeal, *zelo,* (*m.*).
fidelity, *fedeltà,* (*f.*).
better, *migliore.*
situation, *posto,* (*m.*).
to go out, *sortire.*
morning, *mattina,*[3]) (*f.*).
to dress, } *vestire.*
to clothe, }
yourself, *si* (precedes the verb.)
warmly, *caldamente.*
enough, *abbastanza.*

in the morning, *antimeridiane* (See the Numerals).
poor, *povero.* every year, *ogni anno.*

Twenty first Lesson.

Peculiarities of different verbs.

1) Verbs ending in *care* and *gare*, as: *pagare,*[4]) to pay; *mancare,*[5]) to fail, when *c* or *g* is followed by *e* or *i*, insert an *h* after *c* or *g*, so as not to lose the *hard* sound, as:

pago, I pay.	*manco,* I fail.
paghi, thou payest.	*manchi,* thou failest.
paga, he pays.	*manca,* he fails.
paghiamo, we pay, etc.	*manchiamo,* we fail, etc.

2) Those in *ciare, giare* or *sciare,* where *i* does but indicate the soft pronunciation, drop this *i* before *e* or *i* as:

io mangio, I eat.	*io lascio,* I let.
tu mangi (not *mangii*), thou eatest).	*tu lasci,* thou lettest.
Fut. *io mangerò,* I shall eat.	Fut. *io lascerò,* I shall let.

1) Lat. *colaphus* (κόλαφος), fisticuff, in LL. *colapus, colopus;* Sp. Port. *golpe;* Prov. *colp.;* OFr. *colp;* Fr. *coup.* 2) Lat. *focus;* LL. *fucillus, fugillus,* flint (stone); Sp. *fusil;* Fr. *fusil,* gun. — 3) Lat. *matutinum* (i. e. *tempus*); Fr. *matin;* Prov. *mati.* The Sp. *mañana;* Fr. *demain;* It. *domani* derive from *mane.* 4) The Lat. *pacare,* to tranquillize, had in LL. the signif. "to pay". Sp. Port. *pagar;* Prov. *pagar, payar;* Fr. *payer.* 5) From the Lat. *mancus,* defective, incomplete. Sp. *mancar;* Fr. *manquer.*

The verbs in *chiare* and *gliare* are subject to the same rule, as:

Io consiglio, I advise.
tu consigli, (not *consiglii*), thou advisest.
io apparecchio,[1]) I prepare.
tu apparecchi.

In the Fut., however, *io consiglierò*.

Finally this rule holds good of the verbs in *iare*, whenever the *i* of the termination is preceded by *another vowel*, as: *annoiare*,[2]) to annoy:

io annoio.
tu annoi (and not *annoii*).

Note. Those verbs in *iare*, which in the *1st. pers. sing.* of the *Pres. dell' Indic.* have the stress on the *i*, as: *spiare*,[3]) to spy; Pres. *io spio*, take another *i* in the *2nd pers. sing.*, as each *i* must be distinctly pronounced. Thus: *tu spii*, *tu invii*, thou sendest.

3) In the *1st*, *2nd*, *and 3d pers. sing.* and in the *3d pers. plural*, the majority of the verbs in *ire* assume the terminations *-isco*, *-isci*, *-isce* — *iscono*, instead of *o*, *i*, *e* — *ono*, as:

fin*isco*, I end.	finiámo.
fin*isci*.	finíte.
fin*isce*.	fin*iscono*.

In the *Subjunctive Mood* (and in the 2nd pers. sing. of the *Imperative*) a similar alteration takes place, as:

Ch'io fin*isca*, that I may end.	che noi finiamo.
che tu fin*isca*.	che voi finiate.
ch'egli fin*isca*.	ch'eglino fin*iscano*.

Some verbs have both terminations. As: *Io nutro*, I nourish, and *Io nutrisco*. (A table of the verbs ending in *isco* will be found in Lesson 35.)

4) The *1st pers. sing. Imperf. dell' Indic.* sometimes terminates in *avo*, *evo*, *ivo*, as: *amavo*, *vendevo*, *sentivo*.

5) The termination *ato* of the *past part.* of the I Conjug. is sometimes contracted into *-o*, as *privo*, bereft, for *pri-*

1) Lat. *apparare;* Fr. *appareiller;* Sp. *aparejar;* Prov. *aparelhar;* Engl. *to apparel.* 2) The subst. *noia*, ennui, Port. *nojo;* Sp. *enojo;* Prov. *enuei;* OFr. *enoi, enui;* Fr. *ennui*, from the Lat. *in odio.* 3) The subst. *spia;* Sp. Prov. *espia;* OFr. *espie;* Fr. *espion;* Engl. *spy;* Germ. Spion, from the OHG. *speha*, to spy.

ato; tocco, touched, for *toccato etc.* These contracted forms have now become real *adjectives* and are mostly met with in poetry.

(Further irregularities in the conjugation will be noticed as they occur.)

Words.

Il próssimo, the neighbour.*)
il debito, the debt.
la scála, the stairs.
il cuóre, the heart.
la páglia,[1]) the straw.
la preghiéra,[2]) the prayer.
la bellézza, the beauty.
la virtù, the virtue.
il dovere, the duty.
la stanza, the room.
il cammíno, the way.
la pióggia. the rain.
il tuóno, the thunder.
la gioventù, youth.
la vecchiaja, old age.
la candela, the candle.
il té, the tea.
la bugía,[3]) the lie, falsehood.
preferire, to prefer.
il pappagallo, the parrot.
il lavoro, the work.
capire (*isco*),[4]) to understand.
temére,**) to fear.
cercáre,[5]) to search, to look for.
restituire (*isco*), to render.
perdonáre, to pardon.
desiderárc, to desire, to want.
fiórire (*isco*), to bloom, flourish.
arrossíre (*isco*), to blush.
ubbidíre (*isco*), to obey.
portáre, to carry, wear, bear.
cantare, to sing.

Reading Exercise. 35.

Preferisce Ella carta bianca a carta rossa? Perchè non paghi i tuoi débiti? Pagherò i miei débiti, tostochè (*as soon as*) avrò il mio danaro. Non mancherò di fare (*to do*) il mio dovére. Manca un volume di questa ópera (*work*). Perchè non mangi queste ciriege? Non le mangio, perchè non sono buone. Non mi consigli di comprare questo pappagallo? Perchè non apparecchi il pranzo? Tu invii troppo danaro a quell' uomo. Egli mi annoia, e tu mi annoi ancor più. Finisca (Ella) una volta il suo lavoro! Io non lo finirò, perchè non ho tempo. Capite quel che (*that which*) io vi ho detto? Sì, capisco tutto. Non mi (*me*) lascerò muóvere (*move*) dalle vostre preghiere! Ogni uomo preferisce

*) Liter.: The next.

**) The learner should carefully observe on which *e* the stress is laid, whether on the *antepenultimate*, as in *crédere*, to believe; *véndere*, to sell, or on the *last but one*, as in *cadére*, to fall; *dovére*, to be obliged.

1) Lat. *palea;* Sp. *paja;* Port. Prov. *palha;* Fr. *paille.* 2) The verb *pregare;* Fr. *prier;* Engl. to *pray* from the Lat. *precari.* — 3) Probably from the OHG. *biugan*, to bend. 4) Lat. *capere*, to hold. 5) Lat. *circare*, to go to and fro. OFr. *cerchier;* Fr. *chercher;* Prov. *cercar.*

la gioventù alla vecchiaja. Non cantare tutto il giorno! Parecchi uomini preferiscono la bellezza alla virtù, ma noi preferiamo la virtù alla bellezza. Quando finirete il vostro tema? Molti bei fiori fioriscono nel nostro giardino. L'anno scorso (*last*) un aloè fiorì nei giardini dell' imperatore. Le scienze (*the sciences*) fiorivano in Italia nel secénto (*17th century*). Perchè spii le azioni del prossimo? Ubbidiscono i suoi (*your*) scolari? Il maestro vuole che lo scolare ubbidisca. Di mattina *(in the morning)* preferisco il tè al caffè. Che cosa cerchi? Cerchiamo i suoi (*your*) libri. Mangerò una pera. Mangerei con piacere alcune poma. Lasciate in pace (*in peace*) ogni creatura! Lásci*ami* in pace (*let me alone*)! Perchè non lasci in pace i tuoi condiscépoli *(fellow-scholars)*?

Traduzione. 36.

1. Doest thou prefer this pencil to that pen? On the contrary (*al contrario*), I prefer this pen to that pencil. Do (thou) not spy the actions of thy neighbour! These pupils do not obey. The girl blushed. Every man avoids (flies) the danger. Do *you* prefer tea to coffee or coffee to tea? Thou doest not well (*bene*) advise thy friends. Thou failest (= doest not come) every day at school. Obey the voice (*alla vóce*) of thy heart. He (*Colui*) who (*che*) obeys the voice of his heart will always be happy. We look (for) Charles' cap and Frederick's hat. Seek and thou wilt find! We should search, if we had a candle. I do not understand these books. Do you understand this word?

2. The lesson ends to-day at 4 o'clock. Have done, or [*transl.* if thou doest not leave off (finish)] I shall leave the room. Thou annoyest thy friend; have done (cease) (*thou*)! Thou wilt look for thy pens and thou wilt not find them (*le*, precedes the verb). Mankind (*L'umanità*) flourishes like (*cóme*) a flower. This aloè will bloom in (a) hundred years. Wilt thou prepare (the) dinner? Doest thou pay (for) these books? I shall not fail to do my duty. Embrace thy father, child! Obey *(2nd pers. sing.)*! I shall not obey! I wish that *you* obey *(Subj.) your* father. Why do you not give back the book to your fellow-pupil?

Dialogo.

Quale di questi libri preferisce Ella?	Preferisco questo a quello.
Quando finisce oggi la scuola?	Finirà alle quattro.
Pare (*it seems*) che tu ti annoi in questa società?	Le chiedo scusa *(I beg your pardon)*! Non mi annoio.
Perchè non mangia Ella questa pera? Non è buona?	Certamente che (*certainly*) è buona! Ma ho già *ady)* mangiato troppo.

Non apparecchi la tavola pel pranzo?	Già, già*). La apparecchierò subito.
Che mi *(me)* consigli di fare?	Ti *(thee)* consiglio di restare a casa.
Quando pagherà Ella il conto *(note)* del sartore?	Lo (it) pagherò domani.
Perchè non m' *(me)* invii i miei abiti?	Te li invierò la settimana prossima.
Ama (Ella) la lingua francese?	Preferisco la lingua inglese.
Che cosa mangeremo stasera (= questa sera)?	Non so *(know)*; credo che avremo uccelli colla polenta.
Non vuol (Ella) far colazione *(breakfast)* con noi?	No grazie! Ho mangiato troppo iersera (= ieri sera) *(last night)*.

Twenty second Lesson.

On pronouns. De' pronomi.

Pronouns are used to avoid the repetition of preceding substantives. There are six kinds of them, *viz.* 1) the *Personal;* 2) the *Demonstrative*; 3) the *Possessive;* 4) the *Interrogative;* 5) the *Relative* and 6) the *Indefinite.*

Personal pronouns. *Pronomi personali.*

There are two kinds of Personal Pronouns, viz. *Absolute* (assoluti) and *Conjunctive* (congiunti). The latter are only employed in the *dative* and *accusative* case.

The Italians consider a personal pronoun as *conjunctive* i. e. *coupled* with the verb, when *no stress* is laid on the pronoun and no *preposition precedes*, as in the following example: *Give me a book*, where the stress is laid on the word *book* and not on the pronoun *me*, which therefore is considered to be a *conjunctive pronoun.* In the sentence however: *Give the book to me and*

*) *Già già* is often used, as in the above sentence, as a rapid, interrupting affirmation, like the English "directly" etc. Besides, *già già* means *already*, as:

V il sole inclinato che già già toccava la cima del monte (M.)

H oked at the sinking sun, that already touched the summit of the mountain.

not to my sister, the stress is laid on the word *to me*. Therefore *to me* is an *absolute pronoun*.

The former of the above sentences is rendered thus:

Dátemi un libro. (Here the pronoun and verb are even contracted into one word.)

The latter example is translated as follows:

Date il libro a me e non a mia sorella.

Note. The reason why the Romance languages have two sorts of personal pronouns is, because those little words like *mi, ti, si, li etc.* (French *je, tu, me, le, la etc.*) are not strong enough to bear the stress, when laid on the pronoun. Therefore more sonorous forms must be chosen. As, however, the Italian nominatives *io, tu, egli, ella etc.* are more sonorous than the French *je, tu, il, elle etc.*. the Italian language does not want particular forms for the *Nominative* case, whereas in French *moi* must be used instead of *je,* and *toi* for *tu* etc. In Italian only the Dative and Accusative cases have double forms.

We begin with the *Absolute Personal Pronoun* (pronome personale assoluto).

First person.

Sing.		Plur.	
	Io, I		*noi*, we
	di me, of me		*di noi*, of us
	a me, to me		*a noi*, to us, us
	me, me, myself		*noi*, us, ourselves
	da me, from (by) me.		*da noi*, from (by) us.

Second person.

Sing.		Plur.	
	tu, thou		*voi*, you
	di te, of thee		*di voi*, of you
	a te, to thee		*a voi*, to you
	te, thee, thyself		*voi*, you, yourselves
	da te, from (by) thee.		*da voi*, from (by) you.

Third person.

Maschile.

Sing. *egli*[1]) (*ei, e', esso*), he, it
di lui[2]) (*di esso*), of him, of it
a lui (*ad esso*), to him, to it
lui (*esso*), him, it
da lui (*da esso*), from (by) him, from (by) it.

1) *Egli* from the Lat. *ille; ei* and *e'* are contractions of *egli*.
2) *Lui* from a corrupted form *illujus* instead of *illius*. *Loro* from *illorum*, as we hinted before.

Plur. *eglino (essi)*, they
di loro (di essi), of them
a loro (ad essi), to them
loro (essi), them
da loro (da essi), from (by) them.

Femminile.

Sing. *ella*) (lei, essa)*, she, it
di lei (di essa), of her, of it
a lei (ad essa), to her, to it
lei (essa), her, it
da lei (da essa), from (by) her, from (by) it.

Plur. *élleno (esse)*, they
di loro (di esse), of them
a loro (ad esse), to them
loro (esse), them
da loro (da esse), from (by) them.

For both genders and numbers.

Nom. — —
Gen. *di sè,**)* of himself, herself, itself, themselves
Dat. *a sè*, to himself, herself, itself, themselves
Acc. *sè*, himself, herself, itself, themselves.
Abl. *da sè*, from (by) himself, herself, itself, themselves.

Observations.

1) *Egli, ella* are generally applied to *persons*, — *esso, essa* to *things*. The English *it*, when referring neither to a person nor to a thing, as: *it is true, it is cold*, is best not rendered in Italian; Ex.: *è vero, è (fa) freddo.*

2) Instead of *ella* we may say *la*, especially in the familiar style, as: *La* (i. e. *la pianta*, the tree) *non mi vuol far noci.* (*M.*) It will not bring me nuts.

3) *I myself, thou thyself, he himself etc.* is translated with *io stesso* for the masc., *io stessa* for the femin. Plural: *noi stessi, noi stesse*, and so on. Instead of *stesso, a,***)* we may

*) The polite mode *Ella (Lei)* is declined exactly like this pronoun and commonly written with a capital letter. The *Plural* (*you*, gentlemen, ladies) is expressed by *Lor* with the substantives *Signori, Signore, Signorine.* Ex. You will be satisfied, ladies! *Lor Signore saranno contente.*

**) The pronoun *sè* is written with an accent in order to distinguish this word from the conjunction *se* (if.). When used with *stesso*, self, the accent is omitted.

***) In order to avoid the meeting of *three* consonants, the words *stesso, a*, pl. *stessi, e, prefix* an *i*, when preceded by a word ending in a consonant. Thus: *Coll' (nell') istesso*, inst. of *col (nel) stesso.* (See the Article.)

as well say *medésimo, a.* Examples: *noi stessi (noi medésimi),* we ourselves; *Lei stessa,* you yourself, *voi stesse* (fem.), you yourselves. With the verbs *essere* and *parére* (to seem) ***desso, a,*** pl. *dessi, e,* are sometimes employed instead of *stesso* or *medésimo,* in which case the personal pronouns are omitted before these words, as: *Egli è desso,* (not *lui desso*), it is he himself. If a stress is laid on the pronoun, e. g. I have done it myself, it is usually placed after the verb, thus: *L'ho fatto* ***io.***

4) The English *my own self, your own selves etc.* is always rendered by *io medesimo, voi medesimi* or *io stesso etc.*

Words.

la calamita, the magnet.
la vittória, the victory.
il servitóre, the footman.
il vécchio, the old man.
la palla,[1]) the ball (musket-ball).
il cestéllo, the basket.
il rumore, susurro, the noise.
la medicina, the medicine.
il piatto, the plate.
uscíto, a, gone out.
stare (di casa), to live, reside.
attirare, to attract.
pensare,[2]) *a,* to think.
vádo,[3]) I go.
va, he (she, it) goes.
andáte, (you) go.
váda (Ella), go (you); do go.
giuocáre, to play.
viéni, come (thou).
venite, come (you).
vénga (Ella), come *(you)*; do come.
rassomigliáre, to resemble.
non — mái, never.
dice, says.

Reading Exercise. 37.

Chi dice questo? Io — ella, eglino stessi — élleno stesse. Pensi a me? Penso a te — a voi — ad esse. Non ho pensato a te, poverino. Ella è dessa. Penseremo a voi — a lui — a lei — a loro. Non mandare *(send)* il danaro a me! Chi è stato quì *(here)*, egli od ella? Viene con me*), con noi. Vada con loro a casa. Andate con essi (loro). Egli non rassomiglia a me. Io rassomiglio a te. Parlate di loro? Non parlar di me! Noi parliamo spesso di voi. Chi ha parlato di noi? La calamita attira il ferro a se. Dove sta Ella

*) Instead of *con me, con te, con se* we may say *meco, teco, seco.* In poetry the forms *nosco, vosco* are also found for *con noi, con voi.*

1) From the OHG. *balla, palla,* ball, globe. 2) As we hinted before, from the Lat. freq. of *pendere.* Other derivates of the same Lat. form are *pesare,* to weigh; Fr. *peser;* Sp. *pesar.* 3) From the Lat. *vadere,* which, however, served to form only a few persons of the verb *andare,* to go. The etymology of this verb, Fr. *aller;* Sp. *andar;* Port. Prov. *anar* is not yet established. Different types like *ambitare, aditare,* and *addere* have been proposed. The French verb *aller* has also taken some forms from the Lat. *ire,* which still exists in Italian as a defective verb.

di casa? Non sono mai stato da te, da lui, da loro. Ella pensa sempre a se stessa. È questa la Signorina Farini? È dessa. Egli giuoca con me, con lui, con lei. Venite da noi.

Traduzione. 38.

1. My brother and I, we have heard the noise. Who will have the ball, thou or he? Frederick, your (*il tuo*) teacher has seen that you (*tu*) have beaten a child. Who? I? Yes, your own self. Who has broken (*rotto*) the plate? Not I! You and he, you were not polite. She and Emily are gone out. Who is gone out with them? Come (*2nd pers. sing.*) with me! Come to (*da*) us!

2. Who speaks with me? I speak with *you*. You (*tu*) speak of her and (of) her sister. For whom is this medicine? It*) is for yourself. Does she live with (*da*) *you?* She lives with us. *You* do not think of me. You always think of yourself. One must not (*non si déve*) always speak of one's self (*se stesso*). Do you still (*ancora*) think of them (*m.*)? I still remember (*io mi ricórdo ancora*) you (*Gen.*), them (*m.*), them (*f.*). Have *you* brought the book yourself? Yes, myself. She plays with me. I play with her. Is it himself? Yes, it is himself (*desso*).

Dialogo.

Chi ha detto ciò (*so*)?	Io — lui**) — ella.
Chi viene?	Noi.
Pensate voi a' vostri amici?	Pensiamo sovente (*often*) a loro.
Per chi sono questi stivali?	Sono per me.
Chi ha portato questo cestello?	Mia sorella stessa.
Chi ha fatto ciò (*that*)?	Nè (*neither*) io, nè (*nor*) ella, nè noi, nè voi.
È ella arrivata sola?	No, è arrivata con me.
Che fa la calamita?	Attira il ferro a se.
Chi ha battuto quel fanciullo?	Io no, ma Luigi.
Di chi è quel libro?	È mio.
E quei guanti?	Sono suoi (*yours*).
Dove sta (Ella) di casa?	Sto (*I live*) nella contráda San Nicolò, da mio zio.
A chi ha dato il suo (*your*) danaro?	L' (*it*) ho dato a lui ed a lei.
Ha dato a me il suo temperino?	Credo di sì.***) (*I think he has*).
È egli a casa?	No, è uscito.

*) The pupil must not forget that the Italian pronoun always agrees with its preceding substantive.

**) Very often the Accus. *lui, lei* and *loro* are used instead of the *Nom.*, if a stress is laid on the pronoun.

***) Liter.: *I believe (of), yes.*

Twenty third Lesson.

Conjunctive personal pronouns. Pronomi personali congiunti.

As we mentioned in the foregoing lesson, these Pronouns have only the *dative* and *accusative* cases. They are:

Singular.	*Plural.*
Dat. *mi*, me (to me).	*ci* (*ne*), us (to us).
Acc. *mi*, me.	*ci* (*ne*), us.
Dat. *ti*, thee (to thee).	*vi*, you (to you).
Acc. *ti*, thee.	*vi*, you.

Masculine.

Dat. *gli*, him (to him).	*loro*, them (to them).
Acc. *lo* (*il*), him.	*li*, them.

Feminine.

Dat. *le* (*Le*), her (to her); *you* (to *you*).	*loro*, them (to them).
Acc. *la* (*La*), her; *you*.	*le*, them.

Singular.	*Plural.*
Dat. *si*, to himself, to herself etc.	*si*, to themselves.
Acc. *si*, himself, herself etc.	*si*, themselves.

Concerning the construction of these pronouns the following rules are of the utmost importance:

1) The conjunctive pronouns *precede* the verb in the *Indicative* and *Subjunctive* mood. They likewise precede the *Imperative* mood, when *negatively* employed. Ex.:

Egli ***mi*** *da*, he gives me.
io ***vi*** *vedo*, I see you.
tu ***gli*** *dai*, thou givest him.
egli ***l'*** *ama*, he loves her.
egli ***mi*** *ha dato*, he has given me.
io ***vi*** *ho veduti*, I have seen you.
tu ***le*** *hai dato*, thou hast given her.
non ***mi*** *dare*, do not give me.
non ***vi*** *tormentate*, do not torment yourself.
ch'egli ***mi*** *ami*, that he may love me.

2) When *two* of these pronouns, one in the *dative* and the other in the *accusative* case, meet in the same sentence, they both *precede* the verb, and the *dative* is

always placed *before* the accusative.*) At the same time the *i* of the pronouns *mi, ti, ci, vi* is changed into *e*, and *gli* introduces an *e* before the accusative with which it is always contracted. Thus:

Instead of *mi* — *me lo*, it to me; *me la*, her to me: *me li*, them (*m.*) to me; *me le*, them (*f.*) to me; *me ne*,**) some to me.

„ „ *ti* — *te lo*, it to thee; *te la*, her to thee; *te li*, them *(m.)* to thee; *te le*, them *(f.)* to thee; *te ne*, some to thee.

„ „ *ci* — *ce lo*, it to us; *ce la*, her to us; *ce li*, them to us; *ce le*, them to us; *ce ne*, some to us.

„ „ *vi* — *ve lo*, it to you; *ve la*, her to you; *ve li*, them to you; *ve le*, them to you; *ve ne*, some to you.

„ „ *gli* — *gliélo*, it to him; *gliéla*, her to him; *gliéli*, them to him; *gliéle*, them to him; *gliéne*, some to him.

Note. For the sake of euphony *le* (her, *fem.*) is not used before *lo, la, li, le, ne;* thus when speaking of a female person we should say: *gli*, as: *I give it to her* (to the mother), *Io glielo do* (not *le lo*). *Gli* is also employed for the *polite* form *Le*, to *you*: but then it is commonly written with a capital letter, as: *Glielo*, it to *you; Gliela*, her to *you; Glieli*, them to *you; Gliele*, them to *you; Gliene*, some to *you.*

3) The conjunctive personal pronouns *follow* the verb in the *Imperativo* (except the negative Imperative. See 1), *Infinito, Gerundio* and *Participio passato.* In this case they are *contracted* with the verb, and the *Infinitive* drops its final vowel, for the sake of euphony. Thus:

Vedérvi, to see you (for *vedére vi*).
amárlo, to love him. — *portarla*, to carry her.
mostrármelo, to show it me.
dárgliene, to give him (her, *you*) some.
crédimi, believe me. — *credéteci*, believe (you) us.
amándomi, loving me. — *vedéndolo*, seeing him.
avéndolo veduto, having seen him.
avéndogliene parlato, having spoken to him of it.

---

*) Ancient writers also have the Accusat. before the Dat. Thus Boccaccio says: *Avérlomi fatto conóscere* instead of *avermelo f. c.* Very rarely they employ *three* pronouns at once, as (Bocc.) *Che siamevene doluta*, that I had complained of it to you. Such an accumulation of pronouns is quite obsolete now.

**) The vowel is also changed before *ne*, of it.

4) In poetry, when the verb is a *monosyllable* or a *voce tronca*, i. e. a word with the *accento* on the final vowel (as: *dirà, amò etc.*), the pronouns *lo, la, le etc.* are sometimes coupled with the verb, which then loses the *accento*. The consonant of the pronoun (except *gli*) is *doubled*. Ex.:

Instead of *lo farò*, I shall do it — *farollo.**)
„ „ *vi dirò*, I shall tell you — *dirovvi.*
„ „ *la amò*, he loved her — *amolla.*
„ „ *si pentirà*, he will repent of . . . — *pentirassi.*
„ „ *ci dà*, he gives us — *dacci.*
„ „ *gli dirà*, he will tell — him *diragli* (not *diraggli*).

5) *Loro* (to them) generally follows the verb, as: *Egli ha detto loro*, he has told them.

(Further irregularities will be explained in the Second Part.)

Words.

Accompagnáre,[1]) to accompany.
raccontáre,[2]) to tell, to relate.
prestáre, to lend.
premiáre, to reward.
lodáre, to praise.
ascoltáre, to hear, to listen to . . .
tagliáre,[3]) to cut.
temperáre (una penna), to make a pen.
volentieri, adv. willingly, fain.
la camícia,[4]) the shirt.
il zecchíno,[5]) the sequin = 9 shillings.
l'esposizione, the exhibition.
caro, dear.
il fiorino,[6]) the florin.
la scárpa, the shoe.
il vetráio, the glazier.
il falegnáme,[7]) the joiner.
fáte, do (you)!
súbito,[8]) directly.
dia, give me (polite form)!

*) In this case the *accento* is not written, but the stress remains on the same syllable.

1) From *compagno*, companion; OFr. *compaign;* Sp. *compaño;* Germ. Kumpan from the barbar Lat. *cum-panis*, he who eats the same bread with somebody. 2) *Contare* from the Lat. *computare;* Sp. *contar;* Prov. *comtar;* Fr. *(ra)conter;* Engl. *to count.* The Fr. *compter* is of the same origin. 3) Probably from the Lat. *talia* or from a type *taculare*, to cut asunder; hence the Rom. *taca*, piece. 4) From LL. *camisa, camisia;* Sp., Port., Prov. *camisa;* Fr. *chemise.* 5) From *zecca*, mint, coining-place; Fr. *séquin.* 6) The first florins coined at Florence showed a lily or flower-de-luce; thence the name *fiorino*, i. e. little flower. 7) A compound of *fa(re)*, to make and *legname*, wood-work, timber-work. 8) From the Lat. *subitanus* instead of *subitaneus;* Prov. *sobdan;* Fr. *soudain* and *subit.*

Reading Exercise. 39.

Io vi ascolto. Ascoltátemi! Non lo ascoltare! Mi témperi*) una penna! Gliela temperérò subito. Alfredo m'ha prestato un libro utile. Mi racconti (Ella) una storia! Dammi un libro! Dáteci due bicchieri ed una bottiglia. Non mi date questo bicchiere, ma cotesto. Date loro una dozzina di guanti. Le darò cinque zecchini. Io le ho dato due cento fiorini. Mi dia la Sua penna d'acciaio! Gliela darò subito. Ella me lo darebbe, se lo avesse ancora. Io Le darei del danaro, se io ne (*some*) avessi. Egli me lo da. Egli non me lo da. Dáteci della birra. Dáteci anche una bottiglia di vino. Io vi darò del vino e della birra. Non posso (*can*) dárvene; non ne ho. Fátelo subito! Lo farò. Ve lo dico (*I tell*). Díteglielo! Accompagnátemi! M'accompagni a casa! Non posso accompagnarla. L'ho accompagnata**) iersera. Egli me lo aveva prestato. Mi presti il suo bastone. Io Gliel' ho già (*already*) prestato due volte (*twice*). Non Glielo presterò più. Ci ascolterà (egli)? Sì, egli ci ascolterà. Egli non v'ascolterà.

Traduzione. 40.

1. Wilt thou hear me? I hear thee. I do not hear *you*. Will you accompany me? Accompany (*2nd pers. sing.*) me! Do (*2nd pers. sing.*) not accompany me. Tell (him so) it him. Do not tell (it) him. Thou hast not told (*detto*) (him so) it him. Thou wilt not have lent it him. Do (*2nd pers. sing.*) not lend it her. Give (*2nd pers. sing.*) me 10 bottles of wine and 25 glasses. I lend it *you*. I do not lend it *you*. Believe (*2nd pers. sing.*) me that I love thee. Do (*2nd pers. sing.*) not believe him!

2. I should lend *you* some money, if *you* were more diligent. Why dost thou not lend it me? Lend (*2nd pers. sing.*) it me! He lent me 25 lire. You would lend me 28 lire if you had them. She has bought me a dozen (pair) of stockings (*calzétta*) and half a dozen (pair) of gloves. Has she given them (*masc.*) to him? No, she has not given them to him. Give them (*fem.*) to the glazier. Do not give them to the joiner. Have you given me 250 lire? I have not given them to *you*, but to *your* brother. He has not told this story to *us*, but to *your* brother. I shall not tell it (*fem.*) to *you* I shall tell it to *them* (*masc.*). Do***) tell it (*fem.*) to us!

*) As the Imperative has no 3rd pers. sing., the polite form must always be rendered by the *Subjunctive mood*. (See Less. XX.

**) As *Ella* is *fem.*, the adjectives and participles referring to this pronoun ought likewise to be feminine. This rule, however is very often neglected, when *Ella* means a male person.

***) The English Imperative with *Do* or *pray*, as: *Pray, tell it*, is often rendered by *pure*, as: *Lo dica pure.*

Dialogo.

Dáteci questo libro?	No, non ve lo darò.
Perchè non volete (*will you*) dárcelo?	Perchè (*because*) non siete diligenti.
Mi dia quell' anello!	Non posso dárglielo; è troppo caro.
Vuol (Ella) (im)prestare quel libro a mia sorella?	Glielo presterò volentieri.
È (Ella) stata all' esposizione di Parigi?	No, non vi (*there*) sono stato, ma ne (*of it*) ho inteso (*heard*) parlare molto.
Chi vuol avere questa penna?	La dia a me!
Dite la verità?	La dico (*speak*) sempre.
M'ami tu?	No, non amo te, ma amo tuo fratello.
Non gliene parlare!*)	Non gliene parlerò.
Chi vi ha temperato (*made*) questa penna?	Il nostro maestro ce l'ha temperata.
Li amate?	Sì, li amiamo molto.
Quando mi pagherà (Ella)?	Non posso ancora pagarla, ma La pagherò fra poco (*soon*).
Voglio avere (*I want*) la mia paga (*payment, salary*).	Non posso dárvela adesso, ma *ve* la darò (*I shall give*) stasera alle 8.

Reading Exercise.

Il mattino fortunato.

Un buon padre ed i suoi fanciulli uscírono di gran mattina, ed a poca distanza incontrárono una povera donna che dietro si menava un asinello che portava due panieri, in ciascuno de' quali trovávasi un fanciullino: tutto annunciava in essi l'indigenza; erano coricati sulla paglia e coperti di cenci; nulladimeno graziosamente sorridévano verso i passeggieri, non avendo ancora il sentimento della propria miseria. La madre ferma l'asinello, mostra quelle infelici creaturine a' passeggieri, chiedendo loro qualche soccorso. Nell' istesso momento passárono per colà un vecchio ed una povera vecchierella, infermi ambedue e mendici che, tenéndosi **) per braccio, camminávano appoggiati su d'un bastone.

*) With the *negative Imperative* Mood of the 2nd pers. Sing. (See *Avere*) the conjunctive personal pronouns rather *precede* the verb.

**) *si*, when referring to a foregoing plural, is rendered in English by *one another* or *each other*.

Words.

Il mattino, the morning.
fortunato, happy, fortunate.
incontrare, to meet.
diètro, behind.
menare, to lead.
il paniére, the hamper.
tróvavasi (instead of *si trovava*).
annunciare, to indicate, to show.
l'indigenza, want, indigence.
essere coricato, to be placed, to lie.
la páglia, the straw.
coperto, *a*, covered.
i cenci, old rags.
nulladiméno, nevertheless.
graziosaménte, kindly.
sorridere, to smile.
verso, at.
i passeggieri, passers by.
próprio, *a*, own.
la miséria, misery, wretchedness.
fermare, to stop.
mostrare, to show.
chiédere (irr.), to ask.
il soccórso, the help.
istesso, *a*, for *stesso*, *a*, (See the Note Page 92).
per colà, (through) there.
infermo, *a*, ill, sick.
ambedúe, both.
mendíco, *a*, begging; beggar.
tenére (irr.), to hold.
per, by.
il bráccio (pl. *le bráccia*), the arm.
camminare, to walk.
appoggiare, to rest upon.
su (*di*), upon.
il bastone, the stick.

Twenty fourth Lesson.

Demonstrative Pronouns. Pronomi dimostrativi.

These pronouns are used to point out the person or thing spoken of, and are declined with *di* (Gen.), *a* or *ad* (Dat.) and *da* (Abl.).

Questo, *a*, this; pl. *questi*, *e*, these.
quello, *a*, that; pl. *quelli*, *e*, those.

(For the forms *quel*, *quegli*, *quei*, *que'*, See Lesson 13.)

Cotesto, f. *cotesta*; pl. *cotesti*, *coteste*, this, that; pl. these, those (See Page 49).
costúi, f. *costéi*; pl. *costoro*, this . . . here etc.
colui, f. *coléi*; pl. *coloro*, that etc.

Ciò means *that*, in quite a general sense; *Ciò che* or *quel che* means *that which*.

Note. *What* = that which, should invariably be rendered by *quel* (or *ciò*) *che*, as:

I believe what (= that which) I see.
Credo quel (ciò) che vedo.

Che, when used without a preceding substantive, is *not* relative but *interrogative* or *exclamative* (See Less. 13, 2).

Questi and *quegli*, when used in the *Singular* and *nominative case*, are only employed for *male persons*, as:

Questi fu felice, quegli sfortunato.
This one*) was happy, that one unhappy.

In the other cases *questo* and *quello* should be used, as:

L'ho dato a quello (not *quegli*).
I have given it to that (man etc.).

Costui and *colui* (this one — that one), commonly used of *persons*, frequently convey an idea of something despicable, as:

Non mi parlate di colei! (Gold.)
Do not speak me of that woman!

Colei ti ha dato uno schiaffo! (G.)
That base creature has given you a box on the ear!

Andiamo tanto lontano che colui non senta più parlare di noi. (M.)
Let us go so far away, that this wicked man does not hear any longer of us.

Ciò che and *quel che* are sometimes rendered by *what*, as:

Avrete ***ciò che*** *(quel che) volete.*
You will have what you want. (See the above Note.)

(*Costui, costei*, pl. *costoro* are seldom used.)

Note. When referring to a preceding substantive in the *genitive* case, the English commonly use *some* or *any*, when in the *dative*, — *there*, and when in the *ablativo*, — *from there, thereby etc.* In such a case the Italians use for the *genitive* and *ablative* ***ne*** [1]), and for the *dative* ***ci*** or ***vi***,[2])**) which always *precede* the verb. Ex.:

Ecco del presciutto; ne volete?
There is some ham; do you want some?

Ne *prenderò un poco.*
I shall take a little (*ne* not translated).

---

*) The English *one*, when following a demonstrative pronoun, is never translated in Italian.

**) *Ci* and *vi* are, for the sake of euphony, changed into *ce* and *ve*, when followed by one of the pronouns *lo, la, li, le, ne etc.*

1) Lat. *inde.* 2) Lat. *ibi.*

Va Ella a casa? *No, ne vengo.*
Do you go home? No, (that's where I come from) I come from there.*)

È in giardino suo padre? *Sì, vi è.*
Is your father in the garden? Yes, he is there.

È stata lei a Roma? *No, ma vi andrò quest'anno.*
Have you been in Rome? No, but I shall go there this year.

NB. *Ne* and *vi* or *ci* correspond exactly to the French *en* and *y*.

Interrogative Pronouns. Pronomi Interrogativi.

They are:

1) ***Chi,*** who? ***che,*** what?
2) ***Quale,*** masc. and fem. which?

They are declined as follows:

Chi, who?	*che,* what?
di chi, whose?	*di che,* of what?
a chi, to whom?	*a che,* to what?
chi, whom?	*che,* what?
da chi, from (by) whom?	*da che,* from (by) what?

Singular.	*Plural.*
Quale, which?	*quali,* which?
di quale, of which?	*di quali,* of which?
a quale, to which?	*a quali,* to which?
quale, which?	*quali,* which?
da quale, from (by) which?	*da quali,* from (by) which?

Chi is said of *persons*, *che* of things. *Di chi*, when used with the auxiliary verb *essere*, implies possession and corresponds to the English expressions: *Whose . . . is?* or *to whom belongs?*

The pupil should beware of mistaking *chi* for the relative *che*. *Chi* is *only* interrogative, and expressions such as *l'uomo chi . .*, *la donna chi . . .* are incorrect.

Chi is frequently used for *quello* or *colui che*. Ex.:

Rimettétevi ***a chi*** *intende la cosa.*
Depend upon *him who* understands the matter.

Come fa chi par che aspetti.
As he (a man etc.) does who seems to wait.

Con l'atto minaccioso di chi coglie un suo inferiore . . . (M.)
With the threatening mien of him who finds an inferior . . .

*) It may be stated at once, that the English way of answering simply with: *Yes, I do* or *No, I do not,* is by no means admissible in Italian.

Tutt' e due si volsero a chi ne sapeva più di loro. (M.)
Both applied to him who knew the matter better than they.

Instead of *che?* the Italians also very often say *che cosa?* (liter.: *which thing?*) or simply *cosa.* This latter mode, however, is not to be recommended.

Che serves for *both* genders and numbers, and is often used for *quale.* Ex.:

Di che città è (Ella)? From which town are you?

Quale asks for a certain person or thing among others of the same kind. Ex.:

***Quale** di questi libri comprerà?*
Which of these books will you buy?

Words.

Il portafoglio, the pocket-book.
la paúra, (the) fear, dread.
la beltà, the beauty.
il córpo, the body.
la ricompénsa / *il guiderdóne* } the reward.
la nobiltà, (the) nobility.
il commércio / *il negózio* } the commerce, trade.
l'agricoltúra, the agriculture, husbandry.
il conquistatóre, the conqueror.
rispondere, to answer.
comandare, to command.
avvezzo, accostumed.
la nascita, the birth.
l'albicocca,[1]) the apricot.
arricchire (-isco), to enrich.
giállo, a, yellow.
alzáto, a, risen up.
egualmente, equally.
nè — nè, neither — nor.
prométte, promises.
si créde, one believes.
credéte, believe (you).
spéra, hopes.

Reading Exercise. 41.

Ecco il mio portafoglio e quello di mio padre. La Svízzera è un paese che ha molte montagne. Che libri volete? Vóglio (*I will*) questi, non quelli.*) Ecco tre uccelli, quale vuol (Ella) comprare? Ne comprerò due. Che frutta sono queste? Sono poma, pere ed albicócche. Andate oggi a teatro? No, non vi andrò (*shall go*); non istò (*in lieu* of *sto,* I am) bene. Qual signore Le ha detto ciò? Qual è la più gran chiesa di Londra? Volete questo o quello? Chi ha fatto ciò? Questi, non quegli. Si**) crede quel che *si* spera. Chi è contento,

*) At the *end* of the sentence, before *che,* and before a *semicolon* or *colon, quelli* is better than *quegli.*

**) *Si,* when preceding a verb, is translated: *one* or *people.* See Lesson 27.

1) From the L. *praecox, praecoquus,* precocious. The word passed into the Arabic as *birqûq;* with the article *al-birqûq;* hence Olt. *albacocca;* Sp. Port. *albaricoque, albricoque;* Fr. *abricot;* Engl. *apricot;* Germ. Aprikoſe.

è ricco. Quelli che saranno diligenti, saranno premiati. Quel che dite (*say*) mi fa paura (*frightens me*). Che ricompensa avrò? Giulio Césare ed Alessandro Magno furono grandi conquistatori; questi*) morì giovine, quegli fu assassinato [1]) (*murdered*). Che cosa volete? Preferisco la nobiltà dell' anima a quella della náscita. Il mercante vuol comprare una casa. Quale vuol egli comprare? Di chi sono questi libri? Sono di mia zia. Di che paese (*country*) è Ella? Sono Italiano. Non credete *a chi* vi lusinga (*flatters*).

Traduzione. 42.

1. I sell my house and that of my cousin. He**) who is diligent will get (*avere*) a book. He who is in good health (*in buona salúte*), is happy. This ink is blacker than that. These gloves are white, those are yellow. It is the fault of him (the fault is of him) who has *told a falsehood (mentire)*. Answer him who calls! He spoke with the mien (*ária*) of (a man) him who is accustomed to (*a*) command. I shall give (*darò*) this watch to him who pays for (*pagáre*) it directly. Are these *your* boots? Whose are they? (They) are my brother's.

2. I prefer the beauty of the soul to that of the body. The king promises a reward to him who will catch the thief. (The) agriculture and (the) commerce are equally (*egualmente*) useful to (the) man; the former (*quella*) nourishes us, the latter (*questo*) enriches us. Have you any butter? Yes, I have some. *Pray, give me (me ne dia)* a little (*un poco*)! Have you thought of my gloves? Yes, I have thought of them. Were you at the theatre yesterday? Yes, I was there. Do you come (*viene Ella*) from town? Yes, I come from there.

Dialogo.

Quale di questi due portafogli è il suo?	Quello che tiene (*you hold*) in mano.
Quale di queste due vesti (*dresses*) preferisce (Ella)?	Preferisco questa a quella.
È questo il suo anello?	Sì, questo è il mio anello d'oro.
Sono questi i suoi guanti?	No, non sono i miei, sono quelli di mia cugina.
Ha (Ella) ricevuto la mia lettera?	Non ho ricevuto nè la di Lei lettera nè quella di suo padre.

*) *Questi* always refers to the *latter, quegli* to the *former* of two preceding nouns.

**) *He* or *she*, Pl. *those*, when followed by *who*, should be rendered by *quello, quella*, Plur. *quelli, quelle che*, or simply by *Chi*.

1) The subst. *assassino;* Fr. *assassin;* Sp. *asesino;* Engl. *assassin* from the Arabian *haschischin*, name of a murderous sect.

Il commercio è utile agli uomini?	Sì, è utilissimo, li arricchisce.
Quale casa vendete?	Abbiamo due case da véndere, quella di mio zio e quella di mio nonno.
Siete stati iersera al giardino púbblico?	No, non vi siamo stati, ma mia madre vi andrà (*will go*) stasera.
Ecco del presciutto[1]) e del pane; ne vuole (Ella)?	No, grazie, ne ho già preso (*taken*).
A chi devo (*shall I*) dare una ricompensa?	A chi la mérita (*deserves*).
Avete portato le bottiglie?	Mi scusi (*I beg your pardon*), non ci ho pensato.
È a casa il suo Signor padre?	No, Signore, non è a casa.

Reading Exercise.

Continuazione.

La vecchia donna guardava quei fanciullini infelici con un' ária esprimente in un tempo (*at once*) la più viva compassione ed il dispiacére di non *poterli**) soccórrere. „Poveri fanciullini!" esclamò essa con un commovente sospiro.

Ma ecco il piccolo Carlo, che prende la mano di suo padre e gli dice: Ieri, caro padre, ci hai dato uno scudo affinchè ce ne comperiamo dei trastulli. Quanto sarei felice, se tu volessi permétterci di dare quello scudo a questi poverini!

E tu, Rudolfo, rispose il padre volgéndosi verso l'altro suo figliuolo, che pensi della proposta di tuo fratello?

Sì, sì, caro padre! disse il ragazzo, diamo súbito quello scudo alla povera famiglia. Questo mattino sarà per me il più fortunato della mia vita.

E della mia anche, soggiunse il padre, stringendo le mani ad ambedue i ragazzi. Ecco lo scudo, Carlo, ed éccone**) un altro che darai in mio nome.

*) It is a peculiarity of the Italian language, that the conjunctive personal pronouns, when used with an *auxiliary verb of mood*, like *potere*, to be able, *dovere*, to be obliged etc., are commonly coupled with the auxiliary verb, as: *poterli soccorrere*, to be able to help *them*, instead of *potere soccorrerli*.

**) The personal pronouns (exc. *loro*) are coupled with *ecco* (there is, there are); thus *Eccomi* (here I am); *éccoti* (here you are, there you have); *éccolo* (there he is etc.). French: *me voici (voilà); te voici; le voilà* etc. Likewise: *éccone* (here you have of it etc.).

1) *Presciutto — pre-sciutto.* The second component, which is also seen in *asciutto*, dry, probably comes from the Lat. *sugare*,

Words.

Guardare, to look at.
l'ária, the air, mien.
esprimere, to express.
vivo, a, lively.
la compassióne, compassion.
il dispiacére, regret.
potére (irr.), to be able.
soccórrere (irr.), to help, to assist.
esclamáre, to exclaim.
commuóvere (irr.), to move.
il sospíro, the sigh.
prèndere (irr.), to take.
dice, says (from *dire*, (irr.).
affinchè, that, in order to.
il trastúllo, they toy.
voléssi, thou wouldst.
permèttere (irr.), to permit, to allow.
rispose, (def. of *rispóndere*, irr.), to answer.
volgéndo, turning round.
la propósta, the proposition.
diámo, let us give.
soggiúnse (def. of *soggiúngere*), to reply.
stringere la mano, to shake the hand.
darái, you shall (thou shalt) give.

Twenty fifth Lesson.

Possessive pronouns. Pronomi possessivi.

These pronouns do not differ from the Possessive adjectives (See Lesson 14). They are *never* used with a substantive.

masc.	*fem.*	*masc. (pl.)*	*fem. (pl.)*
Il mio,	*la mia,*	*i miei,*	*le mie,* mine.
il tuo,	*la tua,*	*i tuoi,*	*le tue,* thine.
il suo,	*la sua,*	*i suoi,*	*le sue,* his, hers *(yours).*
il nostro,	*la nostra,*	*i nostri,*	*le nostre,* ours.
il vostro,	*la vostra,*	*i vostri,*	*le vostre,* yours.
il loro,	*la loro,*	*i loro,*	*le loro,* theirs.

R e m a r k s.

1) The learner should remember that *loro* is invariable.

2) When speaking of a part of the body, the Italians never make use of a *possessive pronoun*, as:

Il capo mi duole, my head aches.

Egli si è rotto il braccio, he has broken *his* (own) arm.

Relative pronouns. Pronomi relativi.

These pronouns have some resemblance with the *Interrogative pronouns* from which they should be carefully distinguished. They are:

---

from *succus*, juice, sap. The Fr. *jambon;* Sp. *jamon* from the vulg. Lat. *comba (gamba)*, leg. The Engl. *ham* from the OHG. *hamma.*

Singular.

Masc. and fem.

Che, who, which.
di cui,[1]) whose.
a cui, to whom.
che, cui, whom, which.
da cui, from (by) whom, from (by) which.

Neuter (for things).

che (*il che*), what.
di che, of what, whereof.
a che, to what.
che, what.
dal che,*) from (by) what.

Plural.

Masc. and fem.

che, which.
di cui, of which, whereof.
a cui, to which.
che, cui, which.
da cui, from (by) which.

Observations.

1) *Che* is more frequent than *il* (*la*) *quale* and is employed for both genders and numbers, as: *Il padre* ***che, la madre che, il libro che.***

2) *Il che* is used instead of *che*, when relating to the *whole* of the foregoing sentence, as:

Mio padre mi richiama, ***il che*** *mi* ***obbliga*** *di partire.*
My father calls me back, *therefore***) I am obliged to depart.

3) *Cui* is generally said of persons, has no nominative case and commonly takes its place before the noun. The prepositions *di* and *a* may be omitted before *cui*, as:

Il ***cui*** (for il *di cui*) *amico*, whose friend.

4) In English the relative pronouns, though understood, are often omitted after the noun. In Italian they should always be expresed. Ex.:

---

*) *Da che (dacchè)* means *since*, but the ablative case is always *dal che* or *dalla qual cosa*, by which (thing), whereby.

**) Liter.: *Which obliges me to depart.* — In ancient writers *lo che (locchè)* occurs instead of *il che.*

1) Lat. *cujus.*

La lettera ***che*** *avete scritta,* the letter you have written.
Il ragazzo ***ch'io*** *ho veduto,* the boy I have seen.

Singular.

Masc.

Il quale, that, who, which.
del quale, of that, whose, of which.
al quale, to that, to whom, to which.
il quale, that, whom, which.
dal quale, from (by) that, whom which.

Fem.

La quale
della quale
alla quale } Like the Masculine.
la quale
dalla quale

Plural.

Masc.		Fem.	
I quali *dei quali* *ai quali* *i quali* *dai quali*	Like the Singular.	*Le quali* *delle quali* *alle quali* *le quali* *dalle quali*	Like the Singular.

Notes.

1) *Il quale* combines with the foregoing idea a new one of *equal weight*, whereas *che* only continues the thought with the addition of an idea of *secondary* importance, thus:

La lettera ***che*** *vi ho scritta, non è arrivata.*
The letter, I wrote you, has not arrived.

Gli uomini, ***i quali*** *dúbitano di tutto, sono infelici.*
Those who doubt of everything, are unhappy.

2) *Quale* is sometimes employed for *come* (as). Ex.:

Il re di Prussia, ***qual*** *granduca di Posnania.*
The king of Prussia as grand-duke of Posen.

3) *Tale quale,* plur. *tali quali* means *such as,* Ex.:

Tale quale *mi vede,* such as you see me.

4) When repeated, *quale* means *the one —, the other,* as:

Quale *è buono,* ***quale*** *è cattivo.*
The one is good, the other is bad.

Note. The pupil should bear in mind that *quale* with the *article* is *never* interrogative in Italian. Therefore he ought not to say, as in French: *il quale volete* (lequel voulez-vous)? but only ***Quale*** *volete?*

Words.

L'aggradevolézza,[1]) the amenity, sweetness.
la guarigióne,[2]) the recovery.
il lúpo, the wolf.
il taléntо, the talent.
l'ammiráglio,[3]) the admiral.
il battello a vapore, the steamer.
il proprietário, the proprietor.
i costúmi,[4]) the customs.
il pránzo, the dinner.
la scúsa, the excuse.
il bágno, the bath.
lontáno,[5]) far.
troppo, adv. and adj., too, too much.
negligentare / *trascurare* to neglect.
il fiume, the river.
aspettare,[6]) to expect.
invitare, to invite.
castigare, to chastise.
alloggiare / *abitare* to live, to reside.
vantare,[7]) to extol, to boast of.
fertilizzare, to fertilize.
stracciare, to tear.
la ferrovia,[8]) / *la strada ferrata* the rail-road.
la corona, th crown.
la violetta, the violet.
guadagnare,[9]) / *víncere* (irr.) to win, gain.
si chiáma, is called.
tanto / *altrettánto* as much.
adésso,[10]) now, just now.

Reading Exercise. 43.

Mio fratello è così grande come il tuo. Le sue (*your*) rose sono bellissime, ma sono meno belle delle mie. I nostri cani sono così fedeli come i loro. Ecco i miei ed i suoi, dove sono i vostri? Ogni pianta ha la sua proprietà; la violetta ha la sua; le rose hanno le loro. Il giovinetto, col quale siete arrivato la settimana scorsa, è morto (*has died*)

1) The root is the Lat. *gratus,* which in LL. is often used for *gratia;* Sp. Port. Ital. *grado;* OFr. *gred;* Fr. *gré (bon gré etc.)* The derivations are rather numerous. 2) The verb *guarire,* to heal; Fr. *guérir;* Prov. *garir;* OFr. *garir, warir,* from the Goth. *varjan;* OHG. *werjan,* to defend. 3) Like the Fr. *amiral;* Sp. Port. *almirante;* OFr. *amirant, amire,* from the Arab. *amir al bahr,* commander at sea. An erroneous analogy with the Lat. *admirari,* to admire, produced the LL. *admirallus,* from which derive the Engl. *admiral,* and the Germ. Admiral. 4) LL. *costuma* instead of *consuetudo;* Sp. *costumbre;* Port. *costume;* Prov. *costum;* Engl. *custom;* Fr. *coutume.* 5) From a Lat. type *longitanus;* Fr. *lointain;* Prov. *lonhdà.* 6) Lat. *expectare (= ex-spectare),* freq. of *ex-spicere.* 7) Lat. *vanitare,* Freq. of *vanare;* Fr. *vanter;* Prov. *vantar.* 8) *Ferrovia,* a neologism *(ferro,* iron, *via,* way). The Romance languages form some modern compound substantives without the help of prepositions in the Teutonic way. Such are: It *carta-moneta;* Fr. *papier-monnaie,* paper-money = banknote; Sp. *ferro-corril,* rail-way etc. 9) From OHG. *weidanjan,* to chase, to win; Fr. *gagner;* Prov. *gazanhar;* Engl. *to gain.* Nothwithstanding the resemblance the Sp. *ganar* derives from the LL. *ganare,* fr. *gana* envy. 10) Lat. *ad ipsum.*

questa notte. Il ragazzo, il cui padre è morto, alloggia adesso da noi. I costumi dei popoli antichi sono molto differenti dei nostri. La città ha le sue aggradevolezze, ma anche la campagna ha le sue. Il mercante che avete veduto da me, e da cui alloggia il mio amico B., è partito per Parigi. Quest' uomo è tale quale me l'avete dipinto (*described, represented*). L'imperatore d'Austria, qual re d'Ungheria, è possessore della corona di Santo Stéfano.

Traduzione. 44.

1. I find your garden very small. I beg your pardon (*Mi scusi*), Sir, it is not smaller than yours, it is *quite as* (*tanto*) large as that of my cousin. Where is your pen and where is mine? Which? That which I have made this morning. The English admiral who has gained (*riportato*) this victory, is Nelson. The baths of which he expects his recovery, are far from here. The dinner to which I was invited, has made (*reso*) me sick.

2. You have lost all (that) you had won. I shall do (*farò*) what I have promised (*promesso*). The river whose waters fertilize Egypt (*l'Egitto*), is called (*vien chiamato*) the Nile (*Nilo*). This is a disease (*male*, m.) to which I am subject (*soggetto*). Which hat is that? Is (it) *yours* or that of *your* friend? It is my friend's. All three, my sister, *yours*, and his arrived yesterday. (Transl. *My* s., yours, and his *are* arr. *all three* etc.) Mine came (*venne*) by the steamer, yours and his by (*su*) (the) rail(road.)

Dialogo.

Trova (Ella) il mio giardino più grande del suo?
Al contrario, lo trovo più piccolo del mio.

È esso così piccolo come quello di sua zia?
No, il suo (*hers*) è meno grande.

Io trovo il suo cane bruttissimo (*brutto*, ugly)!
Le chiedo scusa (*I beg your pardon*); egli è meno brutto del suo.

Come si chiama quell' ammiraglio inglese, che ha riportato la vittoria di Trafalgar?
Fu Nelson, celeberrimo ammiraglio inglese.

Questa signora è la madre di suo cugino?
No, è mia madre.

Chi è quel signore col capello bianco?
È il dottore (*Doctor*) B. che (Ella) ha veduto, due mesi fa, dal conte Malaguzzi.

Con che cosa ha il ladro (*thief*) aperto (*opened*) la porta?
L'ha aperta con un grimaldello (*master-key*).

Come vien chiamato il fiume, le acque del quale fertilizzano l'Egitto?
Quel fiume è chiamato il Nilo.

Ha (Ella) veramente una buona intenzione?	Le assicúro *(I assure you)* che la mia intenzione è così buona come sincera.

Twenty sixth Lesson.

Indefinite pronouns. Pronomi indefiniti.

They are used *without* substantives, whereas the *Indefinite Numerals* (See Lesson 17) are always employed *with* a noun substantive.

Altri (masc. sing.), another.
altrui[1]) (without Nom.), other's; other people's.
niénte,[2]) *nulla* } nothing. (Requires *non* before the verb.)
l'un l'altro, fem. *l'una l'altra* } one another.
pl. *gli uni gli altri*; fem. *le une le altre* }
l'uno (*a*) *e l'altro* (*a*) } both.
pl. *gli uni* (*le une*) *e gli altri* (*le altre*) }
tutto, *f. tutta* } all.
pl. *tutti*, *f. tutte* }
altro, something else.
altra (fem.) another one.
dessa, *a*, the same.
ognuno, *a*, every one.
chiúnque[3]) *chicchessia*[4]) *chicchè si voglia* *chi che si sia* } whosoever (mostly with *sogg.*).
qualcuno, *a* *qualcheduno*, *a* } some one, somebody.
certuno, *a*, any one, certain.
uno, somebody.

Observations.

1) *Altri — altri* means *the one — the other*, in a general sense (like *quale — quale*), as: *Altri è buono, altri è cattivo*, the one is good, the other is bad. Almost the same meaning has *chi — chi*, or *questi — quegli*, as: *Chi è dotto, chi è ignorante*, the one is a learned man, the other is ignorant.

1) Lat. *alterius* (Gen.). 2) Lat. *ne-ens*, Prov. *neien, nien;* Fr. *néant* (the Fr. *rien* from *rem.*) 3) Lat. *quicunque;* Fr. *quiconque.* 4) Comp. of *chi che sia*, whoever it be; Fr. *qui que ce soit.* Similar comp. are: *chicchè* (= chi che), whoever, whosoever, and *checchè* (= che che), whatever, whatsoever.

2) *Altrui* has no *nominative.**)

Gen. *d'altrui,* other people's.
Dat. *ad altrui,* to other people.
Abl. *da altrui,* from (by) other people.

Sometimes, the preposition before *altrui* may be dispensed with, as: *Quel che si deve altrui,* what one owes to other people. *L'altrui* (with the article) means: other people's own.

3) *Certuno* is but the inversion of *un certo,* a certain, and therefore *never* takes the article.

4) *Nulla* like *niente* are sometimes real substantives, as:

Vergogna e dovere sono un nulla per lui (M.).
Shame and duty are as nothing to him.

Words.

Il difétto, the fault.
il padróne, the master.
il camerâta,[1]) the comrade.
il nipote, the nephew.
cattivo,[2]) *a,* bad, wicked.
venúto, a, (part. past) come.
gelóso,[3]) *a,* jealous.
la ragióne, the reason.
aver ragione, to be right.
la génte, people.
la gelosía, jealousy.
ballare, to dance.
fumare, to smoke.
giuocare, to play.
sporcare, to soil.
disprezzare, to contemn, to despise.
biasimare,[4]) to blame.
guastare,[5]) to spoil.
vóglio, I will, I want.
dúnque,[6]) therefore, thus.
vuói, thou wilt, you will.
fo (fáccio), I do.
fáte, you do, do!
fánno, they do.
aver torto,[7]) to be wrong.
conosciúto, a, known.
scostumato, a, naughty.
aiutare, to help.
è peccato! It is a pity!
incontrare, to meet.

*) *Ariosto,* however, uses it as such; but only with the *Infinitive:*

Per offerir altrui (nom.) *più* . . . .
As another one offered more . . . .

1) From the Lat. *camera,* room, thus properly cohabitant of a room; Fr. *camarade;* Sp. *camarada;* Engl. *comrade;* Germ. Kamerad. 2) From Lat. *captivus,* prisoner. The affinity of "bad" and "prisoner" is clear. In the other Romance languages only the Fr. *chétif* and the Sp. (obsol.) *cativo* have the accessory notion of bad, whereas Fr. *captif* and Sp. *cautivo* mean "prisoner". The English "caitiff" is of the same stock. 3) From Lat. *zelus,* zeal; *geloso* is only the variante of *zeloso,* zealous; Fr. *jaloux;* Prov. *gelos;* Sp. *zeloso.* 4) From the Eccl. Lat. *blasfemare* (βλασφημεῖν) in the middle ages, with the signific. „to blame"; Fr. *blâmer;* Engl. *to blame.* 5) Lat. *vastare* in LL. to damage. Fr. *gâter;* Sp. Port. Prov. *gastar;* Engl. *to waste.* Perhaps also from OHG. *wastjan.* 6) Lat. *tunc;* Fr. *donc;* Prov. *donc, doncas.* 7) Lat. *tortus (torquere),* in LL. *tortum,* the wrong. Fr. *tort;* Prov. *tort;* Sp. *tuerto.*

Reading Exercise. 45.

Gli uni ballavano, gli altri fumavano. Ognuno vuol essere felice. Ciascuna vuol aver ragione. Nessuno ha torto. Altri era ricco, altri povero. Tutti e due erano infelici. I due fratelli si rassomígliano l'uno all' altro. Ognuno ha i suoi difetti. Non biasimate i lavóri (*the works*) d'altrui! Non far ad altrui quel che non vuoi che (*that*) sia (*it be*) fatto a te. In questo mondo altri è ricco, altri è povero; chi è felice, chi è infelice. Le persone dabbene perderanno tutto, ma non l'onore. La morte non rispetta nessuno. Chiunque sporcherà i suoi libri sarà castigato. Che cosa avete trovato? Nulla.*) Che vuol Ella dirmi (*dire, to tell*)? Niente.*) Parecchi de'**) miei condiscépoli sono ammalati.

Traduzione. 46.

1. It is thyself. Whoever knows (*conósca*) this man, (puts) has little trust in him. Several of *your* pupils have been naughty: (these) were Charles and William; I have punished both. Do not speak ill (*male*) of others. Do not blame your fellow-pupils. Some (*tr.* the one) arrive, the others set out (*partire*). These two girls love (*si ámano*) one another. Do you know these people (*la gente*)?***) I do not know them all, but I know several of them (*ne*, prec. the verb).

2. Nobody (*nessuno*) is without faults. Lend me one of your pens; mine are all spoiled. All men are brethren; they must (*dévono*) help (*aiutarsi*) each other. Where are your horses? They are both sold. The princes were jealous of one another (*tr.* the ones of the others). Are we then (*dunque*) (*transl.* Are then the men) in this world, *in order (per)* to hate one another (*Pl. Acc.*) and to harm (*nuócersi*) one another (*Dat.*)? It is a pity that you hate one another.

Dialogo.

Chi ha detto ciò?	Ognuno lo dice.
Chi vuol aver questa carta?	Ciascuna la vuole.
Sono ricchi i due di Lei nipoti?	L'uno è ricco, l'altro è povero.
Perchè è povero adesso?	Egli ha perduto al giuoco tutto il suo. (See Lesson 14, 2.)
Sono sorelle queste due signore?	Sì, sono sorelle; si rassomigliano molto l'una all' altra.

*) With *nulla* and *niente*, when used *alone* or *preceding* the verb, *non* is omitted.

**) *Dei* (like *ai*) often drops the final *i*.

***) *La gente* is employed in the Sing.

Hai veduto qualcheduno in questo giardino?	No, non ci (*there*) ho veduto nessuno.
Che cosa c'è di nuovo (*what news is there*)?	Non so (*know*) nulla.
Vuol (Ella) aver qualche cosa?	No, La ringrazio (*thank you*), non voglio niente.
Ha (Ella) ritrovato le lettere che avea perdute?	Ne ho ritrovato alcune, ma per la maggior parte sono perdute.
Con chi è (Ella) venuta?	Con nessuno.
Chi è là (*there*)?	Uno che non conosco.
Hai tutte le scatole?	Non ne ho alcuna.
Come erano i principi?	Erano gelosi gli uni degli altri.
Avete altre penne?	No, non ne abbiamo altre.
Ha (Ella) incontrato qualcuno?	No, Signora, non ho incontrato nessuno.

Twenty seventh Lesson.

On the Passive Voice. Verbi passivi.

The Italians form the Passive voice by means of the Auxiliary *essere* to be, with the *past participle* of the *active* verb, as: *lodare*, to praise; *essere lodato*, *a*; pl. *lodati*, *e*, to be praised.

Rule. The past participle, when employed with the verb *essere*, is always considered as an *adjective*, and must, therefore, agree in *gender* and *number* with the *noun* or *pronoun* to which it refers. Thus a *man* says: *Io sono lodato*, I am praised; several men: *Noi siamo lodati*, we are praised. A *woman* says: *Io sono lodata*; several women: *Noi siamo lodate.*

Note. Instead of *essere* the Passive voice may also be formed with *venire*, to come, and occasionally with *andare*, to go; *restare*, to rest; *rimanére*, to remain; *stare* to stand.

Venire, the most important of these verbs, is used, when the action is represented as *momentary*, whilst *essere* denotes a *lasting* state, thus:

L'uscio è chiuso, the door is shut (i. e. not open).
L'uscio vien chiuso, they are shutting the door (just now).
Mi è detto, I am told (= they have told me).
Mi vien detto, they are just now telling me.

Infinito.

Essere lodato, a, pl. — **i, e, to be praised.**

Presente.

Io sono lodato, a, I am praised
tu sei lodato, a, thou art praised
egli è lodato, he is praised
ella è lodata, she is praised.
etc. etc.

Imperfetto.

Io era lodato, I was praised.

Definito.

Io fui lodato, a, I was praised.

Futuro.

Io sarò lodato, a, I shall be praised.

Condizionale.

Presente.

Io sarei lodato, a, I should be praised.

Imperativo.

Sii lodato, a, be (thou) praised.
Non essere lodato, a, be (thou) not praised.
Siamo lodati, e, let us be praised.
Siate lodati, be (you) praised.

Soggiuntivo.

Presente.

Ch'io sia lodato, a, that I be praised.

Imperfetto.

S'io fossi lodato, a, if I were praised.

Participio.

Does not exist.

Gerundio.

Sing. *Essendo lodato, a* } being praised.
Plur. *Essendo lodati, e* }

Compound Tenses.

Passato.

Sing. *Essere stato, a, lodato, a* } to have been praised
Plur. *Essere stati, e, lodati, e* } (having been praised).

Indicativo.

Passato indefinito.

Io sono { *stato lodato* / *stata lodata* } I have been praised.

Passato più perfetto.

Io era { *stato lodato* / *stata lodata* } I had been praised.

Passato anteriore.

Io fui stato lodato, I had been praised.

Futuro composto.

Io sarò stato lodato, I shall have been praised.

Condizionale.

Passato.

Io sarei stato lodato, I should have been praised.

Soggiuntivo.

Passato.

Ch'io sia stato lodato, that I have been praised.

Più passato.

S'io fossi stato lodato, if I had been praised.

Gerundio.

Sing. *Essendo* { *stato lodato* / *stata lodata* }
Plur. *Essendo* { *stati lodati* / *state lodate* } having been praised.

Remarks.

1) It is a peculiarity of the Italian language, that the Passive voice may also be expressed by the *active form* with the pronoun *si*. Thus instead of:

Quella casa è veduta, that house is seen, we may as well say: *Si vede quella casa*, literally: *that house sees itself*.

This strange form (only admissible, however, when the nominative is no substantive importing *a person* nor *a personal pronoun*) has induced many grammarians to consider the pronoun *si* as a *nominative*, like the French *on*, or the German man, whilst in reality it is nothing else than an *accusative*, governed by the *reflective verb*, as will be seen by the following examples:

Sing. *Come è pronunciata questa voce?* / How is this word
Reflect. *Come si pronuncia questa voce?* / pronounced?

Plur. *Come sono pronunciate queste voci?* } How are these
Reflect. *Come* ***si pronúnciano*** *queste voci?* } words pron.?

In English such phrases are rendered by: *people, we, you, they, one etc.* or by the *Passive voice*, as:

Si *dice*, people say, one says, it is said.
Mi ***si*** *dà del danaro*, they give me some money, some money is given to me.
Non ***si*** *vede nulla*, you see nothing, nothing is to be seen.
Si *léggono le gazzette*, you read the newspapers.
Si *védono molte cose*, many things are seen, one sees many things.

But whenever the use of the reflective form might seem to make the meaning ambiguous, as in the sentence: *One loves the children*, — reflect. form: *I figli si amano = the children love themselves*, the passive voice should be preferred:

I figli sono amati.

2) The construction with *si* is also frequently *impersonal*, as: *Si dice*, one says; *si balla*, one dances, they (people etc.) are dancing, where no substantive follows. In this case *si* is used with the *Singular* of the verb, as in the preceding examples. But as soon as an *Accusative* follows, as in the phrase: One hears disagreeable news, the verb should be *plural: Si séntono nuove disaggradévoli.*

Nevertheless a *Plural* of the person or thing with the *Singular* of the verb is not totally excluded, as in the following sentences:

Quando si è costretti. (Cantù.)
If one is obliged.
Si ***diede*** *nuove poco consolanti.* (d'Azeglio.)
News were spreading which gave little comfort.*)

*) This anomaly also occurs in French. The Italians, wanting an indefinite pronoun like the French ***on*** or the German ***man***, sometimes try to supply it by using erroneously *lo* as a *Nominative.* Thus you may hear: ***Lo*** *si dice* or *se* ***lo*** *dice*, one says so (it), which properly signifies: *He* or *she* (the Nom. *Egli* or *ella* being omitted) *says it to himself* or *to herself*, but by no means: *One says so*, as *lo* cannot be considered as a Nominative. Such phrases belong properly to the dialects, which greatly predominate in Italy even in good society, and in dialects *lo* is indeed frequently met with as a Nominative, as in the following sentence (*Goldoni, Famigl. dell' Antiq.* Act. I, Sc. 19): *Vostro mario come ve trate lo = Come vostro marito vi tratta* ***egli,*** How does your husband treat you? — Besides, the ear is misled by the seeming analogy with *la* (for *ella*), which is very

Di tali tristi falò ne se faceva di continuo. (M.)
They made continually such sad piles.

3) *Si* must never be used with a *reflective* verb, as: One loves *one's self.* In such a case another mode of expression should be chosen, by putting a convenient *Nominative* to the verb. Such Nomin. are: *Noi, voi, uno, alcuno, altri, gli uomini etc.* Thus the above sentence would be:

***Uno** si ama* (as in English), or:
***Noi** ci amiamo,* we love ourselves.
***Voi** vi amate,* you love yourselves.
***Taluno** si ama,* many a man loves himself.

(*Si si ama,* would be highly improper, there being *two* Accusative cases but *no* Nomin. in the sentence).*)

4) The *Passive voice* should be used, if in English a *personal* pronoun in the *Accus.* is used with the verb, as in the phrase: *One loves **him** (**her**).* Thus:

Egli è (or *viene*) *amato.*

Lo si (or *se lo*) *ama* would be incorrect, as there would be two Accus. and no Nominat.

5) The compound tenses of these verbs with *si* are formed with the auxiliary verb ***essere*** and not with *avere,* as:

Questo si è detto, this has been said.
*Se si **fossero** lette le lettere,* if the letters had been read.
*Si **sono** sentite molte campane,* many bells have been heard.

Note. The Italians avoid joining a Dative with *si,* as: *Questo **mi** si è detto, lit.* that has been told me; they prefer the *Passive voice,* thus:

*Questo mi **fu** detto.*

If *ne* (of it etc.) is joined with *si,* the former should be preceded by the latter, *si,* for euphony's sake, being changed into *se,* as:

***Se** ne parla,* one speaks of it.

---

often used as a Nom., as: ***la*** (i. e. *cosa*) *è così,* so it is; ***la** s'intende,* of course (lit. it understands itself). But here ***la*** is elliptical for *la cosa,* and therefore the expression is perfectly correct. A proof, that the Italians feel the want of an indefinite pronoun, is given by examples like the following: ***L'uom** si cinge* (Tasso) one girds one's self, where the subst. *uomo* is used for the French *on* (anc. French *hom* = (Lat.) *homo,* man). Yet such examples are very rare.

*) The Passive voice is also inadmissible in this case, because *Si è amato* means: *He has loved himself,* and not *One loves one's self.* Expressions like: *Si viene* (or *si è*) *ingannato* may perhaps be found, where the author wishes to imply: *One is cheated,* but, as we observed before, (P. 116) such expressions are incorrect.

The compound tenses, as we have said before, are formed with *essere*, thus:

Se n'è parlato, one has spoken of it.

Neuter verbs. Verbi neutri.

They denote either *a state of rest*, as: *dormire*, to sleep, or an action which does not pass over to an object, as: *Io vado*, I go. They generally form their compound tenses with the auxiliary verb *essere*, as: *Io **sono** andato*, I have gone; *è arrivata*, she has arrived. Others take *avere*: *Io **ho** dormito*, I have slept etc.

Commonly a Neuter verb is conjugated with *essere*, when its past participle may be considered as an adjective and therefore joined with a noun. Thus: ***era** morta*, she had died; *è caduto*, he has fallen, because these participles may be employed as adjectives, for ex. — *L'uomo morto*, the dead man; *l'angelo caduto*, the fallen angel.

Words.

L'armádio,[1]) the cup-board.
la battáglia, the battle.
il capitano, the captain.
la legge, the law.
la cura, the care.
la sorte,[2]) the fate, destiny.
la sorta,[3]) the sort.
il campanile,[4]) the steeple.
la nebbia, the mist.
l'oggetto, the object.
il viaggiatore, the traveller.
l'adulatore, the flatterer.
sanguinoso, bloody.
sconosciuto, a, unknown.
offeso, a (p. p. of *offéndere*, irr.) to offend.
osservare, to observe.
ferire (isco), to wound.
demolire (isco), to demolish.
trasgredire, to transgress.
ammirare, to admire.
salutare, to salute.
riedificare, to rebuild.
maltrattare, to treat ill or rudely.
assalire (isco), to assault, to attack.
tolto,[5]) *a* (p. p. of *torre*, irreg.) taken away.
corretto, a (p. p. of *corréggere*, irr.) corrected.
bandire,[6]) to exile.
invitare, to invite.
solo, a, alone.
studioso, a, studious.
attento, a, attentive.
stimare, to esteem.
viene, he (she, it) comes.
véngono, they come.
verrò, I shall come.
piuttosto,[7]) adv. rather.

1) Lat. *armarium*, chest of arms. 2) and 3) from Lat. *sors, —tis.* 4) It. *campana*, bell. The first bells were cast in the *campagna di Roma.* 5) *torre* or *tógliere* from the Lat. *tollere.* 6) From the Goth. *bandojan*, to exile, the LL. *bannire, bandire;* Fr. *bannir;* Sp. *bandir;* Prov. *bandir.* 7) = *più-tosto.* The origin of *tosto*, Prov. *tost;* Fr. *tôt* is rather doubtful. Perhaps from the Lat. *tot-cito.*

Reading Exercise. 47.

Mio figlio Teódoro è (vien) amato e lodato dai*) suoi maestri, perch'è studioso e attento. Gustavo Adolfo, re di Svezia, fu ucciso alla battaglia di Lutzen. Volfgango Amadeo Mozart, celeberrimo compositore, è nato a Salisburgo e morto a Vienna. Se sarete virtuosi, sarete amati e stimati da ognuno. Abbiate cura che le leggi siano osservate puntualmente. Chiunque le trasgredisca, verrà [*inst. of* sarà] punito. Il soldato ch'è stato ferito è morto. La casa ch'è stata demolita sarà riedificata. Quel povero cane vien (= è) maltrattato dal suo padrone. Ieri fui assalito da un ladrone (*robber*). Il mio danaro, il mio oriuólo, tutto mi fu tolto. Sono arrivati da Firenze questi signori? Si leggono questi libri? Quando i nostri temi saranno finiti, verranno corretti dal nostro professore. Che cosa si dice della guerra? Dove si trovano queste piante? Non si vede niente in quella stanza, perchè non v'è lume (*light*). È chiusa la porta? No, ma viene chiusa dal servitore in questo punto (*moment*). Uno s'inganna se crede che gli uomini siano tutti buoni. Dalla mia finestra si vedono due chiese. Non si vede il campanile della chiesa, la nebbia è troppo densa. Mi si disse (*I was told*), che (Ella) non era a casa.

Traduzione. 48.

1. I was told that *your* brother was ill. I am loved by my parents.*) This boy has been bitten (*morso*) by a mad dog. Shall this dog not be killed? Who has treated you rudely? We have been rudely treated by our master. In the last battle 50 soldiers were (*def.*) killed and 200 (were) wounded. Many letters have been found in this chest (*armádio*, m.). Was (the) Captain N. also wounded? *I do not know (Non so).* The soldiers were rewarded (*premiato*) by the king.

2. (The) flatterers are esteemed by nobody; on the contrary (*al contrário*), they are despised by everybody. Were (*imperf.*) you offended? People say that the king is (*soggiunt.*) dead. These pictures will be admired, but they will not be sold (*non si.....*). The traveller would undoubtedly (*senza dubbio*) have been attacked, if he had been alone. Have you been offended? Have they given you your money? No, it has not been given to me. The children have slept long. (Did you fall) Have you fallen, Sir? No, but I shad nearly fallen.

*) *by* with the Passive voice is commonly rendered by ***da.***

Dialogo.

Siete amati dai vostri amici?	Siamo sempre stati amati da tutti i nostri amici.
Siete stati biasimati dal vostro maestro?	Al contrario, siamo stati lodati.
Crede (Ella) che saremo invitati dal nostro vicino?	Non lo*) credo.
Da chi siete stato salutato?	Da uno che non conosco.
Sono amati i buoni re?	Sono sempre amati e stimati.
Che oggetti saranno venduti?	Non si venderà nessuno di questi oggetti.
Da chi fu assassinato Enrico IV?	Fu assassinato da Ravaillac.
In che anno?	Nell' anno 1610.
Quale era la sorte di Carlo X?	Questo re fu bandito da Francia nell' anno 1830.
Questi giovani sono stati maltrattati. Sapete da chi?	Credo che siano stati maltrattati dal loro padrone.
Era sanguinosa la battaglia d'Inchermann?	Era sanguinosissima. Molti soldati ed uffiziali vi furono uccisi, e più ancora furono feriti.
Che si vede colà?	Si vedono molti cavalli.
Che dícesi (= si dice) in città?	Dicono che l'imperatrice sia guarita della sua malattia.
Che poverina! Che cosa le è accaduto (*what has happened to her*)?	È caduta dalla scala e si è rotto un braccio.
Non sarà trasportata all' ospedale (*hospital*)?	Vi sarà trasportata subito.
Ha (Ella) dormito bene stanotte?	No, non ho dormito bene.

Twenty eighth Lesson.

Reflective or Pronominal verbs. Verbi pronominali.

These verbs, besides their *subject* (nominative), are conjugated with a *pronoun*, commonly in the accusative. The action proceeding from the subject returns upon it. For these reasons they are called *reflective*, *reciprocal* or *pronominal verbs.*

*) Contracted: *Nol.*

Rule. Like the French *„verbes pronominaux"*, Italian reflective verbs are conjugated with the auxiliary ***essere,*** as:

*Io mi **sono** distinto* (Je me *suis* distingué) I *have* distinguished myself.

*Egli si **era** lavato* (Il s'*était* lavé) he *had* washed himself.

Note. 1) This reflective form is very frequently met with in Italian, whilst in English most of these verbs are employed as *neuter verbs*, that is to say, *without an object*, as: *Io mi rallegro*, I rejoice. —

2) If the second pronoun of the verb is no Accusative but a *Dative*, as in *Noi **ci*** (Dat.) *scriviamo, lit.* we write to each other, the compound tenses may be formed with *avere*, yet the form with *essere* is preferable, thus:

*Io mi **ho** comprato un libro*, or
*Io mi **sono** comprato un libro.*

Example.

Rallegrarsi, to rejoice.

Indicativo.

Presente.

Io mi rallégro, I rejoice
tu ti rallegri, thou rejoicest
egli si rallegra, he rejoices
noi ci rallegriámo, we rejoice
voi vi rallegráte, you rejoice
eglino si rallégrano, they rejoice.

Imperfetto.

Mi rallegrava, I rejoiced
ti rallegravi, thou rejoicedst
etc. etc.

Definito.

Mi rallegrái, I rejoiced etc.

Futuro.

Mi rallegrerò, I shall rejoice.

Condizionale.

Presente.

Mi rallegreréi, I should rejoice.

Imperativo.

Rallégrati, rejoice (2nd p. s.). ***rallegriámoci,*** let us rejoice. (***Non ti rallegrare,*** do not rejoice.) ***rallegrátevi,*** rejoice (2nd p. pl.).

Soggiuntivo.

Presente.

Ch'io mi rallegri, that I may rejoice.

Imperfetto.

Ch'io mi rallegrassi, that I might rejoice.

Participio e Gerundio.

(Pres. *Rallegrántesi*) \
Gerundio. *Rallegrándomi, -ti, -si, -ci, -vi* / rejoicing.

Compound Tenses.

Infinito.

Essersi rallegrato, a, Plur. **i, e,** having rejoiced (one's self).

Indicativo.

Passato indefinito.

Mi ***sono*** *rallegrato, a,* I *have* rejoiced
ti sei rallegrato, a, thou hast rejoiced
si è rallegrato, he has rejoiced
si è rallegrata, she has rejoiced

ci siamo rallegrati, e, we have rejoiced
vi siete rallegrati, e, you have rejoiced
si sono rallegrati, e, they have rejoiced.

Passato più perfetto.

Mi ***era*** *rallegrato, a,* I had rejoiced.

Passato anteriore.

Mi ***fui*** *rallegrato, a,* I had rejoiced.

Futuro composto.

Mi ***sarò*** *rallegrato, a,* I shall have rejoiced.

Condizionale.

Passato.

Mi ***sarei*** *rallegrato, a,* I should have rejoiced.

Soggiuntivo.

Passato.

Ch'io mi ***sia*** *rallegrato,* that I (may) have rejoi

Più passato.

Se mi ***fossi*** *rallegrato,* if I (might) have rejoice

Participio.

Rallegrátosi Pl. *rallegrátisi* \
rallegrátasi *rallegrátesi* / having rejoiced.

Gerundio.

Esséndo*mi* essendo*ci* \
———*ti* Pl. ———*vi* / Sing. *rallegrato, a* \
si ———*si* / Plur. *rallegrati, e* / having rejoiced.

Interrogative Form.

Mi rallegro (io)? Do I rejoice?
Mi sono (io) rallegrato? Have I rejoiced?

Negative Form.

(Io) non mi rallegro, I do not rejoice.
(Io) non mi sono rallegrato, I have not rejoiced.

Negative-Interrogative.

Non mi rallegro (io)? Do I not rejoice?
Non mi sono (io) rallegrato? Have I not rejoiced?

Note.

For the sake of euphony *mi, ti, si etc.*, when followed by *lo, la, le, ne etc.*, are changed into *me, te, se,* as:

Me lo procuro, I procure it to myself.
Me ne sono rallegrato, I have rejoiced at it.

Words.

L'egoista, the selfish person.
separarsi, to part, to separate.
smarrirsi[1] *(isco),* to go astray.
'l labirinto, the labyrinth.
u pezzo,[2]) the piece.
è un pezzo, it is long.
la disgrazia, the misfortune.
presso[3]) *(di),* near.
diféso, (p. p. of *diféndere,* irr.), defended.
alleáto, allied.
inchiuso, shut up.
la Boémia, Bohemia.
andársene, to go away.
svegliarsi, to awake.
arrestare, to arrest.
imprigionare, to imprison.

1) From the OHG. *marrjan,* to hinder, the Old It. *marrire;* Fr. *marrir.* 2) *Pezzo* and *pezza* (a whole piece); Fr. *pièce;* Sp. *pieza* (*pezado,* piece = fragment); Port. *peça (pedaço);* Prov. *pessa, peza.* The origin of this word is not yet explained. Perhaps the LL. *petacia* (πέζα), *petacium,* or a Dimin. *petiolus* from *pes.* 3) From the Lat. *pressus,* thronged; Fr. *près;* Prov. *pres.*

conservare, to preserve, to keep.
la parola, the word.
pronunciare, to pronounce, to utter.
aggrapparsi, lo hold fast.
valorosamente, adv. bravely.
il cannóne,[1]) the gun (field-piece).
la palla,[2]) the ball.
lavare, to wash.
levársi, *alzarsi*, to rise, to gut up.
ritrovarsi, to meet again.
coricarsi, to go to bed.
annegarsi,[3]) to be drowned.
affliggersi, to be sorry.
imprudente, imprudent.
l'esercito, the army.
deve (fr. *dovére*, irr.) shall, will, must, ought.
nuotare, to swim.
uccidere (irr.), to kill.
l'arsenale, the arsenal.
fuso, *a*, cast, melted.
soltanto, only.
tardi, adv. late.
avvezzarsi, to accustom one's [self.
soffrire, to suffer.
salvare, to save.
ingannarsi, *sbagliarsi*[4]) to be mistaken.

Reading Exercise. 49.

Ella s'inganna, Signore. Mi sono ingannato anch'io. Mia sorella si sarà ingannata, dándole (*in giving you*) la lettera. L'egoista si separa dagli uomini; egli si smarrisce nel labirinto della vita. È un pezzo che non ci siamo veduti. Il generale Ostermann si è distinto molto presso di Culm. S'egli non si fosse difeso così valorosamente, l'esercito alleato sarebbe stato inchiuso nelle montagne della Boemia. S'egli non se ne andava, era subito arrestato ed imprigionato. (See page 46.) Si è conservata la parola che pronunciò Napoleone in una battaglia: aggrappándosi ad un cannone, sclamò: La palla che m'ucciderà non è ancora fusa. Perchè si è levata così tardi? Mi sono levato alle sette. Non vi affliggete tanto, cari amici; avvezzátevi a soffrire con coraggio i mali della vita. Sareste stati salvati, se non foste stati così imprudenti.

1) Augm. of *canna*, cane, tube; Fr. *canne*, from the Lat. *cannula*. 2) OHG. *balla* or *palla*, ball; Fr. *balle;* Sp. Port. *bala*. 3) From the Lat. *necare*, to kill. In the Romance languages the original sense of the verb is limited to the killing by means of *water;* Fr. *noyer;* Prov. *negar;* Sp. Port. *enegar*. 4) As we hinted before, the prefix *s* (Lat. *dis*) expresses the contrary of the idea of the verb, thus *montare*, to mount; *smontare*, to alight etc. The verb *bagliare* or *baliare* seems to be a variante of the Old. It. *balire*, to protect, to direct, to lead. Thus *sbagliare* would properly mean to *mis*lead. In OFr. *balire* is *baillir;* Prov. *bailir*, and the idea of direction and of protection returns in the It. *balia*, nurse, and in the Fr. *bailli* (OFr. *baillif*), It. *balivo;* Prov. *bailieu*, bailiff. Other forms are Fr. *bail;* Old It. *bailo*, *balio;* Sp. *bayle;* Port. *bailio;* Prov. *baile*. The origin is probably the Lat. *bajulus* which in LL. has the signification *master*, *governor*, *keeper* etc.

Traduzione. 50.

1. I am very glad (with *rallegrarsi*) to see (*vedére*) you. He has distinguished himself; therefore (*perciò*) he will also be rewarded. Rise (*2nd pers. pl.*)! Why did you not rise (*Pass. indef.*)? Don't be sorry (sad), children! exclaimed he, we shall all be saved. You have been mistaken, Sir! My brothers will not have been mistaken. Why do *you* rejoice at the misfortune of others? Only a selfish man rejoices when others are suffering.

2. We parted near the little church and met again at the arsenal. Am I mistaken? No, I am not (mistaken), [it] is *you!* When shall you get up? Yesterday we rose *(def.)* at seven o'clock and (we) went to bed at midnight. We (lost our way) went *(imperf.)* astray in the streets of Vienna. Have you not been mistaken (*sbagliarsi*), Miss (N.)? He clings (*aggrapparsi*) to the last hope. (He) Who will (*vuól*) not swim, will be drowned. I have accustomed myself to rise every day at 6 o'clock.

Dialogo.

(Ella) si è ingannata; non è vero (*is it not so*)?	No, Signora, non mi sono ingannata.
Vi coricherete adesso, figli miei?	Ci coricheremo subito.
A che ora vi siete coricati ieri?	Ci siamo coricati alle nove e mezzo.
È già (*already*) uscito dal letto (*out of bed*) suo (*your*) padre?	Si è alzato oggi.
Dove vi siete trattenuti (*stayed*) tanto tempo?	Ci siamo sviati (*gone astray*) nel bosco.
Si è già lavata tua sorella?	Credo che non si sia ancora lavata.
Chi si è lavato in questa acqua?	Io!
Perchè si è levata così tardi?	Non mi sono svegliato (*awake*)*) più presto (*sooner*).
Chi vuol andar a spasso (*take a walk*) con me?	Mi sono annoiata con Lei l'última volta (*last time*); perciò resterò a casa oggi.
Qual generale si è distinto presso di Culm?	Il generale russo Ostermann.

*) The pupil will have observed, that in Italian the *Perfect tense (passato indefinito)* is frequently used, where the English employ *the Imperfect.*

Come si è condotto (*behaved*) in quella battaglia?
Si è ben divertita (*amused*)?
Si è difeso valorosissimamente.*)
Così, così!

Twenty ninth Lesson.

Impersonal verbs. Verbi impersonali.

Verbs are either *really impersonal*, i. e. they are only used in the third person singular, as: *pióve*, it rains; *névica*, it snows; *tuóna*, it thunders; or they are *used* as impersonals, as: *sémbra*, it seems; *comíncia*, it begins etc.

1) Real impersonal verbs are:

Pióve, it rains.
lampéggia, it lightens.
tuóna, it thunders.
grándina, it hails.
géla / *ghiáccia* } it freezes.
névica, il snows.
dimóia / *didiáccia* } it thaws.
avviéne / *accáde* } it happens.

Besides these, many are formed with *fare*, *essere*, and *other verbs*, as:

fa cáldo, it is warm.
fa fréddo, it is cold.
fa bel tempo, it is fine weather.
fa cattivo tempo, it is bad weather.
c'è nebbia, it is foggy.
c'è chiaro di luna, the moon shines.
c'è fango, it is dirty.
è umido, it is wet.
tira vento, it is windy.

è tempo, it is time.
sono due giorni, it is two days . . .
è meglio, it is better.
merita la pena, it is worth while.

2) *Used* as impersonal verbs are:

Bisógna, it is necessary, one must.
conviéne, it is proper.
occórre, it is necessary, one wants.
basta, it is enough.
pare / *sémbra* } it seems.
s'intende, of course.
piáce, it pleases.
mi rincrésce, / *m'incresce*, } I am sorry.

*) Adverbs often express a *high degree* by addition of the syllable *issimamente*, as: *valorosamente*, bravely; *valorosissimamente*, very bravely.

3) With the auxiliary verb *avere* are formed *expressions* like the following:

Ho paúra, I am afraid.	*ho fame,* I am hungry.
ho freddo, I am chilly.	*ho sete,* I am thirsty.
ho caldo, I am warm.	*ho sonno,* I am sleepy.

Notes.

1) The English verbs *must, to be obliged etc.* are commonly rendered by *dovére* (irr.), as: *deve andare,* he must (shall) go. Instead of *dovere* the impersonal verb *bisogna* (French *il faut*) may be used, followed by the Infinitive *without* a preposition, when employed in quite a general sense, as: *bisogna lavorare,* one must work.

If, however, the subject of the sentence is a substantive or a pronoun, *bisogna* must be followed by the subjunctive mood. Ex.: *Bisogna che i fanciulli ubbidiscano ai loro genitori,* children must (literally: *it* is necessary that children) obey their parents.*)

Note. The compound tenses of *bisognare* are also *personally* construed (with *ci*), in which case *bisognare* answers to the English "to want", as:

Non ***ci sarebbero*** *nemmeno bisognati gli occhi esperti di Perpetua.* (M.)
Also without the experienced eyes of Perpetua (*lit.* the experienced eyes of Perpetua had not been wanted).

Sometimes *must* is rendered by *aver da . . .,* or by *convenire,* as:

Avete da tacere, you must be (*lit.* you have to be) silent.

A tale scongiuro ***convenne*** *bere.* (M.)
At this sommation he was compelled to drink.

2) The compound tenses of these verbs are formed with *avere,* if a *transitive* verb is *used* impersonally, as *tirare,* to draw:

Ha *tirato vento tutta la notte.*
The wind blew the whole night.

Essere is used, when the verb is really impersonal, as:
È *avvenuto,* it (has) happened.

Nevertheless the use of the auxiliary verb is rather arbitrary. Modern writers prefer *essere,* as:

Mi è piaciuto, it has pleased me.

*) In the earlier authors we meet with examples where *bisognare* takes, as in French, a possessive pronoun in the *Dative,* as *Come se per morire* ***le*** *bisognasse ferro* (Bocc.); as if she wanted iron to kill herself. Such phrases are now obsolete.

Verbs referring to the *weather* prefer *essere*, thus:

È piovuto, it has rained, — rather than ***Ha piovuto.***

3) *There is*, plur. *there are* (French *il y a*) is rendered by *c'è (ci è)* or *v'è (vi è)*, plur. *ci sono* or *vi sono*. Imperfect *c'era, vi era*, Fut. *ci sarà, vi sarà etc.* Sometimes, especially in ancient writings, we come across an obsolete phrase: *v'ha (vi ha)* or *havvi* = there is.

Words.

Non — mai, never.
persuadére (irr.), to persuade.
la follía,[1]) madness, folly.
il conto,[2]) the bill, account.
la cambiále,[3]) the bill of exchange.
pentirsi di ..., to repent.
mi viene in mente, I remember (lit.: it comes into my mind).
mi spiace / *mi dispiace* } it displeases me.
abbisognare / *aver bisogno*[4]) } *di ...* } to want.
morire, to die.
mancare,[5]) to fail.
mi è d'uópo,[6]) I want.
fa di mestiére,[7]) it is necessary.
ci vuole, *s.* is wanted.
ci vogliono, *pl.* are wanted.
poco fa, / *tempo fa*, } lately; a little while ago.
tre mesi fa, three months ago.
si crede, one believes; one thinks.
si dice, one says; it is said.
la brocca,[8]) the ewer.
la pólvere, the dust.
cessare, to cease. *presto*, soon, quick. *dunque*,[9]) then.

Reading Exercise. 51.

Piove. Credo che pioverà domani. Sento tuonare. In fatti (*indeed*), tuona. Non nevicherà domani. Ha nevicato tutta la notte. Ci sono degli uomini che non sono mai contenti. Fa caldo; faceva troppo caldo nella sua stanza. Non v'erano nè uomini, nè donne, nè fanciulli. Bisogna partire.

1) From the adj. *folle*, foolish; Fr. *fou (fol)*; Sp. (obs.) and Prov. *fol*; Engl. *fool*, from the LL. *follus*. This word derives from the Lat. *follis*, bellows. The original idea, that of a restless motion, also appears in the It. *folletto*; Fr., Prov., Catal. *follet*, ignis fatuus. 2) The verb *contare* from the Lat. *computare*; Fr. *compter*; Sp. *contar*; Prov. *comtar*; Engl. *to count*. 3) The verb *cambiare (cangiare)*, to change, OFr. *cangier, caingier*; Fr. *changer*; Sp. Port. *cambiar*; Prov. *cambiar, camjar* from the Lat. *cambire*, afterwards *cambiare*. 4) *Bisogno*, want, Fr. *besoin (besogne*, task, is properly the fem. of *besoin*), probably from the OHG. *bi-sunegi*, care. From the subst. *bisogno* the verb *bisognare*. 5) Lat. *mancus*, uncomplete. Hence the It. adj. *manco*, defective, left; *adv.* less; *subst.* want. Verbs are Fr. *manquer*; Sp. *mancar*; It. *mancare*, to be wanting, to fail. 6) Lat. *opus*. 7) Lat. *ministerium*; Fr. *métier*; OFr. *mestier*; Sp. *menester*; Prov. *menestier* and *mestier*; Port. *mister*. 8) Of dubious origin; Fr. *broc*; Prov. *broc*. 9) Lat. *tunc*; Fr. *donc*; OFr. *donkes, adonc, adonques* (It. also *adunque*); Prov. *donc, doncas*.

Bisogna ch'Ella parta. Bisognava che finissimo alle quattro. Bisognava venir presto. Non bisogna perdonargli? Bisognò ch'io gli perdonassi. Riesce Ella (*do you succeed*) ad imparare la lingua italiana? Non riuscirò mai a persuaderlo della sua follía. Mi sono pentito d'avergli dato tanto danaro. Ho bisogno d'un abito; abbisognerò presto anche d'un gilè e d'un frac (*dress-coat*). Mi rincresce molto di non trovarla in buona salute. Ci vogliono soldati per difendere il paese.

Traduzione. 52.

1. Does it snow? No, it does not snow, it hails. It is better (to) die. It is too cold to-day; I shall not go (*uscíre di*) out of the house. One must be satisfied. The pupils must be satisfied. Thou must (*devi*) be satisfied with (*di*) thy fate. Have you been obliged (*dovúto*, p. p.) (to) pay the bill? I shall be obliged (*dovrò*, fut.) (to) pay it. I want (*mi occórre*) a new hat. Is there any money in this purse? Much money is wanted to (*per*) make this journey.

2. There was much bread. It begins (*comincia*) to snow. It ceases to rain. I am sorry to have offended you. Pardon me! It is of no consequence (*non importa*). It was not worth while to answer (*rispóndere*) him. It is better to be poor and honest than (to be) rich and dishonest (*sleale*). It was of great importance to him (*gli importava molto*) to arrive still to-day. Do *you* succeed (*riesce Ella*) in learning (*transl.*: to learn) English? Yes, Sir, I do (*riésco*), but much time is wanted.

Dialogo.

Che tempo fa oggi?	Fa cattivo tempo.
Piove?	Sì, piove a dilúvio (*it is raining hard*).
Pioverà domani?	Non credo che pioverà.
Avremo chiaro di luna stasera?	Non so!
Che Le occorre? (*What do you want?*)	Mi occorre una camícia (*a shirt*) e due páia di calze.
C'è abbastanza vino?	Sì, Signore, ce n'è abbastanza
Che Le occorre da me? (*What can I do for you? Can I be of any service?*)	La prego di darmi una cambiale (*a bill of exchange*) su Parigi
Ha (Ella) dovuto pagare il conto del sarto?	Bisogna ch'io paghi sempre tuoi conti.
Bisogna réndergli il suo danaro?	Sì, rendéteglielo subito!
Vi era molta gente al ballo?	Sì, vi erano molte persone.
Mi rincresce di non trovare a casa il signor professore!	Spero che lo troverà a casa verso le sei.
Le basta quel vino?	La ringrazio, mi basta!
Desidera parlar con me?	Sì, avrei da dirle due parole.
Qui è meglio tacere.	Sì, bisogna tacere.

Reading Exercise.

L'astrólogo.

Mi ricordo d'aver letto
Che un astrologo soletto
S'aggirava in un cammino,
E volendo del destino
Discoprir il denso velo,
Ei fissava gli occhi in cielo.
Cadde il misero in un pozzo
E gli entrò l'acqua nel gozzo.
Tu pretendi, uno gli disse,
Fra le stelle erranti e fisse
Penetrar, e tu non vedi
Quel che tróvasi a tuoi piedi.

Words.

L'astrólogo, the astrologer.
ricordarsi, to recollect.
letto, a, p. p. of *léggere*, to read.
éi for *egli*.
fissáre, to fix.
cadde, def. of *cadére*, to fall.
soletto, a, quite alone.
aggirarsi, to walk about.
il cammino, the road.
voléndo, gerund. of *volére*, to be willing, desirous.
il destíno, destiny, fate.
discoprire, to discover.
denso, a, dense, thick.
il velo, the veil.
il mísero, the poor man.
il pozzo, the well.
entrare, to enter.
il gozzo, the throat.
preténdere, to pretend.
stella errante, a wandering star, a comet.
stella fissa, a fixed star.
penetrare, to penetrate.
trovarsi, to find one's self; to be found.

Thirtieth Lesson.

On adverbs. Degli avverbi.

Adverbs qualify *verbs*, *adjectives* or *other adverbs*. They denote *manner*, *time*, *place*, *motion*, *order*, *quantity*, *quality etc.*

They are either *proper* adverbs (as will be seen in the next lesson), for instance: *spesso*, often; *mái*, never, or formed from *adjectives* or *participles* by the addition of the syllable *mente*.

Rules.

1) When the adjective ends in *e*, without a *foregoing b* or *r*, the syllable *mente* is simply added, as:

felice, happy	adv. *felicemente*, happily.
prudénte, prudent	» *prudentemente*, prudently.
indecénte, indecent	» *indecentemente*, indecently.

2) When the final *e* is preceded by ***l*** or ***r***, this *e* is dropped, as:

fácile, easy	adv. *facilmente*.
difficile, difficult	» *difficilmente*.
interióre, internal	» *interiormente*.
esterióre, external	» *esteriormente*.
particoláre, particular	» *particolarmente*.

3) When the adjective ends in ***o***, the syllable *mente* is added to the *feminine* form, as:

sincéro, sincere	adv. *sinceramente*.
certo, certain.	» *certamente*.

Note. From the *ordinal numbers* are formed the adverbs *primieramente* and *secondariamente* only. See Lesson 16.

Adverbs form their degrees of comparison like adjectives, as: *facilmente*, easily; Comp. *più facilmente*, more easily; Sup. *il più facilmente*, most easily.

A few adverbs are irregular, viz.:

	Comp.	*Sup.*
bene, well.	*meglio*, better.	*il meglio*, best.
	(più bene)	*benissimo* / *ottimamente* } very well.
male, badly.	*peggio*, worse.	*il peggio*, worst.
	(più male)	*malissimo* / *pessimamente* } very badly.
molto, very.	*più*, more.	*il più*, most.
		moltíssimo, very much.
poco, little.	*meno*, less.	*il meno*, least.
		pochíssimo, very little.

Adverbs are also formed from the *superlativo assoluto* of the adjectives by changing *issimo* into *issimamente*, as:

Infelicissimo, very unhappy — *infelicissimamente*, most unhappily.

Notes.

1) From the Compar. *maggiore* and *minore* may be formed the adverbs *maggiormente* and *minormente*. — The terminations *one* and *ino* modify the meaning of adverbs, chiefly in conversation, as: ***benone***, very well; ***benino***, tolerably. Besides, *one* (also *oni*, but *not* in an augmentative sense) serves to form *adverbial expressions* derived from substantives. The most important of them are:

boccone (bocconi), from *bocca*, procumbent.
cavalcioni, on horseback.
ciondoloni, taking the tail between the legs (of a dog).
carpone, (creeping along) upon all four.
gomitone, leaning on the elbow.
rotolone, rolling (one's self about).
tastone, groping along in the dark etc.

2) A peculiarity of the Italian language consists in the *Superl. assol.* of some *proper* adverbs and even of a few *adverbial expressions*, such as *assai*, very, *per tempo*, early. Thus one says: *assaíssimo*, very much; *per tempíssimo*, very early.

A *high degree* is also expressed by the repetition of the adverb, as: *subito subito*, directly; *ben bene*, very well.

3) Many *masculine* adjectives may be used as adverbs, for ex.:

Egli lo guardò ***fisso.***
He looked at him fixedly (instead of *fissamente*).

Such are: *presto*, quickly; *mezzo*, by half; *forte*, loud, —ly; *piano*, low.

Note. The meaning of these adverbs is likewise rendered more emphatic by *repetition*, as:

Il battuto era ***almeno almeno*** *un imprudente.* (M.)
The beaten one was, to say the least, an imprudent (man etc.).

Words.

Eloquente, eloquent.
pigro, a, idle, lazy.
negligentare, to neglect.
ordinário, ordinary, common.
il dovére, the duty.
trattare con, to deal with.
confessare, to confess.
osservare, to observe.
l'artista, the artist.
sággio, a, wise.
distribuire (-isco), to distribute.
nettáre,[1]) to clean.
il dóno, the gift.
modésto, a, modest.
adempire,[2]) to fulfil.
il mérito, the merit.
costánte, constant.
occupársi, to be occupied, to occupy one's self.
la prosperità, the prosperity.
camminâre, to go, to walk.
adágio,[3]) adv. softly, slowly.
probábile, probable.
estremaménte, extremely.
adirâto, a, angry.
passionáto, a, passionate.
bruciare,[4]) to burn.

1) *Nettare* from the adj. *netto*, clean; this from the Lat. *nitidus;* OFr. *neis;* Fr. *net;* Sp. *neto;* Port. *nedeo;* Prov. *net.* 2) *Adempire*, from Lat. *implere;* Fr. *emplir (r-emplir).* 3) *Ad agio*, with ease. *Agio*, probably from Lat. *otium;* Fr. *aise;* Prov. *ais;* Port. *azo;* Engl. *ease.* 4) *Bruciare (brusciare)* = *brustolare (abbrustolare)*, to make brown by fire, from the Lat. partic. *perutus (perurere).* The Fr. *brûler* (OFr. *brusler*) from the It. *brustolare;* Prov. *bruzar (brussar).*

Reading Exercise. 53.

Quest' uomo ha parlato benissimo, parla sempre eloquentissimamente. I pigri negligentano ordinariamente i loro doveri. Trattate bene coi vostri nemici. Iddio ha saggiamente distribuito i suoi doni. Parlate modestamente dei vostri meriti. Enrico IV era costantemente occupato della prosperità de' suoi sudditi (*subjects*). Il ladro entrò adagio adagio; aveva paura d'essere sentito. Sono estremamente adirato di questa nuova. Nettate ben bene i vostri abiti. Non camminare così presto! Mio padre è in Francia adesso. I giovani che amano passionatamente il giuoco, trascurano spesso i loro doveri. Carlo è stato biasimato il più sovente.

Traduzione. 54.

1. Speak*) low. Speak freely (fr. *franco, a*). You are going (*va*) too slowly; go (with *camminare*) quicker (*più presto*)! Thou dost not speak modestly enough; speak more modestly with me. These two friends are equally (fr. *eguale*) esteemed. The king has generously pardoned (to) his enemies. Nobody is constantly happy in this world. The name of Shakespeare will live (*vivrà*) eternally (fr. *etérno, a*). Confess *your* faults freely! Rich people (*la gente ricca*) are seldom (fr. *raro, a*) happy.

2. This artist plays (*suóna*) admirably (fr. *ammirábile*) well. The *wounded man (ferito)* lay there (*giaceva*) procumbent. I went (*andai*) groping along to (*fin a ...*) the door. I have seldom received letters from my brother. Which man 2always 1speaks wisely? Who 2always 1deals well with his friends? Unhappily (fr. *sfortunato, a*) we have lost all our property (*facoltà*). Observe (*2. Plur.*) the laws punctually. Faithfully (fr. *fedéle*) perform (*adempíre*) your duty! These toys cost (*costare*[1]) least. This pupil 2most frequently 1has his task without mistakes. We arrived (*Def.*) very early. Come directly!

Dialogo.

Come parla quell' avvocato (*lawyer*)?	Parla eloquentissimamente e franchissimamente.
Suona sua cugina il pianoforte?	Suona a maraviglia (*wonderfully*); ognuno ammira la sua bella maniera di suonare.
Avete nuóve (*news*) di vostro fratello a Parigi?	Ci scrive raramente, manda[2]) di tempo in tempo qualche letterina alla madre.

*) Always *Ella.*

1) Lat. *constare;* Sp., Prov. *costar;* OFr. *couster;* Fr. *coûter;* Engl. *to cost*; Germ. kosten. 2) Lat. *mandare (= in manum dare)*, properly *to order;* Fr. *mander;* Sp. *mandar.*

Si è alterata (*are you angry*), Signore?	Sì, mi sono alterato molto al sentire la cattiva condotta (*behaviour*) di mio figliuolo.
Come bisogna agire (*behave, act*)?	Bisogna sempre agire prudentemente e da (*as*) galantuómo (*gentleman*).
Carlo, tu sei ammalato; che hai (*what is the matter with you*)?	Ho mal di testa (*head-ache*), ma di nessuna conseguenza.
Ella è probabilmente il fratello del signor Bernardo?	No, Signora, ma sono suo cugino.
Menátemi (*drive me*) adagio adagio fino (*till*) al Ponte Rialto!	Sì, Signora, sarà ubbidita (*as you command*)!

Thirty first Lesson.

The adverbs continued.

In the foregoing lesson we observed, that besides the adverbs formed from adjectives or participles by addition of the syllable *mente*, there are a great many *true adverbs* denoting place manner, order, time etc. Thus we have: *1) Adverbs of place. 2) Adverbs of time. 3) Adverbs of manner. 4) Adverbs of quantity. 5) Adverbs of affirmation, of negation, and doubt.* There are also *adverbial expressions (locuzioni avverbiali)* i. e. compounds of *substantives, adjectives etc.* with *prepositions*, as: *A mente*, by heart; *in fatti*, indeed etc.

1. Adverbs of place.

Ove, dove, where, whither?	*giù*, below, down.
onde, donde, where from, whence?	*quinci*, hence, from here.
quì[1] \ *quà* / here, hither, this way.	*dietro*, behind.
là,[2] *colà*, there.	*sotto*,[4] below.
quà e là, to and fro.	*davanti*, before.
vi, ci (French *y*), here.	*dentro*,[5] therein, within.
sopra (sovra) \ *su*[3] *(suso)* / on, upon.	*fuóri*,[6] outside, out.
	avanti, forward, along.
	indiétro, behind, backwards.
	là su, lassù, up there.

1) Lat. *ecce hic.* 2) Lat. *illac.* 3) *Su* fr. Lat. *super; suso* fr. Lat. *susum (= sursum).* 4) Lat. *subtus.* 5) Lat. *de-intra.* 6) Lat. *foras* or *foris = extra.*

là giù, laggiù, down there.
dappertutto, everywhere.
altrove, elsewhere.
innanzi,[1]) before.
abbasso, down, downwards.

2. Adverbs of time.

Quando, when?
da quando, since when?
sempre, always.
mái[2]) *(giammai)*, never.
oggi, to-day.
domani (dimani), to-morrow.
orméi / *oramái* } now.
di rado, seldom.
spesso[3]) / *sovente* } often.
prima, before.
allora, then.
pói[4]) / *póscia* } then.
posdománi, the day after to-morrow.
iéri, yesterday.
ancóra,[5]) still.
iéri l'altro / *l'altro ieri* / *avant' ieri* } the day before yesterday.
presto,[6]) quick, soon.
tosto,[7]) soon.
adesso / *óra* } now.
or' óra, now, immediately.
súbito, directly, suddenly.
tardi, late.
già[8]) *(digià)*, already.
talóra / *talvólta* } sometimes.
poco fa / *poco avanti* / *poco prima* / *pocánzi* } not long ago.

3. Adverbs of manner.

Come,[9]) how?
già, already, indeed.
molto / *assái*[10]) } very.
sì / *così* } so.
perchè, why?
bene, well.
male, badly.
pure, yet.
volentiéri / *volontiéri* } willingly.
quasi, almost.

4. Adverbs of quantity.

Molto, much.
meno, less.
troppo, too, too much.
tanto, so, so much.
abbastánza, enough.
cziandio / *pure* / *pur anco* } even, even yet.
poco, little.
più, more.

quanto, how much? *tanto — quanto*, so much — as.

1) Lat. *in-ante*. 2) *(giam-) mai*, Lat. *jam magis*. 3) Lat. *spissus*, dense, thick. 4) Lat. *post*. 5) Lat. *hanc-oram*. 6) From the vulg. Lat. *praestus*, fr. adv. *praesto*. 7) Dubious origin; perhaps from the Lat. partc. *tostus* (fr. *torrere*) or from *tot-cito*. 8) Lat. *jam*. 9) Lat. *quomodo*. 10) Lat. *ad-satis*.

5. Adverbs of affirmation and negation.

Sì, yes.
infatti, indeed.
non — punto, not at all.
no, no.
non, not.
non — mai, never.
forse, *ancor ancora* } perhaps.
certo, *certamente*, *sicuramente* } surely, certainly.
davvéro, truly.
non — già, not — even.
non — più, not — any more.
neanche, not even.

Adverbial expressions.

A mente, *a memória* } by heart.
appena, scarcely.
affatto, thoroughly.
a buon mercato, cheap.
a voce, *(a viva voce)* } by word of mouth.
a bello studio, *a (bella) posta* } on purpose.
a caso, by accident.
ad alta voce, aloud.
all' improvviso, suddenly.
a destra, *a diritta* } at the right hand.
a sinistra, *a manca* } at the left hand.
a poco a poco, by and by, by degrees.
in breve, shortly.
alla rinfusa, helter skelter.
a propósito, quite conveniently; by the by.
a bocca, verbally, by word of mouth.
a gara.[1]) in emulation.
dapprima, first.
appunto, exactly.

Notes.

1) As we hinted, *già* often implies a *lively affirmation*, corresponding to the English *of course*, *yes yes etc.* Ex.:

Non avete finito ancora? Have you not yet done?
Già, son pronto, of course (yes yes), I am ready.

Used with *non* or *nè* it has no proper equivalent in English and must therefore be periphrased, as:

***Non** dico **già** che abbiate torto, ma ...*
I will not say, I do not mean to say that you are wrong, but ...

*Non credeva **già** che volessi ingannarlo, ma ...*
Although he did not think that I would cheat him, yet ...

Già già sometimes corresponds to the English *almost, nearly etc.*, as:

1) *Gara*, like the Fr. *gare (garer)* from the OHG. *warôn*, to protect, to mind; German wahren.

*Il sole inclinato che **già** già toccava la cima del monte.* (M.)
The sinking sun which almost touched the summit of the mountain.

Note. The popular and familiar language frequently employs *mica* instead of *già*, as:

*Non è **mica** un bel nome.* (M.)
It is indeed no fine name, or: it is anything but a fine name.

2) Used with a substantive *già* is the English *former* or *late*, (but not of deceased persons). Ex.:

*Il **già** granduca di Toscana.*
The former grand-duke of Tuscany.

3) The negative particle *non*, which, as we said, always precedes the verb, is often rendered more impressive by the adverbs *punto* or *mai*, as:

I non amo, I do not love.
io non amo punto, I do not love *at all.*
io non amo mai, I *never* love.

Neanche or *nemmeno* and *nemmanco* correspond to the English *nor — either*, Ex.: *Neanch'io*, nor (do) I, nor I either. The question *Is it not?* is best translated: *Non è vero?* The English way of saying: *Do you?* or *Do you not?* referring to a foregoing question, must not be imitated in Italian. The above question: *non è vero* is usually employed in such a case. Example:

You are writing to your father, don't you?
Ella scrive a suo padre, non è vero?

Likewise, the answers: *I do* or *I do not* etc. are not to be literally translated, but are either periphrased with the verb, or rendered by *Sì* or *no*, as:

Do you write to your father? —	Yes, I do. —	No, I do not.
Scrive Ella a suo padre?	*Sì!*	*No!*
	or *Sì, scrivo!*	*No, non scrivo!*

Words.

Il delitto, the crime.
il temporale, the thunderstorm.
vivere, to live.
vestirsi, to dress one's self.
tentare, to try.
sparire, to disappear.
cacciare,[1]) to chase, to drive away.
mórdere, to bite.
lo scellerato, the wicked man.
apprezzare, to esteem.
sviarsi, to go astray.

1) From the LL. *captiare* (fr. *captus*), in lieu of the Lat. *captare;* Fr. *chasser;* OFr. *cachier, chacier;* Sp. Port. *cazar* (OSp. *cabzar*); Prov. *cassar;* Engl. *to chase.*

lavorare, to work.
godere,[1]) to enjoy.
pranzare / *desinare* } to dine.
dolce, sweet, soft.
inudito, a, unheard (of), never heard of.
sorpreso, a, surprised.
alla fine, at the end; finally.
immantinente,[2]) adv. immediately.
invano, in vain.
fuóri, out, outside.
anzi, perfino, even.
inverosímile, unlikely, improbable.

Reading Exercise. 55.

Il tempo è molto dolce oggi. Questo delitto è affatto inudito. Il temporale si è avvicinato (*to approach*) così presto, che ne siamo stati sorpresi. Mio cugino è arrivato alla fine. Ho imparato a mente la mia lezione. Alzátevi subito. Vestítevi immantinente. Tentate invano di salvarlo. Cacciate fuori (*turn out*) quel cattivo cane! Mi morderà forse. Non morde mai. Perfino lo scellerato apprezza spesso la virtù. Ieri l'altro mi sono sviato nel bosco. Prima lavorate e poi godete. Ha (Ella) mai veduto un fanciullo come questo? Davvero non ho mai veduto un fanciullo così grosso. Andate a destra, io andrò a sinistra. Senza dubbio, questo è meglio. Ho comprato quell' uccello a buon mercato. Non pranzerò colà, neanche mio fratello. *Non* credete *già* che non vi *vóglia bene (to love)*.

Traduzione. 56.

1. The thunderstorm came on (*sopravenne*) suddenly. Not long ago I was (the) witness of a generous action. I think at least (*di meno*) that it was (*Sogg.*) such [a one] (*cotale*). In a future state of existence (*transl.* in the other life) there will (not) be neither (*nè*) tears, nor (*nè*) sorrow, nor death. This boy was so fond of (*amava tanto*) (the) cherries, that he ate too many of them (*ne*). In future (*d'ora innanzi*) he will eat no more cherries. The fog (*la nébbia*) disappeared by degrees. I have written (*scritto*) (to) him on purpose. He has not even answered me. *It is true that (già)* I do not believe what he says, but the thing itself (*in se*) is not improbable.

2. I have lost my gold ring; I cannot find it anywhere (*in niún luogo*). Seek it! I have sought it everywhere. These people live very happily. I hope (that) you will dine with us to-morrow. I have seen your aunt a few days ago; she is (*sta*) very well. There is some bread and cheese! Do you want some more? This castle belongs to the former king of Hanover (*Annóvra*). • I shall eat this bit (*pezzetto*)

1) From Lat. *gaudere* (thence also the It. *gioire*, to enjoy); Fr. *jouir;* OFr. *joïr*, *goïr*. 2) *Immantinente* = *in mano tenente*, holding in the hand, like the Fr. *maintenant* (= *en main tenant*).

by and by. My friend will not stay here. Nor I either (*neanche me*). You come to me to-day, do you not (*transl.:* Is it not)? No, Sir, I don't. Do you see the trees yonder (*colà*)? Yes, Madam, I do.

Dialogo.

Ecco del formaggio. Ne vuol Ella?	Me ne dia un poco.
Ne vuol di più?	No, grazie, ne ho abbastanza.
Sarà a casa diman mattina?	Certamente; sarò a casa tutto il giorno.
A che ora ha fatto colazione (*breakfasted*) ieri?	Ieri abbiamo fatto colazione alle 7 precise.
Vuol aspettarmi (*wait for me*) finchè (*till*) ritorno?	Già! Ma si affretti (*make haste*)!
Che farà (*will you do*) frattanto (*meanwhile*)?	Andrò a spasso finchè arrivi.
Avete fatto ciò a bella posta?	No, non l'ho fatto apposta.
Ha finito il suo tema?	Lo finirò solamente (*only*)*) alle sei.
Che fa quella ragazzina?	Cerca delle frágole (*strawberries*).
Crede (Ella), ch'io abbia fatto ciò apposta?	*Non* dico *già* che lo abbiate fatto a bella posta, ma con un po' di buona voglia (*good will*) avreste evitato questo errore.
Come trova (Ella) il tempo oggi?	Lo trovo bellissimo.
Conosce (Ella) questa ópera?	Mi è perfettamente sconosciuta.
Venite finalmente?	L'ultima volta sono venuto per tempissimo e questa volta un po tardetto.
Quando vuol (Ella) venire a giuocar meco?	Finirò prima il mio tema e poi (*then*) giuocheremo.
Come sta (Ella)?	Sto (*I am*) benissimo, grazie a Dio!
E la sua Signora madre, come sta di salute?	Non troppo bene.

Reading Exercise.

Creso e Solone.

Creso domandò un giorno a Solone, se avesse incontrato ne' suoi viaggi un uomo perfettamente felice. »Ne ho conosciuto uno«, rispose il filósofo, »era un cittadino d'Aténe,

*) *Only (but)* is *solamente,* if there is no *Accusative* following; else it is rendered by *non — che,* as: ***Non ho che due fiorini,*** I have but two florins.

di nome Tello, galantuomo, che ha passato tutta la sua vita in una dolce agiatezza, vedendo la sua patria sempre prosperante. Quel felice mortale ha lasciato dei figli generalmente stimati, ha veduto i figli de' suoi figli ed è morto gloriosamente, combattendo per la pátria.«

Creso, sorpreso d'inténdre citare come modello di felicità un uomo mediócre, gli domandò se non avesse trovato uomini più felici ancora di Tello. Si, gli ripose Solone, erano due fratelli, Cleobis e Bitone, d'Argo, rinomati per la loro amicizia fraterna ed il loro amore filiale.

Words.

incontrare, to meet with.
il viággio, the journey.
rispose, def. of *rispóndere*, to answer.
il cittadino, the citizen.
Aténe, Athens.
di nome, named.
Tello, Tellus.
passare, to pass.
dolce, sweet; agreeable.
agiatezza, prosperity.
la patria, the country.
prosperante, flourishing.
combáttere, to fight.
sorpreso, a, surprised, astonished.
inténdere, to hear.
citare, to cite, to quote, to allege.
il modello, the model.
mediocre, adj. belonging to mediocrity.
rinomato, a, famous.
amicízia, friendship.
fraterno, a, fraternal.
amore, m. love.

Thirty second Lesson.

On prepositions.

In Italian prepositions are either *simple*, preceding, as in English, their noun in the *Accusative*, as: ***Senza*** *mio padre*, without my father; or they are *compound*, i. e. *adverbs* used as prepositions, and commonly followed by *di*, *a* or *da*, sometimes, however, without any other preposition intervening. Some of the simple prepositions may also be followed by *di*, *a* or *da*, as will be seen from the following examples:

Without my father, is: *senza* mio padre, or *senza* ***di*** *mio padre* (here the simple prep. *senza* is followed by *di*).

Near the church is: *presso* (adv.) ***della*** *chiesa*, but also *presso* ***la*** *chiesa* (the adv. *presso* immediately preceding the *Accus.*).

In the II Part we shall see, that by using or omitting *di*, *a*, and *da*, the speaker somewhat modifies the signification of the preposition. In general, compound prepositions are more expressive than the simple ones.

True prepositions, i. e. *not* followed by *di*, *a* or *da*, are:

A, at, *con*, with, *di*, of, *da*, of, from, by, *giusta*,[1]) conformably, *in*, in, within, *(a) lungo*,*) along, *per*, for, by, *secondo*,*) conformably ...

All the other prepositions may be followed by one or the other of the *segnacasi***) *di*, *a* or *da;* some of them even admit of *two*, in order to modify the sense.

Besides the true prepositions there are still a number of *prepositional expressions*, i. e. substantives or adjectives used with prepositions, as:

Appiè della montagna, at the foot of the mountain.

1. Prepositions commonly governing the Accusative, without *di*, *a* or *da* following.

Avanti, before.
contro / *contra* } against.
dopo, after.
durante, during.
eccetto, except.
fra, between.
(a) lungo / *allungo* } along.***)
malgrado,[2]) notwithstanding.
mediante,[3]) by means of.
oltre,[4]) besides, more than ...
salvo, except.
secondo, conformably.
senza, without.
sopra / *(sovra)* } on, upon, over.
sotto, under.
su (sur, in su), over, upon.
tra, between.
verso, against.

*) *Giusta*, *lungo*, *secondo*, and likewise *durante*, *mediante*, *salvo*, *eccetto* (See these) are properly *adjectives*, and only by *use* prepositions.

**) Signs of cases.

***) *Along*, when used in sentences like: *get along*, *come along*, is usually expressed with the verb *andársene*, as: *váttene*, get along with you!

1) Lat. *juxta*. 2) *Mal-grado*. *Grado*, like the Fr. *gré* (OFr. *gret*, *greit*, *gred*) and the Sp. Port. *grado*, from Lat. *gratum*, used in LL. instead of *gratia*. 3) From Lat. *medianus (medius)*. 4) Lat. *ultra*.

Note. ***Avanti, contra, dopo, fra, oltre, senza, sopra, sotto, su, tra,*** and ***verso*** are sometimes followed by ***di,*** especially when preceding a ***personal pronoun,*** as: ***dopo di me,*** behind (after) me; ***senza di voi,*** without you etc.

2. Prepositions commonly joined with *di.*

fuori (di), out (of) outside.
al di là, beyond; on the other side.
al di quà, on this side.
presso, *appresso*, *accanto*[1]), *allato*, *accosto* — near, at the side of ...
a forza, by much ...
prima, before.
a causa, *a motivo*, *a ragione* — for, on account of.
per mezzo, by means.
in luogo, *in vece* — instead.
appiè, at the foot.
a dispetto, *ad onta* — notwithstanding, in spite of.
a favore, in favour.
lungi, far.

3. Prepositions commonly joined with *a.*

Fino, *sino* — till.
dirimpetto, *in faccia* — opposite.
incirca, *circa* — about.
in mezzo, *a mezzo* — admidst.
dentro, inside.
innánzi, *dinanzi*, *davanti* — before.
in rispetto, *in riguardo*, *in quanto* — concerning.
diétro, behind.
vicino, near.
adosso, on, upon, with.
attorno,[2]) around, all around. *conforme,* conformably.

Note. Only a very limited number of Prep. take *da.* The most important of them are: *Fin da* ... from (the beginning); *al di quà da* ..., on this side; *al di là da* ..., on the other side, *lungi* and *discosto,* far from, and *in fuori,* except, which latter, however, is *preceded* by the word which it governs. Thus: ***Dalla Francia infuori tutte le altre potenze,*** All the other powers except France. — With these prepositions *di,* too, is not quite inadmissible.

Words.

Il viággio,[3]) the journey.
dotto, learned.
civile, polite.
assente, absent.

1) *Accanto* = *a canto,* at the side. The origin of the word is not yet sufficiently explained. Perhaps from Lat. *cantus* (κανθός), an iron circle, or fr. the Germ. Rante. 2) *Attorno* = *a torno.* The subst. *torno* has been explained before. 3) From Lat. *viaticum;* Fr. *voyage;* Sp. *viaje;* Prov. *viatge.*

il viale, the avenue.
agire (-isco), to act.
l'impiegato,[1]) the officer.
la guerra,[2]) the war.
aggirarsi,[3]) to turn round.
la sentinella,[4]) the sentinel.
il molo,[5]) the mole.
il campo, the camp.
le forze navali, the naval forces; the navy.
il cantante, the singer.
la stagione,[6]) the season.
la passeggiata, the walk.
la ragione, the reason.
il capo d'ópera, the master-piece.
l'uomo dabbéne, the honest man.
nascóndersi, to hide one's self.
il porto, the harbour.
il fanale,[7]) the light-house.
lo schiaffo, the box on the ear.
l'inverno,[8]) the winter.
il pesce, the fish.
aumentare, to increase.
l'albergo, the hotel.
il calzolajo, the shoemaker.
la resta, the fish-bone.
le ossa, the bones.
il pioppo, the poplar.

Reading Exercise. 57.

Chi è il più dotto fra questi maestri? Non è stata gentile verso gli stranieri. Durante la guerra orientale i Francesi hanno aumentato le loro forze navali. L'anno venturo andrò in Italia e non ritornerò prima di carnevale. I cantanti dell' opera tedesca erano ordinariamente assenti da Vienna durante la stagione italiana. Quest' anello non vale oltre cento zecchini. Secondo me gli Ugonotti del maestro Giácomo Meyerbeer sono un capo d'opera della musica moderna. Farò stasera una passeggiata lungo il fiume. La tavola si trovava accanto al letto. Resti presso di me! Bisogna sempre agire conforme alla ragione. L'uomo dabbene ha sempre Dio dinanzi agli occhi. L'albergo nazionale si trova dirimpetto al molo San Carlo. Presso a quella porta vi è un pozzo[9]) profondo. Innanzi al porto si vede il fanale. In luogo di dargli del danaro gli diede uno schiaffo. La bugía si nasconde sempre dietro alla verità. I pesci hanno reste invece d'ossa. Fuori della città non si vede che polvere. La casa del cacciatore sta in un boschetto appiè della montagna. Al di là della Giudecca si vede San Giorgio maggiore.

1) Partc. of *impiegare,* to employ, fr. Lat. *implicare;* Fr. *employer;* Sp. *emplear;* Prov. *emprear;* Engl. *to employ.* 2) From OHG. *werra,* quarrel; Fr. *guerre;* Sp., Port., Prov. *guerra;* Engl. *war;* OEgl. *werre.* 3) *Girare,* to turn round, from LL, *gyrare,* fr. Lat. *gyrus* (γῦρος), circle; OFr. *girer;* Fr. *virer.* Subst. are: It., Sp. *giro;* Prov. *gir.* 4) Fr. *sentinelle;* Sp. *centinela.* The origin is not clear. Perhaps from the Lat. *sentinator,* or OHG. *sentan,* to sent, or from the Romance *sentar,* to put. 5) Lat. *moles;* Fr. *môle.* 6) Lat. *statio;* Fr. *saison;* Engl. *season;* Sp. *sazon;* Prov. *sazo;* Port. *sazão.* The Sp. *estacion* and the Port. *estação* are of the same origin. 7) From the Greek φάρος, light-house or φάνος, lantern; Fr. *fanal.* Other derivations: Fr. *falot,* lantern and It. *falò,* fire of joy. 8) Lat. *hibernum* (i. e. *tempus* —); Fr. *hiver;* Prov. *hivern.* 9) Lat. *puteus;* Fr. *puits;* OFr. *puis, puiz;* Sp. *pozo.*

Traduzione. 58.

1. There is (*V'è*) a long avenue between the garden and the forest. Did you arrive before or after 4 o'clock? Papa (*transl.* the father) is very angry with Charles, because he went to the forest with his friends, instead of going (*andare*) to school. Where have you been during the winter? In spite of my orders (*órdine*, m.) you are here! Do you go with your sister or without (her)? The wooden horse was outside the walls (*le mura*) of Troy. Charles Albert of Piedmont (*Piemonte*) abdicated (*abdicare*) in favour of his son Victor Emanuel (*Vittório Emanuéle*). Is your house on this or on the other side of the river? He waited for (*aspettare*) me at the bottom (*transl.* foot) of the hill.

2. He obtained (*ottenne*) his liberty by reiterated prayers (*a forza di pregare*) only. We went to the first trees of the village. Before the church there are three high poplars. Concerning my journey I know (*so*) nothing (*niente di*) certain as yet (*ancora*). France extends (*si stende*) from the Vosges to the Atlantic Ocean. The earth turns (*girare*) round the sun. Did you come (*è Ella giunta*) to Paris? The maid-servant has brought apples instead of pears. He owes (*deve*) me about 200 florins. The mayor (*il podestà*) lives opposite the ducal palace. A sentinel was standing (*stava*) not far from the camp. Since that day I have seen my friend no more.

Dialogo.

Per chi è questo magnifico regalo?	È per mia cugina Emilia.
Per quanto tempo ha (Ella) preso in affitto (*hired*) questa stanza?	L'ho presa per due mesi, ma non ci dimorerò più di quindici giorni.
Quando partirà per Parigi?	Partirò domani o dopodimani.
Dove sta (Ella) di casa?	Sto all' albergo nazionale presso al molo San Carlo.
Dove vai così presto?	Io vado in città. Vado da mio nonno.
Dove sta il suo professore?	Nella contrada San Nicolò, Nr. 48 dirimpetto alla posta.
Come siete entrati?	Siamo entrati l'uno dopo l'altro.
Perchè fu demolita la fortezza?	Per ordine del re.
Ha del danaro seco?	No, ho dimenticato di prenderne.
È sotto la távola il cane?	No, è dietro alla porta.
Perchè siete restati a casa ad onta dei miei ordini?	Il calzolajo non ci ha portato le scarpe.

Ha (Ella) il suo bastone?	Eccolo; l'ho in mano.
Partirà (Ella) domani?	Secondo le circostanze.
Quando siete giunti (*arrived*)?	Siamo giunti ieri alle sei, avanti il tramontar (*setting*) del sole.
Dove ha (Ella) imparato questo?	Nei miei viaggi.
Ha viaggiato molto?	Sì, per mare e per terra.

Reading Exercise.

Continuazione.

Un giorno di festa solenne, vedendo che i buoi non arrivávano, i quali dovévano condurre al tempio di Giunone la loro madre, i figliuoli attaccárono se stessi al giógo, e trássero il legno per alcune miglia. Quella sacerdotessa, compresa di gioia e di riconoscenza, supplicò gli dei d'accordare ai suoi figli quel che gli uomini potéssero desiderare di meglio; fu esaudita. Dopo il sacrifizio ambedue i suoi figliuoli, immersi in un dolce sonno, terminárono tranquillamente la loro vita. Si eréssero loro delle statue nel tempio di Delfi.

»Dunque non mi conti nel número dei felici?« disse il re. »Sire«, rispose il filosofo, »noi professiamo nel nostro paese una filosofia semplice, senza fasto e poco comune alla corte dei re. Conosciamo l'incostanza della fortuna e stimiamo poco una felicità più apparente che reale e per lo più troppo passeggiera. La vita d'un uomo è presso a poco di trenta mila giorni. Nessuno d'essi rassomiglia all' altro, e come non accordiamo la corona che dopo la lotta, così non giudichiamo della felicità d'un uomo che alla fine della sua vita.«

Words.

Dovévano, should.	*il sonno*, sleep.
condurre (irr.), to lead, to carry, to bring.	*terminare*, to terminate, to end.
il témpio, the temple.	*eréssero*, def. of *erígere* (irr.) to erect.
attaccare, to put to ...	*contare*, to count.
il giógo, the yoke.	*professare*, to profess.
trássero, def. of *trarre*, to draw.	*il fasto*, the pride.
il légno, the carriage.	*la corte*, the court.
il miglio (plur. *le miglia*), the mile.	*stimare*, to esteem.
la sacerdotessa, the priestess.	*apparente*, apparent, seeming.
compresa, filled with ...	*reále*, real.
supplicare, to pray ardently.	*per lo più*, mostly.
accordare, to bestow.	*passeggiéro, a*, passing, transitory.
potéssero, could.	*presso a poco*, nearly, almost, about.
desiderare, to desire.	

esaudire, to hear, to grant.
il sacrifizio, the sacrifice.
immerso, sunk.
accordare, to adjudicate, to yield.
la lotta, the combat, fight.
giudicare, to judge.

Thirty third Lesson.

On Conjunctions. Le congiunzioni.

These words join words and sentences together. They are either *copulative* or *adversative*, *simple* or *compound*. The Italian language has abundance of these words; those most in use are as follows:

Note. Conjunctions marked by an asterisk (*) require the Subjunctive mood. Many of them, however, govern the Indicative, when the action expressed by the verb is represented as *a fact* admitting of no doubt.

a. Copulative Conjunctions.

**Se*, if.
che, that.
e, and.
e — e, as well as.
quando, when.
come, as.
finchè, till.
dopo che, after.
appena / *a pena* } scarcely.
**suppostochè*, suppose, provided that ...
ánche, also, too.
allorchè, then, when.
perchè / *poichè* / *giacchè* / *posciachè* } because.
sicchè, so that.
**acciocchè* / **affinchè* } that, in order to ..
perocchè / *perciocchè* / *imperciocchè* } as, because.
**prima che*, before, sooner.
**quand'anche*, though, although.
se anche, even if.
di maniera che / *di modo che* } so that.
dunque, so, therefore.
non — se non, except.
tosto che / *subito che* } as soon as.
però, though, however.
quindi, therefore, consequently.
dacchè, because, since.
mentre che, whilst etc.

b. Adversative Conjunctions.

o, or.
se, whether.
o — o, either — or.
ovvéro / *ossia* / *oppúre* } or.

**purchè*, provided.
**benchè*
**abbenchè*
**sebbène* } though, although.
**ancorchè*
**quantunque*[1])
nè, neither — nor.
ora — ora, now — now.
anzipure, even.
neppure } not even.
nemmeno }
**senza che*, without that.
ma, but.
eziandio[2]) } but also.
ma anco, }
**non ostante che*, notwithstanding.
**per quanto che*,*) however ...
perciò, nevertheless.
nulla di meno } nevertheless.
niente di meno }
altresì, besides.
per altro, however.

Remarks.

1) The interrogative *why?* is rendered by *perchè*, which also means *because*. Ex.: *Perchè non è venuta?* Why did you not come? *Perchè non poteva. Because* I could not. Frequently *perchè* also means *that* denoting consequence, as: *La cosa è troppo chiara* ***perchè*** *potessi ingannarmi*, the matter is too evident, *that* I could (= for me to) be mistaken. *Un ábito fatto* ***perchè*** *duri a lungo*, a coat made so that it may (so as to) last long.

2) *Poichè* corresponds to the English *as* or *because*, and is placed at the beginning of a sentence, as: *Poichè non volete*, as (because) you will not (French: *Puisque* vous ne voulez pas).

3) *Dunque*, at the beginning of a sentence, means *thus, therefore, so*, as: *Dunque non verrò*, therefore (so) I shall not come. When following the verb, it is rendered by *but* or *so*, as: *Venite dunque, Signore!* So (but) come, Sir! (French: Venez *donc*, Monsieur!)

4) *Se* means *if* and *whether*, as: *Se tu vieni*, if you come. *Non so,* ***se*** *verrà o no*, I don't know whether he will come or not.

5) *Quando* expresses a *condition* like *se*, but more generally, as: *Quando si dice la verità*, if (*when*) one speaks the truth. When denoting time, it corresponds to the English *when*, as: *Quando venite?* when do you come?

6) It is of importance to distinguish *Per — che* from *perchè*. *Per — che*, written as two words and separated by an adjective, means *however ...*, for ex.: ***Per grande che sia***, however great he may be. This conjunction always requires the *Subjunctive*.

---

*) *per quanto* (adv.) always requires an *adjective* after it, as: *per quanto* fedele *egli sia*, however faithful he be.

1) From the Lat. *quantus cunque*. 2) Lat. *etiam diu*.

7) Likewise *per — quanto* (written as two words) and *perquanto* (in *one* word) should be distinguished. The former is an adjective and means *however numerous, though great as ...* or something similar, as: ***Per quanti siano i vostri peccati,*** However great (and numerous your sins may be. The latter, written as one word, is an adverb and therefore invariable, as: ***Perquanto lo ami,*** should I love him ever so much ...

Words.

Il merito, the merit.
la virtù, the virtue.
il vizio, the vice.
pronto, a, ready.
la sicurezza, the safety.
la prestezza, quickness, speed.
la situazione, the situation.
accompagnare, to accompany.
scrivere, to write.
unire (isco), to unite, to join, to connect.
la prigione,[1]) the prison.
invidiare, to envy.
sviársi, to go astray.
la selva, the forest, wood.
andare a spasso, to take a walk.
difèndere, to defend.
proibire, to forbid.

Traduzione. 59.

1. If you will be happy, love *(Imperat.)* (the) virtue and flee (the) vice. I have seen [both] (*e — e*) his brother and (his) sister. If I had had faithful friends, I should not be (*transl.:* I were not *Cond.*) in this situation. As I am not well (*in buona salute*), I cannot go out to-day. I accompany you, that you may not lose your way (*transl.:* go astray) in the forest. He waited quietly till his friend returned (*sogg. imp.*). I am ready to come to you as soon as I shall have done (*finire*) my task. If the weather *be* (*è*) fine, I shall be at Paris this day week (*fra otto giorni*). Do but (*pure*) eat these apples; they *will* not *do* you *any harm (faranno già male).* Since rail-roads and steamers connect the different towns of Europe, one travels everywhere with the greatest safety and speed.

2. Whilst you take a walk, I shall write a letter. This letter is too important, *that* I could (*possa*) defer answering (*transl.:* to answer) (to) it (*ci*). I am ill, therefore I cannot go out. Although I am not glad (with *rallegrarsi*) of it (*ne*), yet (*però*) I cannot be sorry (*dolente*) for it. We have neither money nor friends; therefore we are not satisfied with our situation. Either you pay me, or you go (*andrà*) to prison. He will, but he cannot. This is not my pen, but yours. Who will lend me a book? I am happy, if you only be happy. You will be happy, when you are doing (*fáccia*) your duty. However rich you may be, I do not envy you. How-

1) From Lat. *prensio = prehensio;* Fr. *prison;* Sp. *prision;* Prov. *prisô;* Port. *prisão;* Engl. *prison.*

ever numerous your merits may be, (the) modesty forbids you to speak *of them* (*ne*, prec. the verb).

Dialogo.

Sei contento, amico mio?	Lo sarei, se avessi buoni amici.
Che cosa vuol (Ella) comperare, Signore?	Vorrei (*I should like to*) comperare alcuni sigari.
Se non Le occorre (*If you want*) altro (*nothing else*), io posso dárgliene. Ne vuole?	Gliéne sono molto obbligato (*obliged*).
Verrà (*will you come*) (Ella) da me stasera?	Verrò, purchè io non la incommodi.
Come trova (Ella) l'acqua stamattina?	È fredda come ghiáccio.
Che dice Gesù Cristo di quelli che amano la pace?	Egli dice che saranno chiamati (*called*) figli di Dio.
Che cosa vuole questo fanciullo?	Ora vuol una cosa, ora un' altra.
Come trova (Ella) questa signorina?	Non è*) nè bella nè brutta.
Andrà (Ella) a Parigi quest'anno?	Sì, vi andrò sicuramente, benchè non abbia molto danaro.
Che ti pare del nuovo servo?	Quantunque sia poco disinvolto (*expert*), sarà però meglio tenerlo.
Poichè non mi credete, non vi dirò più nulla!	Chi Le ha detto che non credo quel che mi dice?
Non vuol ubbidirmi il suo amico?	No, neanch'io.
Io Le aveva proibito di andare a spasso!	E nulla di meno io sono andato.
Perchè dite, ch'io abbia fatto ciò?	Non dico già che Lei lo abbia fatto, ma ho detto che la credo capace di farlo.

Reading Exercise.

Il sofista convinto.

Il filósofo Diodoro pretendeva provare al médico Erófilo, che non vi era moto, con questo argomento: Se alcun corpo si muove, o egli si muove nel luogo dov'è, o nel luogo ove non è. Nel luogo dov'è, *non* si muove, perchè nel tempo che vi è, riposa, e ciò che riposa non si muove. Poi non si muove dove *non* è, perchè dove non esiste non può esercitare nessun' azione: dunque niuna cosa è in moto. Il nostro

*) Before *nè* — *nè* the verb is preceded by *non*.

filosofo cadde di cavallo e si slogò un braccio. Chiamò Erofilo, perchè glielo rimettesse. »O il vostro osso«, gli disse allora il medico, »si è mosso nel luogo dov' era, o nel luogo ove non era. Nel luogo dove era non poteva muóversi, perchè ivi era in riposo; nel luogo dove non era non poteva muóversi, com'è chiaro. Dunque il vostro osso non si è mosso nè poco nè punto, e per conseguenza ne meno slogato.« Diodoro allora disse: »Lasciamo i sofismi e togliétemi questo dolore.«

Words.

Il sofista, the sophist.
convinto (p. p.) from *convincere*, to convince.
preténdere, to pretend.
il moto, the motion, movement.
l'argomento, the argument.
muóve, fr. *muóvere*, to move.
il luógo, the place.
ivi (for *vi*), there.
riposare, to repose.
esiste fr. *esistere*, to exist.
esercitare, to exercise.
cadde, def. of *cadére*, to fall.
slogare, to dislocate (a limb).
il dolóre, the ache, pain.
chiamare, to call, to send for.
perchè, that.
rimettesse, fr. *rimèttere* (irr.), here: to set a dislocated member.
l'osso, the bone.
mosso, p. p. of *muóvere*.
poteva, could.
chiaro, a, clear, evident.
nè poco nè punto, not at all.
per conseguenza, therefore.
ne meno, also not; nor.
il sofisma, the sophism (a false argument that puts on the appearance of a true one).
lasciare, to let.
tógliere (irr.), to take away from .., to free from .., to deliver.

Thirty fourth Lesson.

On Interjections. Interiezioni.

These words are indeclinable like the prepositions and conjunctions, and express some emotion of the speaker, as *joy*, *surprise*, *grief* etc. Those most in use are:

Ah, ah!
ahi, alas!
eh / *ehi*, halloo!
ebbéne, well!
oimè, woe to me!
olà, oh!
orsù, courage!
oh bella, very well! capital!
oibò, fie!
possíbile, Good gracious!
avanti, make haste!
evviva, huzza!
zitto, hush! peace!
ánimo, come! courage!
per Bacco! / *corpo di Bacco!*, good heavens!
fi, fie!
guái, woe!
oh, ohé, oh!

deh, alas!	*bravo, a* \ well done!
fuori, be gone!	*bravi, e* /
anzi, on the contrary, even!	*all' erta*,[1]) up! about!
via, away! pshaw!	*chi va là?* who goes there?
bene, well!	*affè*[2]) \ indeed! faith!
benóne, very well!	*a fè* /
aiuto, help!	*su, su*, come, come!

Besides these there are many compound expressions as: *per l'amore di Dio*, for God's sake! *Váttene in malora*, go to hell! etc. The Italian language abounds in interjective particles.

Remarks.

1) *Zitto* and *bravo* are considered to be *adjectives*, the former sometimes, the latter always. They must therefore agree in gender and number with the person spoken to, thus:

Brava! Very well (to a lady).
Bravi! » » (to several gentlemen, or to gentlemen *and* ladies).
Brave! » » (to several ladies).
Zitta là, bugiarda! Hold your tongue, liar that you are (to a woman).
*Spinsero l'uscio adagino **zitti zitti** (M.)*
They opened the door quite softly, without the slightest noise.

2) If an adjective qualifies the person addressed, this adjective must *precede* the personal pronoun which appears in the *Accusative*, as:

*Oh, misero **me!*** Wretch that I am!
*Oh, poverette **loro!*** Alas the poor girls! etc.

If there is a *name* with the adjective, this name should be preceded by *di*, as:

*Quel zótico **di** Bernardo*, that impudent B.
*Quello spensierato **di** Attilio. (M.)*
That thougthless fellow Attilio.

This is also the case, if a *substantive* is used in lieu of the adjective, as:

*Quella **bugiarda** di Colombina. (G.)*
That deceitful (properly: liar) Colombine.

1) *Alerta = all' erta; erta*, the elevation on which the sentinel is placed, from Lat. *erigere*. 2) *affè = a fede*, on faith, from Lat. *fides*.

NB. If a noun appellative is used with the name of the person, the former is preceded by *di* with the *article*, as:

*Quel **benedett'uomo** del **signor** curato.* *(Manzoni.)*
That *poor* fellow our (Mr.) parson!

Words.

Giurare, to swear.
la vendetta, vengeance.
aspettare, to expect; to wait for.
brutto, a, ugly.
affrettarsi, to make haste.
salvare, to save.
il pazzo, the fool, the coxcomb.
lo scellerato, the wicked man.
il barcaiuólo, the boatman.
la fáccia, the face.
la sventura, the misfortune.
la canzonetta, the little song.
assassinare, to murder.

Reading Exercise. 60 a.

Orsù! amici, giuriamo vendetta! Deh, lásciami in pace! Via di quà, scellerato! Zitto! zitto! non parlare! Zitte là, ragazze! Evviva la nostra regina! Ebbene, che cosa faremo? Per Bacco! Non l'avrei mai creduto. Olà, barcaiuolo! venite quà colla vostra barca! Animo! non sarà così difficile come pensate! Avanti, avanti, non posso aspettare. Fi, che brutta faccia! Gran Dio, che sventura! Eh, Signori, affrettátevi! Deh, sentite! Che bella canzonetta! Bravi tutti! Fuori! fuori! Dio sia lodato! siamo salvati! Aiuto! egli ci vuol assassinare!

Traduzione. 60 b.

Courage, (my) friends, and we shall be victorious (*la vinceremo*)! Is it possible that a man can be so daring (*ardito*)! Help! The unhappy (man) will be drowned (fr. *annegarsi*)! That impudent William has told me a falsehood! Be gone, or I shall call (for) the footman! Woe (to you), if you dare tell him one word! That coxcomb of (a) lawyer has told me nevertheless (*pure*), that you wanted to speak [to] me. Oh the unhappy (persons)! They will all be lost! Hold your tongue (*transl.* be silent), (you) fool (*matto*)! You well know, that I do not believe you! Well done, boys! Be silent, girls! Do not you see that mamma (*la mamma*) is there! Good gracious! I should never have thought (fr. *crédere*) that you were such a mighty (*sì grande*) speaker (*oratore*)! For heaven's sake! Do not forsake me in this misfortune! Make haste! The coachman has no time to wait! *To the good health (evviva)* (of) our friends!

Thirty fifth Lesson.

On the irregular verbs. Verbi irregolari.

Before beginning with the irregular verbs, we have to note some *poetical* deviations in the conjugation of verbs, both regular and irregular. These anomalies are:

1) In the 3rd *Plur.* of the *Definito* of the 1st conj. the contraction — *aro* for — *árono* is frequently met with; thus:

Compráro, they bought, for *comprárono.*

2) In the *Defin.* of the 3rd conj. the 3rd pers. *Sing.* terminates in —*ío* (for —*ì*), and the 3rd *Plur.* in —*íro* (for —*írono*), thus:

Sentío (= sentì), he felt.
Sentíro (= sentírono), they felt.

3) In the *Conditional* Mood of *all three* Conjugations the 3rd pers. *Sing.* has often —*ía* instead of —*ebbe,* and the 3rd *Plur.* —*íano* or —*ébbono* in lieu of —*ebbero,* as:

Credería (= crederebbe), he would believe.
*Amerían*o or *amerébbono* (= amerebbero), they would love.

Verbs deviating from the three regular conjugations are termed *irregular.* This deviation can be twofold, i. e.:

1) The *root remains unaltered,* but instead of the regular terminations the verb assumes irregular inflexions, as: *píngere,* to paint; Def. *pinsi* (instead of *pingei*).

2) The root as well as the terminations are altered, as: *morire,* to die; Pres. *io muoio,* I die (inst. of *moro* or *morisco*).

NB. Without being really irregular, many verbs, in the *Definito,* take a *double* form, one in *ei* and the other in *etti.* Examples:

crédere, to believe.			*cédere,* to cede.		
credéi, I believed, and		credétti.	cedéi, I ceded, and		cedétti.
credésti.			cedésti.		
credè	»	credétte	cedè	»	cedétte.
credémmo.			cedémmo.		
credéste.			cedéste.		
credérono	»	credéttero.	cedérono	»	cedéttero.

We at once perceive that the irregularity of these verbs is in the *1st* and *3rd pers. Sing.* and the *3rd pers. Plur.* only. By far the greater number of irregular verbs deviate merely in the *Definito* and *Participio passato*, less frequently in the *Futuro*, and very rarely in the *Presente*. The learner should bear in mind the following rules:

1) When the *Definito* is irregular, only the I. and III. pers. Sing. and the III. pers. Plur. deviate. Thus *piacére*, to please, forms:

I.	io piácqui, I pleased.	noi piacémmo
	tu piacésti	voi piacéste
III.	egli piácque	eglino piácquero.

2) When the *Futuro* deviates, the *Condizionale* is also irregular; thus from *cógliere*, to gather:

Fut.	*Cond.*
io corrò, I shall gather.	io correi, I should gather.
tu corrai etc.	tu corrésti etc.

Verbs that have more irregular tenses than *Definito*, *Futuro*, and *Participio passato* are called *Anomalous* verbs, **verbi anómali.**

We begin with the *Verbi anómali* of the

I. Conjugation.

Previous remark. Derivates and compound verbs are conjugated like the *simple*. Exceptions are noted. Tenses not given here are *regular*.

1) **Andáre,** to go.
Pres. Ind. *Vado (vo),**) *vái, va,* andiámo, andáte, *vanno.*
Fut. Andrò, andrai etc.
Pres. Sogg. Ch'io *vada, vada* (vádi), *vada,* andiamo, andiate, *vádano.*
Imperat. *Va,* andiamo, andiate. (*Vada,* polite form.)
Part. pass. *Andato.*

2) **Stáre,** to stand, also: to be in health.
Pres. Ind. *Sto, stái, sta, stiamo, state,* stanno.
Def. *Stetti, stesti, stette, stemmo, steste, stéttero.*
Fut. *Starò etc.*
Imperat. *Sta, stiamo, state.* (*Stia,* p. f.)
Pres. Sogg. *Stia, stia (stii), stia; stiamo, stiate, stiano* (stieno).
Imp. Sogg. *Stessi etc.* 3rd Plur. *stéssero* (stéssono).

---

*) Forms in parenthesis ( ) are less used, or are poetical.

Condiz. *Staréi, staresti etc.* 3rd Pl. *starébbero* (starébbono).
Gerund. *Stando.* Part. pass. *Stato.*

3) **Dáre,** to give.
Pres. Ind. *Do, dai, da, diámo, date, danno.*
Def. *Diédi* (detti), desti, *diéde* (diè, détte); demmo, deste, *diédero* (diérono, déttero, denno).
Fut. Darò, darai etc.
Condiz. Darei etc. *3rd Plur.* Darébbero (darébbono).
Imperat. *Da, diamo, date.* (*Día,* p. f.)
Pres. Sogg. *Dia, dia* (dii), *dia, diamo, diate, diano* (dieno).
Imp. Sogg. *Dessi etc.* 3rd Plur. *déssero* (déssono).
Gerund. *Dando.* Part. pass. *Dato.*

Note 1. The compounds of *dare* are *regular,* if their Infinitive has *more than three syllables;* thus *circondare* to surround, forms in the Present: *Circóndo, circóndi, circónda etc.,* and not *circondò, circondái, circondà* etc. Those which have but *two* syllables are conjugated like *dare,* thus *ridare* (to give again), Pres.: *ridò, ridai, ridà etc.* (and not *rido, ridi, rida etc.*).*)

Note 2. The verbs ending in *stare* are *regular,* as: *costare,* to cost, *Pres. cósto, cósti, cósta etc.* Except *sottostare,* to be beneath and *sovrastare (soprastare),* to be above, which follow *stare.***) As to *contrastare,* the question is whether this verb means: *to oppose,* to resist, or *to deny, to dispute, to refuse.* In the first signification it is *irregular,* in the latter *regular.*

Note 3. Of the compounds of *andare* only *riandare,* when meaning *to examine,* is regular. In the signif. *to return* or *to go back* it is conjugated like *andare,* as: *rivado;* it is, however, but rarely used.***)

Traduzione. 61 a.

Where *docst* thou *go?* I am going (*transl.* go) home. We *went* to (the) play, and to-morrow we *shall go* to the concert. *Do go* (pol. m. with *pure*)! I *shall go* with him. Where *do* you *go,* Gentlemen? We *should go* to the garden, if we had time. If you *would go* with her, she would *give* you a fee (*máncia,* f., *buonamano,* f.). *Begone* (2. Pl.)! You have nothing to (*che*) do here! How *is* your mother (fr. *stare*)? She *would feel* (fr. *stare*) better, if it were not so cold. *Stay* (2. Sing.) there (*lì*)! Why *docst* thou not give me my book?

*) Some verbs in *-dare* are not derived from *dare* and therefore *regular.* Such verbs are *secondare,* to assist and *ridondare,* to overflow.

**) But also regular: *Le volte celesti che sovrástano l'universo* (Ugo Fosc.).

***) *Rivo* in lieu of *rivado* is not allowable.

I beg your pardon (*mi scusi*), I *have* already *given* it you yesterday. *Give* (2. Sing.) me (—*mmi*) my hat! *Do* not *give* me so much money; I (*ne*) have enough. *Give* me your (= the) hand! I *gave* (Impf.) him three shillings (*scellino*) every day. If I *gave* you these flowers, I *should* also *give* some to your sister. These gentlemen *give* too much money to the footman. I do not like (fr. *volere*) them to give [*transl.* that they *give* (Sogg.)] him so much money. The river *surrounds* the town from (*da*) three sides (*lato*, m.). The courtiers *surrounded* (Def.) the king and the queen. He *gave* (Def.) me *back* money which I *had given* him. How much *does* this hat *cost?* It cost (Def.) me seven florins. He *disputed* the heritage (*retaggio*, m.) to his brother. We *resisted* the enemy as long as (*finchè*) we could. I *perused* (Def.) the whole book, but I could not find the place. I was once at my uncle's, but I shall not go there again.

II. Conjugation.

Rule. When the *final consonant* of the *root* is changed in the *Presente (potere — posso)*, the *new* consonant is retained in the I. and III. *Plur.* of this tense and through the whole *Presente del Soggiuntivo*. Example:

Solére, to be accustomed, to use.

Pres.	Sog*l*io — sog*l*iamo	*Sogg.*	Ch'io sog*l*ia, noi sog*l*iamo
	suoli solete		che tu sog*l*ia etc.
	suole sog*l*iono.		che tu sog*l*ia.

Verbs ending in *ére.**)

1) **Cadére**, to fall.

Pres. Ind. Cado (caggio), cadi, cade, cadiamo, *cadéte*, cádono (cággiono).

Def. Cáddi, cadesti, cadde, cademmo, cadeste, cáddero. (This verb has also the regular forms *cadéi* and *cadetti*).

Fut. *Cadrò etc.*

Pres. Sogg. Ch'io cada, cada, cada (caggia); cadiamo (caggiamo), cadiate, cádano (caggiano).

Imp. Sogg. Cadessi etc.

Imperat. *Cadi*, cadete (*Cada*, p. f.).

Part. pass. Caduto. *NB.* This verb is conjugated with the auxiliary *essere.*

*) The learner should carefully distinguish, on which *e* the accent lies, whether on the *penultimate*, as in *dovére*, *vedére* etc., or on the *antepenultimate (diféndere, préndere)*, as there is nothing more offensive to the Italian ear than to hear these verbs badly accentuated. Some Latin verbs have *displaced* their accent in Italian. Thus (Lat.) *cádere;* (Ital.) *cadére;* (Lat.) *movére;* (Ital.) *muóvere.*

2) **Dolére,** to smart, to pain (usually *dolérsi,* to complain).

Pres. Ind. *Dolgo (doglio),* duóli, duole; *dogliamo (dolghiamo),* doléte; *dólgono (dógliono).*

Def. *Dolsi,* dolesti, *dolse;* dolemmo, doleste, *dolsero.*

Fut. *Dorrò, dorrai etc.*

Pres. Sogg. Ch'io *dolga* (dóglia) etc. che noi dogliamo *(dolghiamo), dogliate (dolghiate),* dólgano (dógliano).

Imp. Sogg. Dolessi etc.

Part. pass. *Doluto* (mi *sono* doluto, I have complained or it has hurt me).

3) **Dovére,** to be obliged.

Pres. Ind. *Devo* (débbo, déggio), I must, *devi* (déi), deve (débbe, dée); *dobbiamo* (dovémo, deggiamo), dovete, *dévono* (débbono, déggiono, déono, denno).

Def. *Dovéi* and *dovetti* etc.

Fut. Dovrò, dovrái etc.

Pres. Sogg. Dovessi etc.

Part. pass. Dovuto.

4) **Parére,** to seem.*)

Pres. Ind. *Páio,* pari, pare; *pariámo* (paiamo), paréte, *páiono* (párono).

Def. *Párvi* (parsi), paresti, *párve;* paremmo, pareste, *párvero.*

Fut. *Parrò, parrái etc.*

Pres. Sogg. Ch'io *páia, páia etc.*

Imp. Sogg. Paressi etc.

Part. pass. *Paráto,* better than *parso.*

5) **Piacére,** to please.

Pres. Ind. *Piáccio,* piaci, piace; *piacciamo,* piacéte, *piácciono.*

Def. *Piácqui,* piacésti, *piácque,* piacémmo, piacéste, *piácquero.*

Fut. Piacerò etc.

Pres. Sogg. Ch'io *piáccia* etc.

Imp. Sogg. Piacessi etc.

Part. pass. Piaciuto.

In the same manner are conjugated *giacere,* to lie, to be stretched, and *tacére,* to be silent.

---

*) Several forms of *parere,* f. inst. *pariamo, pariate, pari etc.* are identical with some forms of the verb *parare,* to adorn etc. or with other words like *parete,* wall, *parente,* relation etc. Whenever a misconception could arise, the respective form of *sembrare,* to seem, should be preferred; but both verbs are mostly used impersonally, with the *sogg.* following.

6) **Potére,** to be able.
Pres. Ind. *Pósso,* I can, *puói, può* (puóte); *possiamo,* potéte, *póssono* (ponno).
Def. *Potéi* and *potetti* (like *crédere*).
Fut. *Potrò, potrái etc.*
Pres. Sogg. Ch'io *possa, possa* (possi) etc.
Imp. Sogg. Potessi etc.
Part. pass. Potuto.

7) **Rimanére,** to remain, to stop.
Pres. Ind. *Rimángo,* rimani, rimane; rimaniamo (*rimanghiamo*), rimanéte, *rimángono.*
Def. *Rimási,* rimanésti, *rimase* etc.
Fut. Ch'io *rimánga,* rimanga, rimanga; rimaniamo (*rimanghiamo*), rimaniate (*rimanghiate*), rimángano.
Pres. Sogg. *Rimanessi etc.*
Imp. Sogg. Rimani, rimanéte. (*Rimanga,* p. f.)
Part. pass. *Rimasto* or *rimaso.*

8) **Sapére,** to know.
Pres. Ind. *So, sái, sa; sappiámo,* sapéte, *sánno.*
Def. *Séppi,* sapésti, *séppe;* sapémmo, sapéste, *séppero.*
Fut. *Saprò,* saprái, saprà etc.
Pres. Sogg. Ch'io *sáppia,* sappi (sáppia) etc.; sappiamo, sappiate, sáppiano.
Imp. Sogg. Sapessi etc.
Imperat. *Sappi, sappiate.* (*Sáppia,* pol. f.)
Part. pass. Sapúto.

9) **Sedére,** (essere seduto, assiso) to be seated; *sedersi,* to sit down.
Pres. Ind. *Siédo* (seggo, séggio), *siédi, siéde; sediámo* (seggiamo), sedéte, *siédono* (séggono, séggiono).
Def. *Sedéi* and *sedétti* (like *crédere*).
Fut. Sederò (sedrò), sederái etc.
Pres. Sogg. Ch'io *siéda* (ségga, séggia) etc., sediámo (seggiámo), sediáte (seggiáte), *siédano* (séggano, séggiano).
Imp. Sogg. Sedéssi etc.
Imperat. *Siédi;* sedete. (*Sieda,* pol. f.)
Part. pass. *Sedúto, assiso.*

10) **Solére,** to be accustomed. (See the Defective verbs, p. 181.)

11) **Tenére,** to hold, to keep.
Pres. Ind. *Téngo, tiéni, tiéne;* teniámo, tenéte, *téngono.*
Def. *Ténni,* tenésti, *ténne* etc.
Fut. *Terrò,* terrái, terrà etc.
Pres. Sogg. Ch'io *ténga* etc., teniámo (tenghiámo), teniáte (tenghiáte), *téngano.*

Imperat. *Tiéni;* tenéte. (*Ténga*, pol. f.)
Part. pass. Tenúto.

12) **Valére,** to be worth.
Pres. Ind. *Válgo*, váli, vále; *vagliámo*, valéte, *válgono* (vá-
Def. *Válsi*, valésti etc. [gliono).
Fut. *Varrò* etc.
Pres. Sogg. *Válga* (váglia) etc., vagliámo, *vagliáte*, *válgano*
Imp. Sogg. Valéssi. [(vágliano).
Imperat. Váli, valéte. (*Válga*, pol. f.).
Part. pass. Valúto (*valso*).

13) **Vedére,** to see.
Pres. Ind. Védo (veggo, véggio), védi (ve'), véde; vediámo (veggiámo), vedéte, védono (véggono, véggiono).
Def. *Vídi* (veddi), vedésti, *víde* (vedde); vedémmo, vedéste, vídero (véddero).
Fut. *Vedrò etc.* (vederò).
Pres. Sogg. Ch'io véda (végga, véggia) etc., vediámo (veggiámo), vediáte (veggiáte), védano (véggano,
Imp. Sogg. Vedéssi etc. [véggiano).
Imperat. Védi (*ve'*); vedéte. (*Véda*, pol. f.).
Gerund. Vedéndo (veggéndo).
Part. pass. Vedúto (*visto*).

14) **Volére,** to be willing.
Pres. Ind. *Vóglio* (vo'), *vuói*, *vuóle; vogliámo*, voléte, *vógliono.*
Def. *Vólli* (*volsi*, obsol.), volésti, *vólle* etc.
Fut. *Vorrò*, vorrái etc.
Pres. Sogg. Ch'io vóglia, vóglia (vógli), vóglia etc.
Imp. Sogg. Voléssi.
Part. pass. Volúto.

Traduzione. 61b.

The stone (*il sasso*) *fell (Def.)* into the water. Thou *wilt fall*, if thou doest not take care (fr. *badare*). The leaves *fall* from the trees; (the) autumn is drawing near (*transl.* approaches) (fr. *avvicinarsi*). The gallant [ones] (*i prodi*) *died* (*cadere, Def.*) for their country. Did you fall [*transl.* have (*essere*) you *fallen*], child? I *am sorry* (fr. *dolere*) to tell you this sad news. He has *complained* (fr. *dolere*) of your unkindness (*scortesía*, f.). Do not *complain* of every trifle (*bagatella*, f.). You must do as I told you (*transl.* what I have ordered you). (The) men *must* love each other *(Pl.)*. Why do you want me to stay [*transl. desire*, that I *stay (Sogg.)*] at home? *Should I be obliged* to die, I *cannot* speak otherwise (*diversamente*)! You do not *seem* (See the note p. 158) to know, what you shall do. It has *seemed* to me that the door was shut. *Be silent (2. Pl.)! Be silent (2. Sing.)! Be*

silent (pol. mode)! Why have you *concealed* (fr. *tacere*) the truth? Do speak! I *shall* be *silent!* The watch which you *gave* him, *pleased* him much. If these flowers *would please* her, I *should give* them to her. It is not always our merit, if we *please* (to) others. Thou *canst* come with me. I *could* not come yesterday, I had too much to (*da*) do. If we *could* do as (what) we *like* (*volere*), we should be satisfied. My companions (*compagno*) *remain* at Florence; I *shall remain* at Rome. *Stay* (pol. m.) where you are! My brother has been staying (*remained*) till 11 o'clock. *Do* you (p. m.) *know* what he will say? We know more than we *say*. *Mind* (fr. *sapere*, p. m.) that I shall not endure (*soffrire*) your impertinence (*impertinenza*)! Where is your sister sitting? She *sits* there, where the other ladies *sit*. I *sat* (Def.) at the side of the officer. I *hold* the stick in [my] hand. *Hold* (p. m.) this letter a moment; I *shall see* whether I find the sealing-wax (*ceralácca*, f.). *Hold* (2. Pl.) the string (*la corda*); I shall look for (*cercare*) the hammer (*martello*). *Shall* you *keep* (p. m.) your (*la*) word? I kept (Def.) the promise (*promessa*, f.) which I had given you. I *avail myself* (fr. *valersi*) of this opportunity (*opportunità*, f.) to write you a few lines (*linea*, f.). How much *is* this banknote (*banconota*, f.) *worth? Doest* thou *see* that cloud (*nívola*, f.)? I *see* it now, but before I *did* not *see* (Impf.) it. I *saw* (Def.) your brother yesterday; he *wanted* (*volere*, Imperf.) to go to see you (*venire a trovare*). These fools *do* not *see* that thus (*così*) they will never succeed (fr. *riuscire*). Hast thou not *seen* that I was here? *Will* (f. *volere*) you give me your pencil? I *will* give it you, but you *must* give it back to me (fr. *restituire*). I *would* (Def.) not do what he asked (*chiese*) me. If you *would* do me this favour (*favore*, m.), I should be *very much obliged* (Part. p. of *tenere*) to you.

Verbs ending in *ĕre* (short *e*) or with *contracted Infinitive.*

Bévere or **bere,** to drink.

Prcs. Ind.	Bévo (béo), bévi (béi), béve (bée); beviámo (beiámo), bevéte (beéte), bévono (béono).
Imperf.	Bevéva (bevéa), bevévi (beévi), bevéva (bevéa) etc.
Def.	Bevétti (bévvi)*), bevésti (beésti), bevétte (bévve); bevémmo (beémmo), bevéste (beéste), bevéttero (bévvero).
Fut.	Berò, berái (better than *beverò*) etc.
Pres. Sogg.	Ch'io béva (béa) etc.; beviámo (beiámo), beviáte (beiáte), bévano (béano).

*) The Def. *bébbi* is obsolete.

Imp. Sogg. Bevéssi (beéssi).
Imperat. Bévi; bevéte (beéte). (*Béva*, pol. f.)
Gerund. Bevéndo (beéndo).
Part. pass. Bevúto (beúto).

2) **Dire** (contr. from *dícere*), to say, to tell.
Pres. Ind. Dico, dici, dice; diciámo, *dite*, dícono.
Imperf. Diceva etc.
Def. *Dissi*, dicesti, *disse* etc.
Fut. Dirò, dirai etc.
Pres. Sogg. Ch'io dica etc. diciamo, diciate, dícano.
Imp. Sogg. Dicessi etc.
Imperat. Dì; dite (*Dica*, pol. f.)
Gerund. Dicendo.
Part. pass. *Detto.*

3) **Fare** (contr. from *fácere*), to do, to make.
Pres. Ind. *Fo (fáccio), fái, fa; facciámo, fáte, fánno.*
Imperf. *Facéva.*
Def. *Féci*, facésti, *fécc* etc.
Fut. *Farò* etc.
Pres. Sogg. *Fáccia* etc.
Imp. Sogg. Facéssi etc.
Imperat. *Fa; fate.* (*Fáccia*, pol. f.)
Gerund. Facendo.
Part. pass. *Fatto.*

For the *poétical* and *antiquated* forms of this verb see the *Register* at the end of this book.

4) **Pórre** (formerly *pónere*), to put.
Pres. Ind. *Póngo*, póni, póne; poniámo (ponghiámo), poníte, póngono.
Imperf. Ponéva etc.
Def. *Pósi*, ponésti.
Fut. *Porrò*, porrái.
Pres. Sogg. Ch'io *pónga* etc., poniámo (ponghiámo), poniáte (ponghiáte), póngano.
Imp. Sogg. Ponéssi.
Imperat. Póni; ponéte. (*Pónga*, pol. f.)
Part. pass. Ponéndo.
Gerund. Pósto.

Likewise: *comporre*, to compose, and all other compounds with *porre*.

5) **Scégliere**, contr. **scérre**, to choose.
Pres. Ind. *Scélgo*, (scéglio), scégli, scéglie; scegliámo, scegliéte, *scélgono* (scégliono).
Def. *Scélsi*, scegliésti, scélse etc.
Fut. *Scerrò* and sceglierò.

Pres. Sogg. Ch'io scélga (scéglia) etc., scegliámo, scegliáte, *scelgáno* (scégliano).
Imperf. Scegliéssi etc.
Imperat. Scégli; scegliéte. (*Scélga*, pol. f.)
Gerund. Scegliéndo.
Part. pass. *Scélto.*

Likewise: *sciógliere*, contr. *sciórre*, to dissolve and its compounds, as: *disciorre* etc.; *cógliere*, contr. *corre*, to gather, and its compounds, as: *raccorre*, to get in the harvest, to reap; *tógliere* (contr. *torre*), to take away, and its compounds, as: *distorre*, to turn away.

6) **Spégnere**, to extinguish.
Pres. Ind. *Spégno* (spéngo), spégni, spégne; spegniámo (spenghiámo), spegnéte, spégnono (spéngono).
Def. *Spénsi*, spegnesti, *spénse* etc.
Fut. Spegnerò etc.
Pres. Sogg. Ch'io *spégna* (spénga); spegniámo (spenghiámo), spegniáte (spenghiáte), spégnano (spéngano).

Likewise: *cígnere*, to gird; *spígnere*, to push forward; *strígnere*, to press; *tígnere*, to dye and compounds. Besides: *fíngere*, to feign; *frángere* (poet.), to break; *giúgnere*, to arrive; *múngere*, to milk; *piángere*, to weep; *píngere*, to paint; *púngere*, to prick.

7) **Trárre**, contr. from **tráere**, to draw, to pull.
Pres. Ind. *Trággo*, trái (trággi), tráe (trágge); traiámo, traéte, trággono.
Imperf. Traéva.
Def. *Trássi*, traésti, *trásse* etc.
Fut. Trarrò, trarrai etc.
Pres. Sogg. Ch'io trágga etc. traiámo, traiáte, trággano.
Imp. Sogg. Traéssi etc.
Imperat. Trái; traéte. (*Trágga*, pol. f.)
Gerund. Traéndo.
Part. pass. *Trátto.*

Likewise: *attrárre*, to attract; *contrarre*, to contract etc.

Traduzione. 61c.

What *doest* thou *drink?* I *drink* a glass of beer, and my sister *drinks* a cup (*chicchera*, f.) of coffee. We have *drunk* chocolate yesterday. *Will* you take (= *drink*) a glass of wine with me? What do you *say?* I *say* nothing, and I have *said* nothing. *Tell* the cook (*la cuoca*) that we shall dine (*pranzare*) at 2 o'clock to-day. He *told* me that his brother had (= was) arrived. If you *spoke* (= said) the truth, I should willingly believe you. We *do* what we can; what more will you have [*transl.* what *will* you more (*di più*)]? I re-

buked him [*transl. made* (Def.) him reproaches (*rimprovero*)], but all was in vain (*invano*). *Do* me the favour to *tell* me, which stuff (*stoffa*, f.) you have chosen. Have you *done* your work? I am doing it in this moment. After dinner (*questo dopo pranzo*) I *shall do* the rest. *Put* the pot (*il vaso*) here (*quà*). I *shall sit down* (fr. *porsi*) at your side (*fianco*, m.). Where have you *put* my hat? Which gloves do you *choose?* I *shall choose* the black and the yellow [ones]. He *chose* (Def.) three of these flowers and *told* me, that they were the finest. I have *chosen* several books; what do they cost? I *extinguished* (Def.) the candle, when the day *broke* (fr. *farsi*). Your cigar (*sigaro*, m.) is *extinguished* (fr. *spégnersi*); will you [have] another? The workmen (*lavorante*, m.) *drew* (Def.) the ship against the current. He has *drawn* three bills of exchange on (*su*) London and two on Paris.

III. Conjugation.

The number of verbs in *ire* that form the *Present only* in *-o* (regul.) is very limited. They are:

Bollire, to boil.	*sdrucire*, to unsow.
cucire, to sew.	*seguire*, to follow.
dormire, to sleep.	*sentire*, to feel.
fuggire, to fly.	*servire*, to serve.
partire, to depart.	*sortire*,[2]) to go out; to obtain.
pentirsi,[1]) to repent.	*vestire*, to clothe.

NB. Partire, when meaning *to divide*, forms *partisco*, and when meaning *to depart*, forms *parto*. *Sortire* forms *sortisco etc.*, I obtain, I succeed in . . ., and *sorto*, I go out. The compounds follow the conjugation of the simple verbs; only the compounds of *seguire*, as: *eseguire*, to execute; *conseguire*, to obtain etc. prefer *-isco*.

The following verbs form the Present both in *o* and in *-isco*.

Aborrire, to abhor.	*convertire*, to convert.
applaudire (obsol. *applaudere*), to applaud.	*divertire*, to divert.
	ferire, to wound.*)
assorbire, to absorb.	*garrire*, to sing (of birds).
avvertire, to advertise.	*inghiottire*,[3]) to swallow.

*) Ancient and poet. forms: *fere* = ferisce; *fera* = ferisca.

1) From Lat. *poenitere;* Fr. *re-pentir;* OFr. *pentir;* Prov. *pentir.* 2) *Sortire*, when meaning *to obtain an aim* etc. fr. Lat. *sortiri;* Fr. *sortir* (Pres. *il sortit:* only used in the 3. pers.). With the signif. *to go out* (Fr. *je sors*), the origin is doubtful. Perhaps from a Lat. form *surrectire*, thence *surrectus*, contr. *surctus;* It. *sorto* and hence the verb *sortire.* 3) Lat. *glutire;* Fr. *en-gloutir.*

lambire, to lick (*-o* is poet.).
languire, to languish.
mentire, to lie.
muggire, to bellow, to roar.
nutrire, to feed.
partire, to depart (*-o*); to divide (*-isco*).
patire, to suffer (*-o* is poet.).
perire, to perish (*-o* is obsol.).
pervertire, to pervert.
putire, to stink (*-o* obsolescent).
ruggire, to roar.
sortire, to go out (*-o*); to succeed (*-isco*).
sovvertire, to overthrow, to subvert.
salire, to go up...; to mount
tossire, to cough. [(See 3).

Irregular verbs of the III Conjugation.

1) **Apparire**, to appear.

Pres. Ind. Apparísco (appáio), apparísci, apparísce (appáre), appariámo, apparíte, appariscono (appáiono).
Def. Apparii (appárvi), apparísti, apparì (appárve) etc.
Pres. Sogg. Ch'io apparísca (appáia) etc. ch'eglino apparíscano (appáiano).
Imperat. Apparísci; apparíte.*)
Part. pass. Apparíto and appárso.

Likewise: *comparíre*, to appear; *sparíre*, *scomparire*, to vanish, to disappear; *trasparíre*, to shine through ect.

Note. The learner should be careful not to mistake certain forms of this verb for those of *apparare*, to apparel, and *appaiare*, to couple, to confound. The Part. pres. of *apparire* is *appariscente* or *apparente*. The compounds, like *trasparire*, to shine through, have only —ente; thus: *trasparente*.

2) **Morire**, to die.

Pres. Ind. Io muóio (muóro), muóri, muóre; moriámo, moríte, muóiono (muórono).
Fut. Morrò (morirò).
Pres. Sogg. Ch'io muóia (muóra) etc., moriámo, moriáte, muóiano (muórano).
Imperat. Muóri, moríte.
Part. pass. Mórto.

3) **Salire**, to ascend, to climb, to mount.

Pres. Ind. Sálgo (salísco), sali (salisci), sále (salísce); sagliámo, salíte, sálgono (saliscono).
Fut. Salirò (sarrò).
Pres. Sogg. Ch'io sálga (salisca) etc., saliámo, sagliáte, sálgano (saliscano).**)

---

*) Henceforward we shall omit the *polite form*.

**) Besides the reg. Def. there are also the obsolete forms *salsi, salse, sálsero*. The forms of *salire* which are identical with those of *salare*, to salt, are written with *gl;* thus: *sagliamo*, we mount; but *saliamo*, we salt.

4) **Udire.** to hear.
Pres. Ind. *Odo, odi, ode;* udiamo, udite, *ódono.*
Pres. Sogg. Ch'io *oda* etc. udiamo, udiate, *ódano.*
All other tenses are regular. (Fut. *udrò* obsolescent.)

5) **Uscire** (*escire* obsolete),[1]) to go out.
Pres. Ind. *Esco, esci, esce;* usciamo (esciamo), uscite (escite), *éscono.*
Pres. Sogg. Ch'io *esca* etc., usciamo (esciamo), usciate (esciate), *éscano.*
Imperat. Esci; uscite.
Gerund. Uscendo (escendo); uscito (escito).

6) **Venire,** to come.
Pres. Ind. Vengo (vegno), vieni, viene; veniamo (venghiamo, vegniamo), venite, véngono.
Def. *Venni,* venisti, *venne.*
Fut. *Verrò,* verrai etc.
Pres. Sogg. Ch'io *venga* etc. veniamo, veniate, véngano.
Imperat. Viéni (antiq. *vie'*); venite.
Gerund. Venendo (vegnendo).
Part. pres. *Vegnente.*
Part. pass. Venuto.
Likewise: *convenire,* to be convenient; *pervenire,* to arrive at, to reach.

Irregular in the *Definito* and *Participio passato* are the following verbs:

	Def.	*Partc. pass.*
Aprire, to open (Pres. *-o*).	*aprii* and *apersi.*	*aperto.*
coprire,[2]) to cover; (*scoprire,* to discover; *riscoprire,* to discover again).	*coprii* » *copersi.*	*coperto.*
offrire (offerire), to offer (Pres. *-o* and *-isco*).	*offrii* » *offersi.*	*offerto.*
seppellire, to bury (Pres. *-isco*).	reg. part. pass. *seppellito;* irr.	*sepolto (sepulto).*

Traduzione. 61 d.

What did he do? What shall we do? Will you that I (Do you wish me to) do that? Where do these ladies go? They would go to the play, if the weather were (*transl.:* if it made) not so bad. I (could not) have not been able (*part.* of *potere*) to come, because I had not done my task. All men should (from *dovere*) love, but not hate, each other. What do you want (*volere*), Sir? He would (*def.*) go away (*andár via*). We know everything (which) you do. I knew (*def.*)

1) From Lat. *ex-ire;* OFr. *essir* (French has only the Part. p. *issu,* issued); Prov. *eissir;* Engl. *to issue.* 2) Lat. *cooperire;* OFr. *covrir;* Fr. *couvrir;* Port. Sp. *cubrir;* Engl. *to cover.*

that you would not come. Often people do not see what stands (= is) before their eyes. Have you seen the celebrated Ristori? We are sitting (*Pres. Ind.*) in the (*dat.*) sun, and the children (are sitting) in the (*dat.*) shade. I am seated, why do not you (be seated)? We are often better than we (not) seem. The hypocrite will always seem otherwise than (*diverso di quello che*) he really is. I have a headache (*transl.:* the head ails me). I was sorry (*dolere*) to see him so unhappy. He fell (*def.*) from the (down) stairs. Thou wilt fall if thou do not take care (from *badare*). The lady held a rose in [her] hand. I shall hold the bottle, pour in (*versare*) the wine! I (shall) stay at Venice, and you will stay at Milan. He remained (*def.*) at Triest (during) two months. The theatre pleased (*def.*) me much. Does this singer (*cantante*) please you (Do you like t. s.)? Be (you) silent! Your words do not please me. I put these books upon the others. A marble (*di marmo*) monument was erected (from *porre*) to the poet Metastasio in the church of the Minorites (*Minoriti*) at Vienna.

Traduzione. 62.

We always say (that) what we think. I shall tell it (to) your father. Say what you like, I shall do what I can. He drank (*def.*) a glass of wine. I should drink a bottle of beer. What have you drunk? The candle is extinguished. The rain (put out) extinguished (*def.*) the flames. Gabriel girt (*def.*) himself with his (*della*) sword. This cloth is not dyed. Which of these books do you choose? I should choose the Divine Comedy (*la divina commédia*) of Dante. He has chosen the works of Count Leopardi. I have taken them away (*togliere*). The horse drew (*def.*) the carriage (*legno*). We shall draw our swords. He has drawn the matter (*faccénda*) to a great length (*a lungo*). An angel appeare (*def.*) to him from the East (*oriente*, m.). Godfrey (*Goffrédo*) appeared (*def.*) with his warriors (*guerriero*) before the walls (*le mura*) of Jerusalem (*Gerusalemme*). I come with my whole family. Caesar came (*def.*), saw (*def.*), and conquered (*vinse*). The coming year will be fertile. Who is come? He is starving (*morire di fame*).*) He died (*def.*) far from his dear country (*pátria*). He shall die the (*gen.*) death of a traitor (*traditore*). Die (*2nd sing.*), villain (*scellerato*)! He got (*salire*) up (*per*) (the) stairs. Do you hear anything? I hear nothing. Shall you hear anything? I shall go out directly. We shall not go out to-day. Have you opened the door? He has offered me a basket, covered with (*di*) white linen (*tela*).

*) The "Progressive form" in English, viz. the construction with the *pres. part.* in sentences like the above, is commonly rendered by the *Presente dell' Indic.*, as: I am waiting for you, *Io vi aspetto etc.* (See 2nd Part. *On Partic. and Gerund.*)

Dialogo.

Che cosa fa (Ella) in questa osteria?	Aspetto mio fratello che verrà subito.
Dove andrà (Ella) stasera?	Andrò a teatro con mia zia.
Sta egli in letto?	No, ma non deve ancora uscire.
Potrò io venire da Lei domani?	Non so, se mio padre lo permetterà.
Mi fu detto che siete stati a ballo ieri; è vero?	No, ma abbiamo voluto andare al concerto del Signor N.
È piaciuto il mazzetto (*nosegay*) di fiori alla di Lei sorella?	Sì, le piacque assai.
A chi sarà posto un monumento?	La città di Vienna ne erigerà uno a Mozart.
Quale di questi libri scerrà (Ella)?	Scerrò l'Orlando furioso dell' Ariosto e la Divina Commédia del Dante.
Verrà (Ella) da me domenica prossima?	Non so, se potrò venire; non esco di casa in questi giorni.
Devo uscire o restare a casa?	Faccia quel che vuole; credo però che sarà meglio per Lei di restar a casa.
Scelga uno di questi capelli!	Mi dia quello che tiene in mano.
Mi dica, Signore, in quale contrada (*street*) si trova la casa del Signor N.?	Mi pare che sia la prima casa che si vede laggiù (*down there*) dirimpetto al palazzo.
Mi duole di non poterle dare una migliore nuova!	È sempre meglio che non dirmene niente.
Vorrei comprar alcuni sigari. Non sa dirmi dove si vende del tabacco?	Gliene darò uno io; venga con me sotto quel portone, acciocchè Le possa anche dare del fuoco.
Avete aperto le finestre?	Le aprirò subito.
È morto l'ammalato?	Oh, no, speriamo anzi che non morrà.

Reading Exercise.

Sonetto all' Italia.

(Filicaia.)*)

Italia, o Italia, tu cui feo la sorte
Dono infelice di bellezza, onde hai
Funesta dote d'infiniti guai,
Che in fronte scritti per gran doglia porte:

*) Vincenzo da Filicaia 1642—1707, one of the most celebrated epic-lyric poets of Italy. This sonnet, his master-piece, has been freely translated by Lord Byron in his Childe Harold:

Italia oh Italia, thou who hast
The fatal gift of beauty, which became
A funeral dower of present woes and past etc.

O fossi tu men bella, o almen più forte,
Onde assai più ti paventasse, o assai
Ti amasse men chi del tuo bello ai rai
Par che si strugga e pur ti sfida a morte!*)

Che or giù dalle Alpi non vedrei torrenti
Scender d'armati, nè di sangue tinta
Bever l'onda del Po gállici armenti.

Nè te vedrei del non tuo ferro cinta
Pugnar col braccio di straniere genti,
Per servir sempre, o vincitrice, o vinta.

Words.

Feo, inst. of *fece.*
il dono, the gift.
onde, whereby.
la dote, the dowry.
i guai, pl. the woes.
la fronte, the forehead.
scritto, written.
porte, inst. of *porti,* thou bearest.
almeno, at least.
forte, strong.
paventare, to fear, to be afraid.
assai — meno, so much less.
l'armento, the flock.
il ferro. the iron, sword.
pugnare, to fight.
la gente, people; *le genti,* the nations.
la vincitrice, the victress.
il bello for *la bellezza.*
rai, for *raggi,* beams.
pare, from *parére,* to seem.
strüggersi, to long.
sfidáre, to challenge, to assault.
che, that.
giù, down.
il torrente, the torrent.
scéndere, to descend.
l'armato, the armed man, the warrior.
tinta, Part. pass. of *tignere,* to dye.
il sangue, the blood.
l'onda, the wave.
gállico, a, Gallic.
non tuo, non thine = foreign.
cinta, Part. past of *cignere,* to gird.
straniero, a, foreign.
servire, to serve.
vinto, a, Part. pass. of *vincere,* to win, to conquer.

Thirty sixth Lesson.

The Irregular Verbs continued.

The following verbs depart from the regular conjugation in the *Definito, Participio passato* and sometimes in the *Futuro.* All the other tenses are regular.

*) The construction is: *Onde* (so that) *chi* (he who) *pare che si strugga ai rai del tuo bello, e che pure ti sfida a morte, ti paventasse assai più o ti amasse assai meno.*

I.

a. *Definito* in **cqui**. *Part. pass.* in **to**.

Náscere, to be born. Def. *nacqui, nascesti, nacque etc.* Part. p. *nato.*

Nuócere, to harm. Def. *nocqui, nuocesti etc.* P. p. *nociuto.*

Likewise: *piacére, giacére*, and *tacére.*

b. *Definito* in **bbi**. *Part. pass.* regular.

Avére, to have. Def. *cbbi.* P. p. *avuto.*

Conóscere, to know. Def. *conobbi, conoscesti etc.* P. p. *conosciuto.*

Créscere, to grow. Def. *crebbi, crescesti etc.* P. p. *cresciuto.*

Likewise: *decréscere*, to decrease; *riconóscere*, to acknowledge; *sconóscere*, to mistake.

II.

a. *Definito* in **ppi**. *Part. pass.* in **tto**.

Rómpere, to break. Def. *ruppi, rompesti etc.* P. p. *rotto.*

b. *Definito* in **ppi**. *Part. pass.* in **to**.

Sapére, to know (See p. 159).

III.

a. *Definito* in **si**. *Part. pass.* in **so**.

1) Verbs in **dere** and **ndere**.

	Def.	*P. p.*
Accéndere, to light, to inflamy.	*accesi, accendesti etc.*	*acceso.*
Appréndere, to learn.	*appresi, apprendesti etc.*	*appreso.*
Arrídere, to smile upon.	*arrisi, arridesti.*	*arriso.*
Confóndere, to confound, to entangle.	*confusi, confondesti.*	*confuso.*
Chiúdere, to shut.	*chiusi,*) chiudesti.*	*chiuso.*

Likewise: *concliúdere*, to conclude; *inchiúdere*, to contain; *rinchiúdere*, to contain etc.

Delúdere, to deceive. Def. *delusi, deludesti etc.* P. p. *deluso.*

Likewise: *allúdere*, to allude; *illúdere*, to delude, and the antiquated *lúdere*, to play.

	Def.	*P. p.*
Diféndere, to defend.	*difesi, difendesti.*	*difeso.*
Dividere, to divide.	*divisi, dividesti.*	*diviso.*
Decídere, to decide.	*decise, decidesti.*	*deciso.*
Esclúdere, to exclude.	*escl[illegible]úsi, escludesti etc.*	*escluso.*

Likewise: *inclúdere*, to include.

---

*) Also: *chiudei* and *chiudetti.*

Persuadére, to persuade. Def. *persuasi, persuadesti.* P. p. *persuaso.*

Likewise: *dissuadére*, to dissuade.

Elídere, to drop (a letter). Def. *elisi, elidesti.* P. p. *eliso.*

Evádere, to evade. Def. *evasi, evadesti.* P. p. *evaso.*

Likewise: *invádere*, to invade.

Scéndere, to descend. Def. *scesi, scendesti.* P. p. *sceso.*

Likewise: *ascéndere*, to ascend; *discéndere*, to descend.

	Def.	*P. p.*
Fóndere, to melt.	*fusi, fondesti.*	*fuso.*
Incídere, to engrave.	*incisi, incidesti.*	*inciso.*
Intrúdere, to intrude.	*intrusi, intrudesti.*	*intruso.*
**Lédere*, to hurt, to wound.	*lesi, ledesti.*	*leso.*
Mórdere, to bite.	*morsi, mordesti.*	*morso.*
Nascóndere, to hide.	*nascosi, nascondesti.*	*nascosto.**)
Offéndere, to offend.	*offesi, offendesti.*	*offeso.*
Sospéndere, to suspend.	*sospesi, sospendesti.*	*sospeso.*
Préndere, to take.	*presi, prendesti.*	*preso.*

Likewise: *intrapréndere*, to undertake; *sorpréndere*, to astonish etc.

Rádere, to erase, to scratch out a letter. Def. *rasi, radesti.* P. p. *raso.*

Rídere, to laugh. Def. *risi, ridesti.* P. p. *riso.*

Likewise: *sorrídere*, to smile; *arrídere*, to smile upon.

Réndere, to give back, to render. Def. *resi, rendesti.* P. p. *reso.*

Spéndere, to spend. Def. *spesi,***) *spendesti.* P. p. *speso.*

Téndere, to extend, to be eager. Def. *tesi, tendesti.* P. p. *teso.*

Likewise: *inténdere*, to hear, to understand; *sténdere*, to stretch; *pretendere*, to pretend.

Uccídere, to kill. Def. *uccisi, uccidesti.* P. p. *ucciso.*

2) in **gere.**

**Arrógere*, to join, to add. Def. *arrosi, arrogesti.* P. p. *arroso.*

Spárgere, to spill, to disperse. Def. *sparsi, spargesti.* P. p. *sparso.*

3) in **llere.**

Espéllere, to expel. Def. *espulsi, espellesti.* P. p. *espulso.*

Likewise: *impellere*, to incite.

4) in **rdere.**

Árdere, to burn. Def. *arsi, ardesti.* P. p. *arso.*

Likewise: *riárdere*, to dry.

---

*) Rather than *nascoso.*

**) Also *spendei* and *spendetti.*

Corródere, to corrode. Def. *corrosi, corrodesti*, P. p. *corroso.*
Pérdere, to lose. Def. *persi,*) perdesti.* P. p. *perso.*

5) in **rgere.**

Spérgere (dispérgere), to scatter, to disperse. Def. *spersi, spergesti.* P. p. *sperso.*

Likewise: *aspérgere*, to asperse; *dispérgere*, to scatter; *cospérgere*, to wet.

Mérgere, to dive. Def. *mersi, mergesti.* P. p. *merso.*

Likewise: *immérgere*, to immerge; *sommérgere*, tu submerge.

Térgere, to clean, to wipe. Def. *tersi, tergesti.* P. p. *terso.*

6) in **rere.**

Córrere, to run. Def. *corsi, corresti.* P. p. *corso.*

Likewise: *discórrere*, to talk, to discourse; *accórrere*, to run to ..; *incórrere*, to incur; *percórrere*, to run through, over; *ricórrere*, to recur; *concórrere*, to concur.

IV.

Def. in **si.** *Part. pass.* in **sso.**

Méttere, to put. Def. *misi, mettesti.* P. p. *messo.*

Likewise: *commèttere*, to commit; *omèttere*, to omit; *ammèttere*, to admit; *permèttere*, to permit; *promèttere*, to promise; *compromèttere*, to compromise; *scommèttere*, to bet; *sottomèttere* or *sommèttere*, to submit; *rimèttere*, to remit etc.

V.

Def. in **si.** *Part. pass.* in **to.**

1) Verbs in **dere.**

Intrídere, to mingle. Def. *intrisi, intridesti.* P. p. *intrito* (also *intriso*).

2) in **gnere** and **ngere.**

Cígnere (cíngere), to gird. Def. *cinsi, cignesti.* P. p. *cinto.*
Giúgnere (giúngere), to arrive. Def. *giunsi, giugnesti.* P. p. *giunto.*

Likewise: *congiúgnere*, to join; *disgiúgnere*, to disjoin; *raggiúgnere*, to rejoin; *soggiúgnere*, to add; *aggiúgnere*, to adjoin etc.

Piángere, to weep, to cry. Def. *piansi, piangesti.* P. p. *pianto.*

Likewise: *compiángere*, to complain, to pity.

**Frángere (frágnere)*, to break. Def. *fransi, fragnesti.* P. p. *franto.*

Likewise: *infrángere*, to break; *rifrángere*, to refract.

---

*) Better: Def. *Perdei* or *perdetti.* P. p. *perduto.*

Fingere, to feign. Def. *finsi, fingesti.* P. p. *finto.*
Múgnere, to milk. Def. *munsi, mugnesti.* P. p. *munto.*
Pingere and *pígnere*, to paint. Def. *pinsi, pingesti.* P. p. *pinto.*
Likewise: *dipíngere*, to paint, to depict.

Púgnere and *púngere*, to prick. Def. *punsi, pugnesti.* P. p. *punto.*
Likewise: *compúgnere*, to afflict, to make contrite.

Spígnere and *spíngere*, to drive, to thrust. Def. *spinsi, spignesti.* P. p. *spinto.*
Likewise: *respígnere*, to push back; *sospígnere*, to drive forward.

Stígnere, to discolour, to tarnish, like *tígnere.*
Stríngere (strígnere), to press together. Def. *strinsi, stringesti.* P. p. *stretto.*
Likewise: *costríngere*, to constrain; *astríngere*, to constrain; *(re-) ristríngere*, to restrain.

Tíngere (tígnere), to tinge. Def. *tinsi, tignesti.* P. p. *tinto.*
Likewise: *attígnere*, to mollify; *intígnere*, to immerse; *ritígnere*, to dye again; *stígnere*, to lose colour.

Smúgnere, to dry up, like *úgnere.*
Úgnere or *úngere*, to anoint. Def. *unsi, ugnesti.* P. p. *unto.*

3) in **lgere.**

Vólgere, to turn. Def. *volsi, volgesti.* P. p. *volto.*
Likewise: *svólgere*, to turn away, to untwist; *dinólgere, disvólgere*, to unfold; *travólgere, stravólgere*, to turn over, to tumble; *sconvólgere*, to turn round etc.

4) in **mere.**

Assúmere, to assume. Def. *assunsi, assumesti.* P. p. *assunto.*
Likewise: *consúmere*, to consume; *presúmere,**) to presume; *riassumere*, to reassume.

5) in **ncere.**

Víncere, to win, conquer. Def. *vinsi, vincesti.* P. p. *vinto.*
Likewise: *convíncere*, to convince.

6) in **ndere.**

Spándere, to shed, to spill. Def. *spansi, spandesti.* P. p. *spanto.*
Scíndere, to untie. Def. *scinsi, scindesti.* P. p. *scinto.*

7) in **nguere.**

Distínguere, to distinguish. Def. *distinsi, distinguesti.* P. p. *distinto.*
Likewise: *estínguere*, to extinguish.

---

*) Also Def. *presumei* and *presumetti.*

8) in **rcere.**

Tórcere, to turn. Def. *tórsi, torcesti.* P. p. *torto.*

Likewise: *stórcere,* to distort; *contórcere,* to contort; *ritórcere,* to turn back.

9) in **rgere.**

(Accórgere) [1]) *accórgersi,* to perceive. Def. *accorsi, accorgesti.* P. p. *accorto.*

Pórgere, to offer, to present. Def. *porsi, porgesti.* P. p. *porto.*

Sórgere, to rise. Def. *sorsi, sorgesti.* P. p. *sorto.*

Likewise: *insórgere,* to revolt; *assórgere,* to rise, to swallow.

10) in **vere.**

Vólvere and *invólvere* (See *rólgere).*

Scrívere, to write. Def. *scrissi, scrivesti.* P. p. *scritto.*

Likewise: *inscrívere,* to inscribe; *prescrívere,* to prescribe etc.

Assólvere, to absolve. Def. *assolsi, assolvesti.* P. p. *assolto.**)

Risólvere, to resolve. Def. *risolsi,***) *risolvesti.* P. p. *risolto.***)

VI.

Def. in **ssi.** *Part. pass.* in **sso.**

1) Verbs in **dere.**

Cédere, to cede, to yield. Def. *cessi, cedesti.* P. p. *cesso.****)

Likewise: *concédere,* to allow, to concede; *procédere,* to proceed; *precédere,* to precede; *retrocédere,* to retrocede; *succédere,* to succeed.†)

2) in **gere** and **ggere.**

Figgere, to fix. Def. *fissi, figgesti.* P. p. *fisso* (adj.); *fitto* (fixed).

The compounds: *affiggere,* to affix; *crocifiggere,* to crucify, form the Partic. pass. in **sso,** as: *crocifisso.*

3) in **mere.**

Deprímere, to depress. Def. *depressi, deprimesti.* P. p. *depresso.*

Likewise: *esprímere,* to express; *comprímere,* to compress; *imprímere,* to impress; *opprímere,* to oppress; *sopprímere,* to suppress.

4) in **tere** and **ttere.**

Percuótere, to beat. Def. *percossi, percuotesti.* P. p. *percosso.*

Likewise: *scuótere,* to toss, to shake; *riscuótere,* to amass money.

---

*) The Part. *assoluto* means: *absolute.*

**) Also Def. *risolvei* and *risolvetti.* P. p. *risoluto.*

***) Also Def. *cedei* and *cedetti.* P. p. *ceduto.*

†) The compounds do not exactly follow the simple verb *cedere.* Thus we may not say *accessi* and *accesso,* but *accedei* and *acceduto.* It is the same with *eccedere* and *procedere,* though some examples to the contrary may be found.

1) Lat. *ac·corrigere.*

Annéttere, to annex. Def. *annessi, annettesti.* P. p. *annesso.*
Likewise: *connéttere*, to connect.

Rifléttere, to reflect. Def. *riflessi, riflettesti.* P. p. *riflesso.*
Likewise: *genufléttere*, to kneel down.

5) in **uere** and **vere.**

Influére, to influence. Def. *influssi, influesti.* P. p. *influsso.*
(Less frequent than *influire*, Pr. *-isco*, P. p. *influito.*)

Muóvere, to move. Def. *mossi, muovesti.* P. p. *mosso.*
Likewise: *commuóvere*, to move, to touch; *rimuóvere*, to remove; *smuóvere*, to push forward; *dismuóvere*, to turn aside; *promuóvere*, to promote.

VII.

Def. in **ssi.** *Part. pass.* in **tto.**

1) Verbs in **cere.**

Cuócere, to cook, to bake. Def. *cossi, cuocesti.* P. p. *cotto.*
Lúcere / *Rilúcere* to shine. Def. *lussi,*) lucesti.* P. p. not in use.

2) in **gere** and **ggere.**

Affliggere, to afflict. Def. *afflissi, affliggesti.* P. p. *afflitto.*
Likewise: *infliggere*, to inflict etc.

Corréggere, to correct. Def. *corressi, correggesti.* P. p. *corretto.*
Dirigere, to direct. Def. *diressi, dirigesti.* P. p. *diretto.*
Likewise: *erigere* or *eréggere*, to erect.**)

Friggere, to fry. Def. *frissi, friggesti.* P. p. *fritto.*
Léggere, to read. Def. *lessi, leggesti.* P. p. *letto.*
Likewise: *eléggere*, to elect.

**Negligere*, to neglect. Def. *neglessi, negligesti.* P. p. *negletto.*
Réggere, to govern. Def. *ressi, reggesti.* P. p. *retto.*
Strúggere, to dissolve (*struggersi*, to long). Def. *strussi, struggesti.* P. p. *strutto.*
Likewise: *distrúggere*, to dissolve, to destroy.

3) in **rre.**

We have said before (Page 161) that the Infinitives in *ácre, gliere, nere*, and *úcere* are often contracted into ***rre*** *(trácre = trarre; scegliere = scerre; ponere = porre; ... ducere = ... durre).* Of these Infinitives either *both* terminations are in use, or the *contracted* form only is admissible, the other being obsolete, as: *addurre*, formerly *adducere.*

---

*) Also *lucei* and *lucetti.*
**) Less frequently: *érgere.* Def. *ersi, ergesti etc.*

From this contracted Infinitive mood are formed: the *Futuro*, the *Condizionale*, and the *Participio passato*. Ex.:

Inf.	*Fut.*	*Cond.*	*P. p.*
Trarre, to draw.	*Trarrò.*	*Trarrei*	*Tratto.*

The *Presente* offers the full form, though commonly *irregular;* the *Imperfetto dell' Indicativo* and *del Soggiuntivo* are regular.

Besides the verbs *bere, porre,* and *trarre,* which we have enumerated among the *verbi anomali* (See p. 161 and 164), there are to be mentioned:

Cógliere, [1]) contr. *corre,* to gather. Pres. *colgo* and cogliо. Def. *colsi, cogliesti etc.* Fut. *corrò.* P. p. *colto.*

Scégliere, contr. *scerre,* to choose. Pres. *scelgo* and *sceglio.* Def. *scelsi.* Fut. *scerrò.* P. p. *scelto.*

Sciógliere, [2]) contr. *sciorre,* to untie, to redeem. Pres. *sciolgo* and *scioglio.* Def. *sciolsi.* Fut *sciorrò.* P. p. *sciolto.*

Tógliere, contr. *torre,* to take off. Pres. *tolgo* and *toglio.* Def. *tolsi.* Fut. *torrò.* P. p. *tolto.*

NB. The full forms *toglierò, sceglierò* sometimes replace the contracted Future *torrò, scerrò.*

Addurre (formerly *addúcere*), to lead. Pres. *adduco.* Def. *addussi, adducesti.* P. p. *addotto.*

Likewise: *condúrre,* to conduct; *produrre,* to produce; *sedúrre,* to seduce etc.

N o t e.

For euphony's sake the verbs in *lére* and *nére* contract their Future tense into *rrò,* as:

Tenére, to hold. Fut. *terrò* (for *tenrò*).
Volére, to desire. Fut. *vorrò* (for *volrò*) *etc.*

VIII.

Def. in **si.** *Part. pass.* in **sto.**

Rispóndere, to answer. Def. *risposi, rispondesti.* P. p. *risposto.*

Likewise: *corrispóndere,* to correspond, to answer.

Chiédere, to ask, to want. Def. *chiesi, chiedesti.* P. p. *chiesto.* Pres. dell' Ind. *chiedo* (more frequent than *chieggo*).

Likewise: *richiédere,* to require.

Verbs with peculiar irregularities.

Assistere, to assist. Def. *assistei* and *etti.* P. p. *assistito.*

Likewise: *esistere,* to exist; *resistere,* to resist; *desistere,* to desist etc.

1) Lat. *colligere;* OFr. *coillir;* Fr. *cueillir;* Sp. *coger;* Prov. *colher.* 2) Lat. *dissolvere.*

Esigere, to require. Def. *esigei* and *esigetti*. P. p. *esatto*.
Pióvere, to rain. Def. *piovve* (seldom *piobbe*). P. p. *piovuto*.
Redimere, to redeem. Def. *redensi*, *redimesti*. P. p. *redento*.
Vivere, to live. Def. *vissi*, *vivesti*. P. p. *vissuto (vivuto)*.

Thus: *sopravívere*, to survive.

**Sólvere*, to solve. Def. *solvei* and *solvetti*. P. p. *soluto*.
Protéggere, to protect. Def. *proteggei* and *protessi*. P. p. *pro-*

Féndere, to cleave. Def. *fendei* and *fendetti*. P. p. *fenduto (fesso)*.

Thirty seventh Lesson.

Traduzioni.

63.

Jeremiah (*Geremía*) lamented (from *piangere*) the fate (*il destino*) of his unhappy country. The light is extinguished (*spegnere*). The thief escaped (*def.*). The Huns (*Unni*) conquered (*def.*) the greater part of Europe. My friend persuaded (*def.*) me to go away, but I shall not go far. The tall columns lay (*def.*) in the dust (*pólvere*, f.). How did the new opera please (*def.*) you? It (*fem.*) did not please me. I knew (*def.*) him and his uncle. At this answer he was silent (*def.*). I lighted (*def.*) the cigar with a match (*zolfanéllo*). I heard (*def.*) the noise, but my sister has not heard (did not hear) it. The officer took (*def.*) a candle and went down (*discendere*, def.) into the cellar (*la cantina*). Have you given him back his money? Will the ladies choose these baskets or those? Dip this biscuit (*biscotto*) into your wine! The poor woman dried [her] (*tergersi*) eyes. The enemies retreated (*def.*) at the first cannon-shot (*colpo di cannone*). Has your friend reflected on my proposal (*proposta*, f.)? King (*il re*) Victor Emanuel succeeded (*def.*) (to) his father Charles Albert. I have corrected your task. The professor corrected (*def.*) the tasks of his pupils. I read (*def.*) your letter; my mother has not yet read it. I never neglect my duties, but you have always neglected yours. Do protect me, Sir! Who reigned then in that country? We did not distinguish the houses, because it was too dark. Count Radetzky has distinguished himself in the war against Sardinia (*la Sardegna*). Which artist painted (*def.*) that picture? It was painted by Cimabue. I have won 200 lire in the lottery (*lotto*). My father was obliged to (*a*) (leave) depart. We shook (*stringersi*, def.) (the) hands.

64.

The bride (*la sposa*) determined (*decidersi*, def.) to keep her word with her bridegroom (*lo sposo*). He smiled (*def.*)

once more and died. In this word one vowel (*la vocale*) (has been) is dropped (*elidere*). He allowed (to) his brother to follow him. Socrates was *put to death (uccidere)* by the tyrants. Where have you put my watch? I want you to put it into the drawer (*tiratóio*). Did your father permit (*def.*) you to go to the play? Charlemagne (*Carlo Magno*) subdued (*def.*) the pagan (*pagano, a*) Saxons (*Sássoni*). He promised (*def.*) henceforward fidelity (*fedeltà*) and obedience. For the last time they fixed (*def.*) their eyes on the beloved city. You have (been crying) wept; wherefore? She deplored (*piangere*, def.) the misfortune of the poor sailor (*marinàio*). I wrote (*def.*) to Venice (for fresh oysters) that one might send us fresh (*fresco*) oysters (*óstrica*). I was not over well (*troppo bene*) received (at my cousin's) in the house of my cousin. The young lady gathered some roses and pinks. Who will resolve me this doubt? Your riband has loosened itself! I should take my nephew from this school if there were (*esservene*) a better [one]. Every thing (*tutto*) was taken from the unhappy traveller. At the sight (*vista*) of the foreigner, all the children began to cry (*mettersi a*). Has this dog bitten your daughter? I saw (*def.*) you, but I did not know (*def.*) you. Nobody has assisted me during my illness. I observed (*accórgersi di . . .*, def.) his presence; they, however (*però*), *have observed* (*accorgersi* with *essere* in the comp. tenses) nothing. He gave (*def.*) her his (*la*) hand and wept (*def.*). Have you taken your money? He took (*def.*) but two pounds sterling (*lira sterlina*).

65.

The mice have (been gnawing) gnawed the bread. (The) sorrow (was gnawing) gnawed his heart. I was deeply moved. He moved (*muovere*, def.) his friend to write to him. All is not gold that glitters (*transl.:* shines). He removed (*def.*) the stones. The fire consumed (*def.*) the greater part of the town. King Charles X was banished (*espellere*) from France. At last your cousin (*f.*) arrived (*giugnere*). She pricked (*púgnersi*, def.) her (the) finger with a needle (*ago*, m.). The general added (*def.*) that he would take care (*aver cura*) that the robbers were overtaken (*raggiugnere*) the same day (still). The Roman gladiators (*gladiatore*) *anointed* their bodies *with oil* (*ugnersi di*). Silvio Pellico was imprisoned (*inchiudere*) during ten years in the Spielberg near Brünn in Moravia. His words moved (*commuovere*, def.) me to tears. This young man has dissipated all his fortune. His arrival interrupted our occupations. At which house did the fire break out (*prorompere*, def.)? The unfortunate man burst into tears. The slave, who has broken his chains, is *to be* (*da*) feared (*Infin.*). Nobody has assisted (from *soccorrere*) him (*acc.*). I could not do what she asked (*def.*). What have the children (been

asking) asked [for]? Napoleon was born (*def.*) at Ajaccio and died (*def.*) at St. Helena. Where did the children hide themselves (*def.*)? Dit it rain yesterday? Last year we spent (from *vivere*) the whole summer in the country. He would have (*essere*) lived much longer, if he had not suffered too much.

Dialogo.

Perchè pianse la povera donna?	La sua piccola figlia morrà probabilmente; è stata morsa da un cane arrabbiato.
È (Ella) persuasa di quel che dice?	Ne sono convinto come della mia propria esistenza.
Le piacque la storiella ch'io Le lessi ieri?	Mi è piaciuta moltissimo.
(Ella) riconobbe la straniera?	No, non l'ho più riconosciuta.
Non vi offesi! Perchè dunque volete maltrattarmi?	Intendemmo tutto quel che avete detto di noi, e vi puniremo delle vostre bugíe.
Scelga uno di questi garófani!	Come mia cugina ne ha già presi molti, io scerrò un altro fiore.
Perdei ieri la mia borsa; non l'avete trovata voi?	Sì, l'ho trovata nel giardino sullo scanno dove Lei era seduta.
Mi corregga la mia versione, Signor Professore!	La corressi già ieri; ho corretto anche quella del tuo vicino.
Ci legga qualche bella poesia?	Miei cari, voi non state sempre attenti a quel che vi leggo, laonde non vi leggerò più niente.
Dove ha messo il mio temperino?	Lo misi sulla stufa, acciocchè (Ella) lo veda quando ne ha bisogno.
Non mi ha (Ella) promesso di non farlo più?	Sì, lo promisi, ed ho anche tenuto la mia parola.
Non mi tormenti tutto il giorno coi suoi rimproveri!	Questi rimproveri sono giustissimi. (Ella) non sa quanto la sua povera madre sia afflitta della sua condotta (*behaviour*).
Come fu (Ella) accolta dal principe?	Mi accolse con infinita bontà che mi tolse subito da ogni imbarazzo (*embarrassment, trouble*).
Non è (Ella) commossa alla sventura di quella povera donna?	Sì, il suo racconto mi commosse fino alle lagrime.
Quando è giunto il mio tutore (*ward*)?	Giunse ieri alle 2 pomeridiane.

La prego di chiudere l'uscio; altrimenti siamo esposti a una corrente d'aria (draught).	Lo chiusi già due volte, ma non resta chiuso; mi pare che la serratura sia rotta.
Che cosa Le rispose il prigioniero (*prisoner*)?	Lo scellerato proruppe in bestemmie.
Perchè non soccorre lo sfortunato?	È stato soccorso da tutti.
Dove nacque Guttenberg, l'inventore della Tipografia?	Nacque a Magonza, dove gli fu eretto un monumento.
Si è accorta della sua ironia, quande Le parlò?	O sì! me ne sono accorto subito!
Di che si discorre nel salone?	Non si fa che discorrere di politica.

Reading Exercise.

From *Le mie prigioni*

by

Silvio Pellico.

Il venerdì, 13 Ottobre 1820, fui arrestato a Milano e condotto a Santa Margherita. Erano le tre pomeridiane. Mi si fece un lungo interrogatorio per tutto quel giorno e per altri ancora. Ma di ciò non dirò nulla. Simile ad un amante maltrattato dalla sua bella, e dignitosamente risoluto di tenerle broncio, lascio la politica ove ella sta e parlo d'altro.

Alle nove della sera di quel povero venerdì l'attuario mi consegnò al custode, e questi, condottomi nella stanza a me destinata, si fece da me rimettere con gentile invito, per restituirmeli a tempo debito, orologio, danaro ed ogni altra cosa ch'io avessi in tasca, e m'augurò rispettosamente la buona notte.

»Fermatevi, caro voi«, gli dissi; »oggi non ho pranzato; fatemi portare qualche cosa!«

»Subito; la locanda è quí vicina, e sentirà, Signore, che buon vino!«

»Vino, — non ne bevo.«

A questa risposta, il signor Angiolino mi guardò spaventato, e sperando ch'io scherzassi. I custodi di carceri che tengono béttola inorridiscono d'un prigioniero astémio.

»Non ne bevo, davvero!«

»M'increscе per Lei; patirà al doppio la solitúdine!«

E vedendo ch'io non mutava proposito, uscí; ed in meno di mezz' ora ebbi il pranzo. Mangiai pochi bocconi, tracannai un bicchier d'aqua e fui lasciato solo.

Words.

interrogatório, m. trial.
per, during.
símile, the like, similar.
dignitoso, a, worthy; *-mente*, adv. firmly.
tener bróncio, to pout; to look grave: to be angry with anybody.
povero, poor; *here:* unfortunate, unlucky.
attuário, m. actuary, clerk.
consegnare, to consign.
custóde, m. the gaoler.
condóttomi = *dopo avermi condotto*, after having conducted me.
destinare, to destine.
riméttere, to remit, to give.
gentíle, polite.
invito, m. invitation.
restituire, to restore, to give back again.
a tempo débito, in due time.
orologio, m. watch.
augurare, to wish.
rispettoso, respectfully.
fermarsi, to stop, to stay.
caro voi, friend.
pranzare, to dine.
fátemi portare, order up for me.
la locanda, the tavern.
sentire, to feel; *here:* to see.
guardare, to look at.
spaventare, to frighten.
scherzare, to jest.
il and *la cárcere*, pl. *le carceri*, the dungeon, jail, prison.
m'incresce, I am sorry.
al doppio, doubly.
mutare, to change, to alter.
il boccone, the bit, morsel, mouthful.
tener béttola, to keep a tavern.
astémio, adj. he that does not drink wine; abstemious.
partire, to suffer.
la solitúdine, the solitude.
il propósito, the proposal.
tracannare, to drink (in long draughts).

Thirty eighth Lesson.

Defective verbs. Verbi difettivi.

Verbs that want some tenses or persons are called "Defective verbs". They are as follows:

Algere, to freeze. Def. *io alsi, egli alse.* Part. pres. *algente.*

Arrógere, to add, to adjoin. Pres. *arroge.* Def. *arrosi, arrose, arrosero.* Gerund. *arrogendo.* P. p. *arroso.*

Calére, to matter; to be important. Pres. *mi cale.* Imperf. *mi caleva.* Def. *mi calse.* Fut. *mi carrà (calerà).* Cond. *mi carrebbe (calerebbe).* Pres. Sogg. *che mi caglia.* Impf. Sogg. *che mi calesse.* P. p. *caluto.* (The comp. tenses with *essere.*)

Cápere, to hold. Pres. *cape.* Sogg. *cappia.* (The verb is obsolete; in its stead we use *capire.*)

Cólere, to worship. Has but: *colo* and *cole.*

Gire, to go, to walk. Pres. Ind. *gite*, you go. Imperf. *io, tu, egli giva (gia), givamo, givate, givano (giano).* Def. *gisti*, thou wentst; *gì (gio)*, he went; *gimmo, giste, girono.* Fut. *girò — girà, giremo, girete, giranno.* Imperat. *gite*, go (you). Condiz. *girei.* Imperf. Sogg. *ch'io gissi, tu gissi, egli gisse, gissimo, giste, gissero.* P. p. *gito.*

Ire, to go. Pres. and Imperat. *ite*, (you) go. Imperf. *iva*, he went; *ivano*, they went. Fut. *iremo*, we shall go; *irete, iranno.* P. p. *ito*, gone.

Of the deriv. only *adire*, to inherit; *circuire*, to go about smth., and *contraire*, to oppose (all three are *poet.*) are conjugated like *ire.* The others form the Pres. in *-isco*, as: *ambire*, to sollicit, *ambisco* etc. *Perire*, to perish, has *pero* and *perisco.* Of the poet. *redire*, to go back, only the 3. Plur. Def. *redirono* is in use; the other forms are chosen from *riédere.*

Licere (*lécere*), to be allowed (Infinit. out of use). Pres. *lice* or *lece*, it is allowed. P. p. *lícito* and *lécito*, allowed, and *illécito* forbidden.

Olire, to smell. Imperf. *oliva, olivi, oliva — olivano.*

Riédere, to go back. Pres. *riédo, riédi, riéde.* Pres. Sogg. *rieda*, that he (she) go back; *riédano*, that they go back.

Sérpere, to wind. Pres. *serpo, -i, e; sérpono*, Sogg. *serpa, -a, -a: serpiamo, sérpano.* Imperf. *serpeva* etc., *serpévano.* Gerund. *serpendo.* (Commonly *serpeggiare* is used instead of *serpere.*)

Solere, to use, to be accustomed. Pres. *soglio, suóli, suóle, sogliamo, soléte, sógliono.* Imperf. *soleva.* Pres. Sogg. *ch'io soglia etc.; sogliamo, sogliate, sógliano.* Imperf. Sogg. *solessi.* P. p. *sólito.* Gerund. *solendo.*

NB. The compound tenses (with *essere*) are preferred to the simple, as: *io era solito*, I used, I was accustomed.

Observation. Poetical forms are:

Ange, oppresses.	*pave*, fears.
late, is hidden.	*repe*, creeps.
miserére, pity me!	*sile*, is silent.
molce, mitigates.	*tepe*, is tepid.

and the poet. adject. *oso* (lat. *ausus*), daring, which is used with *essere*, as: *era oso*, he dared.

Note. All other verbs of which some forms are wanting, are to be found in the Alphabetical List, pg. 184—194.

Reading Exercise.

Continuation of *Le mie prigioni.*

La stanza era a pian terreno e metteva sul cortile. Carceri di quà, carceri di là; carceri di sopra, carceri dirimpetto.

M'appoggiai alla finestra, e stetti qualche tempo ad ascoltare l'andare e venire dei carcerieri ed il frenetico canto di parecchi dei rinchiusi.

Pensava: Un secolo fa, questo era un monastero: avrebbero mai le sante e penitenti vergini che lo abitavano imaginato che le loro celle suonerebbero oggi, non più di femminei gémiti e d'inni devoti, ma di bestemmie e di canzoni invereconde, e che conterrebbero uomini d'ogni fatta e per lo più destinati agli ergástoli o alle forche? E fra un sécolo, chi respirerà in queste celle? Oh fugacità del tempo! oh mobilità perpetua delle cose! Può chi vi considera affliggersi, se fortuna cessò di sorridergli, se vien sepolto in prigione, se gli (si) minaccia il patíbolo? Ieri io era uno de' più felici mortali del mondo, oggi non ho più alcune delle dolcezze che confortavano la mia vita; non più libertà, non più consorzio d'amici, non più speranze! No; il lusingarsi sarebbe follía. Di quì non uscirò se non per essere gettato ne' più orríbili covíli o consegnato al carnefice. Ebbene, il giorno dopo la mia morte sarà come s'io fossi spirato in un palazzo e portato alla sepoltura co' più grandi onori.

Così il riflettere alla fugacità del tempo mi invigoriva l'animo. Ma mi ricorsero alla mente il padre, la madre, due fratelli, due sorelle, un' altra famiglia ch'io amava quasi fosse la mia; ed i ragionamenti filosofici nulla più valsero. M'intenerii e piansi come un fanciullo.

Words.

A pian terreno, on the ground-floor.
méttere su (of a window), to look down on.
dirimpetto, opposite.
appoggiare, to lean; to rest upon.
ascoltare, to listen.
l'andare e venire, going to and fro.
monastero, convent.
gémito, sigh.
inno, hymn, song.
bestémmia, blasphemy; curse.
inverecondo, irreverent; shameless.
contenére, to contain.
d'ogni fatta, of all kinds.
ergástolo, prison, jail.
le forche, the gallows.
respirare, to breathe.
fugacità, flight.
chi, he who . . .
sepolto, buried.
minacciarsi, to threaten.
il patíbolo, the gallows.
dolcezza, sweetness.
confortare, to comfort; to embellish.
consórzio, society.
lusingare, to flatter.
non — se non, only.
covile, prison, dungeon.
carnéfice, hangman.
spirare, to die.
sepoltura, grave.
invigorire, to strengthen.
riccorrere alla mente, to think of, to remember.

Alphabetical List of the Irregular Verbs.

(All compounds and derivates are excluded, except those that depart in some forms from the simple verb, or when the simple verb is now obsolete. Verbs marked by an asterisk * are obsolete, or exclusively poetical.)

	Pres.	Def.	Fut.	P. p.
Accédere, to draw near.	reg.	*accedei* (*accedetti, accessi*)	reg.	reg.
accéndere, to light.	*accendo*	*accesi*	*accenderò*	*acceso.*
acchiúdere, to join. See *chiúdere.*				
accórger(si), to perceive.	(*m'*)*accorgo*	(*m'*)*accorsi*	(*m'*)*accorgerò*	*accorto.*
accórrere, to run to. See *córrere.*				
accréscere, to augment. See *crescere.*				
addúrre, to bring.	*adduco*	*addussi*	*addurrò*	*addotto.*
affíggere, to affix. See *fíggere;* has only				*affisso.*
affliggere, to afflict.	*affliggo*	*afflissi*	*affliggerò*	*afflitto.*
aggiúgnere, to join. See *giúgnere.*				
álgere, to freeze; S. p. 181.		*alsi* (only 1. 2. 3. ps. sing.)		P. pr. (*algente*)
allúdere, to allude.	*alludo*	*allusi*	*alluderò*	*alluso.*
ammèttere, to admit. See *mettere.*				
**ancídere*, to kill. See *uccídere.*				
andáre, to go.	*vado*	*andai*	*andrò*	*andato.*
ángere, to torment; See pg. 182.	*ange* (3. p.)	—	—	—
annèttere, to annex.	*annetto*	*annessi*	*annetterò*	*annesso.*
apparire, to appear.	*apparisco*	*apparvi* (*-ii*)	*apparirò*	*apparito* (*apparso*).
appartenére, to belong. See *tenere.*				
appéndere, to suspend.	*appendo*	*appesi*	*appenderò*	*appeso.*
appláudere (*applaudire*), to applaud.	*applaudisco* (*applaudo*)	*applaudii* (*applausi*)	*applaudirò*	*applaudito.*
appréndere, to learn. See *prendere.*				
aprire, to open.	*apro*	*aprii*(*-ersi*)	*aprirò*	*aperto.*
árdere, to burn.	*ardo*	*arsi*	*arderò*	*arso.*
arrógere, to join, to add*), See pg. 181.				
ascéndere, to ascend. See *scéndere.*				
ascóndere, to hide. See *nascóndere.*				
aspérgere, to sprinkle. See *spérgere.*				

*) very seldom used.

	Pres.	Def.	Fut.	P. p.
assalire, to attack, See *salire*.				
assíder(si), to sit down.]	(*m'*)*assido*	(*m'*)*assisi*	(*m'*)*assiderò*	*assiso.*
assístere, to assist, reg. exc.	.	. .	. .	*assistito.*
assórbere | to absorb. (*assorbire*) /	*assorbo*	*assorbíi*	*assorbirò*	*assorbito* (*assorto*).
assólvere, to absolve, reg. exc.	P. p.	.	. .	*assolto.**)
assúmere, to assume.	*assumo*	*assunsi* (*-mei, -metti*)	*assumerò*	*assunto.*
astríngere, to compel, See *stringere*.				
atténdere, to expect.	*attendo.*	*attesi*	*attenderò*	*atteso.*
attíngere, to paint, See *tingere*.				
**avellere*, to draw out.	—	*avulsi*	(Petrarca Son. 314.)	
avére, to have	*ho*	*ebbi*	*avrò*	*avuto.*
Benedire, to bless, See *maledire*.				
bévere (*bere*), to drink.	*bevo* (*beo*)	*bevvi* (*bevei, -etti*)	*beverò* (*berò*)	*bevuto* (*beuto*).
Cadére, to fall.	*cado* (*caggio*)	*caddi* (*cadei, -etti*)	*caderò* (*cadrò*)	*caduto.*
calére, to care, See p. 181.				
cápere, to hold, See p. 181.				
cédere, to yield.	*cedo*	*cedei, -etti* (*cessi*)	*cederò*	*ceduto* (*cesso*).
chiédere, to ask.	*chiedo* (*chieggo*)	*chiesi* (*chiedei*)	*chiederò*	*chiesto.*
chiúdere, to shut.	*chiudo*	*chiusi*	*chiuderò*	*chiuso.*
cígnere (*cíngere*), to gird.	*cingo* (*cigno*)	*cinsi*	*cignerò* (*cingerò*)	*cinto.*
circoncídere, to circumcise, See *incidere*.				
circonfléttere, to bend, has only	. .	.	P. p.	*circonflesso.*
cógliere (*corre*), to gather, See *sciógliere*.				
cólere, to worship, See p. 181.				
cóllidere, to strike against, See *elídere*.				
collúdere, to conspire in a fraud, See *ludere*.				
commétttere, to commit, See *mettere*.				
commuóvere, to move, See *muovere*.				
comparíre, to appear.	*comparisco*	*comparvi* (*comparii*)	*comparirò*	*comparito.* (*-arso, -aruto*).
cómpiere (*compire*), to accomplish.	*compisco* (*compio*)	*compii* (*compiei*)	*compierò* (*compirò*)	*compiuto* (*compito*).**)
compréndere, to understand, See *prendere*.				
comprímere, to compress.	*comprimo*	*compressi*	*comprimerò*	*compresso.*
concédere, to concede, See *cédere*.				
concepire, to conceive. Only the obsolete forms *concepe* and *concépono;* P. p. (*conceputo*) *concetto.*				
**concérnere*, to concern, See *scernere*.				

---

*) P. p. *assoluto*, absolute (adj.).

**) *Cómpito*, m. task.

	Pres.	Def.	Fut.	P. p.
conchiúdere (*concludere*), to conclude, See *chiudere*.				
concórrere, to concur, See *correre*.				
condurre, to lead, See *addurre*.				
**confícere*, to consecrate.	—	*confici*	—	*confetto*.
**configgere*, to nail (*conficcare*), See *figgere*.				*confitto*.
confóndere, to confound, See *fondere*.				
congiúgnere, to join, See *giugnere*.				
connéttere, to connect, See *nettere*.				
conóscere, to know.	*conosco*	*conobbi* (*conoscei, -etti*)	*conoscerò*	*conosciuto*.
**conquídere*, to conquer.	.	. . . .	.	*conquisto*.
**consúmere* (*consumare*), to consume.	—	*consunsi* (*-se, -sero*)	—	*consunto*.
contéssere, to weave together; to join, See *tessere*, exc.:				*contesto*.
contradire (*-ddire*), to contradict, See *dire*.				
contrarre, to contract, See *trarre*.				
convértere, to convert.	*converto*	*conversi*	*converterò*	*converso*.

NB. *Convertire* is regul. (Pres. *-isco*).

coprire, to cover, See *aprire*.				
corréggere, to correct, See *réggere*.				
córrere, to run.	*corro*.	*corsi*.	*correrò* (*corrò*)	*corso*.
corródere, to corrode, See *rodere*.				
corrómpere, to corrupt, to bribe, See *rómpere*.				
costruire, to construct.	*costruisco*	*costrussi*	*costruirò*	*costrutto* (*costruito*).
costríngere, to force, to compel, See *stringere*.				
créscere, to grow.	*cresco*	*crebbi*	*crescerò*	*cresciuto*.
crocifíggere, to crucify, See *figgere*.				
cuócere, to cook,	*cuoco*	*cossi* (*cocei, cocqui*)	*cocerò*	*cotto*.

Dare, to give.	*do*	*diedi*	*darò*	*dato*.
decídere, to decide.	*decido*	*decisi*	*deciderò*	*deciso*.
decréscere, to decrease, See *crescere*.				
dedúrre, to deduct, See *addurre*.				
delúdere, to delude, See *alludere*.				
deprímere, to depress, See *comprimere*.				
desístere, to desist, See *assistere*.				
desúmere, to assume, to conclude, See *assumere*.				
detrarre, to detract, See *trarre*.				
**detrúdere*, to intrude, See *intrudere*.				
diféndere, to defend.	*difendo*	*difesi*	*difenderò*	*difeso*.
diffóndere, to diffuse, See *fondere*.				
diméttere, to dismiss, to pardon, See *mettere*.				
dipíngere, to paint, to depict, See *pingere*.				
dire, to say, to tell.	*dico*.	*dissi*	*dirò*	*detto*.
dirígere, to direct.	*dirigo*	*diressi*	*dirigerò*	*diretto*.
dirómpere, to break out, See *rompere*.				
discéndere, to descend, See *scendere*.				

	Pres.	Def.	Fut.	P. P.
discérnere, to discern, See *scernere.*				
discórrere, to run through, to speak, See *correre.*				
discútere, to discuss.	*discuto*	*discussi*	*discuterò*	*discusso.*
disgiúgnere, to disjoin, See *giugnere.*				
dispérgere, to disperse, See *spergere.*				
distínguere, to distinguish.	*distinguo*	*distinsi* (*distinguei, -etti*)	*distinguerò*	*distinto.*
distórcere, to run through, See *torcere.*				
distrúggere, to destroy, See *struggere.*				
**divéllere*, to root up, See *svellere.*				
dividere, to divide.	*divido.*	*divisi.*	*dividerò*	*diviso* (*dividuto*, obsol.)
dolére, to ache: to be sorry.	*dolgo* (*doglio*)	*dolsi*	*dorrò* (*dolerò*)	*doluto.*
dovére, to be obliged; to owe.	*debbo* (*devo, deggio*)	*dorei* (*-etti*)	*dorrò*	*doruto.*
Eccédere, to exceed, See *cedere.*				
eléggere, to elect, See *leggere.*				
elídere, to drop a letter.	*elido*	*elisi*	*eliderò*	*eliso.*
elúdere, to elude, See *alludere.*				
emérgere, to emerge, See *mergere.*				
émpiere / *empire* (*isco*)	to fill. The irregularity consists in the double forms of the Def. *empì* and *empiè;* and Part. *empito* and *empinto;* See *compiere.*			
emúlgere, to soften.	*emulgo*	*emulsi*	*emulgerò*	*emulso.*
erígere (*érgere*), to erect.	*erigo* (*ergo*)	*eressi* (*ersi*)	*erigerò* (*ergerò*)	*eretto* (*erta*, Subst.).
esaurire, to exhaust, obsolescent exc. P. p.				*esaurito*, (*esausto*).
escludere, to exclude.	*escludo*	*esclusi*	*escluderò*	*escluso.*
esígere, to want.	*esigo*	*esigei* (*-etti*)	*esigerò*	*esatto.*
esístere, to exist.	*esisto*	*esistei*(*-etti*)	*esisterò*	*esistito.*
espéllere, to expel.	*espello*	*espulsi*	*espellerò*	*espulso.*
esprímere, to express.	*esprimo*	*espressi*	*esprimerò*	*espresso.*
éssere, to be.	*sono*	*fui*	*sarò*	*stato.*
estínguere, to extinguish.	*estinguo*	*estinsi*	*estinguerò*	*estinto.*
**estóllere* (*estogliere*), to extol, See *togliere.*				
evádere, to escape.	*evado*	*evasi*	*evaderò*	*evaso.*
Fare, to do.	*fo* (*faccio*)	*feci*	*farò*	*fatto.*
féndere, to split; to divide.*)	*fendo*	*fendei* (*fessi*)	*fenderò*	*fenduto* (*fesso*).

ferire, to wound; the obsolete poet. forms: *fere* (*fiede*) = *ferisce*, *fiédono* = *feriscono; fera* = *ferisca*, *férano* = *feriscano*, and *feruto* = *ferito.*

*) This verb is commonly regular.

	Pres.	Def.	Fut.	P. p.
fíggere, to fix.	*figgo*	*fissi*	*figgerò*	*fitto* (*fiso* and *fisso*, adj.).

NB. All the compounds, exc.: *sconfiggere*, to beat (the enemy), form the P. p. in *isso*.

fíngere, to feign.	*fingo*	*finsi*	*fingerò*	*finto.*
**flettere*, to yield.	*fletto*	*flessi*	*fletterò*	*flesso.*
fóndere, to cast, to melt.	*fondo*	*fusi* (*fondei*)	*fonderò*	*fuso.*
**frágnere* (*frangere*), to break.	*frango*	*fransi* (*fragno*)	*frangerò*	*franto.*

frémere, to tremble, is only irreg. in certain double forms taken from *fremire*.

friggere, to fry.	(*friggo*)	(*frissi*)	*friggerò*	*fritto.*
**fulgere*, to shine.	*fulgo*	*fulsi*	*fulgerò*	—

Gémere, to sigh, to groan, has some double forms from *gemire*.

genufléttere, to kneel.	—	(*genuflessi*)	—	*genuflesso.*
giacére, to lie.	*giaccio*	*giacqui*	*giacerò*	*giaciuto.*

giolre, to rejoice, is only irreg. in the forms *gioiamo* (*gioimo*), *gioiate* which are hardly used. The Partic. pres. *gioendo* for *gioiendo* is also met with.

gire, to go, See pag. 182.

giúgnere (*giungere*), to join, to arrive.	*giungo* (*giugno*)	*giunsi*	*giungerò* (*giugnerò*)	*giunto.*

Immérgere, to immerge, See *mergere*.
impéllere, to excite. See *espellere*.

impéndere, to impend.	*impendo*	*impesi*	—	*impeso* (*impenduto*).

impréndere, to undertake, See *apprendere*.

imprímere, to print.	*imprimo*	*impressi*	*imprimerò*	*impresso.*

incéndere, to incense, See *accendere*.

incídere, to engrave.	*incido*	*incisi*	*inciderò*	*inciso.*

inchiúdere (*includere*), to include, See *chiudere*.
increscere, to increase, See *crescere*.
**incútere*, to frighten, See *scuotere*.
**indícere*, to intimate, See *dire*.
indúlgere, to indulge, See *emulgere*.
indúrre, to induce, See *addurre*.

**infícere*, to infect.	—	*infeci.*	—	*infetto.*
infíggere, See *figgere*	. . . . .			*infisso.*

infliggere, to inflict, See *affliggere*.

inflettere, to bend, regular, except	. . .			*inflesso.*
influire (*influere*), to influence.	*influisco* (*influo*)	*influssi*	*influirò*	*influsso* (*influito*).

infrángere, to infract, See *frangere*.
infríngere, to infringe, See *cingere*.
insistere, to insist, See *assistere*.
insórgere / *insúrgere* to excite a revolt. See *sorgere*.

	Pres.	Def.	Fut.	P. p.
instruire, to instruct, See *costruire*.				
intercédere, to intercede, See *cedere*.				
intíngere, to immerge, See *tingere*.				
intrídere, to knead.	*intrido*	*intrisi*	*intriderò*	*intriso* (*intrito*).
intrúdere, to intrude.	*intrudo*	*intrusi*	*intruderò*	*intruso*.
invádere, to invade.	*invado*	*invasi*	*invaderò*	*invaso*.
íre, to go, See pag. 181.				
istruíre, See *instruire*.				
**Lédere*, to hurt.	—	*lesi*	—	*leso*.
léggere, to read.	*leggo*	*lessi*	*leggerò*	*letto*.
lícere, to be permitted, See pag. 182.				
**lúcere*, to shine.	*luceo*	*lussi*	*lucerò*	—

Maledíre, to curse, See *dire*. Pres. also *maledisco*, Impf. *malediva*.
mérgere, to submerge, only used in the Def. *mersi;* the comp., like *immergere, emergere* etc., are complete.
méscere, to mix; to pour; regul. exc. P. ps. *misto* (mixed); but *mesciuto* (poured).

méttere, to put.	*metto*	*misi* (*mettei, messi*)	*metterò*	*messo*.
mórdere, to bite.	*mordo*	*morsi* (*-dei, -detti*)	*morderò*	*morso*.
moríre, to die.	*muoio*	*morii* (*muoro*)	*morrò*	*morto*.
múngere (*múgnere*), to milk.	*mungo* (*mugno*)	*munsi*	*mungerò* (*mungerò*)	*munto*.
muóvere, to move.	*muovo*	*mossi*	*muoverò*	*mosso*.
Náscere, to be born.	*nasco*	*nacqui*	*nascerò*	*nato* (*nasciuto*).
nascóndere, to hide.	*nascondo*	*nascosi* (3. also *nascondè*)	*nasconderò*	*nascosto* (*nascoso*).
**negligere*, to neglect.*)	*negligo*	*neglessi*	*negligerò*	*negletto*.
**nettere*, to join.	*netto*	*nessi*	*netterò*	*nesso*.
nuócere, to endamage: to prejudice.	*nuoco*	*nocqui* (*nocei*)	*nuocerò*	*nociuto*.

Occídere, to kill, See *uccidere*.
occórrere, to want, See *correre*.
offéndere, to offend, See *fendere*.

offerire, to offer. (*offrire*)	*offro* (*offrisco*)	*offrii* (*offersi*)	*offerirò* (*offrirò*)	*offerto*.

olíre, to smell, See pag. 182.
opprímere, to oppress, See *comprimere*.

---

*) Less frequent than *negligentare*.

	Pres.	Def.	Fut.	P. p.
**Pándere*, to manifest	*pando*	*pansi*	*panderò*	*panso.*
parére, to seem.	*paio*	*parvi* (*parsi*)	*parrò* (*parerò*)	*paruto.* (*parso*).

partire, to depart, like *sentire;* when meaning to *divide*, the Pres. is *partisco.*

páscere, to feed, to graze (of cattle etc.), regul. exc. P. ps. (poet.) *pasto.*

percuótere, to percuss.	*percuoto*	*percossi* (3. *percusse*)	*percuoterò*	*percosso.*
pérdere, to lose.	*perdo*	*perdei* (*persi*)	*perderò*	*perduto* (*pérso*).

perire, to perish, regul. (*-isco*); this verb has still the old forms *pero, -i, -e; pera, pérano,* and (adj.) *perituro.*

permettere, to permit, See *mettere.*

persistere, to persist, See *assistere.*

persuadére, to persuade.	*persuado*	*persuasi* (*-adei*)	*persuaderò*	*persuaso.*
piacére, to please.	*piaccio*	*piacqui*	*piacerò*	*piaciuto.*
piángere (piágnere), to weep.	*piango*	*piansi*	*piangerò*	*pianto.*
píngere (píguere), to paint.	*pingo*	*pinsi*	*pingerò*	*pinto*
piórere, to rain.	*piove*	*piovve* (*piovè*, obsol. *piobbe*)	*pioverà*	*piovuto.*
pórgere, to offer, to hand.	*porgo*	*porsi*	*porgerò*	*porto.*
pórre (pónere), to put.	*pongo*	*posi* (3. *puose*)	*porrò* (*ponerò*)	*posto.*

possedére, to possess, See *sedere.*

potére, to be able.	*posso*	*potei* (*-etti*)	*potrò*	*potuto.*

precédere, to precede, See *cedere.*

preclúdere, to preclude, to hinder, See *chiudere.*

predíre, to predict, See *dire.*

prefíggere, to prefix, See *figgere.*

prémere, to press, to be important.	*premo*	*premei*	*premerò*	*premuto* (*presso*).
préndere, to take.	*prendo.*	*presi* (*-ndei*)	*prenderò*	*preso.*

presúmere, to presume, See *assumere.*

procédere, to proceed, See *cedere.*

propéndere, to incline, regul. exc. P. ps. (poet.) *propeso.*

prorómpere, to burst forth, to break out, See *rompere.*

protéggere, to protect.	*proteggo*	*protessi* (*-ggei*)	*proteggerò*	*protetto.*
púngere (púgnere), to prick.	*pungo*	*punsi*	*pungerò* (*pugnerò*)	*punto.*
Rádere, to shave, to erase, to scratch out.	*rado*	*rasi* (*radei*)	*raderò*	*raso.*

raggiúgnere, to overtake, See *giúgnere.*

	Pres.	Def.	Fut.	P. p.

NB. All verbs beginning with *re* or *ri* which are not given here, must be looked for among the resp. *simple* verbs.

ravvedérsi, to change one's opinion, See *redere*.				
recídere, to cut off, See *circoncidere*.				
redímere, to redeem.	*redimo.*	*redensi* (*-dimei*)	*redimerò*	*redento.*
réggere, to govern, to hold.	*reggo*	*ressi*	*reggerò*	*retto.*
réndere, to render.	*rendo.*	*rendei, resi* (*-etti*)	*renderò*	*renduto* (*reso*).
repéllere, to repel, See *ripéllere*.				
reprímere, to repress.	*reprimo*	*repressi* (*reprimei*)	*reprimerò*	*represso.*
**rescíndere*, to cut off.	*rescindo*	*rescissi* (*rescindei*)	*rescinderò*	*rescisso.*
resístei, to resist. See *assistere*.				
retúndere, to moderate, regul. except. P. ps. *retuso.*				
rídere, to laugh.	*rido*	*risi*	*riderò*	*riso.*
ridurre, to reduce, See *addurre*.				
riédere / *redire* to return.	has but Pr. Ind. *riedo, -i, e; riédono;* Pres. Subj. *rieda, -a; -a, riédano;* Impf. *riedera, -i, -a,* and *riedévano.*			
rifléttere, to reflect.	*rifletto*	*riflettei* (*riflessi*)	*rifletterò*	*riflettuto, riflesso* (reverberated).
rifúlgere, to sparkle, See *fulgere* (3. Def. poet. *rifulgè*).				
rilúcere, to shine, See *lucere;* Def. *rilussi* (*rilucei*).				
rimanére, to remain.	*rimango*	*rimasi*	*rimarrò*	*rimasto* (*rimaso*).
rincréscere, to regret (Imperson.).	(*mi*) *rincresce*	*rincrebbe*	*rincrescerà*	*rincresciuto.*
ripéllere, to repel, See *espellere*.				
risólvere, to resolve.	*risolvo*	*risolvei* (*-etti*), *risolsi*	*risolverò*	*risolto* (*risoluto*).
risórgere, to rise again.	*risorgo*	*risorsi*	*risorgerò*	*risorto.*
rispóndere, to answer.	*rispondo*	*risposi*	*risponderò*	*risposto.*
ritórcere, to turn back, See *torcere*.				
riuscíre, to succeed, See *uscire*.				
ródere, to gnaw.	*rodo*	*rosi*	*roderò*	*roso.*
rómpere, to break.	*rompo*	*ruppi* (*roppi, rompei*)	*romperò*	*rotto.*
Salire, to ascend.	*salgo* (*salisco*)	*salii* (*salsi*)	*salirò* (*sarrò*)	*salito.*
sapére, to know.	*so* (3. poet. *sape*)	*seppi*	*saprò*	*saputo.*
scalfire, to scratch.	*scalfisco*	*scalfii*	*scalfirò*	*scalfitto.*
scégliere (*scerre*), to chose.	*scelgo*	*scelsi*	*sceglierò* (*scerrò*)	*scelto.*

	Pres.	Def.	Fut.	P. p.
scéndere, to descend.	*scendo*	*scesi* (*-ndei, -ndetti*)	*scenderò*	*sceso.*
scérnere, to distinguish, regul. exc. the poet. forms (Def.) *scersi* and *scerse.*				
**scíndere*, to separate, to divide.	*scindo*	*scissi*	*scinderò*	*scisso.*
sciógliere (*sciorre*), to untie.	*sciolgo* (*scioglio*)	*sciolsi*	*scioglierò* (*sciorrò*)	*sciolto.*
scolpire, to hit.	*scolpisco* (3. poet. *sculpe*).	*scolpii*	*scolpirò*	*scolpito* (*sculto*).
scommèttere, to bet, See *méttere.*				
sconnéttere, to undo, See *néttere.*				
sconfóndere, to confound, See *fondere.*				
scórgere, to perceive, See *accorgersi.*				
scrívere, to write.	*scrivo*	*scrissi*	*scriverò*	*scritto.*
scuótere, to shake, to toss.	*scuoto* (3. poet. *scusse*)	*scossi*	*scuoterò*	*scosso.*
smuóvere, to move, See *muóvere.*				
sedere,	*siedo* (*seggo*)	*sedei* (*-etti*)	*sederò* (*sedrò*)	*seduto.*
sedúrre, to seduce, See *addurre.*				
seguire, to follow.	*seguo**) (*sieguo*)	*seguii*	*seguirò*	*seguito.*
seppellire, to bury, regul. exc.	P. ps. . . .			*seppellito*, (*sepolto, sepulto*).
sérpere, to wind, See pag. 182.				
sofferire / *soffrire* to suffer, See *offerire.*				
solére, to use, See pag. 182.				
**sólvere*, to solve, to dissolve.	*solvo*	*solvei* (*solvetti*)	*solverò*	*soluto.*
somméttere, to submit, See *mettere.*				
sopprimere, to suppress, See *opprimere.*				
sórgere, to rise, See *porgere.*				
sospéndere, to suspend, See *appendere.*				
sottométtere, to submit, See *mettere.*				
sottrarre, to subtract, See *trarre.*				
spándere, to spread.	*spando*	*spandei* (*-etti, spansi*)	*spanderò*	*spanduto* (*spanto*).
spárgere, to disperse.	*spargo*	*sparsi* (*spargei*)	*spargerò*	*sparso.*
sparíre, to disappear.	*sparisco*	*sparii* (*sparvi*)	*sparirò*	*sparito* (*saruto*, adj., weakly, tiny).
spéndere, to spend, See *appendere.*				
spégnere (*spéngere*), to extinguish.	*spengo* (*spegno*)	*spensi*	*spegnerò*	*spento.*
spérdere, to waste, See *perdere.*				

*) The compounds, as *conseguire* etc., form *-isco.*

	Pres.	Def.	Fut.	P. p.
spérgere, to disperse.	*spergo*	*spersi*	*spergerò*	*sperso.*
spíngere (*spígnere*), to push, to excite, See *pingere.*				
stare, to stand, to be.	*sto*	*stetti* (*stei*)	*starò*	*stato.*
strídere, to scream, reg. exc. the old forms (Def.) *strise* and *strísero.*				
stríngere (*strígnere*), to press.	*stringo*	*strinsi*	*stringerò*	*stretto* (*strinto*).
strúggere, to destroy.*)	*struggo*	*strussi*	*struggerò*	*strutto.*
succédere, to succeed, See *cedere.*				
súggere, to suck.	*suggo*	*suggei*	*suggerò*	(of *succhiare*).
sussístere, to subsist, See *cedere.*				
svéllere (*svégliere*, *srerre*), to root up.	*svelgo* (*svello*)	*svelsi*	*svellerò* (*sverrò*)	*svelto.*
sûrgere, See *sórgere.*				
Tacére, to be silent.	*taccio*	*tacqui* (*-cei, -etti*)	*tacerò*	*taciuto.*
téndere, to extend, See *attendere.*				
tenére, to hold.	*tengo*	*tenni* (*-nei, -netti*)	*terrò*	*tenuto.*
térgere, to wipe, See *mergere.*				
tíngere (*tígnere*), to dye.	*tingo* (*tigno*)	*tinsi*	*tignerò* (*tingerò*)	*tinto.*
tógliere (*torre*), to take off.	*tolgo* (*toglio*)	*tolsi*	*toglierò* (*torrò*)	*tolto.*
tóndere, to shear, reg. exc. P. ps. (antiq.) *toso* for *tonduto.*				
tórcere (*tórgere*), to wind, to turn.	*torco*	*torsi* (*-cei, -cetti*)	*trocerò*	*torto.*
tradurre, to translate. See *addurre.*				
trafíggere, to pierce, See *figgere.*				
trárre (*tráere*), to draw.	*traggo*	*trassi*	*trarrò*	*tratto.*
trasfóndere, to pour over, See *fóndere.*				
trasparire, to be transparent, See *sparire.*				
Uccídere, to kill.	*uccído*	*uccisi*	*ucciderò*	*ucciso.*
udíre, to hear.	*odo* (3. *udisce*)	*udii*	*udirò* (*udrò*)	*udito.*
úngere (*úgnere*), to anoint.	*ungo* (*ugno*)	*unsi*	*ungerò* (*ugnerò*)	*unto.*
uscire, to go out.	*esco*	*uscii*	*uscirò*	*uscito.*
Valére, to be worth.	*valgo*	*valsi* (*valei*)	*varrò* (*valerò*)	*valuto* (*valso*, *valsuto*).
vedére, to see.	*vedo* (*veggio, veggo*)	*vidi* (*vedei, -etti, veddi*)	*vedro* (*vederò*)	*veduto* (*visto, viso*).

*) Usually reflect. *strúggersi*, to wish ardently.

	Pres.	Def.	Fut.	P. p.
venire, to come.	*vengo* (*vegno*)	*venni* (*venii*)	*verrò* (*venirò*)	*venuto.*
vilipéndere, to vilify.	*vilipendo*	*vilipesi*	*vilipenderò*	*vilipeso.*
víncere, to conquer, to win.	*vinco*	*vinsi* (*vincei*)	*vincerò*	*vinto.*
vívere, to live.	*vivo*	*vissi* (*vivei*)	*viverò* (*vivrò*)	*vissuto* (*viruto, visso*).
volére, to be willing.	*voglio* (*vo'*)	*volli* (*volsi*)	*vorrò*	*voluto.*
vólgere (*vólvere*), to turn, to return.	*volgo*	*volsi*	*volgerò* (*volverò*)	*volto.*

SECOND PART.

On Pronunciation.

A. Consonants.

To the rules given in the I Part of this grammar we now add the following observations:

1) Contrary to the general rule, **s** has a sharp *hissing* sound at the end of a *prefixed syllable*, as: *bis*, *dis*, *mis*, *es*, and *tras*. Ex.: *bisavo* (great-grandfather), from *bis* and *avo*; *disastro* (disaster), from *dis* and *astro*. It is pronounced in the same way, when *si* (pron.) is added to a verb, as: *dícesi* (one says = *dice-si*). Moreover, *s* is sharp in *stasera*, to-night, the abbreviation of *questa sera*, and *cosí* = *co* and *si*.

2) The sound of *s* is somewhat *softer* before *b*, *d*, *gh*, and *r*, as: *svegliare*, *sdegno*.

3) **Z** has a hard sound like *ts*, and a soft one like *ds*. The latter only occurs in the following words and their derivates:

Zaffare, to choke, to stop up.
zaffiro, sapphire.
zaffo, bung.
zana, basket; fraud.
zanzára, gnat, midge.
záttera, raft.
zebro, zebra.
zéfiro, zephyr.
zelo, zeal.
zénzero, ginger.
zerbino, dandy.
zero, zero.
zéta, the letter *z*.
zibetto, civet.
zizzánia, discord; weed.
zolfo, sulphur.
zonzo, idler.
zótico, rude, ill-bred.
zurlo, lust, sauciness.
zuffo, a tickling.*)

B. Vowels.

1. Simple vowels.

We should notice the difference between the open *e* and *o*, and the closed *e* and *o* (suono aperto e suono

*) Some of these words are also written with *s*, as *saffiro* etc. *ZZ* has also frequently the soft sound, as in *Amázzone*, *gazza*, *azzurro*, *bizzarro*, *dozzina*, *gazzetta*, *mezzo*, *orizzonte*, *rozzo*, *rezzo*.

chiuso).*) This distinction offers some difficulty, as the dialects predominate in Italy, so that the correct pronunciation is but seldom heard. As the difference is partly based on etymological rules, some knowledge of Latin is requisite in order to understand this thoroughly. We shall try to give the pupil some general hints:

1) A vowel is *closed*, when the syllable is *open*, i. e. terminating in a vowel, viz. *do-le-re; o-no-re.*

2) A vowel is *open*, when the syllable is *closed* i. e. ending in a *consonant*, as: *per-fet-to; con-tor-ni.*

Note. When a syllable is *accented*, it always becomes open. Thus the first *o* in *popolare* is closed (Rule 1); but it becomes open in *pópolo*, because here the *stress* is laid on it.

3) If **o** is preceded by *u*, and **e** is preceded by *i*, the sound of *o* and *e* is *always* open, thus: *buóno, fiéle, diéde, fuóco etc.*

a. *E* closed.

1) By etymological laws the sound of the *e* is *closed*, if this vowel replaces the Latin **i**, as *meno*, (Lat. minus); *neve* (nivis); *metto* (mitto); *stretto* (strictus).

2) *E* is closed in the terminations:

esco — tedesco.	*eno* — terreno.
évole — lodevole.	*ese* — cortese.
ésimo — centesimo.	*essa* — duchessa.
ezza — ebbrezza.	*eto* — oliveto.
elo — velo.	*etto* — vecchietto.
ela — candela.	*etta* — vecchietta.
ele — fedele.	*mento* — avvenimento.

Verbal terminations.

ere — tacere (*Inf.*).	*este* — credeste (*Def.*).
ete — credete (*2. Plur.*).	*esti* — credesti (*Def.*).
eva — vedeva (*Imperf.*).	*emo* — crederemo (*Fut.*).
essi — credessi (*Impf. Sogg.*).	*ete* — crederete (*Fut.*).
emmo — credemmo (*Def.*).	

3) *E* is closed before:

gn — regno. *nn* — penna.

*) The sound of the *e* is *open*, when it is pronounced like the French *è*, and *closed*, when it approaches the French *é*. The open *o* is pronounced like the English *o* in "loll" or "doll", but somewhat longer; the closed *o* resembles the English *o* in "cold" or "both".

NB. In *-iere (iero)*, f. inst. *cameriere, sparviere*, the sound of *e* is undetermined.

b. *E* open.

This vowel is open:

1) Before vowels, as: *Andrêa,**) *sêi, cammêo.*

2) If *e* has the *stress* in the *antepenultimate,***) (exc. the terminations *évole* and *ésimo* (of the numerals), as: *mêmore, sêcolo, pêcora.* Likewise in the *Infinitives*, as: *lèggere, fèndere, scêgliere* etc.

3) Before the terminations *ia* and *io,* when preceded by a *simple* consonant, as: *matèria; vituperio*, provided the stress be laid on *e.* When, however, the stress passes to another syllable, the *e* becomes closed, as: *vitúpero.* The elision of *i* in the termin.: *ia* or *io* does not alter the open sound of the *e,* thus: *impêro* (inst. of *impêrio*).

4) In the terminations:

ello — poverêllo.
*etto****) — têtto.
ente — prudênte.
ento (except *mento*) — argênto.
enza — partênza.
enzio — silênzio.
esto (esta) — modêsto.
estra — minêstra.
ezzo — rêzzo.

Verbal terminations.

ersi — pêrsi.
erto — copêrto.
elto — svêlto.
etto — lêtto.***)
erso — immêrso.
esso — mêsso.
ebbe — amerêbbe.
ebbero (Sec 2.) amerêbbero.
endo — volêndo.

c. *O* closed.

1) O has a closed sound by etymological rules, when this vowel replaces the Lat. *u*, thus: *mondo* (mundus); *ove* (ubi); *colpa* (culpa).

2) In the terminations:

oce — precoce.
ona — padrona.
one — padrone.
ono — dono.
ore — lettore.
ora — malora.
oso, a — festoso, a.

---

*) *ea* and *eano,* if contr. from *eva* and *evano,* are closed, as: *vedéa, vedéano* (= vedeva, vedevano).

**) The *voci sdrucciole.*

***) The diminut. *etto* has the closed sound.

3) Before *gn* and *nn* (exc.: *dônna*), as: *bisogno, sonno.*

d. *O* open.

1) This vowel is open, if it replaces the Lat. *au*, as: *Côsa* (causa); *ôro* (aurum); *pôco* (paucum); *pôvero* (pauper).

2) In *monosyllables* and when the *accento* (ò) is on it, as: *Do; trovò, fo etc.*

3) If the *stress* is laid on it in the *antepenultimate*, as: *sciógliere, nôbile, môbile, sciôlsero etc.* Ex.: *nascóndere*, to hide, and those forms of *porre*, to put, where the stress is laid on the *antepenultimate*, as: *pósero.*

4) Before a *vowel*, as: *puôi, vuôi, tuôi etc.*

5) If separated from the *terminations ia* and *io* by a *simple* consonant, as: *negôzio, orolôgio, Segôvia, Scôzia.*

6) If in the *Infinitive o* is preceded by *u*, it becomes *open*, (See 3.) and this sound remains through the whole conjugation, thus: *Scuôtere; muôvere.* Def. *scôssi, môssi;* P. p. *scôsso, môsso etc.*

7) In the terminations:

oglio — fôglio. *osto* — arrôsto. *oto* — divôto.
osta — côsta. *ostro* — chiôstro.

NB. For words which have two meanings, their pronunciation varying accordingly, See Appendix.

2. On diphthongs.

As we stated in the 1st Part (§ 4), the Italian language has no *real* diphthongs. If *two* or *three* vowels meet, the stress is laid on the *principal* of them, and the others are *rapidly* but *distinctly* pronounced. Such combinations of vowels are: *ai, au, ei, eu, oi* etc. Those so-called diphthongs may sometimes form *one* syllable (by preference in poetry), as: *mio, tuoi*; in general they form *two* syllables, as: *mi-o, tu-oi;* but *never three.* Thus either miéi (*one* syllable with the stress on *e*) or *mi-ei*, but never *mi-e-i* (three syllables). Nevertheless, every vowel is distinctly heard.

Oa, ao, eo, au, oe, ea can *never* form *one* syllable. Thus *soave* (sweet) is pronounced *so-a-ve* (and not *soa-ve*); *pa-ú-ra* (and not *pau-ra*).

Note. The so-called *suoni schiacciati* (literally: *crushed sounds*), i. e. the vowel *i* after *c* and *g* and before *a, o* and *u*, as: *gia, cio, ciu, gio* etc., where *i* does but soften the sound of *c* or *g* (See I P. pg. 5), have nothing to do with the diphthongs, because here *i* is no real vowel, but merely a sign of pronunciation. Although *i* be not quite mute (as f. inst. the *e* in the French word *mangea*, or the *u* in *guérir*), yet its sound is too feeble to have the full value of a vowel. In some words the *i* has been retained, as in *cielo* (a proof that it is not quite mute); the terminations *cia, scia, gia, ccia, ggia*, however, drop it now in the Plural, whereas they formerly retained it. Thus we write: *minacce, spiagge, marce* (Plur. of *minaccia, spiaggia, marcia*), and not *minaccie, spiaggie* etc., as of old.

On the Accent.

As we stated at the beginning of the 1st Part, the Italian language has no particular signs whereby the pronunciation is thoroughly determined. Consequently we have only to speak of the *accent (accento)*, the *apostrophe (apóstrofo)* and the *hyphen (punto sospensivo)*.

1) The Accent (`), as we said, marks a contraction, as ***virtù,*** formerly *virtude;* ***città*** for *cittade;* ***piè*** for *piede.* The stress must, therefore, be laid on the syllable which has the accent. Frequently the signification of a word is altered by the accent. Thus *facilità* means *facility — facílita*, however, *he facilitates; terrà* means *he will hold — térra*, earth; *amò*, I love — *amò*, he loved.

An *acute* Accent (´), like the French *accent aigu*, does not occur in Italian. Some modern authors, however, occasionally use it, where otherwise a misunderstanding might possibly arise, as: *malvagía*, malmsey (wine), and *malvágia* (fem. of *malvágio*).

Seldom a *circumflex* (^) is met with, as: *cacciâr, ginnasî.* This accent either marks a *contraction,* or the *apocope* of a whole syllable, as in the first example (*cacciâr* = *cacciárono*). Its use, however, is very arbitrary, like

that of the *diaeresis* (¨), which is sometimes employed in poetry, if a diphthong is to be pronounced in two syllables, as: *armonïoso* (pr. *armoni-o-so*) instead of *armo-nio-so.*

As for the *verbal* accent, *the stress is generally laid on the penultimate syllable.* Thus: *buóno, gránde, amáte, vedéte, il sónno, la lúna, il sóle etc.*

Exceptions. a) All verbs, however, in the *3rd person plural* have their accent on the *antepenultimate,* as: *cércano,**) *ódono, séntono, sentívano, scélsero, fécero etc.,* except the Future Tense, where the stress is laid on the *penultimate,* as: *ameránno, parleránno, daránno* etc.

b) All the words with the *accento,* as: *amerà, amò, credè* etc.

c) The *voci sdrucciole***), like: *cándido, sdrúcciolo,* too numerous to be committed by memory.

2) The Apostrophe (') indicates that *a vowel has been dropped.* Its use is rather arbitrary in Italian. We give here the principal rules:

a. In the *Singular* the articles *la, lo, una* are apostrophised before all vowels, as: *l'amore* for *lo amore; l'ora* for *la ora.*

But *lo eréde* and *la créde,* heir and heiress, instead of *l'eréde,* to avoid a misconception.

In the *Plural* the article *gli* is apostrophised before *i* only, and *le* before *e,* as: *gl'inni,* the hymns; *l'erbe,* the grasses, as the meeting of two different vowels (for inst. in *gli errori*) is less grating on the ear than the repetition of the same vowel in *gli inni* would be.

Except a few *feminine* nouns ending in *i,* that are alike in the Singular and Plural, as: *le eclissi,* etc.

b. The words *che, se, mi, ti, gli, le, la, lo, ci, vi, li* ought to be apostrophised before the same vowels only, as: *m'invita,* he invites me, but *mi ama,* and not *m'ama,* he loves me.

c. Buono, buona, santo, santa, grande, questo, questa, quello, quella, may be apostrophised before *all* vowels, as: *Sant' Eufemía, quell' ubbriáco,* that drunkard. (See p. 49.)

*) See *Appendix* on the Verbs with the stress on the *fourth* syllable from behind.

**) Liter. *slipping words,* i. e. words with the stress on the antepenultimate.

When the *last* vowel of a word is preceded by *l*, *m*, *n* or *r*, and the *following* word begins with a consonant (except *s impura*), this final vowel may be dropped, without being apostrophised, as:

A man sinistra, on the left hand, for: *mano sinistra*.
Egli non vuol parlare, he will not speak, for: *vuole parlare*.
Per far questo, to do that, for: *fare questo*.

Before *s impura*, however, or when immediately followed by a comma, period etc., these words may not reject their last vowels. Thus:

Egli vuole spendere, and not *vuol spendere!*
Che bella mano! » » *bella man!**)

Note. Especially in poetry, words in *llo*, as: *cavallo*, *uccello*, drop the last syllable *lo* before consonants (except *s imp.*); thus: *il caval di legno*, the wooden horse, for *cavallo di legno*.

3) The *Hyphen* (-) is used to separate syllables at the end of a line.

a. *Ch*, *gh*, *gn*, *gl*, *sce*, *sci*, *scia*, *scio* cannot be separated. Thus *po-chi* not *poc-hi*; *fi-glio*, not *fig-lio*, etc.

b. *cch*, *ggh*, *cc*, *gg*, *cq* and all other *double* consonants between vowels (exc. *ch*, *gh*, *gn*, *gl*) are separated. Thus *spec-chio*; *cac-cio*; *bel-lo*; *prez-zo* etc.

c. The Prefixes *bis*, *cis*, *dis*, *es*, *in*, *mis*, *per*, *pos*, *sub*, *tras*, *trans* are always considered as *proper syllables* and therefore *never* separated, for ex.: *cis-alpino* (not *ci-salpino*); *tras-mettere* (not *tra-smettere*).

The Hyphen is further used to *join* two words, as: *Grammatica tedesca-italiana*, German-Italian Grammar; *l'armata anglo-francese*, the Anglo-French army.

The *points* or signs of punctuation are:

(.) Period or full stop, *punto fermo*.
(:) Colon, *punto doppio* or *due punti*.
(;) Semicolon, *punto e virgola*.
(,) Comma, *virgola* (*comma*).
(?) Note of interrogation, *punto interrogativo*.
(!) Note of exclamation, *punto esclamativo*.
( ) Parenthesis, *parèntesi*.
(„) Quotation mark, *virgolette*.
(—) Dash, *punto sospensivo*.

*) In poetry, however, admissible, as: *Il cándido tuo vel* (= *velo*). *(Betelloni)*.

First Lesson.

Of the Gender of Substantives.

§ 1. *Masculine* by their *signification* are:

1) The names of all *male* beings, as: *Carlo*, Charles; *il Tedesco*, the German; *l'imperatore*, the emperor; *il falegname*, the joiner; *il toro*, the bull, etc.

Except: *la guida*, the guide; *la sentinella*, the sentry; *la spia*, the spy; *la recluta*, the recruit.

2) The names of *mountains*, *trees*, and *metals*, as: *il Vesúvio*, Vesuvius; *il fico*, the fig-tree; *l'oro*, the gold.

3) The names of *months* and *days*, as: *il lunedì*, Monday; *Marzo*, March.

4) All words that become substantives by prefixing the article, as: *il bene*, the good; *il bere*, the drink; *il dove*, the where.

Except: *la doménica*.[1]) Sunday; *l'elce* (f.), the red oak; *l'édera* (f.), the ivy; *la quercia*, the oak; *la trémula*, the trembling aspen; *l'acácia* (f.), the acacia; *la vite*, the vine; *la bétula*, the birch-tree.

§ 2. *Feminine* by *signification* are:

1) All names of *female* persons and *animals*, as: *Giúlia*, Juliet; *la ragazza*, the girl; *la cavalla*, the mare, etc.

2) The names of *fruits*, as: *la pera*, the pear; *la ciriegia*, the cherry; *la poma* (also *il pomo*) the apple.

Except the following that signify the *fruit* as well as the tree:

l'aráncio,[2]) the orange and orange-tree.
il cedro, *il limone*, } the citron and citron-tree.

1) Lat. *dies dominica*; Fr. *dimanche*; OFr. *diemenche*; Prov. *dimenge*; Sp. *domingo*. 2) From the Arab. *nârang*; LL. *orangia*; Fr. *orange*; Sp. *naranja*; Port. *laranja*.

il dáttero, the date and date-tree.
il fico, the fig and fig-tree.
il ribès, the currant and currant-bush.*)

3) The names of *virtues, vices, sciences*, and *arts: la modestia*, modesty; *la bontà*, goodness; *la bugía*, the lie; *la geografía*, geography; *la pittura*, the art of painting.

§ 3. *Masculine* by their *terminations* are:

1) All nouns ending in *o*, as: *lo scanno*, the bench; *il mondo*, the world.

Except: *la mano*, the hand, and of course feminine proper names, as: *Saffo*, Sappho; *Calisso*, Calypso, etc.

Note. Some old Latin words, like *immágo* for *immágine*, sometimes occur in ancient poetry. These words, being feminine in Latin, of course retain their gender in Italian. *Eco*, echo, is *masc.* and *fem.*

2) All words ending in *tore*, as: *dottore, imperatore, attore* — being masculine on account of their meaning.

3) The majority of words ending in *one, nte, re, me, ese, ale, ile*, and *ele*, as: *il cordone*, the string; *il dente*, the tooth; *il fiore*, the flower; *il lume*, the light; *il paese*, the land; *il canale*, the channel; *lo stile*, the style; *il miéle*, (the) honey.

Except: *la scure*, the axe, hatchet; *la gente*, people; *la fame*, hunger; *la febbre*, the fever; *la mente*, the mind; *la pólvere*, the dust; *la speme*, the hope; *la bile*, the bile; *la sorgente*, the source; *la corrente*, the current; *la coltre*, the coverlet; *la torre*, the tower; *la canzone*, the song; *la valle*, the valley.

§ 4. *Feminine* by their *terminations* are:

1) The words ending in *a* and *ù*, as: *anima*, soul; *la virtù*, virtue.

Except: Names of masculine persons in *a*, as: *Andréa, Tobía*, etc. Besides, a great many Greek words, as: *il poeta, il monarca, il dramma, il pianeta, il programma, l'enigma, lo stratagemma, etc.*, and a few Italian words in *a*, denoting masculine occupation and dignity, as: *il duca*, the duke; *il papa*, the Pope, etc.

NB. Asma, asthma; *flegma*, phlegm, and *plasma*, red emerald, also an *earthen vessel*, are usually *fem. Dramma, m.* is *drama* (play); *dramma, f.* means *drachm* (a Greek coin or weight). *Tema, m.* is *task, f.* means *fear.*

*) ***Il** *noce*, nut-tree; ***la** *noce*, the nut.

2) Most substantives ending in *ine* and *ione*, as: *la grándine*, the hail; *la passione*, the passion etc.

Except: *il túrbine*, the whirlwind; *il término*, the term, limit, goal; *l'árgine*, the dike, pier; *il fúlmine*, the lightning; *l'órdine*, the order; *il crine*, the mane; *il péttine*, the comb; *il bastione*, the rampart; *l'arcione*, the saddle-bow; *il padiglione*, the tent. — NB. *L'ordine*, *f.* is obsolete.

3) The Substantives ending in *ce*, *de*, *ge*, *ie*, *rte*, and *ve*, as: *la radíce*, the root; *la féde*, the faith, belief; *la legge*, the law; *la specie*, the species: *la morte*, death; *la neve*, the snow, etc.

Except: *il póllice*, the thumb; *il pesce*, the fish; *il calice*, the chalice, cup; *il piede*, the foot.

§ 5. Most nouns ending in *i* are *feminine*, as: *la crisi*, *la sintassi* (syntax) etc.

Except: *Il brindisi*,[1]) the toast; *il Tamigi*, the Thames; *il barbagianni*, the owl; *il dì*, the day, and its compounds, as: *Lunedì*, Monday, *Mercoledì*, Wednesday etc. Likewise the names of *men* and a few *compound* substantives; Ex.: *Giovanni*, John; *il guastamestieri*, the spoil-trade, bungler (*guastare*, to spoil; *mestieri*, business, trade); *il guardaboschi*, the game-keeper (*guardare*, to keep; *boschi*, woods).

§ 6. The following nouns are both *masc.* and *fem.*:

Árbore (poet.), tree.
asse, board.
calce, *m.* butt-end (of a gun); *f.* lime.
cárcere (*pl. f.*), the prison.
cénere (*pl. f.*), the ashes.
dimane (poet.), morning.
fante, *m.* foot-soldier, varlet; *f.* servant (maid).
fine, the end.
fólgore, the lightning.
fonte, the well.
fronte, the forehead.
fune (*pl. f.*), the cord, rope.
gregge, the flock.
lepre, the hare.
márgine, the brim, margin.
oste (poet.), the army; the host, landlord.
palude, the marsh, morass.
rene, the reins (kidney).
serpe (poet.), the snake.
trave, the beam, trave.

Remarks.

céneri (pl. f.) signifies the *ashes* or *cinders of the dead*, and therefore poetically: *Death*. *Il giorno delle ceneri*, means Ash-Wednesday.

1) From the Germ. **Ich bring dir sie**, i. e. die Geſundheit, I drink your good health.

dimane, m. is *to-morrow; f. the morning.*
fine, f. is the modern from; *il fine* also the butt.
fólgore, when meaning *a great hero,* is masculine, thus: *un folgore di guerra* (French: un foudre de guerre).
fonte figuratively used means *origin* and *font.* Pl. only *fem.*
fronte is more frequently *feminine* than *masculine.*
le funi also means: the *rack, torture.* Pl. only *fem.*
gregge is only *fem.* in the Plur.
márgine, m. is *margin; f. scar.*
rene is *m.* in *Sing.;* in the *Plur.* it is *m.* and *f.*

On the formation of the female appellations.

§ 1. Principal rules:

1) Masculine nouns in *o* form their feminine in *a,* as:

il ragazzo, the boy.	*la ragazza,* the girl.
il servo, the footman.	*la serva,* the maid-servant.
il lupo, the he-wolf.	*la lupa,* the she-wolf.

Except: *il capitano — la capitanessa; il filósofo — la filosofessa; il canónico — la canonichessa; il diávolo — la diavolessa,* and *il dio — la dea.*

2) Masculine substantives in *a* form *essa:*

il profeta, the prophet.	*la profetessa,* the prophetess.
l'arcidúca, the arch-duke.	*l'arciduchessa,* the archduchess.
il poeta, the poet.	*la poetessa,* the poetess.

Except: *l'artista,* the artist; fem. *l'artista.*

3) Masculine nouns in *e* form *a:*

il padrone, the master.	*la padrona,* the mistress.
lo scolare, the pupil.	*la scolara,* the pupil *(f.).*

Except the names of *nations* in *ese,* the *partic. pres.* in *ente* when used *substantively,* the words ending in *éfice,* and a few words importing *relation,* where the difference of gender is marked by the article only. Thus:

lo artéfice, the artificer	fem. *la artéfice.*
il Danése, the Dane	„ *la Danese.*
un conoscente, an acquaintance	„ *una conoscente.*
il nipote, the nephew	„ *la nipote.*
il consorte, the husband	„ *la consorte.*
il tigre, the tiger	„ *la tigre.*
l'erede, the heir.	„ *la erede.*

4) Nouns ending in *tore* form *trice.*

l'imperatore, the emperor,	fem.	*l'imperatrice.*
l'autore, the author	„	*l'autrice.*
il pittore, the painter	„	*la pittrice.*
il cantore, the singer	„	*la cantatrice.*

Exceptions:

l'abáte, the abbot	fem.	*l'abbadéssa (badessa).*
il baróne, the baron	„	*la baronessa.*
il conte, the count	„	*la contessa.*
il dottore, the doctor	„	*la dottoressa.*
il fattore, the administrator	„	*la fattoressa.*
il gigante, the giant	„	*la gigantessa.*
l'elefante, the elephant	„	*l'elefantessa.*
il leone, the lion	„	*la leonessa.*
il mercante, the merchant	„	*la mercantessa.*
l'oste, the host, landlord	„	*l'ostessa.*
il pavone, the peacock	„	*la pavonessa.*
il príncipe, the prince	„	*la principessa.*
il sacerdote, the priest	„	*la sacerdotessa.*

Irregular are:

l'uomo, the man.	*la donna*, the woman.
il re, the king.	*la regina*, the queen.
l'eróe, the hero.	*l'eroina (eroéssa)*, the heroine.
il becco, the he-goat.	*la capra*, the she-goat.
il búe, the ox.	*la vacca*, the cow.
il cane, the dog.	*la cagna*, the bitch.
il gallo, the cock.	*la gallina*, the hen.
il montone, the ram.	*la pécora*, the ewe.

Note. The pupil is requested to form the Feminine gender of the following substantives:

The neighbour, *il vicino;* the neighbour *(f.)*, *la —;* the heir, *lo erede;* the heiress, *la —;* the tutor, *il governatore (áio);* the governess, *la —;* the seducer, *il seduttore;* the seducer *(f.)*, *la —;* the king, *il re;* the queen, *la —;* the gardener, *il giardiniere;* the gardener's wife, *la —;* the fisherman, *il pescatore;* the fisher-woman, *la —;* the count, *il conte;* the countess, *la —;* the duke, *il duca;* the duchess, *la —;* the tom-cat, *il gatto;* the she-cat, *la —;* the hero, *l'eroe;* the heroine, *l' —;* the artist, *lo artista;* the artist *(f.)*, *la —;* the prince, *il príncipe;* the princess, *la —;* the Milanese, *il Milanese;* the Milanese *(f.)*, *la —;* the Frenchman, *il Francese;* the French-woman, *la —;* the benefactor, *il benefattore;* the benefactress, *la —;* God, *Dio;* the goddess, *la —;* the dog, *cane;* the bitch, *la —;* the brother-in-law,

il cognato; the sister-in-law, *la —;* the friar, monk, *il mónaco;* the nun, *la —;* the giant, *il gigante;* the giantess, *ta —;* the tiger, *il tigre;* the tigress, *la —.*

Traduzione. 66 a.

The king and the queen spoke to the count and the countess. Miss Mary is a rich heiress. The sentinel arrested (fr. *arrestare*) the spy and his guide. An avenger (*vendicatore,* m.) will arise (fr. *nascere*) from our ashes. Your cousin (f.) is a seducer; she has hindered (*trattenere*) the children to go (*dall' andare*) to school. Mrs. M. is an artist; her husband (*marito*) is also an artist. In the menagery (*serráglio,* m.) there were lions and lionesses, male and female elephants, peacocks and pea-hens. The baroness Dronning is a Milanese; her husband is a Dane. The maid of Saragossa was a great heroine. The old heathens had many gods and goddesses. Bitches are commonly more faithful than dogs. The countess was always a great benefactress of the poor (Pl.). This monk is a Frenchman, and this nun is an English lady. At the fair (*fiera,* f.) one sees giants and giantesses. The tailor is a bungler; he has made the landlord's new coat very badly. I have arrived with the doctor's wife and with the landlady. His sister-in-law is the author (*f.*) of the new romance (*romanzo*).

Reading Exercise. 66 b.

La patria.

La casa ove nascemmo, il paese dove fummo allevati [1]); i luoghi dove tripudiammo [2]) fanciulli, quell' albero che vedemmo náscere, quel prato ove prima cogliemmo margheritine [3]) e viole: quanto ci riéscono (*become to us*) cari a rivedere! Quanto ci piace il tornarvi (*to return there*) dopo (essere) rimasti alquanto lontani! Oh la patria! In essa sono le ricordanze prime tanto soavi: essa alimenta vivi o copre morti i nostri genitori, i compagni dei primi trastulli, i conoscenti; quivi [4]) si ode la favella [5]), colla quale nostra madre consolò i primi nostri patimenti e c'insegnò a nominare nostro padre e quell' altro padre ch'è nei cieli: la favella in cui snodammo la lingua [6]) per vezzeggiare [7]) coloro che ci avevano dato la vita; la favella in cui ricevemmo i primi consigli, i primi insegnamenti, le prime amorévoli parole. Quanto è

1) *allevare,* to educate, breed, bring up. 2) *tripudiare,* to scamper about, to play about. 3) *margheritina,* daisy. 4) *quivi,* there. 5) *la favella,* the language. 6) *snodare la lingua,* to cut the thread of the tongue (i. e. to begin to speak). 7) to caress.

dunque naturale *il volere bene* (*to love*) alla patria! Anche le róndini dalle lontane terre ove passárono l'inverno, tórnano fedeli al loro nido.

Nè mai si sente l'amor della patria come quando si è costretti (*one is obliged*)*) ad allontanársene. Non ti è mai toccato[8]) di rimanere alcun tempo fuori della tua terra natía[9])? tanto più se diviso dai tuoi genitori? Al ritorno come ti balzava il core, come spingevi innanzi[10]) lo sguardo[11]), per vedere la croce sul campanile o sulla guglia[12]) del tuo paese! Or pensa chi ne è diviso da monti e da mari o per anni ed anni! Non vedere mai visi conosciuti, non incontrare mai gli amici, i parenti, il curato a cui domandammo tante volte un parere[13]): non accórrere mai al suono della nostra campana nella chiesa a cantare Iddio ed invocarlo.

8) *toccare*, to happen. 9) *terra natía*, native country. 10) *spígnere innanzi*, to press forward. 11) *lo sguardo*, the look (*spignere innanzi lo sguardo* = to look eagerly). 12) tower. 13) *il parére*, the advice.

Dialogo.**)

(See the Reading Exercise Less. 37, I Part p. 180.)

Quando fu arrestato Silvio Péllico?
Dove fu egli condotto?
Non dice egli la causa del suo imprigionamento?
Che gli domandò il custode a cui era consegnato?
Fu poi lasciato solo?
Che gli domandò Pellico?
Gli portò allora il suo pranzo?
Comandò del vino?
Che significa la voce »astemio«?
Che cosa rispose il custode?

Second Lesson.

On the Plural of Substantives.

The principal rules on the formation of the Plural have been given Less. 2. (p. 12). There we observed that:

1) All *masculine* nouns ending in *o*, *a* or *e* form the Plural in *i*.

*) The past participle is here employed (with *si*) in the Plural, in order to express more distinctly the generality. This, however, is not to be imitated.

**) In the II Part we put *Questions* concerning the Reading Exercises which the pupil should answer.

2) All *feminine* nouns in *a* form the Plur. in *e*.

3) All *substantives* in *e* take *i*.

Irregularities.

We now add some special rules on the nouns ending in **co** and **go**.

1) Although the *stress* is laid on the *penultimate*, the following words form their Plur. in **ci** (gi), instead of *chi* (ghi):

Amico, Pl. *amici*, friend; *porco* (pig) Pl. *porci*; *nemico*, Pl. *nemici*; *Greco* (Greek) and *mago* (wizard), Pl. *Greci* and *magi*; the latter, however, only in: *I tre re magi*, the holy three Kings: — the *wizards* means *i maghi*; *greco* (adj.) forms *grechi*.

2) The words ending in **co** with the stress on the *antepenultimate* form the Plur. in **chi** (contrary to the general rule); thus:

Cárico,[1]) charged, Pl. *carichi*; *fóndaco*, warehouse; *mánico*, handle; *párroco*, parson; *rammárico*, sorrow; *stómaco*, stomach; *tóssico*,[2]) poison; *tráffico*,[3]) trade, commerce.

NB. The following nouns form both *chi* and *ci*, but **ci** predominates:

Austríaco, Austrian; *benéfico*, charitable; *eróico*, heroical; *físico*, physical; *malédico*, calumnious; *malefico*, noxious; *músico*, musical; *mónaco*, monk; *político*, political; *prático*, practical, expert; *públblico*, public; *rústico*, rustic; *selvático*, savage; *stórico*, historical; *venéfico*, venomous.

3) Of the words in **go** with the stress on the *antepenultimate*, *spárago*, asparagus, forms the Plur. in **gi** only. All the others have either *ghi*, according to the general rule, or admit of *both* terminations.

Rules about the nouns in **io**:

1) Those with the *stress* on *i*, as: *mormório*, murmur, *zío*, uncle, *leggío*, reading-desk, form their Plur. in **ii**, as: *mormórii*, *zíi*, etc.

1) From the Lat. *carrus*, cart; the derived verb: *caricare*. Thence the subst. *cárica*; Fr. *charge*; Sp. *cargo*; Engl. *charge*. — 2) Lat. *toxicum* (τοξικόν), poison. 3) Origin doubtful. Perhaps from a Lat. verb *tra-vicare* or a barbar. form *transficare* for *transficere*, to hand over. Subst. Fr. *trafic*; Prof. *trafec*, *trafey*; Sp. *trafico*, *trafago*; Port. *trafico*, *trafego*.

2) Where *i* is only a sign of pronunciation (See I P. Less. 2, 6), the *o* is simply *dropped.* This is the case with the terminations *cio, gio,* and *glio,* as: *arancio* (orange); Pl. *aranci; foglio,* Pl. *fogli.*

3) Where **i** is sounded (not the *suono schiacciato,* See p. 201), as in *occhio, studio, cocchio,* the orthography is undecided. Some modern authors write *ii,* as: *studii, occhii;* others use the circumflex, as: *studî, ginnasî* etc. In general the *o* is simply *dropped,* as: *studi, occhi.*

4) The words in *aio,* as: *calzolaio* (shoemaker) *drop* the *o,* as: *calzolai.* But *aio* (tutor), *tempio* (temple), and *principio* (principle, beginning) take *j,* in order to mark the difference from the article *ai, tempi* (times), and *príncipi* (princes). In all other words *j* is now rather obsolete.

5) Some poetical irregularities are; *animai* (for »animali«), *augei* (for »uccelli«); *capegli* (for »capelli«, hair).

Some *masculine* words in *o* have both a regular Plural in *i* and another *feminine* Plural in *a,* more rarely in *e.* (The forms in parentheses are less frequent.) They are:

	Plur.
l'anello, the ring.	*gli anelli — le anella.*
il braccio, the arm, yard.	(*i bracci*) — *le braccia.*
il budello,[1]) the gut.	*i budelli — le budella.*
il calcagno, the heel.	(*i calcagni*) — *le calcagna.*
il castello, the castle.	*i castelli* — (*castella*).
il cervello, the brains.	*i cervelli* (opinions) — *le cervella.*
il ciglio, the eye-brow.	(*i cigli*) — *le ciglia.*
il corno, the horn.	*i corni* (instrum.) — *le corna.*
il dito, the finger.	(*i diti*) *le dita.*
il ditéllo, the armpit.	*i ditelli — le ditella.*
il filo, the thread.	*i fili* (of a plan etc.) — *le fila* (of cloth etc.).
il fondamento, the base, basement.	*i fondamenti* (figuratively) — *le fondamenta.*
il frutto, the fruit.	*i frutti* (the profit) — *le frutta* [(fruits.)
il fuso, the spindle.	*il fusi — le fusa.*
il gesto, the gesture.	*i gesti — le gesta* (great deeds).
il ginocchio,[2]) the knee.	(*i ginocchi*) — *le ginocchia.*

1) Lat. *botellus;* Fr. *boyau;* OFr. *boel.* 2) From the Lat. Dim. *geniculum;* LL. *genuculum;* Fr. *genou;* OFr. *genouil;* Sp. *henojo* (more in use is *rodilla*); Port. *giolho, joelho.*

il gómito, the elbow.	(*i gomiti*) — *le gomita.*
il grido, the cry.	(*i gridi*) — *le grida.*
il labbro, the lip.	(*i labbri*) — *le labbra.*
il legno, the wood (also carriage).	*i legni* (carriages, vehicles, ships) — *le legna*, fire-wood.
il lenzuolo,[1]) the sheet.	(*i lenzuoli*) — *le lenzuola.*
il membro, the limb, member.	*i membri* (members) — *le membra.*
il muro, the wall.	*i muri* — *le mura* (w. of a town).
l'orecchio, the ear.	(*gli orecchi*) — *le orecchia.*
l'osso, the bone.	*gli ossi* — *le ossa* (the dead body, the ashes).
il pomo, the apple.	*i pomi* — *le poma.*
il pugno, the fist.	*i pugni* (blows with the fist) — *le pugna.*
il quadrello, the brick; the arrow.	*i quadrelli* (bricks) — *le quadrella* (arrows).
il riso, the laughter; the rice.	*i risi* (rice) — *le risa* (laughter).
il sacco, the sack, bag.	*i sacchi* — *le sacca.*
il tempo, the time.	*i tempi* — *le quattro témpora*, the four ember-weeks.
il vestígio, the track, trace, foot-step.	*i vestigi* — *le vestigia.*
il vestimento, the vestment, clothing.	*i vestimenti* — (*le vestimenta*).

NB. In ancient poetry there occur the irreg. Plur. *coltella* (knives), *foglia* (leaves of plants), *letta* (beds), and *mulina* (mills). Besides, the Plurals: *budelle*, *ditelle*, *frutte*, *geste*, *gride*, *legne*, *orecchie*, *osse*, *pome*, and *vestige* are also met with.

The following words form their Plural always in *a:*

il centináio, the hundred-weight — *le centinaia.*
il cuoio,[2]) the leather — *le cuoia.*
il miglio, the mile — *le miglia.*
un migliáio, some thousand — *le migliaia.*
mille, 1000 — *le mila.*
il moggio,[3]) the bushel — *le moggia.*
un paio, a pair, couple — *le paia.*
il rubbio, four bushels — *le rubbia.*
lo stáio, the bushel — *le staia.*
l'uovo, the egg — *le uova.*

1) Lat. *linteolum* (fr. *linteum*); Fr. *linceuil.* 2) Lat. *corium;* Fr. *cuir;* Sp. *cuero;* Prov. *cuer.* 3) Lat. *modius;* Fr. *muid;* Sp. *moyo;* Prov. *muei.*

The following nouns have different terminations in the Singular:

1) Those in *ere* have also *ero:*

il pensiere, the thought or *il pensiero.*
il destriere, the steed or *il destriero.*
lo scolare, the scholar or *lo scolaro.*
il cónsole, the consul or *il cónsolo.*

2) Those in *aio* have also *aro:*

il libráio, the bookseller or *il libraro* (seldom used).
Gennáio, January or *Gennaro.*
il calzolajo, the shoemaker or *il calzolaro.*

3) The following have also two forms:

l'ala, the wing — *ale.*
l'arma, the weapon — *arme.*
la canzone, the song — *canzona.*
la dote, the gift — *dota.*
la fronde, the foliage — *fronda.*
la greggia, the flock — *gregge.*
la lode, the praise — *loda.* (Dante also *il lodo*).
la rédina, the bridle — *rédine.*
la scure, the axe — *scura.*
la veste, the dress — *vesta.*

The following are used in the Singular only:

Pasqua, Easter.
Pentecoste, Whitsuntide.
prole, family, offspring.
progénie, progeny, children.
mane, morning.
stirpe,*) family, pedigree.
la cancrena, the gangrene.
la roba, the luggage.
la carie, caries (rottenness of the bones).
la rosolia, the measles.

Used in the Plural only are:

I calzoni, the trowsers.
l'eséquie, the funeral.
le interiora / *le viscere* } the entrails.
le fauci, the gullet.
le fórbici, the scissors.
le molle (*-i*), the tongs.
le nozze, the wedding.
gli sponsali, the betrothing.
i vanni, the pinions, wings.
gli annali, the annals.
i mostacchi / *i mostacci* / *le basette* / *i baffi* } mustachios.
le mutande, drawers.
gli occhiali, the spectacles.
le Indie, the Indies.
le ténebre, darkness.
i guái, the woes.
i dolci, sweetmeats.
i viveri, the victuals.

*) Rarely also the Plur. *le stirpi.*

The following nouns alter their signification in the Plural:

	Plur.
Il ceppo, the trunk (of a tree).	*i ceppi*, the fetters.
il costume, the use, law.	*i costumi*, manners and customs.
il ferro (the) iron.	*i ferri*, the fetters.
il fasto, pride.	*i fasti*, the annals.
il genitore, the father.	*i genitori*, the parents.
la gente, people.	*le genti*, the nations.
la grazia, grace, favour.	*le grazie*, the thanks.
la misura, the measure.	*le misure*, the measures, means.
il Natale, Christmas.	*i natali* (poet.), the birth.
il rame, the copper.	*i rami*, engravings.
il sale, the salt.	*i sali*, witticisms.
la vacanza, the vacancy (of an office).	*le vacanze*, the holidays.

Traduzione. 67.

1. Good poets are rare. He directed the threads of the whole conspiracy. I bought several pencils. Have the door-keepers been paid? When will the betrothal of your niece take place (*aver luogo*)? In a week (*otto giorni*), and the wedding in four weeks. As many heads, as many opinions (*cervello*). The warehouses of this town are very rich. The academy of sciences has 12 members. The girl has not yet washed the sheet. When we entered the house, we heard terrible cries. The temples of the ancient Greeks were magnificent. Why do not you speak the truth? You know that I hate (the) lies. All nations have learned something from the Greeks. I prefer (the) Spanish wine to (the) Greek. (The) vultures belong to the birds of prey (*uccello di rapina*). Have you seen the Austrian steamers? The walls of Troy (*Tróia*) protected the town during (*per*) ten years against the Greek armies.

2. The high deeds of Alexander filled the world with (*di*) astonishment and admiration. The fruits of his labour procured (*procurare*) him an agreeable life. Why have you not put some fruits on the table? I shall not expose myself to their laughter (*Pl.*). A great many*) steps led into the den of the lion. Last week a dozen eggs cost 70 centesimi. I shall take twelve pair of gloves. By (the) railroad we have received 80 hundredweight of sugar. The two booksellers sold 6000 copies (*copia*) of Tasso's Jerusalem. It is 540 miles from Frankfort to Vienna. I have bought these scissors at Triest and these tongs at Venice. Where have you heard

*) *A great many, a good deal, a great deal* are translated *molti, e.*

these songs? What do these beggars want (*volere*)? The three holy kings followed the star which led them to Bethlehem (*Betelemme*). (The) wizards are sometimes cheated cheats (*ingannatore*).

Reading Exercise. 68.

Continuazione.

(La Patria.)

Oh come allora si fissa lo sguardo sulle montagne o sul cielo dal lato della patria nostra! Di che prezzo sembra ogni minima cosa che ci richiami l'idea della patria! Io ho provato queste amarezze [1]); e quando udiva alcuno parlare la lingua del mio paese, mi balzava il cuore come se avessi inteso mio padre. E quando sotto rigidi climi vidi in un giardino créscere un gelso [2]), con che tenerezza abbracciai e baciai la pianta, i cui lunghissimi filari [3]) pórtano [4]) beltà e ricchezza alle campagne d'Italia.

Infelice colui che è costretto a forza (a) staccarsi [5]) dalla patria! Se qualche ésule [6]) tu incontri, non lo insultare: compatíscilo [7]), soccórrilo, fa che trovi quì un' altra patria, altri fratelli, per ristoro [8]) dei fratelli, della patria che lasciò, e che tanto amava.

E noi amiamo la patria nostra; amiamo l'Italia, questo cielo così ridente, questo clima temperato, questo suolo così fecondo, questo linguaggio così armonioso, parlato da tanti cittadini, uniti con noi nell' amore della patria comune, nei patimenti [9]), nelle gioie, nelle speranze.

Césare Cantù.

1) bitter feelings. 2) mulberry-tree. 3) rows (of trees). 4) to bring, to bestow. 5) to depart. 6) exile. 7) to pity. 8) as an equivalent. 9) sufferings.

Dialogo.

(See Reading Exercise, I. P. pg. 182.)

Dove era la stanza di Silvio Pellico?
Che cosa vide, quando egli s'appoggiò alla finestra?
Quali erano i suoi pensieri allora?
Aveva egli la speranza di uscire fra poco di questa prigione?
Quali erano stati gli abitanti della prigione di Santa Margherita, un secolo fa?
E da chi erano abitate allora le celle del monastero?
Non aveva Silvio più genitori, parenti od amici?
Si sentì consolato di queste ricordanze?

Third Lesson.

On the Article.

There are a great many deviations in the use of the article, whereof the most important have already been given in the first part of this grammar. In general, the article is more frequently used than in English, and as a perfect knowledge of these peculiarities is of the utmost importance, the learner should be careful to observe the following rules:

A. The *definite* article is used:

1) After the verb *avere,* if particular qualities of an *organic* body are mentioned, as:*)

*Francesca ha **i** denti bianchi, **gli** occhi azzurri, **i** capelli biondi e **le** labbra vermiglie.*
Frances has white teeth, blue eyes, fair hair, and red lips.

*Questo ragazzo ha **la** testa rotonda.*
This boy has *a* round head.

2) Before *di cui* (also *cui*), whose, as:

*L'uomo **la** di cui (la cui) riputazione è perduta, è sfortunato.*
The man whose reputation is lost, is unhappy.

3) Before *abstract notions,* when taken in their whole extent, as:

***L'**occupazione è il miglior rimedio contra la noia.*
Occupation is the best remedy for *ennui.*

Before the names of *countries, provinces,* etc. when qualified by an adjective importing *direction* or *ascent,* as:

L'Italia settentrionale.	*L'Austria superiore.*
Northern Italy.	Upper Austria.

Except when used in the *Genitive* and as an equivalent for an adjective derived from the name of a nation, as:

Il parlamento d'Inghilterra, the English parliament.
L'ambasciatore di Francia, the French ambassador.
L'imperatore d'Austria, the Austrian emperor.

The names, too, of countries whereof the *capital* has the *same name,* are used *without* the article, as: *Nápoli,* Naples; *Parma,* etc.

4) With the two names *Charlemagne* and *Alexander the Great,* no article is placed before the (Lat.) adjective

*) The same as in French: „Françoise a les cheveux blonds."

magno, thus *Carlo magno; Alessandro magno.* This is also the case in the expression: *Maria Vérgine (the holy Virgin).*

5) Before the proper names of some very celebrated poets and artists, as: *il Dante*, Dante; *il Tasso*, Tasso, etc.

Except when they are preceded by *Christian names*, as; *Torquato Tasso, Michelángelo Buonarotti.*

6) Before the following names of towns: *il Cairo, la Mirándola, la Bastia, la Rocella*, Rochelle; *l'Aia*, the Hague, *la Mecca.*

7) Before names of females belonging to the inferior classes, as: *la Cristina, la Fiammetta*, etc.

8) In expressions like: *alla turca*, after the Turkish fashion, *all' inglese*, etc.

9) Before words implying a *higher rank* or *dignity*, as: *Il conte Pallavicini*, count P.; *il principe Eugenio*, prince E.; *l'arcivéscovo Turpino*, Archbishop Turpin, and before the words signore, signora, and signorina (provided they are not used in the Vocative case).

Note. Occasionally the Italians employ the French forms *Madama, Madamigella*, instead of *Signora, Signorina*, which then should be followed by the definite article, as in French. Ex.: *Madamigella la contessa* (Mademoiselle la Comtesse), Countess....; *Madama la Baronessa* (Madame la Baronne), Baroness....

10) In many expressions like:

Imparare o sapere il francese, l'italiano etc.
To learn or to know French, Italian.

Suonare il pianoforte.
To play the piano.

Sia il benevenuto!
Welcome, Sir!

Augurare il buon giorno.
To wish a good morning.

Domandare l'elemosina.[1])
To beg one's charity.

Entrò pel primo, pella prima.
He (she) entered first.

1) *Elemosina* or *limosina; Fr. aumône;* OFr. *almosne;* Prov. *almosna;* Engl. *alms;* Germ. Almosen, from ἐλεημοσύνη (with the Eccles. Fathers).

Verso la sera, verso le sei.
Towards (the) evening, at about 6 o'clock.

La settimana scorsa; l'anno scorso, etc.
Last week; last year.

Dare del tu, del voi, del lei.
To address a person with "thou", you.

B. The *definite* article is omitted:

1) Before the names of the months, as:

Gennáio, January.
Il mese di Marzo, March.

But the article is used, when these names are followed by some other word denoting *time* etc., as:

Nell' Ottobre dell' anno scorso.

2) Before ordinal numbers used with the names of sovereigns, as:

Carlo décimo, Charles X.
Enrico quarto, Henry IV.

Note. If *Santo (San)* precedes a *proper name,* the article is omitted, as: *San Carlo,* St. Charles. Before a noun appellative the construction is as in English, as: *La santa cena,* the Lord's supper, the holy eucharist.

3) Before the days of the week, as in English. Ex.:

Vi andrò Lunedì o Martedì.
I shall go there on Monday or Tuesday.

Except when the *same day* of each *consecutive* week is meant, as:

Il vapore per Corfù parte di Trieste ***il*** *Martedì ed* ***il*** *Venerdì.*
The steamer to Corfu starts from Triest *every* Tuesday and Friday.

4) After the verbs *essere,* to be; *divenire, diventare,* to become; *fare,* to make; *nascere,* to be born as ...; *morire,* to die as ...; *parere, sembrare,* to seem; *essere creduto, riputato,* to be believed, to be taken for; *ritornare,* to come back as ....; *essere dichiarato,* to be declared; *proclamare,* to proclaim; *mostrarsi,* to show one's self, etc., if these verbs are followed by a *substantive* importing *dignity, rank, nation,* etc. Examples:

*Sono Italiano,**) I am an Italian.

*) Except when used with *ecco* (there is, here is), or if an *attribute* is added to the substantive, as: *Ecco* ***un*** *Inglese,* here is an Englishman. *Signor N. è* ***un*** *medico di merito,* Mr. N. is a physician of great merit.

Luigi Napoleone venne eletto imperatore.
Lewis Napoleon was elected emperor.

Egli nacque principe, he is a prince by birth.

Davide fu proclamato re d'Israële.
David was proclaimed king of Israel.

5) When speaking of much frequented places, as:

Andar a scuola, to go to school.
Andare a ballo, to go to the ball.

Essere in chiesa, to be at church.

6) In a great many phrases, as: *sotto pretesto,* under pretext; *dopo pranzo,* after dinner; *essere d'avviso,* to be of opinion, etc.

C. The *indefinite article* is omitted:

1) After the verb *essere.* (See the above rule *B.* 4.)

2) With the *Apposition* (i. e. an explanatory addition to the Nominative or Accusative case), which in English commonly requires the indefinite article, as: *L'avaro, commedia di Moliere,* The Miser, *a* comedy by M.

Note. Occasionally the English employ the definite article with the apposition, as: *The lion, the king of animals.* When such an apposition is to be taken *in quite a general sense,* and expresses a *fact known by everybody,* the definite article is used in Italian as in English. Ex.: *Il leone, il re degli animali. Goethe e Schiller, i più grandi poeti della Germania,* G. and Sch., *the* greatest poets of Germany.

3) In such cases where the notion is quite indefinite, as:

Se assiso in sì gran teatro.
If sitting in so large a play-house.

4) In many expressions, like:

Far segno, to make a sign.
Far regalo (dono), to make a present.
Dar principio, to begin.
Mettere fine, to make an end.
Dare, attaccare battaglia, to engage in battle.
Presture servigio, to do a service, to be of use.
Far piacere, to give pleasure.

Both languages agree:

1) In many proverbial expressions, as:

Vivere insieme come cane e gatto.
To agree like cat and dog.

Povertà non è onta, poverty is no disgrace.

2) Where similar words are rapidly enumerated and finally comprehended in a general expression, like *tutto, niente, nulla*, etc., as*):

Vecchi, uomini, donne, fanciulli, tutti furono trucidati.
Old and young men, women and children, all were killed.

3) Inscriptions of books: *atto primo*, first act; *scena terza*, third scene; *libro quinto*, fifth book, etc.

4) After *nè — nè*, neither — nor, and *mai*, never.

Nè preghiere nè minacce potevano muóverlo.
Neither prayers nor menaces could move him.

Mai predizione ebbe un compimento sì pronto. (Botta.)
Never a prediction was so promptly fulfilled.

5) After the prepositions *con, senza, per, di, a, da*, etc., when these particles form *adverbial expressions* with the subsequent substantive, as:

Con pazienza, with patience (= patiently).
Con piacere, with pleasure.
Con permesso, with permission.
Con cura, carefully.
Senza danaro, without money.
Senza cerimonie, without trouble.
Per ordine, by order.
Sotto pena di morte, on pain of death.
Di notte, by night.
Di giorno, by day.
Da galantuomo, as an honest man.
Per anno ...., a year.
Per mese, monthly.
Per terra, by land.
Per mare, by sea, etc.

Note. It will be easily understood, that all these words, when used in a *determined* sense, require the article as in English. Ex.: *Senza il danaro che mi avete promesso*, without the money you have promised me.

6) After a great many verbs that require the prepositions *di, a* or *da*, if the following noun is employed in *a general sense*, as:

---

*) It may be observed here, that with the above exceptions, the article should always be repeated where in English it is commonly omitted, as: I have seen the brothers and sisters, *Ho veduto* i *fratelli e le sorelle.*

Colmare di benefizi, to overwhelm with benefits.
Vivere di pane, to live upon bread.

Scendere da cavallo, to dismount, to alight.
Essere a cavallo, to be on horseback.
Morire di noia, to die of *ennui* etc.

7) Finally, in many expressions like the following, where the verb together with the substantive suggest but *one idea*, for instance: *rendere grazie*, to thank (liter. *to render thanks*); *prestar fede*, to believe (liter. *to lend faith*). Such expressions are:

Aver fame, to be hungry.
Aver sete, to be thirsty.
Aver cura, to take care.
Aver compassione, to pity.
Aver vergogna, to be ashamed.
Aver ragione, to be right.
Aver torto, to be wrong.
Aver motivo, to have a reason.
Far paura, to frighten.
Far caso, to care for . . .
Far menzione, to mention.
Aver voglia, to have a mind.
Aver bisogno, to want.
Prendere parte, to participate.
Prendere piede, to settle (somewhere).
Prendere moglie, to take a wife.
Prendere terra, to land.
Rendere grazie, to thank.
Rendere conto, to account for.
Correre rischio, to run the risk.
Far mostra, to feign.
Chiedere perdono, to beg pardon.
Correre fortuna, to risk, etc.

Traduzione. 69.

1. Napoleon had (from *fare*) himself crowned emperor, after having first been (*dopo essere*) named consul. Coriolanus was declared [an] enemy of his country. The king has made Mr. N. counsellor of state (*consigliere di stato*). The assembly has elected me [as] president. This boy is a poor orphan without any (*alcuno, a*) protection. Mr. A. is a Frenchman; Mr. N. is an Englishman. The youth man (*il giovinetto*) said: I shall become (from *farsi*) an officer. Demosthenes was a great orator. Never had [any] general been honoured like Turenne. Whoever is a good Christian, will never be a bad citizen. My coachman (*cocchiere*) is a Frenchman and my footman a German. My mother is an Englishwoman.

2. My elder (*maggiore*) brother is a lawyer, my younger a physician. Alexander, the son of Philip (*Filippo*) of Macedonia, made himself (the) master of Tyrus, (the) capital of Phenicia. Æsop was from Phrygia (*Frigia*), (a) province of Asia Minor; he was (a) slave of Xanthus (*Xanto*), a rather (*passabilmente*) celebrated philosopher. This man is a clever artist; he is an Italian. Napoleon made himself the protector of the Rhenish Confederation (*confederazione del Reno*). Pharaoh made Joseph his vicar (*vicario*), although he was a Jew.

In the (*nell'*) island of Lemnos there is neither a harbour, nor commerce, nor hospitality.

Traduzione. 70.

1. Let us pity (*aver compassione*) the (*Gen.*) unhappy men! You are right, (my) frieud; Frederick has been wrong. The faint-hearted man fears even his own shadow. White garments are the symbol of innocence. You will never have [any] reason to complain (*lagnarsi*) of my behaviour. Monuments, thrones, palaces, all perish, all fall to ruin. Call on me after dinner. Old and young men, women and children, all were snatched away by the plague. We landed at the island of Nukahiva (*Nucaiva*). Are you hungry? No, I am thirsty. Will you come along with me? I thank you for all (that) you have given me. The ostrich has long legs, a long neck, and very short wings.

2. He pretended to *(far mostra di)* sleep. You run the risk of losing *(Infin.)* all your money. Are you not ashamed to (behave like that) act thus? We read the Bride of Abydos, a poem by Lord Byron. Columbus, a Genoese (*Genovese*), has discovered America. The fox has a more slender form than the wolf. My children have blue eyes and fair hair. Fear produces superstition. Modesty is a great virtue. We take our lessons on Monday and Friday. I shall be here on Saturday. My mother has arrived first. The tutor went out (the) last.

Reading Exercise. 71.

Cristoforo Colombo.

Cristoforo Colombo, Italiano da Genova, nato da parenti poveri il (*in the year*) 1441, persuaso che la ricchezza migliore è l'imparare*) qualche cosa, si diede attento [1]) allo studio, ove non solo profittava delle lezioni che gli si porgevano (*that were given him*), ma riflettea su tutto quel che vedesse o udisse.

Colombo intese dire [2]) dai maestri suoi, o lesse in qualche libro che la terra è rotonda. Dunque riflettè, come è abitata quassù, così deve essere abitata anche dall' altra parte. Udì che la bússola è un ago, il quale si volge costantemente verso settentrione. Dunque, riflettè, per quanto io mi allarghi (*however far I may go*) in mare, avrò sempre il modo (*the means*) di conoscere dove io mi debba dirizzare. Potrò dunque avventurami a viaggi lontanissimi, ed essendo la terra [3]) rotonda, potrò farne il giro *(I may sail round about it)*. Un

1) applied himself eagerly. 2) learned. 3) as the earth is.

*) The Italian Infinitive is very often employed as a substantive, not unlike the English Present Participle.

suo parente gli mostrò un tronco di pianta gettato sulla spiaggia dalla tempesta e diverso in tutto da quelli dei nostri boschi. Dunque conchiuse: vi sono proprio *(properly)* altre terre con altre foreste, e probabilmente altri uomini.

Da queste considerazioni e da altre più fine[4]) restò (*he became*) convinto, che vi fossero altri paesi e si propose d'andarli a cercare (*to set out in search of them*). Ma come effettuare un disegno sì grandioso, egli solo, egli povero? Si vide adunque costretto a chiedere aiuto da altri: ma a chi (*to him who*) cerca, tocca[5]) spesso la mortificazione di un rifiuto.

4) ingenious, sagacious. 5) happens.

Dialogo.

Chi era Cristoforo Colombo?
Erano ricchi i suoi genitori?
Quando nacque Colombo?
Che intese dire Colombo?
Quale era la conseguenza ch'egli ne trasse?
Sa dirmi che cosa è la bússola?
Che uso fanno i navigatori della bússola?
Di che maniera fu in lui destata l'idea dell' esistenza d'un altro continente al di là dell' océano atlantico?
Che ne conchiuse Colombo?
E che cosa si propose poi?
Aveva egli i mezzi per mandare ad effetto (*to realize*) le sue idee?
Con che effetto?

Fourth Lesson.

On the use of di, a, and da. (Segnacasi).

The general rules on the use of these particles have been already given in the first part. We now add some particular observations on these prepositions.

I. *Di* is used:

1) After a great many substantives importing *number, weight, measure, quantity* or a *defect*, as:

Una quantità di noci, a quantity of walnuts.
Un paio di scarpe, a pair of shoes.
Una libbra di burro, a pound of butter.
Il manco di danaro, the want of money.
Una pezza di tela, a (whole) piece of linen.
Un pezzo di formaggio, a piece of cheese.

Note. These words, when used in a ***determined*** sense, i. e. when followed by some *explanatory* addition, require the article as in English. Ex.:

*Un chilogramma **del** butirro **che mi avete mandato.***
A kilogram of *the* butter you have sent me.

2) After words importing *length, breadth, depth, age,* etc., as:

*Un muro alto **di** sei piedi,* a wall six feet high.*)
*Un ragazzo **di** dieci anni,* a boy ten years old.

3) When an English *adjective* is expressed by an Italian substantive, as:

Un orologio d'oro, d'argento, a gold, a silver watch.
I giornali d'oggi, d'ieri, to-day's, yesterday's newspapers.
L'ambasciatore di Russia, — di Francia.
The Russian, — French ambassador.

4) After substantives that are followed by *proper names* of *towns, countries, rivers, lakes, mountains,* etc.

La provincia di Linguadoca, the province of Languedoc.
L'isola di Sicilia, the island of Sicily.
La città di Vienna, the city of Vienna.
Il lago di Garda, the lake of Garda.
Il gran ducato di Baden, the Grand-Duchy of Baden.

Except the compounds with *il monte,* as: *il Monte-Rosa,* Mount Rosa etc.

5) After words denoting *dignity, title, rank,* etc. where in English the indefinite article is frequently employed, as:

Il titolo di barone, the title of Baron.
Il grado di luogotenente, the rank of lieutenant.
Il posto di consigliere, the place of counsellor.

NB. Sometimes *di* is used to denote a ***characteristic*** mark, as:

*Quel Signor dottore **delle** cause perse. (M.)*
That lawyer famous for his lost lawsuits. (Lit. That Mr. Doctor of the lost l.). — Commonly *da* is used in such a case (See this prep. 5, p. 129).

6) *Compound substantives* are generally rendered by *two* nouns. The *last* component of the compound substantive *precedes,* and the first follows with *di.* Thus:

*) In sentences like the following, however, custom sometimes permits the article to be omitted, as: *Un muro alto sei piedi, una strada larga dieci metri.*

the *school-master* is translated: *il maestro di scuola* (liter.: the master *of* school); *a lamp-wick*, i. e. a wick of any lamp whatever, means: *il lucignuolo di lampada. Male di testa*, head-ache; *male (dolore) di denti*, tooth-ache.

When, however, the *second* component is not to be taken in a *general* but in a *determined* sense, as in the word *town-gate*, i. e. the gate of the town just spoken of, the preposition should be followed by the *article* with which it is, of course, contracted. Thus: *la porta della città*, the town-gate; *la casa degli órfani*, the orphan-asylum = the house of the orphans; *il vino del Reno*, Rhenish wine = the wine of the Rhine. The pupil should mark the difference between: *Gli affari del commercio*, the affairs of the commerce (of a country etc.) and *Gli affari di commercio*, commercial affairs.*)

7) When a *Numeral* with or without a substantive is followed by one of the adverbs *più*, *meno*, etc., as:

Dátemi due ducati di più, give me two more ducats.

V'erano tre zecchini di meno.
There were three sequins wanting.

8) Moreover, *di* is used after a great many *adjectives* that require their complement in the Genitive case, when the English employ either one of the prepositions *of, for, to, on, with*, etc. or no preposition at all. The most important of these adjectives are:

Abbondante, rich, abundant.
ammalato, ill.
ávido, eager; greedy.
bramoso, desirous.
carico, loaden.
capace, capable.
certo, sure.
consapévole, conscious, acquainted.
contento, contented.
curante, caring for ...
cupido, greedy, eager.
degno, worthy.
desideroso, desirous.
fecondo, fertile.
fornito, provided with.
incapace, incapable.
incerto, not sure.
indegno, unworthy.
largo, munificent.
mérito, worthy.
pago, satisfied.
persuaso, persuaded.
pieno, full.
póvero, poor.
prático, experienced.

*) There are also real compounds like *ferrovia*, railroad; *capolavoro*, master-piece; *cartamoneta*, bank-notes (paper-money).

privo, deprived.
ricco, rich.
scarso, poor.
soddisfatto, satisfied.
sollécito, zealous.
vago, eager.
vestito, dressed.
vuoto, empty.

9) For the verbs requiring *di* See II Part Less. 17, *C.* p. 303.

10) Sometimes *di* stands pleonastically:

a) Before *adjectives* (as in French):

*Méssivi su **di** valenti uomini* (French: *Y ayant mis de vaillants hommes*).
Having placed thereupon some valiant men.

*Avrà veduto **di** bei punti di vista.*
You will have beheld fine views.

***Di** belle ciarle faranno questi mascalzoni. (M.)*
These scoundrels will make a nice uproar.

b After adjectives, as:

*Per soverchio **di** cibo*, by too much eating.

c) Before *adverbs*, as:

*Lo amo **di** molto* (also *dimolto*), I love him much.

d) Rarely *di* is used with the adverbs of *quantity: poco* and *troppo;* and even less frequently with *quanto, alquanto,* and *molto,* as:

*Troppo **d'arte** e **d'ingegno***, too much craft and cunning.

NB. Some instances may be found when *poco* and *troppo,* used with *di, agree* with the following feminine substantive, as: *In poca d'ora* (Bocc.), in a short time. *Troppa d'arte,* too much cunning. Such examples, however, being obsolete, are by no means to be imitated.

11) *Di* with the article is used to denote places where provisions are *sold* or *preserved.* In this case the English commonly use compound substantives, as:

*Mercato **del** pesce*, fish-market.
*Conserva **dei** comestibili*, buttery.

12) In many expressions *di* is used, where the English employ either no prepositions, or *of, to, for,* etc.

***Di** notte*, at night. ***Di** nascoso*, secretly.
***Di** prima notte*, at the beginning of the night.
***Di** buon mattino*, early in the morning.
***Di** leggieri*, without reflection.
***Di** sera*, in the evening. ***Di** súbito*, at once, all at once.
*Vestito **di** nero, **di** verde*, dressed in black, green.

D'inverno, in the winter. ***Di certo,*** surely.
Essere d'uopo, to be necessary. ***Di soverchio,*** too much.
Dico di sì, di no, yes, say I! no, say I!

II. *Da* is used:

Whilst *di* indicates *possession* and *departure*, *da* denotes *removal*, *derivation*, and *distance*. Thus in ***lontano della città***, far from town, the speaker considers less the distance than the *point of departure*, whereas in ***lontano dalla città***, far from *the* town, the predominating idea is that of *distance*.

It will be easily understood, that as this difference is rather arbitrary, *di* as well as *da* may frequently be found with the same adjective or verb.

We now state the particular cases where *da* is used.

1) After the *passive voice:*

*Venne ucciso **dal** suo nemico.*
He was killed *by* his enemy.

2) After verbs denoting *motion* (andare, venire*) or a *dwelling* near a person (restare, essere, stare, rimanere), as:

*Venite da me,***) come to me.
Vado dal calzolaio, I go to the shoemaker's.
Abiterò da mio nonno, I shall live at my grandfather's.

3) After a considerable number of verbs, indicated II P. Less. 17, *B.* p. 302.

4) After a good many *adjectives*, of which we enumerate the most important ones:

Alieno, far, contrary.	*libero,* free.
assente, absent.	*lontano,* far.
differente, different.	*pellegrino* (pilgrim), coming from ...
discosto / *distante* } distant.	*puro,* pure.
diverso, divers, various.	*rimoto,* remote.
esente, exempt.	*sbandito,* banished.
ésule, banished.	*scevro,* free from.
immune, free (from taxes etc.)	*sgombro,* unhindered.
indipendente, independent.	*sicuro,* sure.

*) Yet the verbs denoting *departure*, as: *partire, uscire, scendere, sortire, venire* etc. prefer *di*. The difference has been shown in the above rule.

**) It should be observed that the *Subject* of the sentence cannot be the *same* person that *follows* with *da*, because in this case the sense would be different. Thus; *Vado da me,* does not mean: *I go home* (French: *je vais chez moi*), but: I am going *alone.*

5) To denote some *purpose, a characteristic mark, use* etc., after *substantives* as well as after *adjectives*, as:

*Buono **da** mangiare*, good to eat.
*Tabacco **da** naso*, snuff (i. e. tobacco for the nose).
Una bottiglia da vino, a wine-bottle (destined for wine).
*Un uomo **dabbene**,**) an honest man (i. e. apt for good).
*Il catino **da** lavare*, the washing-tub.**)
*Sala **da** pranzo*, dining-room. *Camera **da** letto*, bedroom.
*Federico **dalla** guancia morsa.*
Frederick with the bitten cheek.
*Dátemi **da** bere*, give me to drink.
*L'uomo **dal** tabarro nero*, the man with the black cloak.
*La casa **dal** tetto rosso*, the house with the red roof.

6) The English words *fit for, as, like*, etc., are frequently expressed by *da*, as:

*Questa è una vita **da** cani*, that is a life for dogs.

7) Before the name of the birth-place of a well-known person, as *Guido **da** Siena.* (*Di* is also admissible.)

8) As the preposition *da* never indicates a *material* of which something is made, the learner should be careful not to use it in such a case instead of *di*, thus:

*Una fornace **da** mattoni*, means: a *brick-kiln*, whereas
*Una fornace **di** mattoni*, means: an oven built of brick.

The learner is requested to compare the following examples:

Un bicchiere d'*acqua*, a glass of water.
Un bicchier da *acqua*, a water-glass.
Una bottiglia di *vino*, a bottle of wine.
Una bottiglia da *vino*, a wine-bottle.

9) If we merely want to state the purpose for which a thing is fit and to which it is regularly applied, the preposition ***da*** is required. But if we wish to imply that some substance for which that thing is destined, is already *contained* in it, *di* with the *article* should be employed. *Di* without the article is used, when the *material* is named, whereof the object is *made*, or with which it is entirely *filled*. Thus:

---

*) In contractions the *first* consonant of the second component is frequently redoubled, thus *siccome* = sì come; *dabbene* = da bene; *sebbene* = se bene; *dapprima* = da prima etc.

**) English compounds with the *present participle* and *substantives* are likewise rendered with *di* or *da*, as: the dancing-master, *il maestro di ballo; il catino da lavare*, the washing-tub, if there are no *proper words* like *acqueréccia*, washing-basin etc.

*Un magazzino **da** fieno*, means: a magazine destined for hay (still *empty*).
*Il magazzino **del** fieno*, means: the hay-magazine in general.
*Un magazzino **di** fieno*, means: a magazine filled with hay.
*Una bilancia **da** oro*, a balance destined for gold.
*La bilancia **dell'** oro*, the gold balance.
Una bilancia d'*oro*, a golden balance.

10) *Da* with the definite article is often employed to denote people who have something for sale, as:

La donna dal latte, the milk-woman.*)
L'uomo dalle ciriege, the cherry-man (who sells cherries.)

11) Frequently *da* is used in order to denote the *house*, *shop*, etc., where the English employ the Saxon Genitive, as: *at the merchant's*, *at my brother's*, *at the greengrocer's*, etc. Examples: *Io era dal calzolaio* (at the shoemaker's), *vengo da mio fratello* (from my brother's), *voi venite da me*, you come from my house (See 2, p. 228).

Da is used *without the article:*

1) With the value of an *adverb*, as:

***Da** banda*, aside.
da destra, on the right hand.
da solo a solo, in private conference.
da senno, in earnest; *da scherzo*, in fun.

Egli ti farà da padre. (M.)
He will treat you like a father (= as if he were your father).

2) To indicate an *approximative* number, as:

*Uscirono **da** dodici soldati*, about 12 soldiers went forth.
***Da** trenta persone*, about thirty persons.

NB. It must be well understood that in this case the number cannot be *inferior* to the quantity indicated.

3) To express a *manner* of acting or being, as:

*Vive **da** signore*, he lives with the utmost comfort (like a mighty Lord).
*Ha fatto **da** pazzo*, he has acted like a fool.

Cose da potersi decifrare. (M.)
Things to be explained (*lit.* to be able to be expl.).

Da povero figliuolo. (M.)
As a poor lad that I am.

Italianisms with *da* are: ***Da** per te*, for you (thee) alone; *da per sè*, by itself; ***da** prima (dapprima)*, first; ***da** poi (dappoi)*, afterwards, then etc.

*) Occasionally *la donna **del** latte* is likewise met with.

Note. Such phrases with *da* must often be rendered by accessory sentences, f. ex.:

Non era partito da metter neppure in consulta. (M.)
This was an expedient not even to be spoken of.

Un viso da far morire in bocca una preghiera. (M.)
A face apt to make every petition die on the lip.

Son uomo da andare in persona a far una visita.
I am capable to pay a visit myself (*lit.*: I am a man to go in person to pay a visit).

III. *A* is used:

1) Without the article in a great many expressions like:

Condannare a morte, to condemn to death.
Suonare a prima vista (a vista), to play at first sight.
*Comperare**) *a caro prezzo*, to buy at a high rate.
Stilla a stilla, by drops.
Fare a maglie, to knit.
Giuocare a dama, to play at draughts.
Andare a piedi, (to go on foot) to walk.

2) To express many compound substantives or nouns with adjectives, where the adjective imports a *particular quality* of the thing, as:

Un abito a liste, a striped coat.
Una pittura a olio, an oil-painting.
Una mácchina a vapore, a steam engine.
Una barca a vela, a sailing-boat.
Una vettura a due ruote, a carriage with two wheels.
Un esame a voce, an oral examination.

3) To mark the *time*, as:

A mezzo giorno, at noon; *alle sei*, at 6 o'clock.
A Pasqua, at Easter; *a tempo*, at the right time.

4) To indicate the *nation* or *manner*, as:

*Alla polonese (polacca)***), in the Polish way.
All' inglese, after the English fashion.

5) In a good many Italianisms, as:

Giuocare alle carte (seldom *a carte*), to play at cards.
Giuocare al bigliardo, to play at billiards.
Giuocare agli scacchi, to play at chess.
Andare a cavallo, to ride, to go on horseback.
Comperar a contanti, to buy cash in hand.
A bocca aperta, with open mouth.

---

*) *Comperare* and *comprare* are both in use.
**) i. e. *moda*, mode.

Andare a spasso, to take a walk.
Gridare a squarciagola, to yell.

Fifth Lesson.

Traduzioni on di, a, and da.

72.

1. A glass of clear water is better (*vale di più*) than a bottle of bad wine. Send me a kilogram of the coffee which you praise so much. An intelligent man is esteemed everywhere. Have you a gold or a silver watch? I have taken yesterday's newspapers to the French ambassador. The Lago Maggiore is much finer than the Lake of Garda. The minister got the title of count for his great merits. To whom shall the post of secretary be given? The emperor founded a great *orphan asylum* (also in *one* word *orfanotrófio*). Are you contented with your position?

2. The gates of the fortress are shut at 10 o'clock in the evening. He gave me (another shilling) one shilling more. He (deducted a dollar, withheld a dollar from me) gave me a dollar less. Do you know anything new? Your behaviour shows little respect. You have more water than wine in your glass. Why do you always come (at) in the night? Cannot you come during the (*di*) day? The highest of the Egyptian pyramids has 2640 feet in circumference and at least (*almeno*) 500 feet in height. The ship was loaded with goods (*merci*).

73.

1. I have bought some tea-cups, take them to the dining-room! Who has broken this flower-pot (*vaso* ...)? I have let it fall to the ground (*a terra*). What shall we give (to) the sick child to eat? Make him a milk-soup and give him a little gooseberry-syrup to drink now and then (*di tempo in tempo*). Why was this man condemned to death? Is this an ink-bottle or a vinegar-bottle? No, Sir, it is a water-bottle. Do call the milk-man, I will buy a pot of milk. Where is the vinegar-bottle? There, Madam, near the window. I bought a bottle of vinegar to-day. Give me a glass of water! I am very sorry (*mi dispiace assai*), Sir, but I have broken my water-glass.

2. Could you (*Cond.* of *sapere*) tell me, where the horse-market is? I think, it is behind the hay-magazine. Your friend lives very splendidly (*da signore*). The murderer who was condemned to death, fell on his knees and cried for (*chiedere* with acc.) mercy. This coat is made after the English fashion. Don Quixote ordered his shield-bearer Sancho Pansa

to address (*parlare*) him *(Dat.)* in the Turkish way, with his head bent forward (*a capo chino*) and (his) cap in (his) hand. The church is near the horse-market. One cannot work well when one has [the] head-ache or tooth-ache. Is that house yonder the orphan-asylum? This room is 12 feet broad and 10 feet high.

Reading Exercise. 74.

Continuazione di Cristoforo Colombo.

Prima Colombo esibì[1] l'ópera sua a Génova, poi a Venezia, poi ai Portoghesi, agl' Inglesi, agli Spagnuoli; esibiva loro niente meno che un nuovo mondo, e non ne riceveva in ricambio che ripulse e beffe, dicéndosi (*as they said*) ch'egli era un pazzo progettista[2]. Perchè troppi sono quelli i quali deridono ogni cosa nuova, e credono che non sia buono nè vero *se non*[3] quello che sapevano e facevano i nostri padri.

Il povero Colombo pertanto (*meanwhile*) si vedeva trascurato[4] e schernito[5]; eppure (*yet*) non perdeva il coraggio e la perseveranza, la quale è il vero caráttere degli uomini grandi. In fatti prega e riprega, finalmente una donna gli diede ascolto[6], Isabella, regina di Spagna.

Essa affidò a Colombo tre vascelli, coi quali e con soli 90 uomini il 3. d'Agosto del 1492, egli salpò[7] in cerca[8] di terre che (*whereof*) nessuno sapeva dove fossero, quali fossero, ma che egli era persuaso di trovare.

Partono: vanno in alto mare: perdono di vista la terra: più non distinguono che cielo ed acqua. Passano giorni, passano settimane, ma la terra aspettata non compare.

Sull' immensità di quelle onde succédonsi le calme e le tempeste, i venti prósperi ed i contrari; s'avánzano di continuo, ma il lido aspettato non compare.

Colombo sempre fisso alla bússola, sempre attento ai venti, sempre guardando il cielo, sperava la terra, desiderava la terra, e la terra non compariva[9]. Ma pure in lui non scemava[10] quella ferma persuasione che rende capaci d'opere grandi e la fiducia in Dio.

1) exhibited. 2) a project-making fool. 3) but. 4) neglected. 5) despised. 6) lent him an ear. 7) he set out. 8) in search of ... 9) *comparire,* to appear. 10) *scemare,* to diminish.

Dialogo.

A chi esibì prima Colombo la sua opera?
Con che successo?
Perchè riceveva ripulse da ogni parte?
E non perdeva il coraggio vedendosi trascurato e schernito?
Chi gli diede ascolto alla fine?

Che fece per lui?
Che giorno partì Colombo?
In che direzione navigava Colombo?
Che gli avvenne (*what did he meet with*) in quel viaggio per iscoprir un nuovo mondo?
Si fermarono i navigatori nella loro corsa?
Quale era l'occupazione di Colombo durante tutto quel tempo?
Non si scemava (*to grow less*) in lui la ferma persuasione della giustezza delle sue idee?

Sixth Lesson.

Some particular remarks on the use of Proper names.

§ 1. Proper names of persons and towns require no article, as: *Antonio, Byron, Londra,* etc.

Except the Proper names enumerated 3rd Lesson 5, 6, and 7, p. 218.

§ 2. Yet the *definite* and in a *general sense* the *indefinite* article is used:

1) When the proper name is figuratively employed as a *common substantive*, as: *Egli è il Cicerone del suo sécolo*, he is the Cicero (i. e. the greatest orator) of his century; *è un Ércole*, he is a Hercules (i. e. a very strong man).

2) When an *adjective* precedes the Proper name, as:

Il magnánimo Alfonso, the magnanimous A.
Il célebre Paganini, the celebrated P.

3) With the names of Christian holidays, as:

La Pentecoste, Whitsuntide; *il Natale*, Christmas; *la Pasqua*, Easter; *il Corpus domini*, Corpus Christi day etc.

4) Before the Proper names of *families* the article is used, as: *i Tarquinii, gli Scipioni.*

Note. It may be observed at once, that when the Proper names of families have no Italian termination, the Plural is marked by the article only, as: *gli Schiller sono rari*, Schillers (i. e. poets like Sch.) are rare, etc.

5) Before the names of *countries*, *provinces*, *mountains*, and *rivers* the article is likewise required (See Less.

III. 3.), as: *l'Europa, l'Austria, la Moravia, il Tirolo, i Pirenei, il Reno* (Rhine), *il Tamigi* (Thames), etc.

§ 3. But di *without* the article is used before such names:

1) In mentioning *sovereigns, courts, ambassadors,* and *titles* in general (See Less. III. 3.), as:

La regina d'Inghilterra, the queen of England.
L'imperatore di Germania, the emperor of Germany.
Un maresciallo d'Austria, a marshal of Austria.

Note. With the names of some countries, however, that are not European, the article is generally used. Thus one says: *L'imperatore del Brasile, della China.* (Except the Proper names *Persia, Siria, Egitto* [Egypt], and *India.*)

2) If the Proper name of a country is used instead of an adjective (See Less. III. 3.), as:

Il vino di Spagna, Spanish wine.
La seta d'Italia, Italian silk.

Except: *L'inchiostro della China,* Indian ink.

3) After the words *empire, city, village, island, month,* and the like, where the English employ the preposition *of,* as:

Il regno di Sassonia, the kingdom of Saxony.
Il mese di Maggio, the month of May.

4) After *substantives* and *verbs* that denote *coming* or *going*, as: *il ritorno,* the return; *venire*, to come; *arrivare,* to arrive, where the English employ *from,* as:

Al mio ritorno di Francia, on my return from France.
Vengo di Parigi, I come from Paris.

Note. If such Proper names of countries etc. are generally used with the article, as: *il Tirolo,* the Tyrol; *il Canadà, i Paesi Bassi,* the Netherlands; *la China* etc., the article must, of course, also be employed after the above words, as: *Vengo del* (not *di*) *Canadà,* I come from C.; *Io sono ritornato dei Paesi Bassi,* etc.

5) Occasionally the *sense is altered* by the use or the omission of the article. Thus: *l'armata della Spagna,* means: the Spanish army (i. e. *Spaniards*), whilst *l'armata di Spagna,* means: a foreign army sent to Spain.

6) The questions where? or where to? before the Proper names of countries, are answered by the preposition *in,* as: *In Egitto,* in Egypt; *vado in Isvezia,* I go to

Sweden. Before the names of towns, however, *a* is used instead of in. Thus we say: *Sono a Vienna*, I am at Vienna; *vado a Vienna*, I am going to Vienna.*) With Proper names that require the article, *nel (nella)* answers the question where? Ex.: *Egli è nel Belgio*, he is in Belgium. If motion is to be expressed, we should employ *al (alla)*, as: *Egli andrà al Canada*, he will go to Canada.

Note. The verbs *partire, imbarcarsi* (to embark), *continuare,* and *proseguire,* to continue a journey, require *per,* as: *Parto per Parigi, per l'America. M'imbarco per le Indie.*

Traduzione. 75.

1. Napoleon was banished to the Isle of Elba; but he returned to France and took possession (*impadronirsi*) of the city of Paris. Schiller and Gœthe are the Sophocles of Germany. Who does not know the combat (*lotta*) of the Horatii and Curiatii? The caravan came from Cairo (*il Cairo*) and passed (*recarsi*) by Suez to Mecca (*la Mecca*). The queen of England was at war with the Emperor of Russia. Charles of Austria was master of the kingdoms of Spain, of both the (*le due*) Sicilies, the Netherlands, and the New World. The Italians know Tasso's verses by heart. St. Hubert (*Uberto*) is the patron of (the) sportsmen. English manufactures (*le manifatture*) are more valued than those that come from France.

2. This orator is the Demosthenes of our age. This portrait resembles (to) the famous Raphael. Fenelon's Telemachus (*Telémaco*) is an excellent book. The English army distinguished (*Def.*) itself in (the) Crimea. Have you seen the Spanish army? Both Corneille were born at Rouen. (The) French wine, (the) Dutch linen, (the) Spanish wool, (the) Swedish iron, and (the) English steel are very celebrated. The emperor of Brazil has married (from *sposare*) a princess of Leuchtenberg. Easter is past. Whitsuntide is drawing near (from *avvicinarsi*). There are not many Napoleons to be found in history. Spain is proud to have given birth to (transl. to have produced) the two Seneca(s).

Reading Exercise. 76.

Continuazione di Cristoforo Colombo.

Però i compagni di Colombo cominciarono a mormorare a bassa voce, poi ad alta; ed*unitisi (*after having united*

*) We may also say *in* Vienna, but then it means in the town itself.

themselves) dissèro al loro capo che la s u a*) era veramente pazzía (*that his idea was mere nonsense*); che gli aveva condotti in mezzo al mare[1] soltanto per farli morire[2] lontani dalla patria, che n'aveano abbastanza (*that they had more than enough*) e che volevano d a r l a v o l t a i n d i e t r o (*return*).

Ecco dunque Colombo, dopo che tanto ha fatto, studiato, pensato, penato: éccolo, mentre séntesi (*he feels himself = he is sure to be*) vicino ad afferrare questa nuova terra, eccolo ridotto a pérdere il frutto di sue fatiche, e dovér ritornare in Europa, dove sarà deriso de' suoi sogni e dell' impressa fallita. Con qual passione passava da un vascello all' altro, pregando, persuadendo, minacciando! A chi promettea premi, a chi intimava castighi; a tutti dipingeva questa terra novella, e la gloria che si assicurerebbero coll' ésserne gli (*by being their*) scopritori, e il merito d'aver guadagnato tanti popoli alla vera religione. Così riusciva a calmarli alquanto; e tornava ad osservare le stelle, la bússola, i venti; ma la terra non compariva, e nuove gride sediziose s'inalzavano, e l'eroe italiano doveva r i m é t t e r s i (*to begin once more*) a sedarle.

Talvolta arrampicávasi[3] egli stesso fin in vetta[4] all' álbero maestro (*the main-mast*), se mai (*if not*) vedesse qualche cosa di lontano (*from afar*); guardava e riguardava, ma tutto era acqua ed aria: la terra non compariva. Una volta credette scoprirla, la mostrò ai marinai che andarono fuor di se (*were beside themselves*) per l'allegrezza: ma ohimè! non era che una nube, e il sole la dissipò, e terra non compariva.

1) *in mezzo al mare*, to the middle of the sea, i. e. to the remotest part. 2) to have them die, i. e. that they should die. 3) he climbed. 4) up to the top.

Dialogo.

Che fecero i compagni di Colombo?
Che dissero al loro capo?
Che cosa volevano fare?
Si sottomise Colombo alla loro volontà?
Quali eran le rimostranze che fece loro?
E che disse loro oltre a ciò?
Gli ubbidirono?
Quale era allora la sua occupazione?
Non compariva ancora la terra desiderata?
Non ebbe mai la gióia illusoria di vedere il lido della terra sconosciuta?
Che cosa fu?

*) The Italians often omit the female words *opinione, idea, ragione* etc., in which case the *adiett. poss.* has always the article. (See p. 240, 11.)

Seventh Lesson.

On Possessive adjectives and pronouns.

(See I. P. Less. 14.)

The most important observations on the Possessive adjective have been given in the first part of this grammar. We now subjoin some special remarks.

The Italian possessive adjective is *not used instead of the article,* and therefore has *no influence on its use or omission.* Thus it follows:

1) That the possessive adjective takes the *definite* and the *indefinite article,* and that it may be preceded by any other determinative adjective. In the latter case it must be periphrased, as:

***Il** mio cappello,* my hat.
***un** mio cappello,* a hat of mine.*)
***ogni** mio cappello,* every hat of mine.
***quel** mio cappello,* that hat of mine.
***tre** miei cappelli,* three hats of mine.

2) That it is sometimes *absolute,* sometimes *conjunctive,* and that in such a case the article is superfluous, as:

*Se fosse **mio,*** if he (it etc.) were mine.
Si chiamò suo tutore, he called himself his (her) ward.

3) That the article is *omitted,* if the substantive is governed by a preposition, as:

*A **mio** piacere,* as I please (lit. at my pleasure).
*Per **tua** colpa,* by your fault.
*A **suo** favore,* in his (her) favour.

4) That the article is likewise omitted, when the noun, preceded by the possess. adj., is used as an *apposition,* as:

*Vidi Cecilia, **sua** amica,* I saw her friend Cecilia.

5) Names of relations with any termination *modifying the meaning* of nouns always require the article, as:

---

*) The learner will see by the above examples that such English phrases should always be rendered by possessive adjectives in the *Nominative* or *Accusative case.* Thus: He is a pupil *of mine,* is translated either: *È **un mio** scolare,* or: *è **uno** scolare **mio.***

La sua sorellina è molto amabile.
His little sister is very amiable.

Il suo fratellastro è partito.
His step-brother is departed.

6) In English, if several substantives immediately following one another are preceded by a possessive adjective, this adjective is not repeated before each substantive; in Italian it is, taking its respective article before it. Thus we cannot say, as in English: *I miei fratelli e sorelle*, my brothers and sisters; but: *I miei fratelli e le mie sorelle.*

NB. In comical authors the superlatives *nostrissimo* and *vostrissimo* are also met with.

7) The *Dative* of the personal Pronouns is frequently used instead of the possessive adjectives. Thus:

Egli ***si*** *levò il cappello*, he took his hat off.
Le baciai la mano, I kissed her hand.

Le sono fratello.
I am her brother. *Liter.* a. br. to her.

In a similar manner, the simple *dative* of the pers. pron. is used, where the English employ a preposition with the pronoun, as:

Prendevano piacere a toccargli quel tasto. (M.).
They delighted in harping on this string with him.

8) In *exclamatory* sentences the adjective may occasionally *precede* the Possessive pronoun, as:

Povero *il mio padrone!* my poor master!

9) In expressions such as: *My head aches**), etc. the Possessive adjective is not rendered in Italian, provided no misunderstanding arise by the omission. Thus:

My head aches.
Mi duole il capo (ho male di testa).

Vedo che la ***mia*** *mano è gonfia.*
I see that my hand is swelling.

10) The possessive adjectives *its, their*, referring to a foregoing noun substantive, may be translated by *ne*, though *suo, sua* is also met with. Ex.:

Che pianta è questa? what plant is that?
Non ***ne*** *conosco il nome*, I don't know its name.

*) See p. 100, *Note* 1.

When, however, the word to which *its* or *their* refers, occurs in the *same* sentence, *ne* is by no means admissible:

These trees are remarkable for their height.
*Questi alberi sono rimarcabili per la **loro** altezza.*

11) Very frequently the Italians employ the *feminine* of the possess. adj. *la mia, la tua, la sua* etc. where the words *opinione, ragione, idea, volontà* etc. are understood:

*Vi dirò **la mia*** (i. e. *opinione*), I shall tell you my opinion.

12) Very seldom *suo* etc. is found in lieu of *loro*, as:

*Maledetti, non sanno i dover **suoi*** (Goldoni, »La sposa saggia,« A. II. Sc. 7).
Confound them! They do not know their duties.

Observation. 1) The English employ more frequently the word *own*, as: *my own, your own, his own*, than the Italians *proprio, a*, after the possessive adjectives. It is therefore not necessary to translate this word whenever found in English. Thus in the sentence: *Egli vende l'anello di sua sorella ed il suo*, he sells the ring of his sister and his *own*, the addition of *proprio* would be rather superfluous.

2) *One's*, when referring to the foregoing nominative *one*, is commonly rendered by *il suo, la sua* etc., as: One must do one's duty, *bisogna fare il suo dovere*. In sentences, however, where the meaning might else become ambiguous, the whole phrase should be periphrased. Thus: One loves one's children, may by no means be translated: *si ama i suoi figli* (See p. 117), but either: *noi amiamo i nostri figli*, or: *ogni uomo ama i suoi figli*, etc.*)

3) Very seldom *gli* is used instead of *loro*, when this latter meets with *ne*, as:

*Nessun uomo di giudizio **gliene** avrebbe dato il parere. (M.)*
No reasonable man would have given them (i. e. to the two women) this advice.

(The usual construction would be: ***ne** avrebbe dato **loro**.*)

Traduzione. 77.

1. My brother has sold his garden and mine; he has also sold my uncle's house and his own. (The) time flies; its loss is irreparable. He has sacrificed his sister's wealth and his own. A ball was given in *(a)* his honour. I saw

*) With *bisognare*, however, the *possessive* pronoun is used, as:
*Bisogna fare il **suo** dovere.*
One ought to do one's duty.

it with my own eyes. Yesterday I got your letter and that of your father. In (*fra*) a few days you will get my answer and that of my father. A sojourn in the country (*campagna*) has its pleasures. This city excites surprise by the magnificence of its buildings.

2. Look at these boots! What do you think (*dici*) of their shape? What a beautiful river! How charming are its banks! It is but eight days since I live in this town; I do not yet know all its streets. I do not like gooseberries; their taste is too acid. If this carriage were mine, *I would have it (la farei)* fresh painted (*Infin.*). That pupil of yours has broken the window. I am quite wet, because my brother took my umbrella; I shall (give him a piece of my mind) tell him my opinion. As for me, you may be quiet. For my part I have nothing to say. Your sister and his could not come. We speak of our children and of yours. Charles is a friend of mine; I hope he will also be yours. It was done without (any fault of mine) my fault. I shall do it for your sake (= in your favour). Do as you please (= at your pleasure). Try to be at the railway terminus by eleven o'clock, and we shall go to meet you. Who are those young ladies? They are pupils of mine.

Reading Exercise. 78.

Continuazione di Cristoforo Colombo.

Ormai da due mesi stavano fra[1]) mare; erano corsi due mila miglia dopo aver toccate[2]) le ultime isole conosciute, nè vedévasi novità: tutti cadevano di[3]) coraggio e di speranza, tutti, eccetto Colombo. Al fine i compagni suoi protestarono risolutamente di non voler[4]) più oltre (*farther*) avanzarsi: ond' egli per disperato (*despairing*) dovette promettere che, se fra tre giorni non vedessero terra, volterebbero[5]) verso la patria. Passa il primo dì, e la terra non compare; vien a sera il secondo (*the evening of the second approaches*), e non compare ancora. Eppure Colombo confidava scoprirla, perchè non lasciava passare cosa (*anything*) inosservata. Érasi accorto che il vento non tirava più così dritto ed eguale, segno[6]) che qualchecosa ne interrompeva il corso. Vide galleggiar alcune fronde d'alberi non più veduti: osservò egli*) uccelli, e persuaso che si dirigessero ai loro nidi, ne seguitò il volo. Così la terra non era apparsa ancora, ma Cristoforo già se ne tenea

1) they were in ... 2) *toccare,* to touch, here: to go ashore. 3) *cader di coraggio,* to lose heart. 4) *di non volere,* that they would not. 5) *voltare,* to return, to sail back. 6) *segno,* a proof.

*) Even in affirmative sentences the Personal pronoun occasionally follows its verb for the sake of euphony or in order to render the expression more elegant.

sicuro[7]), e disse ai marinai: stanotte[8]) vegliate tutti, che (*and then*) all' alba discernerete la spiaggia desiderata.

I marinai lo deridevano e gli intimavano che domani voltasse[9]) verso la Spagna o lo getterebbero ai pesci. Ma al primo schiarare dell' alba ecco in fatti qualchecosa di fosco[10]) orizzontale; tutti gridano: *terra, terra!* Tutti si prostrano ai piedi di Colombo quasi adorándolo: ma esso, úmile in mezza a tanta gloria, gli invita a prostarsi davanti al Signore, il quale da lume e coraggio per le grandi imprese.

7) *tenersi sicuro di qchs.*, to feel sure of something. 8) *sta* for *questa*. 9) *voltasse*, he should return. 10) dark.

Dialogo.

Quanto tempo erano in mare Colombo ed i suoi compagni?
Quante miglia erano corsi?
Non avevano ancora perduto la speranza?
E volevano andare ancora più avanti?
Che dovette promettere loro Colombo?
E sonfidava sempre ancora scoprir la terra?
Di che cosa si era egli accorto in questo tempo?
Che ne conchiuse?
Non vide niente di particolare?
Perchè seguitò C. il volo degli uccelli?
Che cosa dissero allora i marinai?
E si vide qualchecosa al far del giorno (*at daybreak*)?
Che cosa vuol dire quell' espressione „Orizzonte"?
Che fecero allora i marinai?
Come si mostrò Colombo in quel momento solenne?

Eighth Lesson.

On Adjectives and Numerals.

(See I. P. Less. 18.)

A. The Negation after the Comparative.

1) The verb preceded by a comparative is commonly accompanied by *non*, as:

He is *richer* than you think.
È più ricco che non credete.

NB. Yet *non* may be omitted, if no stress is laid on the negation, as:

È più ricco che credi.

If a negation or an interrogation precedes, *non* is not admissible in the second part of the sentence, as:

***non** è più ricco che credi.*
He is not richer than you think.

Siamo noi altri più contenti che essa?
Are we more content than she is? (That is to say: *we are not.*).

2) In *two* phrases contracted into *one*, i. e. where *two Nominatives* are found with the *same* verb, the *second* Nominative is very often preceded by *non*, as:

*Un paese dove le donne lavorano più che **non** gli uomini.*
A country where the women work more than the men.

NB. Here, too, *non* is not strictly necessary.

B. Che or di before pronouns.

We said, Less. 19, I. P, that before pronouns *than* is rendered by *di*. Since, however, the Accusative of the pronoun preceded by *di* might sometimes cause a misconception, as in the sentence: *Egli mi ama più di te*, where it seems doubtful whether the meaning is: He loves me more *than thee* or *than thou*, we ought to say either:

Egli ama più me che te,
He loves me more than thee;
or: *Egli mi ama più che tu,*
He loves me more than thou (dost not love me).

C. Omission of the Article after the Superlative.

The Italians consider the Superlative otherwise than the English, i. e. they always use the Comparative in its stead. Where we speak f. i. of the "finest flower", the Italians understand a "finer" flower than all the others. Therefore they indifferently use or omit the article, when the Superlative *follows* the noun. Thus:

L'azione più generosa, or *L'azione **la** più generosa.*
The most generous action.

NB. It should be observed that by the use of the article the expression becomes somewhat more emphatic. When the superlative precedes, the article belongs to the *noun*, but not to the adjective, as:

*La più generosa **azione**.*

D. Peculiarities of some Comparatives.

1) Sometimes the Superlative is used *after* nouns with the *indefinite* article, and even without any article at all, as:

Un suolo il più fertile.
One of the most fertile soils.

2) Very rarely the *Superl. assol.* is employed (as in Latin), with the value of a *Superl. relat.*, as:

Erano i Pazzi di tutte l'altre famiglie ***splendidissima,*** (Macchiav.).
(Then) the Pazzi were the most illustrious family of all others.

3) Sentences like this: *The finest, greatest, ugliest* etc., *thing to be found, to be imagined*, etc. are renderod by *quel che* or *ciò che* (that which). The verb governed by *che* generally follows in the *Subjunctive* mood, as:

The finest thing to be found.
Quel che si possa trovare di più bello. (Liter.: that which one may find of the finest.)
But we may as well say.
La più bella cosa che si possa trovare.

4) In the First Part we stated, that *adjectives* as well as *substantives* are liable to having their sense modified by certain terminations. Besides (See I. P. Less. 7.), the original idea of the adjective may be augmented by the word *grande* (commonly *gran*), by the prefixes *arci* and *stra (= extra)*, or by the repetition of the adjective. Examples:

Bello, fine.
Bellino, nice, pretty.
giovine, young.
giovinastro, a bad young fellow.
Una ***gran*** *bella cosa*, a most beautiful (wonderful) thing.
Un uomo ***stramicco,*** an extremely rich man.
Una lettera ***arcistupida,*** a very stupid letter.
Canteremo ***pian piano,*** we shall sing quite low.

5) The following adjectives have *no positive:*

Esteriore, exterior.
ulteriore, further.
posteriore, later.
interiore, interior.
inferiore, inferior.
superiore, superior.
citeriore, on this side.
último, last.
postremo, latest, last.
estremo, extreme.
intimo, inward.
infimo, lowest.
supremo / *sommo* } highest.
próssimo, next.

NB. In legal phraseology —: *prossimiori*, the nearest of of kin. — Some of these superlatives are rendered more emphatic by the termination *-issimo:*

Sommo, the highest, — *sommissimo*, the highest of all.
intimo, inward, *intimissimo*, the most intimate of all.

6) *Invariable* are: *Fù*, late, dead, deceased (the French feu); *pari*, equal; *impari*, unequai; *blù*, blue, and the adv. *già* used as adject. with the signification *former.*

Substantives are frequently employed like adjectives. In such a case they must, of course, agree in *gender* and *number* with the noun to which they refer, as:

Un occhio ***scrutatore,*** a searching eye.
Rose colte da ***vérgine*** *mano* (Petr.).
Roses gathered by a virginal (lit. virgin) hand.

Mezzo, half, is *invariable* when *following*, and *variable* when *preceding* the noun (the reverse as in French); thus:

Una casa ***mezzo*** *bruciata*, a house half burnt down.
Due libbre e ***mezzo***, two pound and a half. But:
Una ***mezza*** *libbra*, half a pound.

7) When *more* than *two* adjectives are used with a substantive, euphony requires them to follow, and the last is connected by *e* with the last but one, as:

Un uomo brutto, avaro, negligente e *pauroso.*
An ugly, avaricious, negligent, and timid man.*)

Such is also the case when *two* adjectives joined by *but* precede the noun, as:

Un uomo povero ***ma*** *onesto*, a poor but honest man.**)

8) The signification of the following adjectives is somewhat altered by their *position:*

Un ***povero*** *uomo*, a poor (unhappy) man.
Un uomo ***povero,*** a poor (indigent) man.
Un ***fier*** *uomo*, a savage man.
Un uómo ***fiero,*** a proud man.
Una ***certa*** *cosa*, a certain thing (= some thing).
Una cosa ***certa,*** a certain (sure) thing.
Gran *cosa*, something important,
Una cosa ***grande,*** a great thing.
Un ***grand'*** *uomo*, a great man.
Un uomo ***grande,*** a tall man.

*) Or, as in Italian: *A man u., a., n.,* and *t.*
**) Or: *a man p.* but *h.*

Un galant' uomo (galantuomo), an honourable man.
Un uomo galante, a polite man.
La sola mia figlia, my only daughter.
Mia figlia sola, my daughter alone.
Una doppia scrittura, a double writing.
La scrittura doppia, double accounts (book-keeping).
Un sémplice ufficiale, a simple officer.
Un uomo semplice, a silly fellow.

Observations.

1) Every adjective referring to the word *che cosa* (what?), is invariable, as:

Che cosa ha detto, what has he said?

2) If an adjective qualifies *two* substantives, it should *follow* these substantives and *be plural*, as:

Ecco un sorcio ed un ratto morti.
There is a dead mouse and a dead rat.

Un lapis ed una penna bene temperati.
A well made pen and pencil.

3) The English expression *to look* (healthy etc.) is translated: *aver l'aria* (to have a mien). The adverb employed with *to look* is rendered by the respective *adjective* in the *feminine* gender. Thus; *to look angry* means: *aver l'aria irritata.* — *To look hearty* is: *aver buona ciera.*

E. On Numerals.

(See I. P. Less. 15 and 16.)

1) *Cardinal* numbers, when used as substantives, take the article, as:

Un tre, the cipher 3.
Il dieci, the (number) 10.
Il nove di cuori, nine of hearts (in cards).

2) *One* before *hundred* or *thousand* is never translated in Italian, as: In the year one thousand eight hundred and seventy eight, *nell' anno mille otto cento settant' otto.*

3) Apart from the formation of *compound* ordinal numbers indicated in the I. P., there is still another way

of forming them immediately from the *cardinal* number by addition of the termination — *ésimo**). Thus instead of:

quarantesimo primo 41st, we may as well say: *quarantunésimo*,
cinquantesimo ottavo the 58st, or: *cinquantottésimo*.

4) Sometimes *primiero* is said in lieu of *primo*, first. This form, however, is not allowable in *compound* numbers. Thus: *ventesimo primo* or *ventunésimo*, the 21st, but never: *ventesimo primiero*.

We subjoin the following Italianisms:

Uno ad uno, one after another.
Verso le sei or *le sei ore*, at about 6 o'clock.
Suona un' ora (batte un' ora), it has struck one o'clock.
È l'una, / *È un' ora*, } it is one o'clock.
Ad un' ora, / *Al tocco*, } at one o'clock.
Un giorno si, un giorno no, / *Ogni due giorni*, } every other day.
Ceneremo in dieci, we shall be ten at supper.
Vi erano da cento persone, there were about a hundred persons.
***Quindici** giorni fa*, / *Sono quindici giorni*, } a fortnight ago.
Fra otto giorni, within a week.
Domani otto, to-morrow week.
Domani quindici, to-morrow fortnight.
Entrambi sono amici mici, both are friends of mine.
Vi dirò due parole, I'll tell you a few words.

Traduzione. 79.

1. Henry IV. was one of the greatest kings. Here is the eight of hearts. America was discovered in the year 1492. (There were thirty of us departing) We departed thirty. I dine (*pranzare*) at one o'clock and go to bed (*coricarsi*) after midnight. In half a year I shall go to America. This fowl is half burnt. This day week I shall be twenty years old. In a fortnight I shall leave Vienna. We were about 40 persons at dinner. I have a few words to (*da*) tell you. My music-master comes every other day. Paul and Virginia were very ignorant. The house and (the) yard are small. Give me half a pound of butter and two pounds and a half of bread. What have you found, my dear friend? How were the two ladies dressed? The young girl (*zitella*) had a white

*) Euphony forbids to say *seiésimo* in lieu of *sesto*, sixth.

dress and a white bonnet. The old lady wore a white bonnet or a cap. My late grandmother has often told me this story.

2. Mr. Malatesta looks very angry to-day. The savage (*selvaggio*) lived in a large, deep, and damp cavern. That is the gentleman who came at about seven o'clock. Lewis is a handsome young man. This silly girl thinks *her opinion to be**) something important. Francis is a little man, but very strong. Spain is a fertile, but badly cultivated country. To-day I made the acquaintance of a very learned man. A sober, simple, regulated, and laborious life invigorates (the) body and soul. My whole life was devoted to study. I know that you love me better (*più*) than he.

Reading Exercise. 80.

L u i g i C o r n a r o.**)

Luigi Cornaro, Italiano da Venezia, érasi abbandonato in gioventù all' ubbriachezza e ne pativa [1]) le sólite conseguenze, mali di stómaco e di fianco, gotte [2]) ed una febbricciátola che, alla bella età di trenta cinque anni, lo traeva a passo lento verso il sepolcro. I medici gli fecero intendere [3]) che, per allungare i suoi giorni [4]), l'unica strada era una vita sobria tutta opposta all' antecedente.

Vi diede ascolto, e ridóttosi [5]) ad un método preciso di mangiare e bere, in capo [6]) ad un anno si riebbe (*from* riaversi, *to restore one's self*). Allora ben lontano [7]) dal tornare [8]) ai primi stravizzi [9]), si propose un vivere regolato, che mai non abbandonò. Conoscendo bugiardo [10]) quel proverbio, *ciò che piace alla bocca fa bene allo stomaco*, mai non mangiava *se non quel* [11]) che digeriva facilmente, e serbava sempre un po' d'appetito. Gli eccessi di caldo e di freddo, ed altri disórdini che succédono nel vivere, fanno assai meno [12]) male a chi (*to him who*) sa regolare la bocca. *Chi vuol mangiare assai*, diceva ai suoi amici, *deve mangiar poco*. Fa miglior prò [13]) quel cibo che uno lascia di mangiare dopo sazio [14]), *che non quello mangiato.* [15])

La miglior medicina, diceva ancora, è la vita ordinata. E ben lo provò egli, che (*because*) con questa, a ottanta sei

1) suffered. 2) the gout. 3) gave him to understand. 4) his life. 5) after having reduced himself. 6) within, at the end of . . . 7) far from. 8) to relapse into. 9) excesses. 10) false. 11) but that which. 12) much less. 13) more wholesome is . . . 14) after being satisfied. 15) than that one has eaten.

---

*) Expressions like the above: *thinks her opinion to be*, etc. should always be rendered by the Subjunctive Mood, thus: *pensa* ***che la sua opinione sia,*** etc.

**) By *Césare Cantù*.

anni, si trovava sano e rubizzo, camminava lungamente a piedi anche[16]) per le colline, montava di per se[17]) a cavallo, studiava, conversava allegro. E in quell' età appunto scrisse una festévole commedia e certi discorsi sulla vita sobria, ove descrisse il tenore[18]) di sua vita. Tra *(of)* pane, carne e minestra, non consumava al dì[19]) più che dodici once, e quattordici di vino. Campò[20]) fino a novant' otto anni, e come *era* vissuto plácido e tranquillo, così morì nel 1565.

»L'ottimo vecchio,« racconta un suo amico, »sentendosi[21]) finire la vita, non riguardava il gran passaggio con ispavento, ma come *(as if)* avesse dovuto mutarsi da una casa in un' altra[22]). Sedeva nel letticciuolo, avendo presente Veronica, moglie sua, poco meno vecchia di lui, e con voce chiara e sonora mi parlava di lasciare[23]) la vita con animo gagliardo: e scrisse ad un amico nostro lettere di consiglio e di conforto. Dísse*mi* che gli pareva di poter[24]) sopravvivere due giorni ancora; ma sentèndosi poi *venir meno*[25]), chiese di nuovo i conforti della religione, e stringendo un piccolo Crocifisso, cogli occhi fermi in esso, esclamò: lieto e pieno di speranza vengo con te, mio buon Signore[26])! Poi s'acconciò con decenza, e *chiusi*[27]) gli occhi come[28] avesso voluto dormire, con un leggier sospiro ci abbandonò per sempre.«

16) even. 17) without any assistance (liter. *by himself, alone*). 18) manner. 19) daily, every day. 20) he lived. 21) when he felt. 22) to change his lodgings. 23) that he left. 24) that he could. 25) his strength failing. 26) Lord. 27) after having shut. 28) as if ...

Dialogo.

Chi era Luigi Cornaro?
Come *era* vissuto in gioventù?
Quali ne furono le conseguenze?
Quanti anni aveva allora?
Non consultò egli i medici?
Diede egli retta (*did he lend an ear*) a' loro consigli?
Quale proverbio conosceva egli per bugiardo?
Ritornò ancora ai primi suoi stravizzi?
Quale era la sua maniera di vivere?
E non bevea più vino?
E stava sempre bene con questa eccessiva sobrietà?
Donde sono prese tutte queste notizie sul tenore della sua vita?
Fino a qual età giunse egli?
Quali furono le ultime sue parole?

Ninth Lesson.

On the Pronouns.

(See I. P. Less. 22.)

A. *Personal Pronouns.*

1) If a Personal pronoun is followed by *che* (who, that), the *verb* should always agree with the pronoun, as:

***Tu** che **hai** detto questa bugia.*
Thou that hast told this lie.

***Noi** che **siamo** stati presenti.*
We that have been present.

2) In general the pronoun may be omitted, if it is not required for the distinctness of the sense, as:

Addio! È tempo perduto per tutt' e due. (M.)
Adieu! It is a mere loss of time for (us) both.

3) Sometimes the *relative* pronoun is pleonastically added to the *personal* pronoun, as:

***Quell'** io che ...*, I who ...

4) The conjunctive Personal pronouns *ne*, of it, and *ci* or *vi*, there, to it, etc. only refer to *things* and never to *persons*. Thus:

He speaks of him, of her.
Egli parla di lui, di lei, but never *egli **ne** parla.*

Note. Ne is often met with where it might be omitted, as in the following sentence:

*Di questi **ne** sono tanti.* [As in French: *De ceux-là il y en a beaucoup.*]
There are a great many of this kind.

Frequently *vi* is used pleonastically with the 2nd Pl., as:

*Non sapete quel che **vi** dite. (M.)*
You do not know what you are saying.

In poetry *ne* often replaces *ci*, us, to us, as:

***Ne** dicono*, they tell us.*)

*La vostra Magnificenza **ne** ha messi* (Bocc. Dec. 9, 1).
Your Honour has sent us.

*) *Ne* is frequently placed before the *auxiliary* verb, instead of preceding or following the *principal* verb, f. inst. *Non **ne** posso mangiare*, for: *non posso mangiarne.*

5) Before *lui, lei, loro,* and sometimes before *substantives* the *invariable* pronoun *esso* is met with, as:

Sono venuto con ***esso*** *lui, con* ***esso*** *lei, con* ***esso*** *loro.*
I have come with him, with her, with them.

Da ***esso*** *imperiale, reale Governo.*
From this imperial, royal Government.

(By the addition of *esso* the expression is rendered more emphatic; before substantives it is commonly found in official documents.)

6) The masculine accusative *lo* is occasionally replaced by *il* before words beginning with *consonants,* except *s impura,* as: ***il*** *vedo,* I see him (it); ***il*** *so,* I know him (it). When preceded by one of the pronouns *mi, ti, si, gli, ci, vi,* or by the negative particle *non,* the *i* of *il* is commonly *dropped,* or both words are *contracted* into one, thus: *me'l, te'l, glie'l, ce'l, ve'l, se'l, no'l,* or *mel, tel, gliel, cel, vel, sel, nol.* Ex.: *mel dice* for *me il dice.* he tells me so.

Note. Contrary to the general rule, *desso* (See Less. 22, *Obs.* 3, I. P.) is sometimes found with a pronoun, especially in ancient writers, as:

Come se ***tu*** *desso fossi* (Boce.)
As if thou wert it thyself.

Very rarely *desso* is used as the *Subject* of the phrase, as:

Questa necessità è ***dessa*** *uno stravolgimento del mio cervello. (M.)*
This necessity itself is a confusion of my thoughts.

7) If *vi* or *ne* meet with a *conj. pers.* pronoun, the latter follows, as:

Vi ***ti*** *vedo,* I see thee there.
Ne ***la*** *credo capace,* I think her capable of it.

NB. This is also the case, if both pronouns are *affixed,* as:

Quasi toccasse a me a levarnela. (M.)
As if it were my duty to rescue her (from it).

Ci, on the contrary, follows the pronoun, as:

Mi *ci recai,* I went there.

Note. Nui and *vui* are poetical forms for *noi* and *voi,* as: ***Nui*** *chiniam la fronte* (Manz.), we bend our foreheads.

8) In *exclamatory* sentences, the pronoun used with an adjective should *follow,* as:

*Cara **lei!*** I say, my dear!

With the 3rd person of the pronoun, the *Accus.*, as being more sonorous, is preferred to the *Nomin.*, thus:

*Benedetto **lui!*** May *he* be blessed!
*Povera **lei!*** Poor thing! (of a female).

It is a peculiarity of the Italian popular language that in *exclamations* the *demonstrative* pronoun is often added pleonastically, as:

*Ehi, **quel** signore!* I say, Sir!
***Quella** signora!* I say, Madam!

9) The *feminine* of the pers. pron. referring to an *understood* word, like *idea, opinione, ragione* etc., is often used in the *Nominative* or *Accusative* case contracted into ***la,*** as:

La (i. e. *cosa*) *non va così*, that won't do (so).
***La** mi pare strana*, the thing seems rather strange to me.
La) è chiara*, it is clear.

Adjectives and other pronouns used with *la* must, of course, become *feminine*, as:

La** dico **schietta, I am speaking my mind freely.

Note. Even without any reference to one of the words *cosa, opinione* etc. *la* may be used in lieu of *ella*, as:

***La** (= ella) venne finalmente.* At last she came.

By itself the *adjective* may likewise tacitly refer to an understood word like *idea, opinione* etc., in which case it should, therefore, be *feminine*, as:

*Oh, questa è **grossa!** (M.)*
Oh! that is nonsense indeed! [Lit. this (idea) is strong].

10) Very seldom *three* pronouns are affixed, as:

Fáccialevisi (= le-vi-si) un letto.
There must be dressed a bed for her.

Portándosenela (= si-ne-la) il lupo.
The wolf carrying her away.

These expressions, however, are avoided in modern Italian.

11) The Accusatives of the conjoined pers. pronouns, as well as the words *ci, vi,* and *ne,* are commonly written in *one* word with *ecco,* thus:

---

*) The pupil should be reminded that in such a case *la* is no *article,* as it undoubtedly is in the phrases *la mia, la sua* (i. e. *opinione* etc. See pag. 240, 11), but a personal *pronoun.*

Éccomi, here I am; *éccolo,* here he is; *éccotene,* here you have of it, etc.

12) If by inversion a noun in the Acc. *precedes* the verb, the personal pronoun should be inserted (as in French):

Queste sette medaglie ***le*** *troverò.*
As for those seven medals, I shall find them.

La vostra lettera l'abbiamo ricevuta, ma il danaro no.
Your letter has come to hand, but not your money.

13) Sometimes the pronouns of the 3rd pers. are added, when a Nominat. precedes, as:

Affinchè i poveri prigionieri sorridano anch' ***essi*** (Silv. Pell.).
So that the poor prisoners may also smile.

On the Personal pronoun **it.**

1) *It,* when a *nominative,* is usually not translated, or is rendered by *egli,* as:

It is cold, *è freddo* or *fa freddo.*
It is easy, *egli è facile.*
It is long, *è un pezzo,* etc.

Frequently it is rendered by *la* (i. e. *cosa*) or *si,* as:

So it is, *la è così.*
As it be, *qual si sia.*

In sentences where great stress is laid on the Personal pronouns, as: ***You*** *have said it,* or *it is* ***You*** that... it is often expressed in a way not unlike the French forms *c'est moi qui, c'est vous qui* etc., as:

Siete ***voi*** *che l'avete detto.*
You have said it (French: *C'est vous qui l'avez dit.*).

Note. In the foregoing sentence, the Nominative *voi* follows the verb; if, however, the Nominative *precedes* the verb, a *demonstrative* pronoun is required before *che,* as:

Voi *siete* ***quelli*** *che l'avete detto.*
You have said it (*lit.* You are those that have said it.).

2) It, if an Accusative, corresponds to *lo,* as: *lo so,* I know it*); *lo vedo,* I see it, etc.

---

*) The English phrase: *You know!* is best translated: *Sa (Ella)!* but may not be so often repeated as in English. Such is also the case with the English: *I say!* which should be translated *senti (senta* or *sentite)!*

3) In the First Part of this grammar, we hinted that the English way of answering simply with, *Yes, I am*, or *Yes, I do*, etc. is by no means admissible in Italian. Here we must carefully distinguish, whether in the preceding question the word to which the answer refers, has the *definite article* or a *determinative adjective*, as in the following sentences:

Are you the mother of this child? Yes, I am (sc. the mother.)
Are these your gloves? Yes, they are (sc. mine).

In Italian if the answer is not only si or no, the whole sentence must be repeated:

È Ella ***la*** *madre di questo fanciullo? Sì, son* ***la*** *madre di questo fanciullo.*
Sono questi i ***suoi*** *guanti? Sì, sono i* ***miei*** *guanti.*
Siete voi gli amici di questo disgraziato? Sì, siamo i suoi amici.

If, however, the answer refers to a preceding *adjective, verb* or *substantive without an article* or *determinative adjective*, *lo* is placed before the verb of the answering phrase. Thus:

È Ella ***ammalata?*** *Sì,* ***lo*** *sono.*
Are you ill? Yes, I am (i. e. ill).

Sono ***maritate*** *queste donne? Sì,* ***lo*** *sono.*
Are these ladies married? Yes, they are (i. e. married).

Siete ***cristiani?*** *Sì,* ***lo*** *siamo.*
Are you Christians? Yes, we are (i. e. Christians).

4) In *comparative sentences* with *più, meno*, and *così*, ***lo*** is frequently used after *che*. After *più* and *meno* we either say simply *che*, or *di quel che*, or *che* followed by the negative particle *non*. Examples:

È adesso più diligente che nol) fosse mai.*
He is now more diligent than he ever was.

È più accorto di quel che pensate.
È più accorto che pensate.
È più accorto che non pensate.
} He is more cunning than you think.

5) The following Italianisms with *la* are much in use:

Me ***la*** *pagherà,* he shall pay for it.
Me ***la*** *avete fatta,* you have played me a trick.

*) *nol* = *non lo*. See P. 251, 7).

Non vuol (Ella) intenderla, don't you see?
Finitela una volta, have done!

Traduzione. 81.

1. I shall write to him myself. To you I owe (*dovere*) (*transl.* You are [it] to whom . . .) my liberty and (my) life. Do you speak of my works? Yes, we speak of them (*ne*). Is this your house? Yes, it is. This young man is now less strong than he was when I saw him at Vienna. Are these girls really unhappy? Yes, they are (it). Do you see that woman with the basket on her head; is (she) it your cook? *(f.)*? Yes, she is (*transl.* it is she). Are you the workmen? Yes, we are. Have you your spectacles about you? Yes, I never go out without them. Is your friend with you?

2. You know that I never go out without him. I have come with him. I found him there. I say, *my good friend* (*voi*), come hither, if you please! Happy *the man* (*lui*), who has found a true friend! They, that know nothing, will ridicule (*burlarsi di qchs.*) the works of others. Is this man as poor as he says? I know that he has more money than you think. (The) Virtue is so necessary to (the) man, that he can *(potere)* not live without it. Have you money about you? I have none (*ne*) about me; but my brothers have some (*ne*) about them. Is the dog under the bed? No, he is not there (*vi*). How many planets are there? There (*ve ne*) are more than a hundred.

3. He will soon see me and my sister. He told it to me and not to you. If you have so many books, please (*abbia la compiacenza di*) lend me one of them (*ne*). If I were you!*) Thou wilt be punished like me. I am neither like you nor like him. (The) Virtue is amiable of *(per)* itself. Is it you, Alfred *(Alfredo)*, or our neighbour who has planted this tree? It is I, who planted it. You and he were not attentive. Is it cold to-day? He shall pay for it! Are you soldiers? Yes, we are (it).

Reading Exercise. 82.

From Le mie prigioni.

Capo 58.

Acerbissima cosa, dopo aver già detto addio a tanti oggetti, quando non si è più che in due (*two*) amici egual-

*) When the Personal pronouns, as in the above sentence, are governed by one of the verbs *essere, credere, parere,* and *supporre,* or when preceded by one of the comparative particles *come, siccome* or *quanto,* the *Accusative* and not the *Nominative* case should be employed, as: *me, te, lui, lei,* etc. Such is also the case with the exclamation. as: *Ahi misero me!* Alas, how unhappy I am!

mente sventurati, ah sì! acerbissima cosa è il divídersi[1]). Maroncelli*) nel lasciarmi[2]) vedéami infermo e compiangeva in me un uomo ch'ei probabilmente non vedrebbe mai più[3]); io compiangeva in lui un fiore spléndido di salute, rapito forse per sempre alla luce vitale del sole. E quel fiore infatti, oh come appassì[4])! Rivide un giorno la luce, ma oh in quale stato!

Allorchè mi trovai solo nella mia prigione e intesi serrarsi (*them shut, See P. I. Less. 27*) i catenacci e distinsi al barlume[5]) che discendeva da alto finestruolo, il nudo pancone dátomi[6]) per letto ed una enorme catena al muro, m'assisi fremente su quel letto, e presa[7]) quella catena ne misurai la lunghezza, pensando fosse[8]) destinata per me.

Mezz'ora dappoi, ecco stridere[9]) le chiavi;**) la porta s'apre: il capo-carceriere[10]) mi portava una brocca d'acqua.

»Questo è per bere,« disse con voce búrbera, »e dommattina porterò la pagnotta.«

»Grazie, buon uomo.«

»Non sono buono!« rispose.

»Peggio[11]) per voi!« gli dissi sdegnato[12]). »E questa catena,« soggiunsi, »è forse per me«?

»Sì, Signore, se mai non fosse quieta, se infuriasse, se dicesse insolenze. Ma se sarà ragionevole, non le porremo altro che una catena a' piedi. Il fabbro *la sta apparecchiando*[13]).« Ei passeggiava lentamente su e giù[14]), agitando quel villano mazzo di grosse chiavi, ed io con occhio irato mirava la sua gigantesca, magra, vecchia persona; e ad onta[15]) de' lineamenti non volgari del suo volto, tutto in lui mi sembrava l'espressione odiosissima di un brutale rigore.

1) to part. 2) when he left me. 3) no more. 4) withered. 5) twilight. 6) given me. 7) after having taken. 8) whether it were. 9) *stridere*, to creak. 10) head-gaoler. 11) So much the worse ... 12) indignant. 13) is preparing it. The verb *stare* is sometimes added to the Part. pres. in order to indicate an action being just performed. 14) to and fro'. 15) notwithstanding.

Dialogo.

Come si chiamava l'amico di Silvio Pellico, imprigionato come questi allo Spielberg?
In quale stato vide Maroncelli il suo amico?
Che fece Pellico della catena che vide al muro?

---

*) *Maroncelli*, an Italian poet, likewise a prisoner at the Spielberg.

**) In Italian the Infinitive Mood in sometimes used instead of the Present tense. (See Less. 22, II. P.)

Chi gli fece la prima visita nella sua prigione?
Che cosa gli disse il carceriere?
Che fece dappoi?
Era già vecchio il carceriere?
Che promise il carceriere a Pellico?
Con quali sentimenti riguardò il prigioniere il vecchio?

Tenth Lesson.

B. *Interrogative pronouns.*

(See I. P. Less. 24.)

The difference between *quale*, *chi*, and *che* is as follows:

Quale denotes more distinctly a certain person or thing among others of the same kind. *Chi?* always refers to persons, *che?* to things. *Quale*, therefore, corresponds to the English which? whilst *chi?* means who? and *che?* what? The learner may compare the following examples:

Chi è venuto? who has come?
Lo zio, the uncle.

Quale? which (uncle)?
Lo zio Carlo, uncle Charles.

The English *what?* is rendered by *che?* or *che cosa?* When expressing surprise, it is generally translated *come*, as:

Come! suo fratello è morto? what! your brother has died?

Notes.

1) *Cui* is very seldom interrogative, as:

A cui (for *a chi*) *lo darete?* To whom shall you give it?

2) In *indirect* questions *cui* also occurs as an *Accusative*, as:

Non sapeva, cui avesse veduto.
He did not know, whom he had seen.

3) The pronoun *chente* = *quale*, obsolete. Ex.:
***Chente** fosse la povertà,* however great poverty may be.

C. *Relative pronouns.*

It is of great importance to distinguish well these pronouns from the *interrogatives*. *Quale* without the article is *interrogative*, with the article, however, it is relative. Thus we may never say:

Il quale volete, which do you want? but: ***Quale** volete?*
Nor: *L'uomo **chi** ha detto ciò,* the man who said so.
But: *L'uomo **che** ha detto ciò.*

The pronoun *cui*, without a Nominative case, (Latin *cujus* and *cui*) never takes the definite article. Sentences like:

*Il fanciullo, il **cui** padre morì l'anno scorso,*

must therefore be considered *elliptical*, the preposition *di* being omitted before *cui*, i. e.:

*Il fanciullo il **di** cui padre morì l'anno scorso.*
The child whose father died last year.

NB. Di cui may also be placed *after* the substantive, thus:

*Il fanciullo il padre **di cui*** (or *del quale*) *morì*, etc.
*La madre, **la cui*** (or *la di cui*) *bontà è così grande;* or
*La madre, la bontà **di cui*** or ***della quale** è così grande.*

*Note. **Cui*** without the article is frequently an *Accusative* case instead of *il (la) quale*. Sentences like: *il generale, il quale* (or *che*) *invitò a pranzo il colonello,* the general whom the colonel invited to dinner, are somewhat *ambiguous*, as it seems doubtful whether *il quale* be Nominative or Accusative. To avoid a misconception, ***cui*** should be employed: *Il generale **cui*** (whom) *invitò a pranzo il colonello.*

Cui ought to be employed of *persons* only; notwithstanding there are a great many examples to be found where *cui* refers to *things*. Seldom *cui* is used as a *dative* case without *a* (as in Latin), viz.: *Il capitano cui scrissi,* the captain to whom I wrote, for *a cui scrissi.*

In ancient writers *cui* is also met with as a *Genitive* case, without *di*, and following its substantive, as:

*In casa **cui** morto era* (Bocc.).
In whose house he had died.

In elegant language *onde* or *donde* are used instead of *dal (dalla) quale, da cui,* pl. *dai (dalle) quali, da cui;* yet these adverbs never refer to *persons.* Ex.:

Que' begli occhi ***ond'*** *escono sactte* (Petr.).
Those beautiful eyes from which arrows are flying.

Likewise *ove* and *dove* are used instead of *nel (nella) quale,* pl. *nei (nelle) quali.*

Che, when referring not to a *single word,* but to the *sentence* preceding, takes the *definite* article (not unlike the French *ce que*), as:

Gli diede uno scudo, ***il che*** *lo rese subito pulito.*
He gave him a dollar, which (*ce qui*) rendered him polite directly.

Note. In such a case *che* is declined like a substantive; yet instead of saying *del che, al che,* we may as well say *di che* and *a che,* but not *da che* for *dal che,* because *da che* (contr. *dacchè*) means since. (For *il che,* what, *lo che,* contr. into *locchè,* is in use).

Quale, too, is sometimes met with as a *relative* pronoun, as:

Una novella ***qual*** *voi udirete* (Bocc.).
A tale which you will hear.

Il quale rarely connects two *principal* sentences (as in Latin). Ex.

Fernando se n'andò alla badia, ***il quale*** *come l'abate vide . . .* (Bocc.).
F. went away to the abbey; when the abbot saw this . . .

Italianisms occur with *che* and *uno,* such as:

Un *certo non so* ***che,*** a vague feeling (*un je ne sais quoi*).
Un *bel* ***che,*** a fine match.
È ***un*** *gran* ***che,*** it is something particular.

NB. English compound prepositions like *whereupon, wherewith, whereas,* etc. should be rendered by pronouns with prepositions, as: *Con che,* wherewith; *mentre che,* whereas, etc.

As in English, *chi,* mostly in proverbial expressions, is often used without being interrogative, instead of *quello che,* he who . . . Thus: *Chi va piano, va sano,* he who goes slowly goes surely.

Note. In poetry the *preposition* on which *che* depends, is often *omitted,* as:

Questa vita terrena è quasi un prato, che'l serpente tra fiori giace (Petr.).
On earth life is like a meadow, where (*in che*, in which) the snake lies under flowers.

Traduzione. 83.

1. Which countries has Alexander the Great conquered? Here are two grammars, which do you prefer? With (*Di*) what did you occupy yourself during the long vacation? Which hero was greater, Cæsar, Alexander or Napoleon? What, you were bold enough (*avere tanta arditezza*) to tell him so? Who will come along with me, you or your sister? What is (the) human life? Who arrived from Turkey to-day? My brother. Which? Charles. The young lady whose mother told us this (*tr.*: gave us these) good news, is called Mary.

2. What is there more important to mankind than universal civilisation? What is (*c'è*) the news (*di nuovo*)? Who retains this our earth in the immense space of the universe? On (*di*) what may I depend (*fidarmi*)? A little more glory, a little more riches — what is it all? In whose honour did the Egyptians erect their pyramids? In honour of their kings. Which is the divine voice that speaketh to us in this world? Which of these girls do you like most? That (one) with the fair hair and the blue eyes.

84.

1. My friend's sister, who arrived yesterday, has set out (*partire per*) for Paris to-day. The physician's daughter of whom I spoke to you lately, has been married a few days ago. The means*) the murderer made use of, are abominable. The house I come from (*uscire*), belongs to my father-in-law. The tulips whose colours are magnificent, have no (translate: *not*) smell. The state wherein I find myself is almost insupportable. The emperor Nero, of whose cruelty a Roman historian speaks, killed himself (*si diede la morte*) in the year 68 after Christ. There is (*c'è*) nothing which I oftener think of than (of) the unhappy fate of my friend.

2. We believe (that which) what we see. What is true is also good. (The) virtue and (the) liberty are the conditions without which one cannot be happy. What I wish most (*il più*) is to see you happy. Let us see which will jump best (*il meglio*). That is (*ecco*) [the thing] about which (*di . . .*) I wanted to speak with you. What (transl. *the thing which*) the miser least (*il meno*) thinks of, is to help the poor. Since I am here, I have not yet seen him. The gentleman

*) In Italian the relative pronouns cannot be omitted as in English.

to whom (*acc.*) your father paid a visit (*andare a trovare*), is my best friend. He gave (*dire*) me some hard (*brusco*) words, which offended me much. A vague feeling told me not to go there (*di non andarvi*).

Reading Exercise. 85.

Continuazione del Capo 58.

Oh come gli uomini sono ingiusti, giudicando dall' apparenza e secondo le loro superbe prevenzioni! Colui ch'io m'immaginava agitasse[1]) allegramente le chiavi, per parmi sentire la sua trista podestà, colui ch'io riputava impudente per lunga consuetudine d'incrudelire[2]), volgea[3]) pensieri di compassione, e certamente *non* parlava a quel modo con accento búrbero, *se non* per nascondere questo sentimento. Avrebbe voluto nasconderlo a me per non parer[4]) debole, e per paura che io ne fossi indegno; ma nello stesso tempo supponendo che forse io era più infelice che iniquo[5]), avrebbe desiderato di palesarmelo.

Noiato della sua presenza, e più della sua aria di padrone, stimai opportuno[6]) d'umiliarlo, dicendogli imperiosamente, quasi a servitore: Dátemi da bere!

Ei mi guardò, e parea significare[7]): Arrogante! quì bisogna divezzarsi dal commandare.

Ma tacque, chinò la sua lunga schiena[8]), prese in terra la brocca, e me la porse. M'avvidi[9], pigliándola, ch'ei tremava, e attribuendo quel trémito alla sua vecchiezza, un misto[10]) di pietà e di riverenza temperò il mio orgoglio.

Quanti anni avete? gli dissi con voce amorevole. Settanta quattro, Signore: ho già veduto molte sventure e mie ed altrui,

Questo cenno[11]) sulle sventure sue ed altrui fu accompagnato da nuovo trémito, nell' atto[12]) ch'ei ripigliava la brocca; e dubitai fosse (*whether it were*) effetto, non della sola età, ma d'un nobile perturbamento. Siffatto[13]) dubbio cancellò dall' anima mia l'odio che il suo primo aspetto m'aveva impresso.

Come vi chiamate? gli dissi.

La fortuna, signore, si burlò di me, dándomi il nome d'un grand' uomo. Mi chiamo Schiller.

Indi in poche parole mi narrò qual fosse il suo paese, quale l'origine, quali le guerre vedute e le ferite riportate.

1) = *Che agitasse*, that he shook. 2) to be cruel. 3) *volgere*, liter.: to turn, here: to feel. 4) to seem. 5) wicked. 6) convenient. 7) *significare*, to signify, here: as if he would say. 8) *schiena*, the spine, chine, figur. for back. 9) I perceived. 10) *un misto*, a mixed feeling. 11) hint. 12) *nell' atto*, at the moment. 13) *siffatto*, of this kind.

Era Svizzero, di famiglia contadina, avea militato contro a' Turchi sotto il generale Laudon a' tempi di Maria Teresa e di Giuseppe II, indi in tutte le guerre dell' Austria contro alla Francia, sino alla caduta[14]) di Napoleone.

14) *la caduta,* the downfall.

Dialogo.

Quale fu la prima impressione che fece a Silvio Pellico il suo carceriere?
Aveva ragione?
Che gli disse il prigioniero?
E che rispose il carceriere?
Di che cosa s'accorse Silvio, quando il carceriere gli porse la brocca?
Quanti anni aveva il vecchio?
Come si chiamava?
Di che paese era?
Che narrò poi Schiller al prigioniero?
Sotto qual generale aveva militato?
Quali furono le guerre che aveva vedute?

Eleventh Lesson.

Indefinite Pronouns.

As we said in the First Part, Less. 26, some of these very numerous words are always *adjectives*, i. e., they are never used without *substantives;* others, however, are *real pronouns*, and some of them may be employed as *adjectives* or as *pronouns.* If used with substantives, they are called *conjunctive,* if without, *absolute* indefinite pronouns.

1) ***Ogni,*** every, is always *conjunctive* and used in the Singular only, as:

Ogni uomo, every man: *ogni città,* every town.

Note. Before *numerals,* like: *ogni cento anni,* and in the word *Ognissanti,* All-Saints'-Day, it is found in the Plural. With *ora* (hour) it is contracted into *one* word: *ognora,* always, and it is also followed by conjunctions and adverbs, as: *ogni qualvolta,* every time: *ogni dove,* everywhere etc.

2) ***Ognuno, a,*** every one, is always *absolute* and used in the *Singular without the article,* as: *ognuno lo dice, ognuno lo vuole.* A very rare form is *ognunque* for *ognuno.*

NB. Sometimes *everybody* or *every one* is rendered *negatively* by *non è chi . . . non*, as:

***Non è chi** al primo vederlo **non** lo discerna* (M.).
Everybody perceives it at first sight.

(*Lit.* There is nobody who would not etc.)

In such a case the verb following *non* should be put in the *Subj. mood.*

3) ***Ciascuno,***[1]) ***a,*** or *ciascheduno, a,* every one, is *conjunctive* as well as *absolute.* In the latter case it is used of *persons* only, in the former of persons as well as of things, as:

Ciascuno (or *ciascheduno*) *parla della sua generosità.*
Every one speaks of his generosity.

Ciascuna volta che lo vidi.
Every time I saw him.

4) ***Nessuno** (nissuno), **niuno** (neuno), **veruno,*** and ***nullo****), none, nobody, no one, are *conjunctive* as well as *absolute,* and employed in the Singular only.

Except *nullo* which may be plural, if it means vain, naught, as: *le sue speranze sono nulle,* his hopes are naught. But in this case *nullo* is an adjective.

All these words are negative, and *veruno* is the most emphatic negation amongst them, corresponding to the English *none at all.* The learner should not forget that these pronouns, when before the verb, do not take the negative particle *non* (See I. P., page 64, 2), as:

Nessuno (niuno, veruno) vi crede, nobody believes you. But: ***Non** vi crede **nessuno.***

NB. Persona with *non* (like the French *ne — personne*) occurs but rarely, as:

*Nella qual casa **non** dimorava **persona.*** (Bocc.).
In which house there lived nobody.

5) ***Alcuno,***[2]) ***a,*** any one, somebody, a few, several, many a, etc., is *conjunctive* as well as *absolute,* and used in both numbers. With the negative particles *non, nè,* etc. it means *none, nobody.* Examples:

---

*) After the word *senza,* and in sentences implying a question, prohibition, or doubt, these words lose their negative signification, and mean any one, any. Ex.: *Senza verun amico,* without any friend; *era qui nessuno?* has any one been here?

1) Lat. *quisque unus.* 2) Lat. *aliquis unus.*

Alcuni dí questi ragazzi, several of these boys.
Alcune ragazze, a few girls.
Non conosco alcuno, I don't know any one.
Conoscete alcuno? do you know any one?

Alcuno is also found with a *neuter* signification, as:

Era alcun che ne' suoi occhi.
There was something in his look.

6) ***Qualcuno,***[1]) ***a,*** or *qualchedúno, a,* any one, anybody, is *absolute* and used in the *Singular* only, as:

È ella stata da qualcheduno?
Have you been to see anybody?

(Occasionally *qualcuni, e,* may be found; these forms, however, are not quite correct.)

Remark. In poetry and in the loftier style *somebody, some one, anybody, any one,* are translated: *v'è (c'è) chi,* and negatively: *non c'è chi, non v'è chi,* as:

Non c'è chi venga con me? Will nobody come with me?
(*N'y a-t-il personne qui vienne avec moi?*) (See 2.)

7) ***Qualche,***[2]) any, is only conjunctive and used in the Singular, but for both genders, as:

Avete qualche libro, have you any book?

When joined with *cosa,* it means something, as:

Qualchecosa di buono, something good.

Seldom *uno* is found before *qualche,* as:

Una *qualche significazione,* a certain signification.

8) ***Chiunque,***[3]) ***chicchessía****), and ***chi si voglia,*** whoever, whosoever, are invariable for both genders, *absolute* and Singular, as:

Chiunque tu sia, whoever you be.

9) ***Qualunque,***[4]) whoever, whatever, every, is *conjunctive* and invariable for both genders, Singular and Plural. Ex.:

Qalunque libro, any book whatever.

Qualunque siano le vostre ricchezze. However great your riches may be.

Remark. For euphony, a word may be inserted between *qualunque* and its substantive, as in the last example.

---

*) Derived from *chi che sia,* whoever it be: French, *qui que ce soit.*

1) Lat. *qualisquam unus.* 2) Lat. *qualisquam.* 3) Lat. *quicunque.* 4) Lat. *qualis unquam.*

When no substantive is used with *qualunque*, this pronoun is *absolute*, and *qualunque* should be followed by *di*, as:

Qualunque di questi libri, whichever of these books.

10) ***Qualsisía*** and ***qualsivóglia***, plur. ***qualsisíano*** and ***qualsivógliano***. These compounds*) have almost the same signification as *qualunque*, as:

Lo studio di qualsisía or *qualsivóglia arte.*
The study of any art whatever.

Qualsisíano i dolori che abbiate.
Whatever be your sufferings.

For the sake of greater perspicuity we give here the foregoing words arranged according to their signification:

1) Each, every { *ogni* (always conj.). *ognuno* (abs.). *ciascuno*, *ciascheduno* abs. and conj. *tutto*. *chiunque, chicchessia, chi si voglia* (abs.). *qualunque* (conj.). *qualsisía, qualsivóglia* (conj.).

2) None, no one, nobody { *nessuno*, *niuno*, *veruno*, *nullo* abs. and conj. *alcuno*, with the negation.

3) Anybody { *alcuno* (absolute and conjunct.). *qualcuno*, *qualcheduno* absolute. *qualche* (conjunct.).

Further peculiarities are presented by:

1) ***Tutto***, in the Singular whole, all**), in the Plural all, requires the article before the following substantive, and is *absolute* as well as *conjunctive*, as:

---

*) Properly speaking, *qual si sia, qual si voglia*, whatever it be, whatever one pleases.

**) Sometimes *tutto* is used in the Singular without an article before the substantive, and then signifies *ogni*. Ex.: *tutt' uomo*, every one; *tutta Italia*, all Italy. — As an adverb *tutto* is invariable; except for euphony's sake, as: *tutta sbalordita*, quite confused *(f.)*. — Similar rules obtain with *tout* in French.

Tutta la casa, the whole house.
Tutti gli uomini, all men.
Così fan tutte, liter. so they *(fem.)* do all.

2) ***Tutto quanto, tutta quanta,*** pl. *tutti quanti, tutte quante,* means all, altogether; this pronoun is commonly *absolute,* though some examples may be found, where it appears *conjunctive;* in gender and number it agrees with the substantive to which it belongs. Ex.:

Ho veduto tutti quanti (f. inst. *i soldati*).
I have seen them all (altogether).

Le signore sono state derubate tutte quante.
All the ladies [without exception] have been robbed.

Ha venduto tutta quanta la roba.
He has sold all the luggage.

Note. Tutto quanto is more emphatic than *tutto.*

3) ***Tanto,*** (*cotanto*), ***altrettanto,*** as much as, so much, ***quanto,*** how much. These words are *conjunctive* as well as *absolute.*

Mi diede tanto danaro, he gave me so much money.
L'ho veduto tante volte, I have seen him so many times.
Un tanto re, so great a king.
Quante lagrime, how many tears!

Egli ritornò con altrettanto danaro.
He came back with quite as much money.

Quanto ho da pagare? what (how much) am I to pay?
Tanto, so much.

Observation. Tanto and *cotanto* often correspond to the adverbs so, so much, so very. In this case *quanto* means how, how very, and sometimes concerning, in as much as; being followed by the Dative. Ex.:

Egli è tanto ammalato, he is so ill.
Deve soffrir tanto, he must suffer so much.
Il fanciullo gli piacque cotanto, the child pleased him so much.
Tanto meglio, so much the better.
Tanto peggio, so much the worse.
Quanto (inquanto) a me, non andrò, as for me, I shall not go.

4) ***Tanto — quanto, tanto — che,*** are always separated by a word, and are rendered by: as well — as. In this adverbial signification they are *invariable.* Ex.:

I cibi ***tanto*** *cotti* ***quanto*** *crudi.*
Eatables, cooked as well as raw.

Tanto *gli uni* ***che*** *gli altri.*
The one as well as the other.

Tanto — quanto, when meaning *as much*, pl. *as many — as*, is an adjective, and therefore agrees with the noun, as:

Io ho ***tanto*** *danaro* ***quanto*** *voi.*
I have as much money as you.

Avrò ***tanti*** *amici* ***quanti*** *voi.*
I shall have as many friends as you have.

5) ***Per quanto,*** however, howsoever, whatever, is always invariable when placed as an *adverb* before an adjective or another adverb. Yet *per quanto* may occasionally be used as an adjective, in which case it is translated *whatever*. Examples:

Per quanto caro mi sia, however dear he be to me.
Per quanto gli dica, whatever I may tell him.
Per quanto è in mio potere, whatever is in my power.
Per quanti sforzi egli faccia, whatever efforts he may make.

Quantunque, which is always invariable, does not differ in its signification from *per quanto*.

6) ***Alquanto, a,*** is *conjunctive* as well as *absolute*, and used in both genders and numbers. If conjunctive, it means: *some, a little, few, several;* if absolute, *a few, several*. Ex.:

Mi dia alquanto danaro, please, give me a little money.
Alquanti signori lo vedevano, several gentlemen saw it.

Absolute:

Alquanti erano venuti, a few had come.
Alquante partirono, several (ladies) departed.
Mi diede alquanto di birra, he gave me some beer.

NB. Alquantuno (contr. from *alquanto* and *uno*) is *absolute* and means *any one*. This form is very rare.

Traduzione. 86.

1. Not every father is so kind as I (am). In this world every one must endeavour to fill his place worthily. Everybody knows that (the) winter begins on All-Saints'-Day. Everybody speaks of his good heart, but nobody will speak of his mind. Espronceda entered (fr. *entrare in . . .*) the city of Lisbon without having *(Infin.)* there any friend, any acquain-

tance. Has anybody been here? No, nobody was here. All my efforts have been useless. Have done with your stories! You well know that nobody believes you. Do you know any of these gentlemen? I know none of them. Have you any relation at Milan? Is there anything better than the friendship of a virtuous man? Whoever has *(Sogg.)* told you this tale, — he is a liar. You may be sure that he does not like *(voler bene)* you.

2. However skilful he be, yet he will not be able to do that. We were all quite surprised. However amiable those ladies be, yet they have their faults. Each of these words has its signification. The wise man does not fear men, however mighty they may be. (The) men, however great or little they be, are well aware (from *sentire*) that they want one another. The count had given orders to receive well everybody, whoever he might be, during his absence. Regulus was firm, however great *(perquanto)* the promises were that the Carthaginians made him. The friends as well as the enemies of this man were moved by his fate. Shall you ever (*mai*) have seen as many towns as I? Whatever I tell him, (yet) he does what he pleases (*volere*). Give me some more beer. His words pleased me so much, that I embraced him. How odious this man is to me!

Reading Exercise. 87.

Le mie prigioni.

Capo 57.

Arrivammo al luogo della nostra destinazione il 10. d'Aprile.

La città di Brünn è capitale della Moravia, ed ivi risiede il governatore delle due province di Moravia e Silesia. È situata in una valle ridente, ed ha un certo aspetto di ricchezza. Molte manifatture di panni prosperavano (*were flourishing*) ivi allora, le quali poscia decaddero; la popolazione era di 30 mila anime.

Accosto alle sue mura, a ponente, s'alza un monticello, e sovr' esso siede l'infausta rocca di Spielberg, altre volte[1] reggia[2] de' Signori[3] di Moravia, oggi il più severo ergástolo[4] della monarchia austriaca. Era citadella assai forte, ma i Francesi la bombardarono e presero a' tempi della famosa battaglia d'Austerlitz (il villaggio d'Austerlitz è a poca distanza). Non fu più restaurata da[5] poter servire di fortezza; ma si rifece[6] una parte della cinta[7], ch'era diroccata. Circa

1) formerly. 2) residence. 3) princes. 4) prison, jail, dungeon. 5) in order to . . . 6) to rebuild. 7) wall, rampart.

trecento condannati, per lo più[8]) ladri ed assassini, sono ivi custoditi, quali[9]) a carcere duro, quali[9]) a durissimo.

Il carcere duro significa essere obbligati al lavoro, portare la catena a' piedi, dormire su nudi tavolacci[10]) e mangiare il più povero cibo. Il durissimo significa essere incatenati, con una cerchia[11]) di ferro intorno a fianchi, e la catena infitta nel muro. Il cibo è lo stesso, quantunque[12]) la legge dica: pane ed acqua.

8) the greater part, mostly. 9) some . . . some; some . . . the others. 10) a wooden couch. 11) ring. 12) in so far as.

Dialogo.

Come si chiama la capitale della Moravia?
Qual' è la situazione della città?
Vi sono molte manifatture?
Quanti abitanti aveva la città a' tempi di S. Pellico?
Dov' è lo Spielberg?
Che era altre volte quella fortezza?
Da chi fu bombardata quella cittadella?
In che anno si diede *(was fought)* quella battaglia?
Da chi fu vinta *(won)*?
Che gente si trovava allora allo Spielberg?
Che cosa vuol dire essere condannato a *carcere duro?*
Che significa *carcere durissimo?*
Quale osservazione grammaticale si può fare intorno alla voce „carcere"?

Twelfth Lesson.

Indefinite Pronouns continued.

1) ***Altro, a,*** the other, another, is *absolute* as well as *conjunctive,* and refers equally to persons and things. When used *without* the article and in the Singular, it means *something else, a different thing,* as:

Altro è criticare, altro scrivere.
Criticising and writing are different things.
È tutt' altro, that is something quite different.

Senz' altro means: without further observation, *per altro,* besides, *altr' altro,* any other thing.*)

*) In conversation the Italians often employ the word *altro!* or *altrochè!* which correspond to the English *of course! to be sure!*

Altra (femin. Sing. without the article) means *another*, i. e. *lady, girl*, etc., as:

Altra non vuole (Gold.), he will not take another.

Noi and *voi* sometimes precede the Plur. *altri, e*, in order to express *difference* or *community* of *sex* or *nation*, as:

Voi altri Inglesi, ye English.
Noi altre donne, we that are ladies.
Noi altri non andremo, as for us, we shall not go.

(French: Nous *autres* Français; vous *autres* femmes; nous *autres*, nous n'irons pas.)

Altri, another, *absolute* and *without* the article, is *masculine* and always *singular:*

Se altri lo dicesse, if another (gentleman, boy etc.) said so.

NB. 1) Rarely *altri* is found with the signification *one, people, they, many a man etc.*

Altri non vede, many a man does not see.

2) *Altri — altri* often means *the one — the other;* as:

***Altri** piange ed altri ride.*
The one cries, the other laughs.

2) ***Altrui,*** another one, other people, Singular and *absolute, without* the article and only in the Nominative case (See Less. 26. I. P. p. 112).

NB. Frequently the *prepositions* are omitted before *altrui.* Thus we may say indifferently:

*Gli **altrui** difetti* or *I difetti **altrui**.*
The faults of others.

L'uno e l'altro, both, one and the other, are absolute and conjunctive, Singular and Plural, as:

L'uno e l'altro lo disse, both said so.
Parlo dell' uno e dell' altro, I speak of both.
Dall' una e dall' altra parte, from both sides.

4) ***Entrambi*** (*entrambo* is obsolete), both. This pronoun is only *masculine* and *absolute*, with the same signification as *l'uno e l'altro*, which latter, however, is more frequently used. Ex.:

Un solo trono non ci può tener entrambi.
One throne is not wide enough for both (liter.: can't keep us both).

5) ***Ambe,*** both, is only feminine, *conjunctive,* and requires the article after it, as:

Ambe le sorelle, both sisters.

Commonly *ambe* is followed by *due,* as:

Ambedue le lingue, both languages.

Note. Ambo, Singular, means a double number in the lottery. *Ambo,* Plur., is used both with masculine and feminine substantives, as *ambo i fratelli,* both (the) brothers; *ambo le sorelle,* both (the) sisters. In modern Italian, *ambi,* Plur. masc., and its compounds: *ambidui, ambedue, ambedui, amboduo, ambodue, ambiduo, ambidue, amendue, amendune, amenduni* etc., are commonly replaced by *tutti e due.*

6) ***L'un l'altro,*** one another, mutually, are used in both genders and numbers and always *absolute,* as:

Ci amiamo l'un l'altro (fem. *l'una l'altra*).
We love one another.

The pronouns *ci, vi, si,* corresponding to the respecting person of the verb, cannot be omitted.

Again,

1) ***Tale*** *(cotale),* such, such a one, is *absolute* as well as *conjunctive,* and employed with or without the *definite* and *indefinite* article, as:

Tal libro, such a book.
Tali (tai) quadri, such pictures.

Un tale, f. *una tale,* is more emphatic than *tale,* as:

Un tale abito, such a coat!

When used with the definite or indefinite article, with *questo* or *quello,* and followed by no substantive, it corresponds to the English *a certain, What 's his name,* as:

La signora tale, Mrs. What 's her name.
Il tale mi disse, a certain person told me.
Un certo tale, un tale è quì, a certain gentleman is there.

2) ***Altrettale*** means *the like, the equal, of the same kind,* is *absolute* and takes the article, as:

I cotali sono già giudicati; gli altrettali aspettano la sentenza.
These are judged already; their equals (those of the same stamp) await the sentence.

Cotale rarely occurs with the article. Sometimes it is used *adverbially,* as:

Un cotal pocolino sorridendo mi disse . . .
Smiling almost imperceptibly he said to me.

3) ***Taluno, certuno,*** many a one, some one, a certain, etc., is generally *absolute,* without the article, and only used of persons, as:

Taluno non vuol credere, many a man will not believe.

4) ***Parecchi,*** fem. *parécchie,* many a . ., several, divers, is used in the Plural only, *conjunctive* and *absolute,* and takes no article, as:

Parecchi dicono, several say so.

Parecchi de' miei scolari.
Some, several, a few pupils of mine.

Vi sono stato parecchie volte.
I have been there several times.

Remark. Many a . . ., most (with the Plural following, as: *most men . . .*) cannot be literally translated, because the Italian language has no proper word for it, and must therefore be periphrased. Thus: *Many a peasant is poor,* is rendered either by:

***Più d'un** contadino è povero,* more than one p. is poor, or
Molti contadini sono poveri, many p. are poor, or
Parecchi contadini sono poveri, several p. are poor.

Many a man is translated *taluno* or *parecchi* (with the verb in the Plural); or elegantly *tale* (French *tel*). Ex.:

Tale ride oggi che non riderà più domani.
Many a man laughs to-day that will no more laugh to-morrow.
(Tel rit aujourd'hui qui ne rira plus demain.)

Mostly is translated *per lo più* (the obsolete article *lo* instead of *il*) or *la maggior parte* (the greater part). Ex.:

They were mostly robbers or murderers.
Erano per lo più ladroni od assassini. (S. Pell.)

La maggior parte di queste dame . . .
The majority of these ladies.

Phrases like: *I who . . .*, *che who . . .*, where a great stress is laid on the personal pronoun, always require *che* after the personal pronoun, whilst in English the relative pronoun may be omitted, as:

He, the greatest man of his age (he who was the greatest etc.)
Egli, che fu il più grand' uomo de' suoi tempi.

Finally, he learner is requested to note the following Italianisms:

Quanto c'è da Londra a Parigi?
How far is it from London to Paris?

Vi ho cercato per ogni dove.
I have looked for you everywhere.

Non può gettar la colpa sopra di chicchessia.
He cannot lay it to anybody's charge.

Non vuol far altro che mangiare.
He will do nothing else but eat.

Vi darò un tanto il mese.
I shall give you so much a month.

Di qual professione sei? what is your profession?

Quanto è bello questo giardino!
How beautiful this garden is!

In tal guisa (modo), in this way.
A tal fine, for that purpose.
A tal segno che, so that . . .
Tant' è, briefly then . . .
Di tanto in tanto, from time to time.
Un tantino, a trifle, a little bit.
Quanto prima, soon, as soon as possible.

Traduzione. 88.

1. Ye Frenchmen will always laugh at (*burlarsi di*) (the) other nations. Tell me, Sir, how far is it from Venice to Verona? Many a mother has lost her child. Many people think (*credere*) (that) they have (*Inf.*) nothing else to do than to enjoy themselves. From time to time I like to see the old man. When shall you come back? I hope to come back soon. I will have nothing to do with others, and besides, my time does not allow me to accept visits. Jesus Christ said: You shall love (*Imperative*) one another. Both were excellent generals; only (that) the one was more fortunate than the other.

2. Most men will (i. e. wish to) reap without sowing (*Infinit.*).*) It is mostly (a) mere fancy, if one thinks a loss irreparable (*transl.* that a loss be irrep.). Many a man sees and yet (*però*) will not believe. (The) Count So and so has spoken with the Marchioness So and so. I that have always done my duty, am neglected and despised by you. In this (*tale*) way you will never succeed. Never tell others (*Dat.*) thy most secret thoughts. Briefly then, I won't! A certain gentleman has inquired after you. Many a man who would deceive others, is deceived himself. I should not believe it, if another had said (so) it.

Reading Exercise. 89.

Continuazione del capo 57.

Salendo[1]) per l'erta di quel monticello, volgevamo gli occhi addietro per dire addio al mondo, incerti se[2]) il bárratro[3]) che ivi c'ingoiava si sarebbe mai più schiuso per noi. Io era pacato[4]) esteriormente, ma dentro di me[5]) ruggiva[6]). Indarno[7]) volea ricorrere alla filosofia per acquetarmi; la filosofia non aveva ragioni sufficienti per me.

Partito di Venezia in cattiva salute il viaggio m'aveva stancato[8]) miseramente. La testa e tutto il corpo mi dolevano; ardea[9]) dalla febbre. Il male fisico contribuiva per tenermi iracondo[10]), e probabilmente l'ira aggravava il male fisico.

Fummo consegnati al soprintendente dello Spielberg, ed i nostri nomi vennero[11]) da questo inscritti. Il commissario imperiale ripartendo ci abbracciò ed era intenerito: — Raccomando a Lor Signori particolarmente la docilità, diss' egli; la minima infrazione alla disciplina può venir punita dal signor soprintendente con pene severe.

Fatto la consegna, Maroncelli ed io fummo condotti in un corridoio sotterraneo, dove ci s'apersero due stanze non contigue (*separate*). Ciascuno di noi fu chiuso nel suo covile[12]).

1) walking up. 2) whether. 3) the abyss. 4) calm. — 5) within, in my heart. 6) *ruggire*, to roar with rage. 7) in vain. 8) fatigued. 9) *ardere*, to glow. 10) *tener iracondo qdn.*, to keep one in a state of rage. 11) *vennero*, were (See On the Pass. voice, p. 114, *Note*). 12) den.

Dialogo.

Quale era lo stato della salute di Silvio Pellico, quando partì di Venezia?

*) For the English *pres. part.* when governed by a preposition, the *Infinitive Mood* is always used in Italian.

Che fecero i prigionieri mentre salivano l'erta del monticello?
Di che dubitavano?
Era tranquillo S. Pellico?
Poteva tranquillizzarsi con ragionamenti filosófici?
A chi furono consegnati i prigionieri?
Allorchè partì il commissario imperiale, che cosa disse loro?
Perchè?
Dove furono condotti poi?
Restarono insieme?

Thirteenth Lesson.

On Adverbs. On the Negation.

Page 124, *Note 2* we hinted, that in Italian *adjectives* are often employed instead of *adverbs*. Such is the case in a great many expressions, as:

Andar presto, to walk fast.
Costare caro, to be dear (*of price*).
Saper buono / *Sentir buono* } to smell agreeably.
(*Saper di qlchs.*), to have a strong smell of someth.
Cantar falso, to sing false.
Volar basso, to fly low.
Parlar forte, to speak loudly.
Parlar piano (pian piano), to speak in a low voice.
Veder chiaro, to see clear.
Scrivere dritto, to write evenly or straight.
Tenersi dritto, to stand upright, etc.
Andar zoppo, to limp.
Andar curvo, to walk bent down.

Observation. In Italian as in English there are a great number of adverbial expressions (*locuzioni avverbiali*), formed by the prepositions *di, a, da, fra, per* with substantives and adjectives. We here add some of those most in use:

Fuor di misura / *Oltre misura* } beyond measure, extremely.
A buon mercato, cheap.
Da capo, from the beginning, once more.

A bocca, by word of mouth.
Per or ***di sólito,*** usually.
Da senno, in earnest.
Da scherzo, in fun.
Credere di sì, di no, to think so, not to think so etc.

The Italians sometimes use the adjective instead of the *adverb*, if the idea expressed by the latter refers to the *substantive* rather than to the verb, as:

Egli perdonò ***generoso*** *al suo offensore.*
He generously pardoned his offender.

Ha pagata ***cara*** *la sua villania.*
He has dearly paid his rude behaviour.

Andammo ***tranquilli*** *a casa.*
We went home quietly.

The *highest degree possible* is expressed by the Superlative *without* the article, as:

Quanto ***più presto*** *potrò,* as soon as I shall be able.
Più celatamente che potéano, as secretly as they could.

On the Negation.

1) The negative particle not is rendered by *non* and precedes the verb:

Non *voglio,* I will not.

NB. Non also means *no* (as an answer), and is stronger than *no*, as:

Non, *Signore!* Oh no, Sir!

2) The negation is emphasized by the addition of the words *punto,* at all; *nulla* or *niente,* nothing; *neppure,* not even, nor either; *già,* scarcely, and *mica,* not, which latter, however, is hardly used in writing. Each of the words here enumerated takes its place after the verb, which should always be preceded by *non*, as:

Non *credo questa nuova,* I don't believe this news.
Non *credo* ***punto*** *questa nuova,* I don't at all believe this news.
Non *lo crederò* ***mai,*** I shall never believe it.
Non *è* ***mica*** *una beffa,* it is no mockery at all.
Non *l'ho neppure veduto,* I have not even seen him.

3) The simple particles *Sì* and *No* are rendered more emphatic by the addition of *mai* (the French *mais*), as:

Mai sì, oh yes! ***Mai no,*** oh no!

By *già* the negation becomes less emphatic. These phrases have no equivalent in English and must therefore be periphrased; thus:

Non gli farà già male.
I think it will not do him any harm.

4) If *negare* is combined with a negation, *non* is commonly inserted in the subordinate sentence; for instance, *non nego che egli non mi abbia avvertito*, or . . . *ch'egli mi abbia avvertito.*

5) After words implying *fear*, *care* etc., *non* sometimes follows, as: *Temo che non venga*, I fear that he may come.

Yet in this case the negation may be omitted. If the subordinate sentence itself is negative, the verb is placed in the future tense, as: I fear he will not come, *temo che non verrà.*

6) If *dubitare* has the meaning of *to doubt*, the construction is as in English: *dubito che venga*, I doubt that he may come.

7) But if it has the meaning of *to fear*, it is construed like *temere.* Ex.: *Dubito che non venga*, I fear that he may come.

NB. Non dubitare often corresponds with the English to be without fear, as: *non dubiti, Signore*, never fear, Sir! never mind, Sir!

8) The double negation *nè — nè*, neither — nor, requires *non* before the verb, as:

Non voglio bere nè vino nè birra.
I will drink neither wine nor beer.

Nor — either is commonly translated *nè anche*, as:

Nor I either, *nè anch'io* or *nè anche me.* (Also: *neppure io, nemméno io.*)

Contrary to the English construction, *non* may be used:

1) After the comparative of *augmentation* or *diminution* (See II. P. Less. 9, 1) in the *second* part of the sentence, if there is no negation in the *first*, as:

He is richer than I thought.
Egli è più ricco ch'io non pensava.

2) If, on the contrary, the first part of the comparison is negative, no negation is required in the second, as:

Egli ***non*** *è* ***più*** *ricco ch'io pensava.*
He is not richer than I thought.

(Or: ***di quel che*** *io pensava*, which would be quite as correct.)

On ***più, meno,*** and ***assai.***

These adverbs are also used as *adjectives* with nouns, as:

Più *uomini;* ***meno*** *donne,* more men; less women.
Assai *cavalli,* many horses.

Preceded by the article, *più* and *meno* become a kind of *Superlative,* and the English nominative is then rendered by the *genitive* case, as:

Il più degli uomini, most men.

Assai now means *very* (and not *enough* like the French „*assez*"). When used with a noun which is preceded by an *adjective*, it means *many* and should be followed by *di*, as:

Assai ***di*** *buone ragioni,* many good reasons.

Without *di* it means *very*, as:

Assai *buone ragioni,* very good reasons.

Observations.

1) *Già* is also used as an adjective and means *ancient,* as:

Il ***già*** *palazzo del Doge.* (S. Pell.).
The ancient palace of the Doge.

(*Poi,* too, is sometimes used adjectively, with the signification „the following, the latter" etc.).

2) *Peggio* and *meglio* are sometimes real substantives, importing an *abstract* idea of good or bad, as:

Non cambierò il meglio per il peggio.
I shall not change the better for the worse.

Traduzione. 90.

1. Do not walk so quickly, Sir, I cannot follow you. The songstress sang false, but nevertheless she was begged to (sing once more) repeat the whole song. This flower does not smell agreeably. The footman had a strong smell of wine

at 8 o'clock in the morning (already). Stand upright, young gentleman! Why do you speak so low? Cannot you speak louder? I cannot see clearly into the whole affair. That is insipid beyond all measure. The soldiers bravely seized their arms. Do you speak in earnest or in fun? I should not at all like to be laughed at.

2. In earnest, Sir, will you take (*condurre*) your cousin with you to Fiume? I think I shall (*credo di sì*), for I cannot leave him alone at Vienna. I have bought this hat very cheaply. I do not deny that you are right, but I deny that your brother (is) be wrong. Do you believe what he told you? Oh no! I do not believe it at all, and shall never believe it. How can you speak of a poet without having read him? (See the *Note, Traduz. 88, 2*). Neither Charles nor his brother has done it. But I have not done it either! You are more clever than I thought. To read (*la lettura di*) Tasso in Italian is not so difficult as I thought. Play the sonata once more! Usually we write every fortnight, but now we must write every week. There were more gentlemen than ladies. Most pupils like *reading* better than *writing* (Infin.). You have very good reasons, but you have not many good reasons.

Reading Exercise. 91.

L'incendio.

Novella di Francesco Soave.*)

Érasi una notte ad una casa di poveri abitanti appreso [1]) violentissimo fuoco.**) Da una stanza a pian terreno ov'era stato mal spento e mal ricoperto, cominciò questo ad appigliarsi [2]) ad alcune vicine legna, quindi all' áride [3]) masserizie [4]) che eran d'intorno, e giunto [5]) all' uscio ed abbruciátolo [6]), si propagò alla scala, ch'era di legno anch' essa [7]), e per questa salendo portò [8]) la vampa [9]) su fino [10]) al tetto.

Gli abitatori, ch'erano tutti nel primo sonno, destati dal fumo e dal crépito delle fiamme, corsero per salvarsi alla scala, e trovándola incendiata, incominciarono da ogni parte a mettere [11]) altissime strida. Atterriti i vicini dallo schiamazzo [12])

1) *Erasi* (= *si era*) *appreso*, was broken out. 2) to communicate itself. 3) dry. 4) old things, trumpery. 5) got. 6) *abbruciatolo*, being burnt down. 7) *anch' essa*, likewise. 8) *portò*, i. e. *il fuoco portò la vampa*, the fire propagated its flames. 9) *la vampa*, the flame. 10) till up. 11) *mettere strida*, to scream. 12) *schiamazzo*, a deafening noise.

*) Author of the *Novelle morali*, a collection of moral tales for young people; born 1743, deceased at Modena 1806.

**) The learner should observe the construction of the first sentence, which is remarkable for its total inversion, the regular construction being: *Violentissimo fuoco si era appreso una notte ad una casa di poveri abitanti.*

si alzano, e accorrendo si véggono innanzi [13]) la scena più spaventévole che fosse mai veduta; il pian terreno già tutto a fuoco, che comunicato si era alle contígue [14]) stanze e per le soffitte [15]) già propagávasi ai piani superiori; il tettò sormontato [16]) da altissima fiamma, destata [17]) dal fuoco che asceso [18]) éravi per la scala, e le finestre tutte ripiene di gente, che chiusa tra due fuochi e priva [19]) dell' único scampo [20]), che la scala avrebbe potuto somministrare, gridava disperatamente, chiedendo aiuto.

Non furono lenti [21]) a recare subitamente chi [22]) d'una chi d'altra parte scale a mano [23]), che applicate alle finestre diédero campo a quegl' infelici d'uscirne e di salvarsi. Alcuni de' più coraggiosi pur*) si calárono [24]) per le funi; quei che si trovavan alle finestre più basse, per esse d'un salto balzárono a terra; tutti in fine chi per un modo o chi per un altro avventuratamente [25]) campárono [26]).

13) *si véggono innanzi*, instead of *veggono innanzi a se*, they see before themselves, before their eyes. 14) adjacent. 15) ceiling. 16) surmounted. 17) *destare*, liter.: to awaken, here: to produce. 18) *ascendere*, to mount, to get. 19) *privo*, deprived. 20) issue. 21) *Non esser lento*, to hasten. 22) *chi — chi*, some — the others. 23) *scala a mano*, a ladder of ropes. 24) *calare*, to fall, to decrease; *calarsi*, to get down. 25) fortunately. 26) *campare*, to escape.

Dialogo.

Dove proruppe una notte il fuoco?
In che piano?
Che cosa fecero gli abitanti?
Poterono scappare?
Che fecero allora?
Furono intesi?
Che aspetto si offerse loro?
Quali mezzi presero i vicini per salvarli?
E furono salvati?
E che fecero quelli che si trovavano alle finestre più basse?
*La***) camparono tutti quanti?

---

*) *Pure* is often used in Italian without any special signification, merely to render the expression somewhat more forcible.

**) See Less. 9, II. P. 10, and pg. 240, 11.

Fourteenth Lesson.

On Prepositions.

In Less. 32, I Part we have seen that a very limited number of Italian prepositions simply govern the Accusative case, and that by far the greater part require another preposition after them. Over and above the true prepositions, there are a good many *prepositive locutions*, i. e. adverbs used with *di*, *a*, and *da*, or *adjectives* and *participles* used as prepositions. We now subjoin an alphabetical list of all these words with the prepositions governed by them. They are:

A / *ad* at, in etc. See Less. 4, II P.

accanto a / *allato a* near, aside. — *Accanto al muro*, near the wall.

anzi, before. — *Anzi la festa*, before the feast. *Anzi* is seldom used as a preposition; *avanti*, *innanzi*, and *dinanzi* are preferred.

appo, near (now obsolete).

appresso, see *presso*.

avanti, before, occurs with *di* and also with *a*. — *Avanti di* me, before me; *avanti alla casa*, before the house.

Circa, towards, about, concerning, governs the *Acc.* — *Circa la faccenda*, concerning the matter. Seldom with *a*, as: *Circa alla sua condotta*, as to (concerning) his behaviour.

contro (contra), against. — *Contro la verità*, against truth. — Before person. pronouns also with *di*, as: *contro di me*, against me, and seldom with *a*, as: *contro al destino*, against fate. NB. *Contra* is less in use than *contro*.

Da, from, at, by, since. See Less. 4, II P.

dattorno, near, in the neighbourhood, takes *di* and *a*, as: *dattorno al (del) mio paese*, in the neighbourhood of my village.

davanti, before, governs the *Acc.* and besides *di*, *a*, and (rarely) *da*, as: *Davanti il, del, al, dal* (seld.) *giúdice*, before the justice (*davante* is obsolete).

dentro, in, within, commonly with the *Accus.*, but also with *di* (before person pron.) and *a*, as: *dentro di me*, within me (my heart); *dentro al (il) mio cuore*.

di, of, see Less. 4, II P.

dietro, behind, commonly with *a*, as: *Dietro alla casa*, behind the house; seldom with the *Acc.* or with *di* (with pers. pron.): *dietro di me*, behind me.

dinanzi, before; commonly with *a*, as: *dinanzi al re*, before the king. Sometimes with the *Acc.* Frequently this word denotes *preference*, as: *Lo amò dinanzi agli altri suoi figli*, he loved him better than his other children.

dopo, after, behind. — Commonly with the *Acc.*, as: *dopo il re*, after (behind) the king; also with *di* (pers. pron.), as: *dopo di Lei*, after you (*dopo lei*, after her). With *a* it signifies *place*, as: *Dopo al re venivano i cortigiani*, after (behind) the king came the courtiers.

Entro, in, within; commonly with *a*, as: *Entro a due mesi*, within two months.

Fino (also *sino* and joined with *in* = *infino*, *insino*; with *per* only *persino*, even), means *till*, *until*, and governs *a*, as: *fino alla città*, as far as the town. — With *da* it signifies *from*, as: *fin da quel tempo*, from that time. When used as an *adverb*, this word means *even*, as: *L'ho fino accolto in casa mia*, I have even received him in my house. — *Fino* with the *Accus.* is very rare.

fra (infra), between; among. — Commonly with the *Accus.*, as: *fra la casa ed il giardino*, between the house and the garden. With *di* before pers. pron., as: *dissero fra di loro*, they said to each other. *Tra* is only another form of *fra*.

fuori (seld. *fuora*, and absol. *fuore*), out of, outside. — Commonly with *di*, as: *fuori d' uso*, out of use. (*Fuora* is an exclamation frequently heard at the theatre, if an actor or singer is »encored«).

Giusta, conformably, agreeably (*giusto* is obsolete), only with the *Accus.*, as: *giusta la prescrizione*, in conformity with (conformably to) the prescription.

In, in. Only with the *Accus.* (See Less. 4, I P.). *In* is frequently coupled with *su* and in this case signifies *on*, *upon*, or *towards*, as: *In sulla tavola*, on (upon) the table; *in sulla sera*, towards the evening. With *da* it means *till*, *up to*, as: *Da trenta in quaranta franchi*, 30—40 francs.

incontro (incontra), against, contrary to; opposite; as: *incontro al suo volere*, contrary to his desire; *incontro al palazzo*, opposite (to) the palace. — *Andare all' incontro di* . . . means: to go to meet somebody.

infra, see *fra*.

innanzi, before (of time), commonly with the *Accus.* (*a* not excluded). Ex.: *Innanzi (a) quel tempo*, before that time.

In all other significations it takes *a*, as: *L'amo innanzi ad ogni altro*, I love him more than any other.

intra, see *tra*.

Lungo, along, governs only the *Acc.*, as: *Lungo (a lungo) la spiaggia*, along the shore.

Oltre (antiq. *oltra*), above, besides, commonly with *a* and also with the *Accus.*, as: *Oltre a due mesi*, more (longer) than two months; *oltre le sue forze*, above his strength. — Seldom with *di*, as: *Oltre di ciò*, besides that. (*Oltre a ciò* is commonly contracted: *Oltracciò*.*)

Per, for, though, governs only the *Acc.* (See Less. 4, I P.).

presso, near, governs the *Accus.*, as: *presso la chiesa*, near the church. — Frequently also with *a*, as: *presso alla città*, near the town. — Seldom with *di* (bef. pers. pron.), as: *presso di me*, near me. When meaning *about*, it requires *a*, as: *presso a* 12000, about 12000. *Appresso*, adverb, sometimes signifies *after*, as: *appresso la cena*, after supper. — *A un di presso*, is an Italianism and means *about, near, almost.*

Secondo, conformably, according to, governs only the *Accus.*, as: *secondo la stagione*, conformably to the season.

senza, without, commonly with the *Accus.*, as: *senza danaro*, without money. With pers. pron. it takes *di*, as: *senza di te*, without thee.

sopra (sovra), on, upon, above; governs the *Accus.*; rarely with *di* and more seldom still with *a*, as: *Scagliarsi sopra il nemico*, to rush upon the enemy; *sopra del tetto*, upon the roof; *sopra al monte*, on the mountain.

sotto, under, beneath, commonly with the *Acc.*: *sotto la tavola*, under the table. Before pers. pron. also with *di*: *guardate sotto di voi*, look beneath you. Very seldom with *a*.

su (rarely *sur*), on, upon. — Commonly with the *Acc.* Before pers. pron. also with *di*, as: *Su di me*, upon me. (*Su* with *in* see *In*).

Tra, see *Fra*.

Verso, towards, with the *Acc.* — Before pers. pron. with *di*, as: *verso di me*, towards me.

Note. *Adjectives* and *Participles* used as Prepositions *all* govern the *Accus.* Such are: *Durante*, during; *eccetto*, except; *mediante*, by means of; *nonostante*, notwithstanding; *rasente*, along, and *salvo*, except (the French *sauf*), as: *Durante l'inverno*, during the winter, *rasente il muro*, along the wall etc.

---

*) As we already hinted, the first consonant of the *second* component of contracted prepositions, adverbs etc. is commonly doubled: thus *Oltre a ciò*, contr. *oltracciò*.

In order to assist the pupil in correctly translating the English prepositions most in use, we subjoin an alphabetical list of them with their respective translation:

At, usually *a:* at dinner, *a pranzo;* at school; *in iscuola;* at about six o'clock, *verso le sei;* at Turin, *a Torino.*

By, with the Passive voice, is translated *da,* as: by my father, *da mio padre.* By night, *di notte.* By God, *per Dio.* Word by word, *parola per parola.* By, meaning near, is *presso:* By the bridge, *presso il (vicino al) ponte.* By land or water, *per mare e per terra.* Denoting a means, it is commonly *con,* as: By force, *con forza;* by practice, *con esercizio.*

In, when speaking of a town, is commonly *a:* In Paris, *a Parigi.* In London, *a Londra.* When speaking of a country it is always *in,* as in English. Ex.: In Spain, *in Ispagna.*

Into is *in,* as: Put it in into your pocket, *mettételo in tasca.*

On, when meaning upon, is *su,* as: On the table, *sulla tavola;* when meaning close to, it is likewise *su,* as: Frankfort on the Maine, *Francoforte sul Meno.* Denoting time it is commonly suppressed, as: On Monday, *Lunedì.* On Tuesday, *Martedì.* On which day? *qual giorno?* Other phrases are: Go on! *avanti!* On my arrival, *al mio arrivo.* On horseback, *a cavallo.* On foot, *a piedi.* On that condition, *con questa condizione.*

To, when denoting a direction to a town, is *a;* to a country, *in,* as: I go to Paris, *vado a Parigi.* We go to London, *andiamo a Londra.* I go to Spain, to America, *vado in Ispagna, in America.* To a person's house is *da,* as: I go to my aunt's, *vado da mia zia.* I was at your house, *Io fui da voi* (also *a casa vostra*). *Da,* however, cannot be employed when the dwelling-place of the *speaker* is meant; it would be incorrect to say: *Io fui da me,* I was at home; it should be: *a casa mia.*

With is commonly *con,* as: He went with me, *egli andò con me.* Frequently it is translated *di,* especially after verbs and adjectives, as: Satisfied with a little bread, *contento d'un poco di pane.* Filled with gold and silver, *pieno d'oro e d'argento.* To begin with, *cominciare con.* With me, with thee, with him, *meco, teco, seco* (Latin *mecum, tecum,* etc.) In Poetry also: *nosco, vosco* for *con noi, con voi.*

Traduzione. 92.

1. I write to my brother. I am at my brother's. Are you going to the milliner's? Do you recollect (*di*) the promises

you gave (made) me? I have been four years at Frankfort on the Maine. At the ball I found a gentleman whose acquaintance I had made on the road; we supped at his expense. He came up to (*accostare qchdn.*) me with the words: Have you any money about (*con*) you? For want of a regular occupation, he is travelling throughout the whole year (*da un anno all' altro*). Amongst (*presso*) the Turks one may find very singular customs. We arrived at Venice by night. We do not fight against truth and right, but against wrong and calumny. By four o'clock in the afternoon, about (*all' incirca*) two hundred persons had arrived. The English poet Chatterton died in the prime of his age (*ne' suoi verd' anni*). We were on the point of (*in procinto di . . .*) departing (*Inf.*). On his head he had an enormous fur-cap, and in his hand he held a mighty stick.

2. What will you do with so many books? Are you not satisfiel with those you have? He began to sing an opera-tune in (a) loud voice. (In) this year we shall set out for America. How much have I to pay for these flowers? At your pleasure (*a piacere*). He said that by and by (*presto o tardi*) he should get the situation. This day week (*oggi otto*) we shall have Easter. He sent one messenger after another. For God's sake (*per l'amore di Dio*), stand out of the way! The books lay all pellmell (*alla rinfusa*) on the sofa. From (*fino da . . .*) the 12th of July we shall live in the country. He was beside himself with joy. Shall you go there in a carriage or on horseback? On horseback, and for that purpose (*a tal uopo*) I have already bought a horse.

Reading Exercise. 93.

Continuazione della Novella „l'Incendio".

Sol (= soltanto) rimanévano due fanciulli che in una piccola stanza trovávansi al più alto piano. Il loro padre, assente allor col padrone [1]) a cui serviva, avéali per loro disavventura [2]) lasciati soli. Non potendo essi per alcun modo aiutarsi, col pianto e colle strida chiedévano l'altrui [3]) soccorso, ma, benchè ognuno de' circostanti sentisse per compassione strapparsi [4]) il cuore, niun sapeva come camparli (*to save*). Altra uscita non aveva la cámera dov' essi erano, che sopra una lóggia [5]) di legno che tutta già era preda [6]) del fuoco: nè alla cámera per altra via potéasi penetrare, se non entrando per la finestra d'una stanza vicina che ad essa comunicava. Ma oltre che [7]) questa era altissima [8]), già le fiamme vi si erano intro-

1) master. 2) bad luck. 3) other people's. 4) to rend, to break. 5) an open gallery. 6) *la preda,* the body, prey; *preda del fuoco,* seized by the fire. 7) *oltre che,* not only . . . 8) very high up.

dotte e manifesto[9]) sembrava il pericolo di perder se stesso a chi[10]) avesse voluto per questa via cercar la loro salvezza[11]).

Sopravvenne in questo punto Monsignor d'Apchon, e al vedere in sì terribil frangente[12]) i due miseri fanciullini, si sentì tutto commuover l'ánima di pietà insieme e d'orrore. Non gli parendo[13]) dall' altro canto sì evidente il pericolo di chi *(for him who . . .)* affrettato si fosse[14]) a liberarli, incominciò a proporre ad alta voce, per animare qualcuno all' impresa, il premio di cento luigi d'oro. Non vedendo niuno muóversi a tal profferta[15]), dubitando[16]) non si credesse proporzionata al rischio la ricompensa, ne promise tosto dugento. Ma questo pure non valse[17]), che (*inst. of* perchè) troppo ognuno s'avea cara[18]) la vita, nè a qualunque costo[19]) sapea indursi con tanto pericolo ad avventurarla.

Scorgendo[20]) inútile ogni promessa, il piissimo e valorosissimo prelato: a Dio però non piáccia, esclamò, che noi abbiamo quì tutti si neghittosi[21]) a mirare[22]) quelle due vittime sventurate perir colà tra le fiamme. Ciò che altri non osa, saprò osarlo io stesso, e fatte[23]) presto con corde unir due scale, chè (*i. e.* perchè) una sola fin colà giúgnere non poteva, applicolle (*see Less.* 23, 4. *I. P.*) alla finestra della stanza, ch'era contigua, e su ascésovi[24]) animosamente, per essa in mezzo alle fiamme sen corse[25]) al luogo, dov' essi erano, e un di lor recándosi[26]) sulle spalle, e l'altro in braccio, giù per la scala medésima, fra lo stupore e le acclamazioni del pópolo attonito e intenerito, amendue portósseli[27]) a salvamento.

9) *il pericolo sembrava manifesto,* the danger seemed evident. 10) *a chi,* to him who . . . 11) *cercare la loro salvezza,* to seek their safety, i. e. to try to save them. 12) *frangente,* imminent danger. 13) *parendo* fr. *parére,* to seem. 14) *affrettato si fosse,* had hastened. 15) *profferta,* the offer. 16) *dubitare,* to suppose. 17) *valse* fr. *valére,* to be of use. 18) *aversi caro qchs.,* to love, to fear for . . . 19) price. 20) *scorgere,* to perceive, to see. — 21) *neghittoso,* afraid, faint-hearted. [The construction of the above sentence is properly: *Che qui noi tutti sì neghittosi abbiamo a* (should, liter. had to . . .) *mirare . . .*] 22) to see, to look at . . . 23) *fatte unir due scale,* after having two ladders bound together. 24) *su ascesovi,* having climbed up. 25) *sen corse,* for *se ne corse,* he ran to . . . 26) *recandosi,* taking. 27) *portosseli* = *se-le-portò,* he brought them.

Dialogo.

Non era rimasto nessuno in casa?
Perchè erano rimasti soli?
Che fecero quei poverini?
Furono soccorsi?
Era dunque impossibile d'entrare nella loro stanza?
E non si poteva entrar alla camera per altra via?
Chi sopravvenne in questo punto?

Trovò egli i mezzi per salvare i fanciulli?
Fu chi si animasse (*was anybody encouraged*) all' impresa pericolosa per questo premio?
Che disse allora il prelato?
Ed entrò infatti nella casa incendiata?
Riuscì nella nobile sua impresa?
Vedendo ciò, non ebbero vergogna i pusillánimi?

Fifteenth Lesson.

On Conjunctions.

The most important observations on this part of speech have been made in the First Part, Lesson 33. We now add some peculiarities in the use of the conjunctions:

1) ***Che*** generally governs the following verb in the Subjunctive Mood; especially

a) if the first part of the sentence expresses something *uncertain* or *doubtful*, thus after all words importing *fear*, *fancy*, *belief*, *hope*, *command*, *prohibition*, *doubt*, *prayer*, etc., as:

Dubito ch'egli dica la verità.
I doubt whether he speak the truth.

Dicono che la guerra sia dichiarata.
They say that war is declared.

Voglio che vi andiate, I wish you to go there.

b) In expressions importing a *desire* or *threat*, where in English the conjunction is commonly omitted, as:

Che Dio ti benedica, God bless you.
Ch'egli non sia introdotto, he must not be introduced.

(*Che,* like *se,* is frequently omitted, as: *dubitai, fosse effetto d'un nobile perturbamento.* I thought [doubted whether] it was the effect of some noble impulse).

c) On the contrary, *che* governs the Indicative Mood, if something is represented as beyond all doubt, as:

So, ch'egli non era a casa.
I know that he was not at home.

So, che la guerra è dichiarata.
I know that war is declared.

Vedremo, ch'egli è innocente.
We shall see that he is innocent.

d) Such is also the case when a *future action* is expressed, as:

Sono persuaso, ch'egli non lo farà.
I am sure that he will not do it.

As already observed (First Part, Less. 33) the Italian conjunctions are mostly *compounds* of *che* with other words. It therefore frequently occurs, especially in Poetry, that the simple conjunction *che* is used instead of its compound, as:

Che non rispondi? why *(perchè)* do not you answer?

Che l' ciel gli dié favor. (Tasso.)
Because *(perchè)* heaven gave him grace.

Rallentate il passo, che vi possa seguire.
Slacken your pace that *(affinchè)* I may be able to follow you.

e) Frequently *che* (with the *Indicat.*) obtains in sentences, where this conjunction unites two *principal* sentences, whereof the second expresses a *consequence* of the first, as:

Domándami francamente, ch'io ti risponderò.
Ask me freely, and I shall answer you.

f) Very often *che* is met with after a *substantive* denoting *time*, where the English idiom requires *that* or *when*, or where the conjunction is *omitted*, as:

Il primo giorno che uscì.
The first day (that, when) he went out.

g) A peculiar construction is *che* immediately after a *participle*, which then agrees in gender and number with its complement following or understood, as:

Detta che ebbe la parola, no sooner had he said the word.
Trovata che l'avremo (Bocc.).

As soon as we shall have found it (*viz.: la pietra*, the stone).

Here *che* with the Participle is used instead of an *adverb* of time or manner such as: *tosto che*, *subito che*, *appena che*, etc. (See Less. 23, II P. On the Participle).

1) Joined with *non* („*non che*") this conjunction forms Italianisms, which must be periphrased with *far from, let alone, to say nothing of, not to mention that, much less* etc.

Non gli era stato detto cosa che potesse indurre augurio ***non che*** *sospetto di sciagura* (M.).
He had been told nothing that could seem a foreboding, let alone an anticipation of misfortune.

Non che *pensare a trasgredire una tal legge si pentiva anche dell' aver ciarlato* (M.).
Far from thinking of disobeying a similar order, he even repented that he had spoken (of the matter).

Pensi ***non che*** *a soccorrere altrui,* ***ma*** *a mantener se stesso.*
Instead of thinking how to assist others, he had better look to himself.

2) ***Perchè*** is interrogative as well as affirmative. In the former signification it signifies why?*) in the latter because or for. If the question be direct, *perchè,* of course, governs the Indicative Mood. Ex.:

Perchè avete scritto così male?
Why have you written so badly?

Perchè non aveva tempo, because I had no time.

If, however, the *principal* sentence expresses a *doubt* or an *uncertainty, perchè,* in the *accessory* sentence, governs the Subjunctive mood, as:

Non so, perchè abbia detto ciò.
I don't know why he has said so.

If *perchè* expresses the *reason* of anything, it is translated *because, for, wherefore, as,* etc. Ex.:

Non posso venire, perchè non ho tempo.
I cannot come, for I have no time.

Aprite la finestra, perchè fa troppo caldo nella stanza.
Open the window, for it is too hot in the room.

*) The English why, when, used as an *Interjection*, f. ex.: Why! You do not mean to say so? is either suppressed or rendered by *pure,* now and then by *come,* as: *Non vorrà pur dire che la sia così? Come? Ella si sente male?* Why, you don't feel well?

Finally, *perchè* is rendered by *to* with the *Infinitive*. In such a case *perchè* governs the Subjunctive Mood, as:

Quest' uomo è troppo onesto, perchè abbia potuto commettere una tale azione.
This man is too honest to have committed such an action.

Un abito fatto perchè duri a lungo.
A coat made to last long.

Note. *Perchè* rarely signifies *although* or *though*, as: *A lui non si può torre suo pregio, perchè a noi l'andar si tolga (Bocc.).* One cannot deprive him of his value, although one forbids us to go to him. (Literally: *although one takes away from us the going there*). Seldom *perchè* means *so that*, as: *La finestra era molto alta di terra, perchè come la donna cadde .... morì* (Bocc.). The window was very high from the ground, so that the woman died, when she fell out of it. — In this sense *per il che* may be used, as: *Per il che alla prima meraviglia la seconda si aggiunse*, so that to the first surprise there came a second one.

3) The difference between *poichè* (French *puisque*) and *perchè* is, that *poichè* represents the reason as *already known*. It therefore governs the Indicative, as:

Poichè questo è accaduto, non posso partire.
As this (thing, circumstance etc.) has happened, I cannot depart.

Note. In poetry *poichè* also means *after*, as: *La quale morì poichè Lambertuccio*, (she) who died after L. — Also *posciachè* is found in this sense, as: *Poscia ch'ebbi alcun riconosciuto*, (after) when I had known one (of them) (*Dante*). Sometimes *poichè* is written in two words, as: *Poi adunque che il senso è necessario*, now that good sense is necessary.

4) ***Come*** or ***siccome,*** over and above its original idea of *comparison*, occasionally expresses a *reason*, in which case it is translated *as*, *since*, or *because*, as:

Come era stanchissimo, mi coricai alle 8.
As (since) I was very tired, I went to bed at 8 o'clock.

Come che (*comecchè*) means *although, though*, as:

Ella medica non era, come che medico fosse il marito (Bocc.).
She was no physician, although her husband was.

5) ***Se,*** if, expresses *condition* and governs the *Present*, if a *Present* or *Future tense* follows in the accessory sentence, as:

Se infra otto giorni non vi guarisco, fatemi bruciare.
If within a week I do not cure you, you may have me burnt. (*Bocc.*).

Note.

Non — se non means *nothing — but*, as:

***Non** vidi **se non** fiamme,* I saw nothing but flames.

Se non che means: *what a pity that . . .*, as:

*Luci beate e liete, **se non che'l** veder voi stesse v'è tolto!*
You happy and joyful eyes! What a pity that you cannot see yourselves! (*Petr.*).

Se often means whether, as:

Non so se sia innocente o colpevole quest' uomo.
I don't know whether this man is innocent or guilty.

(The Subjunctive mood is used, because the innocence or guilt of the man is doubtful.)

6) ***Quando***, denoting *time*, is the English when, and should not be mistaken for ***quanto***, how much, as:

Quando è arrivato il generale?
When did the general arrive?

Perchè non vieni quando ti chiamo?
Why don't you come when I call you?

Note. Allorchè denotes the time more exactly than *quando*, as: *Allorchè era ammalato*, when (at the very time) I was ill.

Quando — quando means *now — now*, as:

***Quando** con trombe e **quando** con campane.*
Now with trumpets and now with bells (chime).

Quando che sometimes occurs instead of *quando*, as:

***Quando ch'**io penso all' infimo mio stato.*
When I think of my very humble condition.

Note. Di quando in quando means *from time to time.*

Quantunque means though, although, with the Conjunctive following, although the Indicative is not excluded, as:

Quantunque non mi abbia risposto.
Though he has not answered me.

Whereas:

Quantunque il re Agramante non abbonda di capitani.
Although king A. has no abundance of generals.

Very seldom *quantunque* is an adjective, but only in the *Plur. femin.* and in this case means *how many times, how often* etc., as:

***Quantunque** volte meco pensai!*
How many times did I think . . .

7) ***Mentre** (mentre che),* whilst, denotes *time,* as:

Mentre (ch')egli era in Ispagna.
Whilst he was in Spain.

If the accessory idea of *comparison* between two objects or *actions* is added to the primitive idea of contemporaneity, *intanto che* is preferable to *mentre,* as:

Intanto che (frattanto che) egli era in Ispagna, suo fratello percorreva la Svizzera.
Whilst he was in Spain, his brother wandered about in Switzerland.

Note. Mentre is sometimes a *substantive* and should be rendered by *meanwhile,* as:

***In questo mentre** mi fu detto.*
Meanwhile I heard (they told me).

8) ***Dunque***, thus, therefore, consequently, so, refers to something preceding, as:

Dunque, non c'è da sperare pace?
So (thus) we cannot hope for peace?

Note. In this case *dunque* always begins the phrase. When placed *after* the verb, it means: but, or is omitted, as: *Va dunque,* go along! begone! (French: *va donc!*) (This construction is very rare.)

9) ***Però***, *yet, however,* is better placed after the verb than before it, as:

*Mi fece molte promesse, vorrei **però** che mi desse una prova sicura delle sue intenzioni. (Cantù.)*

He gave (made) me great promises, yet I wish he gave (would give) me a sure proof of his intentions.

Note. Però sometimes replaces *perciò,* therefore, as:

Ogni cosa perduta si può ricoverare, ma la vita no; però (= perciò) ciascuno deve . . .
Everything may be recovered, except life; therefore every one should . . .

Very seldom *perciò* like *però* means *however, yet* etc..

10) ***Pure,*** which is often pleonastically employed, means but, as:

Vatta pure, but go! Please begone!
È pur troppo vero, it is but too true.

Rarely *pure* means likewise or also, as:

Questo pure è vero, that is likewise (also) true.

Tuo cognato pure vi era, your brother-in-law was there too.

From *pure* is formed ***eppure,*** and yet, for ex.: *eppure si move* (la terra)! and yet it moves (the earth)! (Galilei).

Traduzione. 94.

1. I would (that) you went with me. What do they speak about (*di che cosa*) in town? They say that (the) peace is concluded at Paris. I do not doubt one instant that each of his words be the strictest truth. Though I do not believe you, I shall nevertheless trust you this time. Do you know that Lord Stratford has set out for Constantinople? I am fully convinced that your plan will succeed. Tell me, my friend, why cannot you find any pleasure (*gusto*) in these comedies? Because they want all that is requisite for good comedies. (Do) write me from time to time, that I may know how you are. As you cannot give (*addurre*) any reasonable support to your affirmation, you will allow me to stand by my opinion (*stare fermo in . . .*). Shut the door, for there is a draught (*tira l'aria,* lit. the air draws). You are too generous to make a bad use of your advantage. As you do not like to tell me what you mean, I shall also be silent. Being tired (*transl.* as I was . . .) of his eternal reproaches, I took my hat and went away. If you do not come, I shall write (to) you. If the fortress of Silistria had been taken, the Oriental war would have come to another end (*aver altro ésito).*

2. If you knew how much I loved you, you would not doubt of my sincerity. If he would, he could come [along] with us. I do not know whether Gœthe is a greater poet than Shakespeare. When we (are writing) will write, all must be quiet around us. Christ was born at Bethlehem, when Herod reigned over (*in*) Judæa. Whilst you slept, a thief has stolen my gold watch with its chain. Whilst (*mentre*) some (the ones) plunge into useless speculations, the others merrily enjoy (of) their lives. So you will not obey the wishes of your parents? He does not write to me, therefore I cannot inform you of his actual circumstances. No (*nessuna*) hope ever comforted him with *(lo confortò mai di . . .) a relief of his pains (minor*

pena) and *by far less* (See 1. *i.*) *with (di)* repose. Though I do not trust you (*fidarsi di . . .*) any more, yet I will still believe you this time. Be (but) gone, nothing will befall you *(Dat.) (sarà fatto).*

Reading Exercise. 95.

Lettera del Ganganelli*) sopra l'Italia.

Non può far meglio, Signor Abbate, per distrarsi dagl' impacci[1]) e dalle inquietudini, che viaggiar[2]) l'Italia. Ogni uomo ben istruito debbe[3]) un omaggio a questo paese tanto rinomato e tanto degno di esserlo, ed io ce (*here*) la vedrò con indicibil piacere.

A prima vista[4]) scorgerà que' baluardi[5]) dati dalla natura negli Appennini e quelle Alpi che ci dividono dai Francesi e ci meritarono[6]) il titolo d'Oltramontani. Questi son tanti monti maestosi, fatti per servire d'ornamento al quadro ch'essi contornano[7]): i mari sono altrettante[8]) prospettive che presentano i più bei punti di vista[9]) che interessar possono i viaggiatori ed i pittori. Nulla di più ammirabile che un suolo il più fertile sotto il clima più bello, ovunque[10]) intersecato[11]) di vive acque, ovunque popolato di villaggi e adorno**) di superbe città: tal[12]) è l'Italia.

Se tanto in onore vi fosse l'agricoltura quanto l'architettura; se diviso non fosse il paese in tanti governi diversi, tutti di varia forma e quasi[13]) tutti déboli[14]) e poco estesi, non si vedrebbe la miseria al fianco[15]) della magnificenza e l'industria senza attività; ma per somma disgrazia più si è atteso[16]) all' abbellimento delle città che alla coltura delle campagne, e da per tutto[17]) gl' incolti terreni rimpróverano[18]) agli abitanti la loro infingardággine (*improvidence*).

Se Ella entrerà da Venezia, vedrà una città única al mondo per la sua situazione, la quale è appunto[19]) come un

1) inconvenience. 2) to travel (through). 3) for *dere*, owes. 4) sight. 5) bulwarks 6) *meritare*, to merit, here: to procure. [In French, *mériter* is used in the same way.] 7) to surround. — 8) as many. 9) *un punto di rista*, a fair prospect. 10) everywhere. 11) intersected. 12) such. 13) almost. 14) weak. — 15) at the side of . . . 16) one is more attentive. 17) everywhere. 18) to rebuke. 19) exactly.

*) *Pope Clemens XIV*, born at Arcangelo near Rimini. His letters, models of the elegant Italian style of the 18th century, are not universally believed to be authentic.

**) A considerable number of verbs contract the terminations of their *past part.* in *ato* into *-o*, and thus appear as *adjectives.* Such are: *adorno* (for *adornato*, embellished); *tronco* (for *troncato*) maimed, lamed; *dimentico*, forgotten (also *forgetting*); *netto*, clean; *colmo*, accumulated; *privo*, deprived, and others. (See page 87, 5.)

vasto naviglio che si riposa tranquillamente sull' acque ed a cui non s'approda[20]) che per mezzo[21]) di navigli.

Ma non sarà questa l'unica cosa che La sorprenderà.

20) *approdare,* to approach. 21) by means.

Dialogo.

Qual è il consiglio che il Ganganelli dà all' abbate Ferghen?
Perchè lo invita a viaggiar l'Italia?
Qual è il primo aspetto dell' Italia?
Perchè gl'Italiani sono chiamati Oltramontani?
Che dice il G. delle Alpi?
Che dice egli dei mari itálici?
Che dice intorno allo stato politico del paese?
Quali sono i rimproveri che fa a' suoi compaesani?
Che dice egli dei Veneziani?
A che cosa paragona egli la città di Venezia?
Come appródasi a Venezia?

Sixteenth Lesson.

On Complements of verbs. *Complementi.*

§ 1. Frequently the *verb* of a sentence requires another word whereby the sense is *completed.* In the phrase, *The boy strikes . . .* one word more must be added, in order to complete the sense of the verb. This word answering the questions *whom?* or *what?* is the *complement of the verb*, and commonly stands in the *Accusative case.* It is called *Complemento diretto* (direct complement). In the above sentence: *Il ragazzo batte il cane,* the word *il cane* is the *complemente diretto* of *batte.* — Only *active verbs* need a complement of this kind.

§ 2. Very frequently, however, the sense is not entirely completed by the addition of a word in the *Accusative case*, and therefore a second complement is requisite, usually appearing in the *Dative case.* Thus in the sentence: *Carlo da un libro*, the nearest and most important complement (*un libro*) is already given, but nevertheless a second complement is necessary, in order to complete the phrase. This second or *accessory* complement is here *a suo fratello.*

§ 3. Sometimes the Italian construction greatly differs from the English. In the latter language the Dative often *immediately* follows the verb, for instance in the sentence:

N. *Dat.* *Acc.*
Charles gives his brother a dollar.

In Italian the *Accusative case* (Object): *uno scudo* precedes the *oblique case* (Dative or Genitive): *a suo fratello.* Thus:

N. Acc. Dat.
Carlo da uno scudo a suo fratello.

§ 4. If the English verb has *two direct* complements, whereof the one is a *person*, the other always appears in the *Accusative case* in *Italian*, **and the person is added in the Dative.** Thus the sentence:

Charles teaches his brother the Italian language,

is translated:

Carlo insegna la lingua italiana a suo fratello.

Note. 1) If the complement importing *no person* is a *verb* in the *Infinitive Mood*, it should be preceded by ***a***, as:

Insegno a mio fratello a leggere.
I teach my brother reading.

2) If an *active* verb is accompanied by another *active verb* (commonly appearing in the *Part. pres.*), *each* of them may have its own *direct complement*, as:

I saw him (1. compl.) beating his horse (2. compl.).
Lo vidi battere il suo cavallo.

(The learner should observe that in such a case the English *present participle* must be rendered by the Italian Infinitive Mood.)

§ 5. The construction of the two verbs *fare*, "to make", "to let" (*to cause* a thing to happen) and *lasciare*, "to let" (*to allow* a thing to happen or to be done) is of a particular importance, as: I make you brush your coat, that is: I compell you to brush your coat, or: I are allow you to brush your coat. Here three distinctions are to be made.

a) If in a sentence which is constructed with *fare* and *lasciare* there is only ***one*** object, whether direct or indirect, the construction is as in English:

I made the physician come.
Fèci venire il medico.

I let the bird fly away.
Lasciai volar via l'uccello.

I caused a letter to be written to my brother.
Feci scrivere una lettera a mio fratello.

b) But if there are two objects, the question is whether the one which is governed by *fare* or *lasciare* is expressed by a pronoun and marks an active being. If this is the case, the dative is always employed, though the accusative be used in English:

I made him write a letter.
Gli feci scrivere una lettera.

I caused a letter to be written to him.
Gli feci scrivere una lettera.

The context will make the true meaning apparent.

Note. The *object-pronouns* are always placed before the verbs *fare* and *lasciare*, and are never coupled with the following infinitives. Ex.:

Gli farò scrivere; lo farò venire, etc.

c) If in the phrase constructed with *fare* and *lasciare* there are two objects, and the active being is expressed by a *substantive*, it must generally be placed in the Abl. case (with *da*).

I caused my brother to write a letter.
Feci scrivere una lettera da mio fratello.

I caused my mother to buy a book for the teacher *(f.)*.
Feci comprare da mia madre un libro per la maestra.

The Dat. may be used instead of the Abl., if no misunderstanding can possibly arise. This construction is often used by older writers:

Fece agli schiavi battere il traditore.
He ordered the traitor to be beaten by the slaves.

Lasciate fare a me.
Let me do it.

Observation.

It is a peculiarity of the Italian language that subjects and objects in the *Plural* are often used with verbs in the *Singular*, which then become a kind of impersonal verbs, not unlike those construed with the reflective *si* (see the Reflect. verb I. P. p. 117, 2). Ex.:

Che ***imbrogli*** *ci* ***può*** *essere? (M.)*
Which impediments can there be?

E poi mi ***tocca*** *dei* ***rimproveri*** *e peggio. (M.)*
And then I meet with reproaches and still worse.

Quanti ***conti*** *s'***ha** *da rendere! (M.)*
How many things one must account for!

E poi, non ci ***sarà*** *più altri* ***impedimenti?*** *(M.)*
Well, and there will be no more impediments?

Sperava che oggi ***si sarebbe*** *stati* ***allegri*** *insieme. (M.)*
I hoped that we should all be merry to-day.

On the Inversion.

The members of a sentence are in general placed after the principal rule: *The* ***governing*** *word stands before the* ***governed.*** (Except the Personal Pronouns, See I. P. Less. 23). Thus the members of a regularly constructed sentence appear in the following order:

1) Nominative case (Subject).
2) Verb (Predicate).
3) Accusative case (Object, direct complement, *complemento diretto*).
4) Dative or Genitive case (indirect complements, *complementi indiretti*).

This regular construction, however, is very seldom strictly observed. On the contrary, the Italian language arranges the members of a phrase with the greatest license, and there are so many deviations from the regular construction (called *Inversions*), that it is utterly impossible to fix any rule. *Euphony* and *distinctness* alone are the laws to be observed. The learner may compare the following sentences:

A. Regular construction.	*B.* Inversion.
Quelli che avevano contribuito al bene della patria.	*Quelli che al bene della patria contribuito avevano.*
S'egli osò pure inalzare il fronte audace di tempo in tempo.	*Se l'audace fronte osò pure di tempo in tempo inalzare.*

Those who had contributed to the welfare of their country.

If even he dared to raise from time to time his audacious front. (See the Note.)

These inversions are not only found in poetical language, but also in simple Italian prose. For the pupil, however, it will be safest to follow the rules of regular construction, till by reading good Italian authors he is enabled to employ inverted constructions.

Note. If in emphatic speech the Accusative *precedes*, and the verb follows immediately, a personal pronoun should be added in order to avoid misconception, the Accusative and Nominative being alike in Italian; thus:

Queste sette medaglie le troverò.
As for those seven medals, I am sure to find them.

La vostra paga l'avrete questa sera.
As for your pay, you shall have it this evening.

Traduzione. 96.

1. Does your brother teach (the) Italian (to) your sister, or your sister (to) your brother? He taught me reading *(Inf.)* and writing. The soldiers elected the sergeant (as) captain. He ordered his brother to do it. Have you ordered your footman to fetch the bread? I allowed the poor woman to take the wood. Let me do (it), Sir! I shall make him conceive (*intendere*) it! Why have you *sent for (far venire)* the tailor, if you will not let him make the coat? Has he ordered the soldiers *to be shot (fucillare,* actively)? No, he ordered the soldiers to shoot the spy. Did you see the poor child fall? No, but I saw the workman take it up. Yesterday I saw my friend depart.

2. I heard many gentlemen praise the painting. The lady heard her husband saying, that he would still depart to-day. Have you seen your brother painting *(Infin.)*? This is the count's portrait; he had it done by a clever painter. I told *(fare)* the servant to (post) carry the letter to the post-office immediately. The merchants get *(far venire)* several goods from Italy. I shall always act, as I have seen you acting. I heard the unhappy man praying God to end his misfortune.

Reading Exercise. 97.

I lavori.*)

Quanto più la società s'avanza, più (*the more*) le arti crescono, ed i lavori si suddividono. Guai (*it would be bad*, lit. *woe!*) se l'istesso uomo avesse a lavorare la lana[1]) finchè è ridotta[2]) in una veste! Basterebbe appena un anno! Al contrario tu vedi il pastore allevare le pécore e tosarle[3]); quel vello[4]) è dato al battilano[5]) che l'ugne e lo batte: un ciompo[6]) lo péttina e cardassa[7]); altri lo fila[8]); altri lo tinge: poi que' fili sono dall' orditore[9]) disposti sovra l'orditoio[10]). Il falegname[11]) e il tornitore[12]) hanno già preparate il telaio[13]), i péttini, le cálcole[14]), le cássidi[15]), il subbio[16]), la spola[17]), con cui il lanaiuolo[18]) fábbrica la pezza del panno. Poi l'accimatore[19]) ne agguaglia[20]) i filamenti[21]): il qualchiere[22]) lo purga ed apparecchia, facéndolo sodare[23]) sotto lo strettoio[24]): altri lo piega, poi si dispone ne' magazzini, o va dal ritagliatore[25]), il quale lo vende a minuto[26]) al sartore[27]), che te ne taglia una giubba[28]) alla moda.

Supponi che un uomo solo dovesse fare degli spilli[29]). Avrebbe a scavar[30]) i sassi[31]) che contengono il rame[32]), separarlo dalle altre materie, mescolarlo[33]) colla terra detta[34] giallamina[35]) per dargli il colore dell' ottone[36]); poi arroventirlo[37]), bátterlo passarlo per una filiera[38]) in modo da rénderlo tondo e sóttile, quindi tagliarlo a pezzetti; poi quanta pazienza per fare a ciascuno la punta, e peggio ancora il capocchio[39])! Quanti stimi[40]) che un uomo ne finirebbe in un dì? Venti sarebbe gala[41]): e poi, come fatti! Or bene dividendo i lavori in modo che ciascuno attenda ad uu' operazione distinta, dieci persone unite fanno in un giorno quarantotto mila spilli. Ciascuno occupandosi sempre della stessa cosa vi si perfeziona, e se ne possono comperare mille per

1) the wool. 2) wrought into ... 3) shear them. 4) wool in fleece. 5) wool-carder. 6) dresser. 7) *cardassare* (better *cardare*), to card. 8) to spin. 9) weaver. 10) wool-weaver's loom. 11) joiner. 12) turner. 13) weaver's loom. 14) treadle. 15) the extracts (of a weaver's loom). 16) weaver's beam. 17) bobbin, spindle. 18) wool-weaver. 19) tenter. 20) to make even. 21) filament, thread. 22) fuller. 23) to full. 24) fulling-mill. 25) retail-merchant. 26) *vendere al minuto*, to sell by retail. 27) tailor. 28) a jacket. 29) pin. 30) to dig. 31) stone. 32) metal. — 33) to mix. 34) so-called. 35) ochre. 36) brass. 37) *arroventire*, to make red-hot. 38) *filiera*, a metal plate with holes in it to draw the wire through. 39) a pin's head. 40) *stimare*, to think. 41) at most.

*) By *Césare Cantù*. We here intercalate this reading exercise as a model of regular construction. The continuation of Ganganelli's letter follows in the next Lesson.

30 soldi. Quell' uomo, lavorando da solo, non guadagnerebbe[42]) un soldo al giorno; questi dieci guadagnano meglio[43]) d'uno scudo l'uno.

42) *guadagnare,* to earn. 43) *meglio,* here: more.

Seventeenth Lesson.

Verbs whereof the complements are different in both languages.

In English a great many verbs require the Accusative case, which in Italian govern the Genitive or Dative. We here subjoin the most important deviations:

A. Verbs that require the Dative case.

*Equivalére a qchs.**), to be as much worth as . . . Ex.: 10 *fiorini equivalgono a trenta lire.*

Insegnare a qdn., to instruct, to teach: *Insegno a tua cugina a scrivere.*

*Provvedére***) *a qchs.,* to provide for: *Provvedete a' vostri bisogni.*

Supplire a qchs., to suffice, etc.: *Non posso supplire a tante spese,* I am not able to bear so many expenses.

Riflettere a qchs., to reflect.: *Rifletterò a questa faccenda,* I shall reflect on this business, matter, etc.

*Soccorrere a qdn.****), to assist: *Dio! soccorri al tuo popolo!* O Lord help thy people! [*a* obtains in solemn composition].

Sopravvivere a qdn., to survive: *Non vorrei sopravvivere a mia moglie.*

Toccare a qdn., to concern: *Questo non tocca a me,* that does not concern me, that is not my business.

Ubbidire a qdn.†), to obey: *Perchè non ubbidite a' vostri maestri?*

Note. Adempire (adémpiere), to fulfil (a promise etc.) usually governs the Dative, without excluding the *Accus.* Thus: *Adempirò ai (i) miei óbblighi,* I shall fulfil my duties. — *Rassomigliare,* to resemble, governs the *Accus.* as: *Rasso-*

*) *qdn.* signifies *qualcheduno,* somebody, *qchs.* = *qualche-cosa,* something.

**) *provvedere di qchs.* means: to provide with.

***) *soccorrere* commonly governs the Acc., as in English. Ex.: *Egli soccorse i suoi amici,* he assisted his friends.

†) Occasionally also *ubbidire qdn.*

miglia un matto, he resembles a fool. If, however, the Accusative might be mistaken for the Nominative, this verb takes the Dative, as: *Il fratello rassomiglia al zio.* — *Compiacérsi*, to be so kind as, prefers *di* before the *Infinitive*, as: *Si compiaccia di udirmi*, be so kind as (please) to hear me; but the Infinitive *without* prep. is also admissible: *Si compiaccia udirmi.*

B. Verbs governing the Ablative case.

Allontanarsi, to depart from, to leave, as: *Allontanátevi da quei luoghi funesti*, leave that terrible spot.

Andare da qdn., to go to somebody's, for ex.: *vo dal medico*, I am going to the physician.

Astenérsi da qchs., to abstain: *Non posso astenermi dal ciarlare*, I cannot help chatting.

Cadére da qchs., to fall from . . . Ex.: *È caduto dal tetto.*

Cominciare da qchs., to begin by (with) . . . Ex.: *Cominciate dal primo*, begin by the first.

Derivare da qchs., to derive from . . . Ex.: *Non si può derivare questa voce dal greco?* Cannot this word be derived from the Greek?

Dispensare da qchs., to release from . . . Ex.: *Dispensatemi da questo óbbligo*, release me from this duty.

Dividere, to separate from . . . Ex.: *Dio dividerà i buoni dai cattivi*, God will separate the good from the wicked.

Guardare, to take care lest, to shun, as: *Guardatevi da questa società*, (do) shun this company, *or* avoid this company.

Liberare, to free, to deliver etc., as: *Liberátemi da questo imbroglio*, deliver me from that embarrassment.

Sbrigarsi da qchs., to get rid of . . . Ex.: *Mi sbrigherò da quella noiosa faccenda*, I shall get rid of that tedious business.

Scoppiare / *Smascellare* } *da qchs.*, to burst with . . . Ex.: *Tutti volevano scoppiar dalle risa*, all would burst with laughter.

Note. A great many verbs with *da* are also coupled with *di*, and *vice versâ*. Commonly the difference is very slight and often rather arbitrary, as we hinted when speaking of these prepositions Less. 4, II P. Such verbs are: *dipendere*, to depend; *distinguere*, to distinguish, to prefer; *giudicare*, to judge; *preservare*, to preserve; *provenire*, to come from . . .; *nascere*, to originate, to spring from; *scacciare*, to turn out; *tirare*, to draw (of the wind); *uscire*, to go out; *venire*, to come from.

Traduzione. 98.

My No is worth as much as your Yes. That regards my brother, not me. There is nothing sadder [to see] than parents who survive their own children. Who teaches your sister Italian? I shall at any rate reflect on the proposal you made me. I have always provided for the wants of my family. Yesterday one of the workmen fell from the scaffold. Tell me, why do not you get rid of friends that abuse your goodness? At which part of this work have you begun to (*a*) read? I should be very happy if I were released from this responsibility. I shall abstain from making *(Infin.)* any observation on your conduct. Are you provided with matches? The relations could not better provide for the education of the poor orphans. A just judge distinguished the guilty *(pl.)* from the innocent. Most Italian words are derived from Latin. All his faults (are) originated in his bad education. Who has taught you French? Mr. Brown, who will also teach my fellow-pupil. Do not speak any more, or he will burst with anger.

C. Verbs that govern the Genitive case.

Di is the preposition most in use after verbs. A great many of them take this preposition *elliptically* i. e. with the omission of the proper complement, Thus in the sentence: *raccontare di qualcheduno*, to tell of anybody, the real *Complemento diretto: una storia, i casi*, etc. a history, adventures, is suppressed. Some verbs followed by *di* are *Reflective* or *Pronominal*, as: *pentirsi di qchs.*, to repent; and others have their *nearer* complement in the *Accusative* and the *farther* in the *Genitive* case. Those most in use are:

Abbisognare / *Aver bisogno* *di qchs.*, to want. Ex.: *Abbisogno (ho bisogno) di tutto*, I want all.

Abbondare di qch., to abound. Ex.: *Il paese abbonda di vino.*

Abusare di qch., to abuse. Ex.: *Egli abusa della mia bontà.*

*Accorgersi**) / *Avvedérsi* *di qchs.*, to perceive. Ex.: *Mi sono accorto della sua debolezza.*

Annoiarsi di qchs., to annoy one's self, to be teased with. Ex.: *Mi sono annoiato del suo parlare*, I could not stand his way of talking.

Appagarsi, see *contentarsi.*

Arrossire di qchs., to blush for. Ex.: *Io arrossii del suo fare.*

Burlarsi di qdn. or *di qchs.*, to mock. Ex.: *Io mi burlo della sua rabbia*, I laugh at his rage.

---

*) *Scorgere*, to perceive, governs the Accus.

Cambiare di qch., to change. Ex.: *Ha cambiato di nome*, he has changed his name.

Compiacersi di (with the Infinitive following), to please. Ex.: *Si compiaccia di udirmi*, please to hear me.

Contentarsi, to be satisfied. Ex.: *Mi contenterò di due franchi*, I shall be satisfied with two francs.

NB. *Si contenti* (polite mode) often means: Be so kind as to ...

Convenire di qchs., to agree on ... Ex.: *Siamo convenuti del prezzo.*

Degnarsi, see *compiacersi.*

Discorrere di qchs., to speak, to talk of ... Ex.: *Discorremmo dello stato attuale del governo.*

Dubitare di qch., to doubt. Ex.: *Dúbito della sua veracità.*

Fidarsi di qdn. or *di qchs.*, to trust. Ex.: *Non mi fido di voi*, I do not trust you.

Giovársi, see *profittare.*

Godere di qchs., to enjoy. Ex.: *Godo della sua presenza*, I am glad to see you here (*lit.* I am glad of your presence).

Impadronirsi di qchs., to seize, to take possession. Ex.: *Egli s'impadronì del governo.*

Incaricarsi di qchs., to undertake. Ex.: *Non voglio incaricarmi di questa faccenda.*

Informarsi di qdn. or *qchs.*, to enquire after ... Ex.: *M'informerò della sua salute.*

Lagnarsi / *Lamentarsi* *di qchs.*, to complain, to lament. Ex.: *Essi si lagnano della loro crudeltà.*

Mancare, to be in want of. Ex.: *Manco di tutto*, I am in want of everything.

Maravigliarsi di qchs., to wonder, to marvel. Ex.: *Me ne maraviglio.*

Morire, to die of. Ex.: *Muoio di noia*, I die of *ennui.*

Occuparsi, to occupy one's self. Ex.: *M'occupo di studi grammaticali*, I occupy myself with grammatical studies.

Parlare, to speak. Ex.: *Di che parlate?* What are you speaking of?

Pentirsi di qchs., to repent. Ex.: *Egli si pentirà della sua bugia.*

Profittare (or *giovarsi*) *di qchs.*, to make use; to profit. Ex.: *Profitterò della buona occasione.*

Ragionare, to speak of. Ex.: *Non ragionam di lor* (Dante), We will not speak of them.

Ricordarsi di qchs., to remember, to recollect. Ex.: *Mi ricorderò sempre della sua bontà.*

Ripentirsi, see *pentirsi.*

Temére, to fear, to be afraid of. Ex.: *Egli teme di cadere*, he is afraid he might fall.

Vivere, to live upon. Ex.: *Vive di pane ed acqua*, he lives upon bread and water.

Traduzione. 99.

I always remember with joy the agreeable hours I have spent in the house of the Countess. He wondered at the levity of the young man. I would sooner doubt (of) my own existence than (of) the correctness of this principle. If you undertake this commission, you will surely repent of it. Polynices complained of the wrong his brother Eteocles had done him. With what do you occupy yourself the whole day? Just now I am occupied (*transl.* I occupy myself) with a translation of Lord Byron's 'Hebrew Melodies'. Welcome, my dear friend! I am very glad to see you. The official (*l'impiegato*) made a bad use (*abusare*) of his power; therefore the prince could not trust him any more. I was directly aware (*accorgersi*) of his intention, and blushed at so great an effrontery. Woe to the youth that derides (*burlarsi*) (the) old age! Approach (*avvicinarsi*) without fear, Miss (N.)*)! His Majesty deigns (*degnarsi*) to hear your prayer. Austria abounds in natural wealth. We agreed on the place, where we would talk (the matter over) of the matter. I profited by my brother's presence to inquire after some families I had formerly known at Verona.

D. Verbs with more than one complement.

Assistere qdn., to assist somebody. Ex.: *Assistete gli ammalati.*

Assistere a *qchs.*, to be present at . . . Ex.: *Non posso assistere alle nozze.*

Cambiare (cangiare, mutare) qchs., to change, to alter smth. Ex.: *Abbiamo cambiato le condizioni*, we have altered the conditions. *Bisogna che io cambi la camicia e le scarpe.*

Cambiare di parere, to change one's mind.

Cercare qdn., also *di qdn.*, and *per qdn.*, to look for somebody. Ex.: *Cerco di mio fratello.*

Cercare di (with *Infin.* follow.), to try. Ex.: *Egli cerca d'ingannar la gente*, he tries to cheat the people.

*Convenire***) *di qchs.* (also *in qchs.*), to agree to. Ex.: *Siamo convenuti del prezzo*, we agreed about the price.

Convenire a *qdn.*, to be becoming. Ex.: *Non conviene ad una donna*, it does not become a lady.

---

*) In English Mr., Mrs., Miss require a person's name after them; but they do not in Italian.

**) *convenire con qdn.* means: to sue one at law.

Convenirsi con qchs., to seem, to look like . . . Ex.: *Non si conviene colla sua maniera d'agire*, it does not look like his usual manner of doing things.

Credere qchs., to believe smth. Ex.: *Non credo questa storia.*

Credere a *qchd.**), to believe anybody. Ex.: *Credete al vostro amico*, believe your friend.

Credere a *qchs.*, to believe in. Ex.: *Non credo agli spettri*, I do not believe in ghosts.

NB. With a Proper name following, *in* is used, as: *Credi in Dio?* do you believe in God?

Domandare (dimandare) qdn., to call someb. Ex.: *Domandate il vostro amico.*

Domandare a *qdn.***) is about the same as *domandare qdn.* Ex.: *Domandate a vostra madre; A chi domandate questo?*

Domandare qchs., to ask for smth. Ex.: *Domando una bottiglia di vino.*

Domandare di qdn. or *di qchs.*, to inquire after. Ex.: *Domando del signor conte*, I inquire after count . . . *Domando del prezzo****).

Giuocare a *qchs.*, to play at smth. Ex.: *Giuochiamo alle carte*, we play at cards.

Giuocare di qchs., to play for smth. Ex.: *Di quanto giuocheremo?*

(*Giuocare* forms some Italianisms like: *Giuocar di calcagna*, to take to one's heels; *giuocare di mani*, to pilfer, to gripe, etc.)

Impedire a *qdn.*, to hinder someb. Ex.: *Non gli ho mai impedito di studiare.*

Impedire qch., to hinder smth. Ex.: *La neve impediva il passaggio delle montagne.*

Mancare without complement (*verbo neutro*) means: to be wanting, as: *Manca un fiorino*, there is a florin wanting; *Mancano due ducati*, there are two ducats wanting.

Mancare di qch., to fall short of smth. Ex.: *Mancano di viveri*, they fall short of provisions.

Mancare a *qchs.*, to fail in smth. Ex.: *Non mancherò mai al rispetto che vi devo*, I shall never fail in the respect I owe you.

(Italianisms are: *Sentirsi mancare*, to feel qualmish or fainting.

---

*) *far credere a qdn.* means: to make one believe.

**) *Domandare qchs. a qdn.* is to inquire about something of somebody. The French *demander quelque chose à quelqu'un* is more correctly translated: *Chiedere qchs. a qdn.*

***) Or: *domandare il prezzo.*

NB. In the Italianism *manco male*, that is not bad, indeed! *manco* is no verb, but an adverb = *meno.*

Pensare a *qdn.* or a *qchs.*, to think of . . . Ex.: *Pensate a me*, think of me (do not forget me).

Rispondere a *qdn.*, to answer someb. Ex.: *Gli risposi di no.*

Rispondere a *qchs.*, to correspond with smth. *Il risultato non rispose agli sforzi fatti*, the result did not correspond with the efforts made.

(*Rispondere al pagamento* means: to pay in due time: *rispondersi*, to agree; *corrispondere a qchs.* to correspond to, as: *Questa voce italiana corrisponde all' inglese* . . . This Italian word corresponds to the English . . .)

Servire qdn. or a *qdn.*, to serve someb. Ex.: *Servo il (al) mio padrone*, I serve my master.

Servire di *qchs.*, to serve for smth., to be good for . . . Ex.: *I baluardi servono di difesa*, the bulwarks serve for (as) defence.

Soddisfare a *qdn.* or a *qchs.*, to correspond, to answer. Ex.: *Non potrà soddisfare alla nostra aspettazione*, he will not be able to answer our expectations.

Soddisfare qdn., to content. Ex.: *Soddisfece il padrone*, he contented his master.

Traduzione. 100.

1. Assist one another in (the) misfortune! The sentinels were relieved (*transl.* changed). Did you agree with your adversary on the conditions? Modesty becomes a young man. I shall by no means believe what he has told me; I shall ask my teacher about it. He asked me, whether I would accompany him. At what do you commonly play, at cards or at chess? I do not know whether I have still all my books, but I think some of them are wanting. Have you answered (to) the letter which the colonel wrote you? I serve my duke as (a) faithful servant.

2. What will all your exertions avail you? I no longer believe in any of you, you are all story-tellers (*mentitore*). Do you play for money, gentlemen? After whom do you inquire? I inquire after the (*il signore*) Marquis. Do the gentlemen want beer or wine? Trust me, your best friend, who always loved you (*voler bene*). Do you believe in Christ, our Saviour? I was obliged to change my linen twice. I am very glad that I may (*di potere*) take part (*transl.* assist) in this beautiful festival.

Reading Exercise. 101.

Continuazione della lettera del Ganganelli.

Gli abitanti mascherati per quattro o cinque mesi dell' anno, le leggi di un governo temuto che lascia ai diverti-

menti la maggior libertà, le prerogative d'un príncipe che non ha autorità veruna, le costumanze[1]) d'un popolo che ha sin (*even*) paura dell' ombra propria e si gode (*enjoys*) la maggior tranquillità, son tutte cose tra loro disparate[2]), ma che in modo particolare interessano un viaggiatore. Non vi è quasi (*almost*) un Veneziano che non sia eloquente; sono state anzi fatte delle raccolte[3]) dei concetti[4]) dei gondolieri, ripieni di sali argutissimi[5]).

Ferrara nel suo ricinto[6]) Le farà vedere una bella e vasta solitúdine, tácita quasi altrettanto quanto la tomba dell' Ariosto che ivi riposa.

Bologna presenterà a' suoi occhi un altro bel prospetto. Vi troverà le scienze familiari anche al bel sesso[7]), che prodúcesi con dignità nelle scuole e nelle accadémie, nelle quali ogni dì gli s'innalzano dei trofei. Mille diversi prospetti soddisfaranno il suo spirito e gli occhi suoi, e la conversazione poi degli abitanti La rallegrerà moltissimo.

Quindi per uno spazio di più di trecento miglia attraverserà una moltitúdine di piccole città, ciascuna delle quali ha il suo teatro e casino, qualche letterato o poeta, che si ápplica[8]) secondo il suo genio e a norma[9]) del suo piacere.

Visiterà Loretto, pellegrinaggio famoso pel concorso dei forestieri[10]) e pei superbi tesori dei quali è arricchito il suo tempio.

Finalmente vedrà Roma, la quale per mille anni continui si rivedrebbe sempre con nuovo piacere; città che assisa[11]) sopra sette colli[12]) chiamati dagli antichi i sette dominatori[13]) del mondo, sembra di là dominare l'universo e dir con orgoglio a tutti i popoli che essa n'è la regina e la capitale.

1) manners. 2) contradictory. 3) collection. 4) *concetto*, a witticism. 5) *sali* (liter. *salt*) like the Latin *sales* means here: wit. 6) *ricinto*, the outskirts. 7) the fair sex. 8) *applicarsi*, to labour. 9) *a norma*, in conformity. 10) foreigners. 11) situated. 12) hill. 13) ruler.

Dialogo.

Per quanto tempo usavano andar in máschera i Veneziani?
Fu liberale il governo della repúbblica in quanto a' piaceri dei Veneziani?
Che dice il G. del doge?
Che dice dello spirito de' Veneziani?
Che mostra la città di Ferrara nel suo ricinto?
Qual gran poeta vi è sepolto?
Che dice il G. di Bologna?
Che dice egli delle piccole città d'Italia?
Perchè è famoso Loretto?

Che dice il nostro autore di Roma?
Come furono chiamati i sette colli, sopra i quali siede la città eterna?

Eighteenth Lesson.

On Neuter, Pronominal, and Impersonal verbs.

I. Neuter verbs.

Neuter verbs which can *never* be used in an active sense are conjugated with the auxiliary *essere*, as: ***sono** andato* (gone); *è caduto* (fallen). Exceptions are: *dormire*, to sleep; *pranzare* and *desinare*, to dine; *passeggiare*, to take a walk; *sonnacchiare*, to take a nap, to slumber, and *sternutare*, to sneeze. These verbs form their compound tenses with *avere*. We add a list of neuter verbs most in use, with their auxiliaries:

With *essere:*	With *avere:*
Accórrere, to run to.	*Aderire*, to adhere.
andare, to go.	*aspirare*, to endeavour, to strive.
approdare, to go ashore.	*assistere*, to assist.**)
arrivare, to arrive.	*Ballare*, to dance.
avvenire, to succeed (of a fact [etc.).	*Camminare*, to walk.
Cadére, to fall.	*cedere*, to yield.***)
cessare, to cease*) (see *avere*).	*cenare*, to sup.
comparire, to appear.	*cessare*, to cease.
convenire, to agree (see *avere*).	*contravenire*, to contravene.
correre, to run.	*convenire*, to please, to be agreeable.
crescere, to grow (see *avere*).	*crescere*, to increase.
Discendere, to get down.	*Danzare*, to dance.
divenire, to become.	*degenerare*, to degenerate (also with *essere*).
Entrare, to enter.	*desinare*, to dine.
Fuggire, to fly (see *avere*).	*dimorare*, to reside, to dwell.
Gelare, to be cold, to freeze.	*Fuggire*, to shun, to avoid.
giúgnere, to join (see *avere*).	
guarire, to heal (see *avere*).	

*) See Note 1, page 310.

**) Of course only when used *actively*, as: *Ho sempre assistito quelli che averano bisogno del mio soccorso*, I have always assisted those who were in want of my assistance.

***) We need not add that the *Passive voice* of *cedere* is formed with the auxiliary *essere*, as: *Il territorio è stato ceduto*, the territory has been given over.

Intervenire, to intervene.
ire, to go.
Marciare, to rot (see *avere*).
morire, to die (see *avere*).
Nascere, to be born.
Parere, to seem.
passare, to pass (see *avere*).
partire, to start, to depart (see *avere*).
perire, to perish.
pervenire, to arrive.
piacere, to please (see *avere*).
procedere, to procede.
prorompere, to burst forth.
Rimanere, to remain.
risanare, to recover.
ritornare, to return (see *avere*).
riuscire,*) to succeed.
rivenire, to come back.
Salire, to go up (see *avere*).
saltare, to spring.
scadére, to expire (of a term).
scappare, to escape.
scendere, to descend (s. *avere*).
scoppiare, to burst forth.
scorrere, to elapse.
soggiacére, to be subdued (s. *avere*).
spiacére, to displease.
spirare, to expire, to die.
suonare, to strike, to resound (see *avere*).
Uscire, to go out.
Venire, to come.
vivere, to live.

giugnere, to add.
godére, to rejoice.
guarire, to cure (somebody).
Impallidire, to turn pale.
incontrare, to meet.
invecchiare, to grow old.
Mangiare, to eat.
marciare, to march.
mentire, to lie, to tell a falsehood.
morire, to kill.
Naufragare, to shipwreck.
nidificare, to nest.
nuotare, to swim.
Passare, to pass.
passeggiare, to take a walk.
partire, to divide.
piacere, to please (obsolescent).
piangere, to cry, to weep.
pranzare, to dine.
Ridire, to answer, to say again.
ritornare, to return.
Salire, to get upon something.
scendere, to get down something.
scorrere, to peruse, to run through.
seguire, to follow.
soggiacére, to be subdued (obsolescent).
sognare, to dream.
sonnacchiare } to slumber.
sonneggiare }
sternutare, to sneeze.
suonare, to play an instrument (see Note 2).
Tacere, to be silent.
tardare, to tarry.
Viaggiare, to travel.

Notes.

1) Many of these verbs coupled with *avere* also admit of *essere*, but only in the 3rd pers. Singul. and Plur. When used with *avere*, they require an *Infinitive* following, which forms

*) With *riuscire* the auxiliary *avere* is sometimes met with, mostly in ancient writers. Such is also the case with *spirare*.

their *verbal complement*, as: ***Ha cessato d'importunarmi,*** he has ceased to annoy me (annoying me). Used in this way, those verbs partake of the nature of the *active* verb, whilst used with *essere* they are really neuter and therefore admit of *no* complement. as: *La guerra è cessata*, war is over, whereas: *La guerra **ha** cessato **di devastare** i paesi*, war has ceased to desolate the countries.

2) *Suonare*, when used of the *hour*, requires *essere*, as: ***Son** suonate le* 3, it has struck 3 o'clock. In the transitive sense, *avere* is employed, as: *chi ha suonato le campane*, who has rung the bells?

3) We need scarcely say, that every one of these verbs, if used *actively*, requires *avere*, as: ***Ho** viaggiato l'Italia*, I have travelled all over Italy.

4) With many of these verbs the use of *avere* and *essere* is rather arbitrary. In modern phraseology those denoting *weather* or *temperature of the air* prefer *essere*, as: *è piovuto*, it has rained; *è nevicato*, it has snowed.

II. Pronominal verbs.

As we have seen in the First Part, these verbs always require as a complement one of the Personal pronouns *mi, ti, si, ci, vi.* They form the compound tenses with *essere*, wherefore their *Part. pass.* always agrees with the *Subject* in gender and number. Ex.:

These gentlemen have loved one another.
Questi signori si sono amati.

These ladies have loved one another.
Queste signore si sono amate.

Note. With a great many Pronominal verbs, the pronouns *mi, ti, si* etc. are no *accusative*, but *dative* cases, answering the question *to whom?* With these verbs the Italians employ *avere**) as well as *essere.* When referring to no *Accusative*, but to the *Dative* case preceding, the past participle, though used with *essere*, is invariable. The learner should compare:

1) *I figli si sono amati.*
The children have loved (whom? *Acc.*) one another.
I figli si sono (hanno) scritto.
The children have written (*to* whom? *Dat.*) to one another.

2) With the Accusative (direct complement, object) preceding:

*) The use of *essere* with these verbs is more elegant and more frequent.

The children have given them (i. e. the books, *Acc.*) to one (*dat.*) another.

I figli se (Dat.) li (Acc.) sono dati.

In this sentence the past part. agrees with the preceding *li* (them, i. e. the books), but not with *si*. The only difficulty here consists in the resemblance of the Dative cases of the Personal pronouns with the Accusative, wherefore the pupil, if not quite sure whether the past part. agrees with its preceding complement, will do best to ask: *whom?* or *to whom?* In the sentence:

I figli se le (i. e. *le penne*) *sono pigliate,*

The children have taken them (add: for themselves), it is necessary to observe:

1) that the verb *pigliare* is here used as a *reciprocal* verb, whilst in English it is active, thus: *io mi piglio*, does not mean: *I take myself*, but: *I take* something *for me* (Ital. *mi, Dat.*).
2) that *sono* replaces *hanno*, have.
3) that (as will be seen hereafter in the rules on the past part.) the *partic. passato*, when used with *avere*, agrees with its *preceding* complement in *gender* and *number*, consequently *pigliate* with the preceding *le* (i. e. *le penne*, fem. plur.).
4) that in English the Dative *si* (for euphony *se*) is suppressed.

III. Impersonal verbs.

By the use of the reflective *si*, the Italians form a great many expressions equivalent to the impersonal verbs. Such are:

Si vede, one sees.
Si dice, it is said.
Si crederà, it will be believed, etc.

Traduzione. 102.

At these cries all had run together. Why did you not enter (*Pass. indef.*), when the door was opened? That time is past (*transl.* these are past times), dear friend, we have grown old and the world with us. The modern Romans are said (*si dice che . . .*) to be much degenerated. When I called on you yesterday, I was told that you had gone out an hour ago (*da un'ora*). Why have you blushed? I have met your cousin not long ago. Has the rain not yet ceased? The general (has) burst forth in loud laughter when the so-called spy (has been) was brought before him. We have walked (during)

two hours, but have not met anybody. Why have you not assisted your poor friend? At last the two boxes are arrived. You have always lived as an honest man. Your behaviour has pleased nobody *(Dat.)* At last we have arrived at the place where two years ago the »Alceste« ran aground (*naufragare*). Have you ever travelled in Spain? The murderer turned pale when he heard the sentence of the judge.

103.

Why have (did) the Montagues (*Montecchi*) and the Capulets (*Capuletti*) at Verona so much hate(d) one another? These gentlemen have written many letters to one another during their absence from England. Where are the cigars that I (have) bought yesterday? Your son has taken them *(pigliarseli)*. Dido committed suicide (*transl.* has given the death to herself). We have approached (*avvicinarsi a . . .*) the town with cautious steps. What is [there] said of Madame (*la*) Ristori? Is there still spoken (Does one still speak) of the Abyssinian war and of the storming of Magdala? What has become of (*esserne di*) your friend who has fled from France? We should have gone ashore, if the weather had not been so very rainy. Have you fallen down (the) stairs, Sir? Many a ship has perished on the coast(s) of this little island. How is the weather to-day? I think it is very cold; at least it (has) froze(n) last night. Have you lived (*dimorare*) in Paris? Where has (did) your friend travel(led) last year, in Spain or (in) Portugal? These children have always loved one another. His conduct in the whole affair has greatly displeased me. She has lived 68 years.

Reading Exercise 104.

Continuazione della lettera del Ganganelli.

Nel gettar[1]) uno sguardo su quel famoso Tévere, Le sovverrà[2]) di quegli antichi Romani che tanto hanno parlato di lui e come tante volte andò gonfio[3]) del sangue loro e di quello dei loro nemici.

Andrà quasi *in éstasi*[4]) nel rimirar la basílica di San Pietro, dai conoscitori chiamata maraviglia del mondo, perchè infinitamente superiore a Santa Sofia di Costantinopoli, a San Paolo di Londra e al tempio stesso di Salomone.

Esso è un vaso[5]) tale che si estende quanto più si scorre[6]), ed in cui tutto è colossale e tutto apparisce di una forma ordinaria. Le pitture rapiscono[7]), i mausolei son parlanti, e

1) When you cast. 2) you will recollect. 3) *gonfio,* swollen. 4) *andar in éstasi,* to be enraptured. 5) *vaso,* here: edifice. — 6) *scorrere,* to run through, her: to contemplate. 7) *rapire,* to charm.

si crederebbe di rimirar quella nuova Gerusalemme dal cielo discesa di cui parla San Giovanni nella sua Apocalisse.

Nel complesso[8]) e in ciascuna parte del Vaticano, eretto sulle rovine dei falsi oracoli, vi troverà del bello in ogni genere da stancare i suoi occhi e da rimanere incantato. Quì è dove Rafaello e Michelangelo ora in una maniera terribile ed or amabile hanno spiegato[9]) nei più bei capi d'opera il genio loro, esprimendo al vivo[10]) l'intera forza del loro spirito, e quì è dove è depositata la scienza e lo spirito di tutti gli scrittori dell' universo in una moltitudine d'opere che compongono la più vasta e la più ricca librería del mondo.

Le chiese, i palazzi, le piazze pubbliche, le pirámidi, gli obelischi, le colonne, le gallerie, le facciate, i teatri, le fontane, le vedute[11]), i giardini: tutto le dirà che Ella è in Roma e tutto la farà ad essa affezionare*) come ad una città che fu mai sempre[12]) con preferenza universale ammirata.

Scoprirà finalmente un nuovo mondo in tutte le figure di pittura e scultura, sì[13]) degli antichi come[13]) dei moderni, e crederà questo mondo animato.

La disgrazia si è[13]), che quest' óttica[14]) magnifica andrà poi a finire[15]) in torme[16]) di questanti[17]) mantenuti da Roma mal a proposito con isparger[18]) loro certe limósine[19]) mal intese, invece di farli[20]) applicare a lavori utili; ed in tal modo la rosa scórgesi colla spina ed il vizio si vede ben spesso al fianco della virtù.

8) In the whole. 9) *spiegare,* to unfold. 10) *al vivo,* in a lively manner. 11) *la veduta,* the prospect. 12) *mai sempre,* always. 13) *sì — come,* as well — as; *si è,* pleonast. for *è.* — 14) *óttica,* sight, aspect. 15) *andar a finire,* to finish, to disappear. 16) *torme,* a troop. 17) beggars. 18) to distribute. 19) alms. — 20) to get them.

Dialogo.

Come viene chiamato quel fiume che attraversa la città di Roma?
Qual' è la più bella chiesa di Roma?
È così bella come la chiesa di San Paolo a Londra?
Vi si trovano belle pitture?
C'è anche una biblioteca nel Vaticano?
E qual è l'aspetto esteriore della città?
Che dice il nostro autore della popolazione romana?
Perchè non lavorano quei mendichi per poter vivere onestamente?
Con quale osservazione conchiude il Ganganelli la sua descrizione della città eterna?

*) *far affezionare qualchedn. a qchc.,* to make anyb. love anyth.

Nineteenth Lesson.

Peculiarities of some verbs.

There are some verbs obtaining in Italianisms, which in English must commonly be periphrased with adverbs. Those most in use are:

1) ***Amare,*** to love, to like, with the Infinitive Mood following, as: *Amo ballare,* I like dancing. — *Amare meglio* means »to like better«, as: *ama meglio dormire che lavorare,* he likes sleeping better than working.

2) ***Andare*** with the Gerundio following gives more emphasis to the verb. Thus: *cerco il mio cappello,* means: I am looking for my hat, whereas: *va cercando il suo cappello* means: he is looking everywhere for his hat. — *Va bene* means: all right! — *Andare* with *ci* is: to be at stake. Ex.: *Ci va della vita,* life is at stake. — If used before a Participle, it gives more emphasis to the Passive voice by adding the accessory idea of necessity, as: *Così va fatto,* thus it should be done. (That's the way to do it). *Così va giuocato,* That's how it should be played. *Queste due cose vanno unite,* these two things belong together.

Andare a . . . often means *by and by,* as:

Poi lago, poi fiume ancora, che va a perdersi in lúcido serpeggiamento tra i monti. (M.)

Now a lake, now a river again which by and by loses itself in glittering serpentines between the mountains.

3) ***Bastare,*** to be sufficient, forms the Italianism: *mi basta l'ánimo,* I am able (Frch. *je suis capable*). Ex.:

Sapete cosa mi basta l'animo di fare per voi? (M.)
Do you know what I am able to do for you?

4) ***Cavarsi*** (*liter.* to excavate, to draw *or* pour out) *la voglia* means enough, sufficiently. Ex.: *Non posso cavarmi la voglia di ballare,* I could go on dancing for ever (= I am extremely fond of dancing).

5) *Essere per . . .* means *to be about . . , to be on the point of . .* , or is periphrased with *directly, just now* etc. Ex.: *È lì lì per cadere,* he is on the point of falling. — *Essere a . . .* means *to be* with *Pres. Part. following,* as: *Mia sorella è a ricamare,* my sister is embroidering. — Very seldom the *Defin.* of *essere* signifies *to go* (as in French *être*). Ex.: *Nella chiesa entrarono e furono all' arca,* they entered the church and *went* to the tomb. — *Essere in procinto di . . .* has the same meaning as *essere per . .* , as: *Sono in procinto d'andarvi,* I am about to go there.

6) ***Cominciare*** with *con* before the Infinitive Mood means: at first or, as in Italian, to begin with. Ex.: *Egli cominciò con (col) dirmi,* he told me at first, he began with telling me . . .

7) ***Mettersi*** *a,* with the Infinitive following (French: *se mettre à*), as: *egli si mise a piangere,* he began to weep.

8) ***Pensare*** *di,* with the Infinitive following, means nearly*), as: *Pensava di morire di gioia,* he had nearly died for joy. (In French: *Il pensa mourir de joie*).

9) ***Sovvenire,*** to recollect, is *impersonal* in Italian and requires the English Nominative as a *Dative case,* as:

Domandò a se stesso, se ci fosse qualche uscita, e ***gli sovvenne*** *subito di no.* (M.)

He asked himself whether there was another outlet, and he at once recollected that there was none.

10) ***Stentare*** *a,* corresponds to the English adverb scarcely. Ex.: *Stento a crederlo,* I can hardly believe it.

Un' umiltà affettata che ***stentava*** *a collocarsi nei lineamenti duri di quella faccia.* (M.)

An affected humility which could scarcely express itself in the hard features of that face.

11) ***Stare*** with *per* before the Infinitive means: to be on the point, as: *Sto per partire,* I am on the point of setting out. — With *seduto* (past part.) of *sedere*) this verb forms Italianisms like: *stiamo seduti,* we are seated (for a long while). — Before the *Gerundio* it represents an action as lasting, like the English pres. part., yet without being so frequently used. Ex.: *Sto lavorando,* I am working.

NB. *Stare a . . .* conveys an idea of *duration,* as:

Che i due ***stessero ad*** *aspettare qualcheduno, era cosa troppo evidente.* (M.)

It was but too evident that those two *were waiting* for somebody here.

12) ***Tardare*** *a,* (less frequently *di*) means: to tarry, to stay long... or to be eager to... Ex.: *Tarda a venire,* he tarries to come. *Mi tarda di vederlo,* I am eager to see him.**)

13) ***Toccare,*** (*lit.* to touch), to happen, with the Dative of the person, often expresses a kind of external *necessity,* as

---

*) Nearly before a verb is not often translated in this way. Occasionally it is expressed with *per poco. Per poco non sarei tornato a casa,* Very nearly I should not have come home.

**) Yet *tardare* is not often found in this signification.

I tempi in cui gli era toccato di vivere. (M.)
The time in which it had fallen to his lot to live.

Vorrei che la fosse toccata a voi. (M.)
I wish the thing had happened to you.

14) ***Venire***, with *a* before the Infinitive, expresses motion to the place of the person speaking, as: ***Venite a trovarmi***, come to see me; whereas *andare* denotes motion towards *another* person, as: *andai a trovarlo*, I went to see *him* (»*Venni*« would here be incorrect). If used with the past participle, it denotes an action as contemporaneous. Ex.: ***Mi viene assicurato***, they (just now) assure me. *Gli fu detto*, he was told; ***gli venne detto***, he (that instant) was told. Before the Gerundio, it corresponds with by and by. Ex.: ***Si venne accorgendo***, by and by he perceived.

NB. *Venire*, with *a* and an Infinitive following, sometimes implies a *consequence* of another action, thus:

*Lecco **viene** in parte **a trovarsi** nel lago stesso, quando questo ingrossa.* (M.)
Lecco is (then) situated partly in the lake itself, when this latter is overflowing.

15) ***Volere***, with the Infinitive following, has sometimes the signif. of a *Future*, as: *Oh, non la vogliam finir bene* (Gold.)! Oh, that will not end well!

Volere with *ci* means to be *needed*, to be *necessary*, as:
Ci volle tutta la superiorità del Griso. (M.)
The whole superiority of G. was needed.

Ci vuol altro! That's of no avail! (= other means are needed).

Special remarks on some English verbs.

1) To be able is *potere* when importing an innate or external ability, as: *Potete rompere questo legno?* are you able to (can you) break this wood? When expressing some ability acquired by learning or exercise, it is translated *sapere* (in English to know), as: *Sa Ella nuotare*, can you swim?

2) To have, with the *Accusative* and *past participle* following, as: I shall have a coat made, means *fare*. Ex.: *Mi farò fare un abito.**) The learner should observe that in this case the English *past part.* must be rendered by the Italian *Infinitive Mood*. The sentence I have made a coat is translated: *Ho fatto un abito.*

Further examples: He will have me put in prison, *vuol farmi mettere in prigione*. *Glielo farò sapere*, I shall let you

*) In French: *Je me ferai faire un habit.*

know (send you word). *Egli l'ha fatto assassinare*, he has (got) him murdered.

3) To get is also frequently translated with *fare*. As an enumeration of its different significations would lead us too far, we advise the learner, whenever this word occurs, to periphrase it; for instance: Have you got your money = have you received your money, *ha Ella ricevuto (ottenuto) il suo danaro?* I can't get over this difficulty, *non posso vincere* (to conquer, to overcome) *questa difficoltà*. We got home at 6 o'clock, *arrivammo (giungemmo) a casa alle sei*, etc.

4) To let is *lasciare*. Ex.: *Lasciátemi entrare*, let me (permit me to) enter. To be let (= hired) is *darsi in affitto* or *appigionarsi*. Ex.: This room is to be let, *questa stanza si dà in affitto* or *appigiónasi*.

5) To make, when meaning to render, should be translated with *rendere*, rather than with *fare*. Ex.: He makes (renders) me unhappy, *mi rende (mi fa) infelice*.

6) To be obliged etc. (I must etc.) is, as we said before, *dovere* or (impers.) *bisognare*. The same meaning is expressed by *avere a (da)*, as:

A tutti coloro ordina che ***abbiano a*** *sgomberare il paese.* (M.)

On all these he lays his commands that they have to leave the country (= he bids them all leave etc.)

(See also *toccare*, pg. 317, 13).

7) To hear is *sentire* or *udire*, as: *Non ho sentito (udito) nulla*, I have heard nothing. — *Intendere* means: to hear attentively, as: *Ho inteso la prédica*, I have heard the sermon. — To hear, when meaning to listen, is *ascoltare, attendere* (to pay attention). Ex.: *Non ho inteso nulla, perchè non ho ascoltato*, I have understood nothing, because I did not listen. — *Farsi sentire* (said of singers and musical artists in general) means: to sing, to play, etc. Ex.: *La cantatrice si fa sentire*, the songstress sings. — *Non far saper nulla di se*, means: to give, to send no news.

8) To bring, if referring to portable matters, is *recare*, as: *recátemi la mia tabacchiera*, bring me my snuffbox.*) If speaking of persons or animals, it is rendered by *condurre* or *menare;* f. inst. Bring (lead) the horse to the door, *menate il cavallo alla porta*. Don't forget to bring your brother with you, *non dimentichi di condurre suo fratello*.

*) *Recare* has a good many other significations, for which we refer the pupil to the dictionary. *Recarsi* means to go to ... as: *Mi recai a Parigi*, I went to Paris.

9) To drink is *bere* if used of cold beverages and in greater quantity; as: *Ho bevuto un bicchier di birra*, I have drunk a glass of beer. Of hot drinks, however, and in smaller quantity *prendere* is likewise in use (like the English to take) as: *Prendere del tè, del caffè*, to take (drink) tea, coffee, etc. To drink in long draughts is *tracannare*, as: *Tracannai un bicchier d'acqua* (Silv. Pell.).

Traduzione. 105.

1. We were on the point of writing to you, when we got your letter. Be (*state*) seated, Miss (N.), we shall take our tea at yonder table. Bring me to-morrow the book I have lent you six months ago. Do not forget to come to-morrow morning and bring also your brother with you. Let me alone! I have not been able to shut the door. Don't let the dog come out! Where had you this fine coat made?*) I have made you wait. I hope you will pardon (me) my incivility, if I tell you that Countess N. did not let me depart sooner. Do you think (that) this piece of wood can swim (float)? I cannot swim, I am too heavy. Can you swim, Sir? No, I can't, I have never (practised) learned it.

2. He who does not know how to manage fire-arms, shall (should) never take any into his hands when they are loaded. Can you speak Italian, Sir? No, I have never learned it, but my brother knows it a little. Cannot your brother speak? He has not said a single word (*due parole*) the whole evening. Of course he cannot; you know yourself that he does not know French. Have you heard the thunder? I have heard nothing, because I listened to the (talk) dialogue of the two ladies. Is this furnished apartment to be let? I listened half an hour, but have heard nothing.

106.

1. The French would *scarcely* believe, that their great emperor Napoleon had died at St. Helena. How can you say that I am doing nothing? Do not you see that I am working the whole day? Whom do you expect? Your uncle? He won't be back this good while (*transl.* he will tarry to come), for you know that he cannot part with his good old friend. I had nearly died with joy, when I got the gracious answer of the monarch. When I represented (to) him the dreadful consequences of his levity, he began to cry like a child. Young girls are fond of dancing, and old women (are fond) of chatting.

*) When speaking of a dress, fare is allowable instead of far fare.

2. Would you like better to be rich but oppressed, or poor and free? What are you doing there behind? I am looking everywhere for my portfolio, which I cannot find. When one knows that [one's] honour (*with the article*) is engaged (*transl.* at stake), every other consideration ought to be set aside (*transl.* disappear). I hear that my little cousin is very diligent at school; he is loved and praised by all his masters. "It must be done in this way", said the drunken man, *when* he *would (Gerund.)* jump over the ditch, and he fell into it at his full length (*per lo lungo*). Where are you going to? I'll (get shaved) go to have my beard shaved. Even *(persino)* the greatest riches cannot render the wise entirely happy.

Reading Exercise. 107.

Continuazione della lettera del Ganganelli.

Se i nuovi [1]) Romani non le sembrano punto bellicosi, ciò avviene [2]) dal loro attuale governo che non ne ispira loro il valore: del resto si trova in essi ogni seme [3]) di virtù [4]) e sono sì buoni militari come gli altri, allorchè milítano [5]) sotto qualche straniera potenza [6]).

Passerà [7]) poi a Napoli per la famosa Via Appia che per la sua antichità si è resa [8]) in oggi per somma disgrazia scomodissima [9]), ed arriverà a quella Partenope [10]) ove ripósano le céneri di Virgilio, sulle quali védesi náscere [11]) un lauro che non può essere meglio collocato [12]).

Da un lato [13]) il monte Vesuvio, dall' altro i campi elisi [14]) Le presenteranno dei punti di vista singolarissimi [15]), e dopo di esserne sazio [16]) si troverà circondata di una moltitúdine di Napoletani vivaci e spiritosi, ma troppo inclinati al piacere ed all' infingardággine per essere quel che potrebbero essere. Sarebbe Napoli un impareggiabil città se non vi s'incontrasse una folla [17]) di plebéi [18]) che hanno un' aria di ribaldi [19]) e di malandrini senza essere sovente nè l'uno nè l'altro.

Le chiese sono riccamente adorne, ma l'architettura è di un cattivo gusto che non corrisponde punto a quella di Roma. Un piacer singolare proverà [20]) nel passeggiare [21]) i contorni di questa*) città, deliziosa nei suoi frutti, per le sue prospettive

1) modern. 2) comes. 3) talent. 4) *virtù*, valour (Lat. *virtus*). 5) to serve, to fight. 6) power. 7) you will come. 8) has become. 9) inconvenient, uneasy. 10) the Greek name for Naples. 11) *to blossom*. 12) placed. 13) side. 14) the Elysian fields. 15) finest. 16) tired. 17) a great many (the French *foule*). 18) mob, common people. 19) rascal (almost the same as the following *malandrino*), robber, highwayman. 20) you will feel. 21) to walk through.

*) *questa* here refers to *Napoli*.

e per la sua situazione; e potrà penetrare sino [22]) in quei famosi sotterranei ove restò [23]) un tempo [24]) inghiottita [25]) la città d'Ercolano (*Herculanum*) da un' eruzione del Vesuvio. Se a caso [26]) egli fosse in furore, vedrà uscir del suo seno dei torrenti di fuoco che maestosamente si spandono [27]) per le campagne. Pórtici Le farà vedere una collezione di quanto [28]) è stato scavato [29]) dalle rovine d'Ercolano; ed i contorni di Pozzuolo, già decantati [30]) dal principe dei poeti [31]), Le ispireranno del gusto per la poesia. Bisogna andarvi coll' Eneide [32]) alla mano e confrontare coll' antro della Sibilla di Cuma e coll' Acheronte quel che ne ha detto il Virgilio.

22) till to. 23) was. 24) a long time. 25) *inghiottire*, to swallow up. 26) by chance. 27) *spandersi*, to extend. 28) all that . . . 29) *scavare*, to dig up. 30) *decantare*, to celebrate (by song). 31) *Virgilius*. 32) the famous epic poem of Virgil.

Dialogo.

Non sono bellicosi i nuovi Romani?
Come si comportano, se militano sotto qualche straniera potenza?
Come viene chiamata la strada che mena (*leads*) a Napoli?
In quale stato si ritrova *in oggi* (now) quella strada?
Come si chiama il poeta romano sepellito a Napoli?
Non c'è niente di notevole a quella tomba?
Mi dica qualche cosa dei Napoletani!
Vi sono molte chiese a Napoli?
Che dice il G. dei contorni di Napoli?
Quale aspetto offre il Vesuvio, quando è in furore?
Che cosa si vede a Portici?
Che védesi nei contorni di Pozzuolo?

Twentieth Lesson.

On Moods. On the use of the Tenses.

Like the English, the Italian language has four moods, viz.:

1) the *Indicativo;*
2) the *Soggiuntivo;*
3) the *Condizionale;*
4) the *Imperativo.*

I. The Indicative Mood.

This mood represents an action as *positive* and *beyond all doubt.* The Italians are stricter than the English in the use of this mood, and therefore employ it also after conjunctions which usually govern the Subjunctive Mood. Ex.:

So ch'egli è ammalato.
I know that he is ill.

Use of the Tenses of the Indicative Mood.

§ 1. The Present represents an action as being just performed, and the state or condition as a lasting one. Thus: *Io amo,* I love; *io parlo,* I speak; *egli dorme,* he sleeps.

§ 2. In animated language the *Presente* is used instead of the *Passato.* This *Presente* is called *Presente stórico* (historical Pr.). Ex.:

Entro nella stanza, le finestre ne sono chiuse e sotto il letto trovo un uomo coperto di cenci.

§ 3. In conversation the *Presente* is occasionally used for the *Futuro,* as:

Che dirà il padre quando sente (for *sentirà*).
What will the father say when he hears (will hear).

La posta non viene che domani.
The post comes but to-morrow.

§ 4. Sometimes the *Infinitivo* is used instead of the *Presente,* mostly in somewhat animated descriptions, as:

Mezz'ora dappoi, ecco stridere le chiavi, la porta s'apre . . .
Half an hour afterwards I hear the keys rattle, the door opens . . .

§ 5. The *Passato indefinito* appears as a transitory tense. It denotes that an action, though entirely accomplished, still continues in the Present by its consequences. Ex.:

Io ho comperato un libro.
I have bought a book (and therefore now have it).

For further remarks on this tense see § 9.

Tenses of the *Passato.*

§ 6. The use of these tenses *(Imperfetto, Definito, Passato indefinito, Passato più perfetto,* and *Passato anteriore)* is somewhat difficult, as some of them are wanting in English. Let the student, therefore, well consider:

1) Whether the action stands *by itself,* or

2) Whether it refers to *another* action. In this latter case let him further discern:

a) whether both actions are performed *at the same time,* or

b) whether one is performed *after* the other.

3) Whether an action, though *accomplished,* still lasts in the *presence of the speaker.*

4) Whether an action has been performed in the *presence* of the speaker, or whether it is only *related* to him.

§ 7. The *Imperfetto* (also called *Pendente*).

This tense is used

1) In *descriptions* of *character, manners, landscape* etc., and represents an action as *often repeated.* Ex.:

La moglie del carceriere ***soleva*** *portarmi il caffè mattina e dopo pranzo; la* ***seguivano*** *ordinariamente sua figlia ed i due figliuoli. Si ritiravano poi colla madre e si* ***rivoltavano*** *a guardarmi dolcemente.*

2) If two *actions* are represented as being performed at or as lasting during, the same time:

Gli uni ***giuocavano*** *mentre gli altri* ***ballavano.***
Some were playing whilst the others were dancing.

3) If one action is *interrupted* by another, the Imperfect denotes the action that was still going on when the other began. Ex.:

Io ***dormiva*** (lasting state) *allorchè egli* ***entrò*** (interruption).
I slept when he entered.

Lo ***sorpresi*** *mentre egli* ***scriveva.***
I surprised him when he was writing.

Note. The learner will be sure to know what tense should be employed, if he takes the English *present partic.*

with the auxiliary *to be*. Thus in the first of the above sentences the verb *I slept* might be easily periphrased:

I was sleeping (*Imperf.*) when he entered (*Def.*); but not: I slept when he was entering.

In this case the pres. part. is a sure indication.

4) The *Imperfetto* is used for all actions that do not immediately belong to the relation, but are added by the speaker in order to express the *accessory circumstances* or his *own meaning*. Ex.:

La ricordanza ***m'affliggeva*** *e* ***m'inteneriva.*** *Ma* pensai *anche alla sorte di tanti amici miei e non* seppi *più giudicare con indulgenza alcuno dei miei avversarii. Iddio mi* ***metteva*** *in una gran prova! Mio debito sarebbe stato di sostenerla con virtù. Non* potei, *non* volli. *La voluttà dell' odio mi* piacque *più del perdono:* passai *una notte d'inferno.*

Here *seppi*, *potei*, *volli*, *piacque*, *passai* state the principal facts, whilst *affliggeva*, *inteneriva*, *metteva* introduce explanations.

5) Moreover, the *Imperfetto* is used where the English often employ the Imperfect *could* or *should*, as:

Dovevate *dirmelo subito*, you should have told so me directly.

§ 8. The *Definito*.

It expresses actions *following* one another. It is mainly the *historical* tense and therefore used:

1) To mark a time positively fixed, entirely elapsed, that has nothing to do with the time at present spoken of. Ex.:

Fui *a Roma l'anno scorso.*
I was at Rome last year.

Partimmo il 20 Ottobre.
We departed the 20th of October.

Dopo la morte d'Aristide Cimone s'impadronì del governo.
After the death of Aristides, Cimon made himself master of the government.

The two first of the above sentences express actions that are wholly unconnected with other actions preceding or following. *Io era a Roma* seems to require some-

thing more, f. inst. *quando mi giunse la vostra lettera,* when I got your letter. Such is also the case with the second sentence. In the third the *Definito* is used, because the action denoted by *s'impadronì* could by no means be a lasting one.

2) The *Definito* is further used in *accessory* sentences beginning with one of the conjunctions *dacchè, quando, tosto che, dopo che,* because these conjunctions express the *beginning* or *end* of an action. Ex.:

*Tosto che Santippe scôrse**) *i discépoli di Socrate, sclamò.*
As soon as Xantippe saw the disciples of S., she exclaimed.

Dacchè mi vide, mi porse la mano.
As soon as he saw me, he held out his hand to me.

§ 9. The *Passato indefinito.*

This tense implies *actions* or *events* already past, whereof the consequences, however, may still be seen or felt in the present. Ex.:

Ho perduto i miei figli.
I have lost my children (= I have none at present).

Ho rinunziato ai miei diritti.
I have renounced my claims (= I am now without any).

Again, this tense expresses an action or state already past, but which took place at a period not yet expired. Such periods are: *to-day, this morning (evening), this week, this month, this year, this century* etc. In this case, however, the *Definito* may be used with equal propriety.

Siete stato a teatro stasera?
Have you been (were you) at the theatre to-night?

Non vi ho mai veduto questo anno.
I have never seen you this year.

§ 10. The *Passato più perfetto* and *Passato anteriore.*

These tenses are compounds of the *Imperfetto* and *Definito,* and are used in a similar way. The speaker considers himself to be in a time past, and the action or

---

*) Modern Italian authors often put this accent (ˆ) on one of two words which would otherwise be written alike. In this case it indicates that *ô* has an open sound. Such are: *scôrsi,* I perceived; *scorsi,* I ran through; *tôrre,* to take away; *torre,* tower; *côlto* (fr. *cogliere*); *colto,* cultivated.

state expressed by the *Più perfetto* or *Anteriore* appears previous to this time past.

If, therefore, something appears as an *historical* fact, or if the time is *positively fixed*, the *Passato anteriore* should be used. Such is the case after adverbs and conjunctions denoting time, as: *tostochè, dacchè, appena, un giorno,* etc. Ex.:

Tosto che ***ebbi*** *terminato i miei affari, ripartii.*
As soon as I had finished my business, I set out again.
Appena ***ebbe*** *pronunziato questa voce, ch'egli se ne pentì.*
Scarcely had he uttered these words, when he repented (of them).

In both sentences the actions appear closely connected, the latter (*ripartii, pentì*) arising from the former and being of short duration.

When expressed with the *Passato più perfetto*, the actions do not appear so closely following one another; therefore this tense, like the *Imperfetto*, is the *descriptive* tense and marks a *lasting state* and *frequent repetition* or *habit*. Ex.:

Aveva già terminato i miei affari, quando ricevetti la vostra lettera.
I had already finished my business, when I got your letter.
Alla campagna, quand' io aveva pranzato, faceva un giro (walk) *d'un ora.*
In the country, after having dined, I used to take a walk for an hour.

But:

Un giorno che ***ebbi*** *bene pranzato, feci un giro.*

In the former of the two last sentences, the action is represented as frequently repeated, even as a habit; whilst in the latter, it appears as a single incident that once happened; therefore the *Anteriore*.

Future tenses.

§ 11. The *Futuro* is commonly employed:

1) To denote events or actions still to come. Ex.:
Carlo ***partirà*** *domani. Vi scriverò fra poco.*

2) After the verb *si dice*, it is said, where in English the Infinitive Mood with *to* follows. Ex.:

The general is expected (to come still) to-day.

Si dice che il generale ***arriverà*** *ancora oggi.* (*Lit.* one says that the general will still come to-day.

3) Sometimes the Future has the meaning of an *Imperative*, as:

Padre e madre ***onorerai***, thou shalt honour father and mother.

Là, ci ***darem*** *le mani*, come, let us shake hands.

NB. A Future with the accessory idea of *compulsion* or *prohibition* is expressed by *avere da* (*a*) (See L. 19, 5), as:

Questo matrimonio non ***s'ha da*** *fare.* (M.)
This marriage must not (= shall not) be concluded.

In quanto al mio onore, (Ella) ***ha da*** *sapere che il custode ne son io.* (M.)
As to my honour, (*lit.*) you have to know that I am its guardian.

4) A Future *close at hand*, which in English is expressed by means of *to be about to* . . . or by one of the adverbs *soon, directly, immediately*, is rendered by *essere* or *stare* with *per* before the Infinitive, or periphrased with *essere sul punto di* . . . or *essere in procinto di* . . . Ex.:

Egli sta or *è per morire*, he will soon die (French: *il va mourir*).
Io sono per dirvi, I am about to tell you.
Sono sul punto (in procinto) d'andarvi.
I shall go there directly.

5) The verb *volere* (See Less. 19, 15, II. P.). This verb, over and above the idea of Futurity, denotes the secondary idea of *disapprobation*. Ex.:

Così non ***vogliam*** *far niente.*
In this way we shall not succeed.

§ 12. The *Futuro composto* marks an action that is to *follow another future* one, as:

Quando avrò letto la lettera, ve la renderò.
When I (shall) have read the letter, I'll give it back to you.

Tostochè gli avrò scritto, io manderò la lettera alla posta.

Note. Very often the *compound* Future expresses nothing else but the *simple* tense, and, likewise, the compound Conditional nothing else but the simple Conditional, as:

Continua nella tua mala condotta, e mi avrai spezzato il cuore.
If you continue in your bad behaviour, you will break my heart.

This anomaly may be thus explained that from their vivid imagination the Italians represent the action or state expressed by the Future as already *transacted*, so that the meaning of the above sentence is properly:

If you . . ., (the time will come) when you *will have broken* my heart.

II. The Conditional Mood.

sometimes expresses *doubt* or *uncertainty*, as:

È a casa? is he at home?
Non saprei. I can't tell you (*je ne saurais vous le dire*).
Chi lo direbbe? who would ever have thought it!
Dovrei conoscere questa signora.
I ought to know (I think I know) this lady.

By a peculiar construction (an imitation of the Latin), the *Imperfetto dell' Indicativo* is used instead of the „Più perfetto del Soggiuntivo" in the subordinate clause, and in lieu of the „Condizionale" in the principal sentence. Thus instead of:

Se mi avesse interrogato, io gli avrei risposto.
If he had asked me, I should have answered him.

we very often meet with:

Se m'interrogava, io gli rispondeva.

Less frequently the *Imperfetto* alone is used in the subordinate clause, as:

Se m'interrogava, gli avrei risposto.

And very seldom the *principal* sentence alone is expressed with the *Imperfetto dell' Indic.*, as:

E lo facea, ma'l re Sobrin lo tenne (Ariosto 40, 36).
And he would have done it, but King S. withheld him.

III. The Imperative Mood.

In this both languages show no want of conformity. If, as with *Ella*, you, the third person Singular is requisite, it should be taken from the Subjunctive Mood, as:

Mi dia un bicchier d'acqua.
Please give me a glass of water.

Note. 1) Since the four verbs *avere, essere, sapere,* and *volere* have no proper form for the Imperative, this Mood must be taken from the *Subjunctive* Mood, as the learner will have seen in the conjugation of these verbs.

2) If an affirmative Imperative is *followed* by a *negative* one, the negation *nè* with the *Infinitive* following may be used instead of *e non.* Thus:

Scappa, galantuomo, nè guardar indietro!
Run away, man, and don't look behind you!

Traduzione. 108.

1. Dante Alighieri, the author of the majestic epic poem: 'Hell *(Gen.),* Purgatory and Heaven', is not only the father of the Italian language *(favella),* but also one of the greatest poets that the world ever saw *(Subj.).* His immortal poem gave birth to (*transl.* from his immortal poem went forth) those wonderful creations *(figure di)* Francesca da Rimini, Pia dei Tolomei and the horrible Myrrha, to whom *(plur.)* the genius of Ristori inspired (a) new life in our days. Dante was at once a poet and a warrior, like Camœns, the author of the Lusiade, and Cervantes de Saavedra. His terzinas were ever since the pride of Italy, and though they drew upon him the hatred of his contemporaries, yet they crowned with immortal laurels the head of the kinglike poet.

2. Torquato Tasso, the poet of Jerusalem Delivered, lived at the court of Alphonso of Este, to whom he dedicated his beautiful poem. A few days before his death he was crowned at the Capitol as the first of Italian poets, but, alas! the laurel which the pope sent to the dying poet came only in time to adorn his coffin. Tasso's stanzas breathe a harmony that even the best translation cannot render. The German poet Gries has translated the "Gerusalemme", and his translation is a master-piece that equals Schlegel and Tieck's translations of Shakespeare.

109.

1. My country has been ungrateful towards me, although I have rendered her the greatest services. The king has done me the greatest injustice; he has deprived me of my whole fortune, and has even robbed me of both my faithful servants. I have been obliged to flee, in order to preserve my life, which was seriously threatened. What should I have done? You ought to have suffered every injury before you *(piuttosto che* with Infinitive following) rebelled (*mancare*)

against the greatness of your royal house. When you were persecuted, you might have retired (yourself); it would have been better to be poor and obscure, than to attack your own country. Even in poverty and exile your glory would not have been lost.

2. By their pride the Tyrians had incurred the wrath of the great king Sesostris, who then reigned over Egypt, and had conquered many kingdoms. The riches they had earned by their commerce, and the strong position of their town, situated in the sea, had rendered this nation very overbearing. They had refused to pay the tribute Sesostris had imposed on them; they had sent troops to his brother, who at his return would have killed him in the midst of the joys of a great festival. No sooner did Sesostris know this (*transl.* as soon as . . .), [than] he proposed to bow down their pride and to ruin their whole maritime commerce.

Reading Exercise. 110.

Continuazione della lettera del Ganganelli.

Al ritorno passerà per Caserta che per i suoi ornati, pe' marmi [1]), per la estensione e per gli acquedotti, degni dell' antica Roma, può dirsi la più bella villa [2]) dell' Europa.

Firenze, donde uscirono le belle arti e dove esistono come in depósito i loro più magnifici capi d'opera, Le presenterà nuovi oggetti. Vi ammirerà una città che giusta [3]) la espressione d'un Portoghese non dovrebbe mostrarsi che le doméniche, tanto è gentile e vagamente adorna. Da per tutto [4]) vi si scorgono le tracce della splendidezza e del buon gusto dei Médici, descritti negli annali del genio quai (*as*) restauratori delle arti.

Livorno, porto di mare sì popolato come vantaggioso per la Toscana; Pisa, sempre in possesso delle scuole e d'aver degli uomini in ogni genere eruditi; Siena, rinomata per la purità dell' aria e del linguaggio, L'interesseranno a vicenda [5]) in modo particolare. Parma situata in mezzo ai páscoli [6]) più fertili, Le mostrerà un teatro che contiene quattordici mila persone e nel quale ciascuno intende tutto quel che si dice anche a bassa voce. Piacenza poi Le sembrerà ben degna del nome ch'essa porta, essendo un soggiorno che per la situazione ed amenità piace singolarmente a' viaggiatori.

Non si scordi di Modena, come patria dell' illustre Muratori e come una città celebre pel nome che ha dato ai suoi sovrani.

1) statue. 2) town, city. 3) according to. 4) *da per tutto*, everywhere. 5) likewise. 6) meadows.

In Milano troverà la seconda chiesa dell' Italia per beltà e grandezza; più di dieci mila statue di marmo ne adornano l'esterno, e sarebbe un capo d'opera se avesse una facciata. La società dei suoi abitanti è sommamente piacévole. Vi si vive come a Parigi, e tutto spira un' aria di splendidezza.

Le isole Borromée L'inviterranno a portarsi[7]) a vederle mercè[8]) il racconto che Gliene sarà fatto. Situate in mezzo di un lago deliziosissimo, presentano alla vista tutto ciò che di più ridente e magnifico tróvasi nei suoi giardini.

7) to go. 8) by reason of, for.

Dialogo.

Che cosa védesi di particolare a Caserta?
Vorrei ben sapere anche qualchecosa di Firenze.
Vi si trovano degli oggetti d'arte?
Che disse un Portoghese della città di Firenze?
Qual è il porto di mare della Toscana?
Che dice il nostro autore di Pisa?
Dove si parla il miglior italiano?
Che c'è di notévole a Parma?
Quante persone può contener il teatro di Parma?
Perchè è notabile Modena?
Che tróvasi a Milano?
Che difetto rimpróvera il G. al duomo di Milano?
Che dice ègli della società Milanese?
Che dice il G. delle isole Borromée?

Twenty first Lesson.

IV. On the Consecution of tenses.

The learner will have noticed that in Italian the Subjunctive Mood is much oftener employed than in English, and that its use presents some difficulty. Further observations are to be made concerning the *Tenses* of the verb in the subordinate clause.

*Rule I.**) If the verb of the *Principal* sentence appears in the *Presente* or *Futuro*, the verb of the *Subordinate* clause should either be in the *Presente del Soggiuntivo* or in the *Passato indef. del Soggiuntivo.* Ex.:

Conoscete qualcuno che sappia farlo?
Do you know anybody that will be able to do it?

*) Rule I and II are the same as in French.

Farò in maniera che tutto ***sia*** *pronto.*
I shall try to have everything ready.
Aspetterò finchè mio padre ***sia*** *uscito.*
I shall wait till my father is gone out.

Rule II. If the verb of the *principal* sentence stands in the *Imperfetto, Definito, Condizionale, Passato indefinito, Passato più perfetto* or *Passato anteriore*, the verb of the accessory sentence should follow in the *Imperfetto* or *Passato più perfetto*, as:

Lo ***fece*** *senza ch'io lo* ***sapessi.***
He did it without my knowing it.*)
Non ***aveva pensato*** *ch'Ella gli* ***avesse*** *scritto.*
I did not think that you had written him.
Io ***temeva*** *ch'egli lo* ***facesse.***
I was afraid he would do it.
Vorrei *ch'egli* ***venisse,*** I wish he would come.

Rule III. The *Passato indefinito* is followed by the *Presente*, if the subordinate sentence contains a present action or state, and by the *Passato indefinito del Soggiuntivo*, if the accessory action or state appears to be past. Ex.:

Iddio ci ha dato la ragione affinchè ce ne ***serviamo.***
God has given us reason, that we may make use of it.
Ho sempre detto che voi non vi ***siate*** *stati.*
I have always said that you were not there.

Note. It must be distinctly understood that here also the *actual* time decides, which tense should be used. Thus it may happen, that the *Present* of the principal sentence is followed by the *Imperf. Subj.* in the accessory sentence, as: ***Temo*** *ch'egli non mi* ***capisse,*** I am afraid (I fear), he did not understand me. *Non* ***niego*** *che ciò non* ***potesse*** *contribuire alla di lui riputazione*, I do not deny that this circumstance could contribute to his renown. Likewise, the *Conditional Mood* may be followed by the *Present Subj.*, as: *Si* ***crederebbe*** *che non* ***abbiamo*** *fatto il nostro dovere,* one might think, that we have not done our duty.

V. On the Subjunctive Mood.

Any action or state that does not appear to be quite *sure*, but is represented as *possible* or *uncertain;* besides,

*) Liter.: without *that I knew it.*

consequences resulting from any *sentiment* or *thought* should be expressed by the Subjunctive Mood. In Italian, this Mood, frequently neglected by the English, is strictly observed, and is one of the greatest beauties of the language, as it serves to modify the idea far more than is usual with the English Subjunctive. This is also the reason why the English verbs *could, would, should, may, might, must*, etc. are commonly suppressed and their meaning rendered by the Italian Subjunctive. The learner who is acquainted with the French language, will find a great analogy between both idioms, and will very seldom be mistaken in using the Italian Subjunctive there, where he would employ the French *Subjonctif.*

Thus the Subjunctive occurs:

1) After verbs importing command, desire, etc., as: *volere, pretendere, desiderare, bramare* (to wish eagerly), *chiedere, esigere, comandare, proibire,* and after the *Imperative Mood.* Ex.:

*Chiedo ch'egli m'**ubbidisca.***
I desire that he obey me.

*Egli voleva ch'io gli **dicessi** la verità.*
He would that I sould tell him the truth.

*Ditegli che **venga,*** Tell him to come.

*Mi dica dov' egli **sia,*** Tell me where he is.

2) After verbs expressing doubt, denial, etc., as: *negare, dubitare, essere incerto, disconvenire;* in which case the English whether is rendered by *che.* Ex.:

*Dubito che suo fratello **venga.***
I doubt whether your brother will come.

*Nego che mio figliuolo **abbia** fatto ciò.*
I deny that my son has done that.

Note. If one of these verbs is itself negatively employed, *non* with the *Soggiuntivo* should follow in the subordinate sentence, as:

*Non nego che il Sig. N. **non sia** un uomo dotto.*
I do not deny that Mr. N. is a learned man.

Very often *che* is omitted before the Subj. Mood, as in English. Ex.:

Temendo no'l mio dir gli fusse (fosse) grave (Dante).
Fearing lest my words offend him.

Crederono, non si avesse ubbidito.
They thought they had not obeyed.

Se, too, is very frequently omitted in *exclamatory* sentences, as:

(Se) Almeno si trovassero libri a buon prezzo.
If at least there were some cheap books to be found.

As we hinted before, *che* is sometimes found with the *Indic. Mood,* where the English use *and* between two *principal* sentences, as:

Domándami francamente ch'io ti risponderò senza suggezione.
Ask me freely, *and* I shall answer you sincerely.

3) After all verbs importing belief, opinion, etc. when the action of the subordinate sentence appears somewhat *uncertain,* as:

Crede Ella ch'egli abbia scritto questo?
Do you think he has written that?

Pretese che si fosse divertito molto bene.
He pretended he had enjoyed himself perfectly.

Note 1. If, however, the accessory sentence represents the action as *beyond all doubt,* the *Indicativo* should, of course, be used, as:

Le assicuro che sto perfettamente bene.
I assure you that I am quite well.

Note 2. As the *Futuro* has no Subjunctive Mood, the verb of the subordinate sentence, when expressing a future action or state, appears in the *Futuro dell' Indicativo,* but may also be put in the *Soggiuntivo del Presente,* as:

Non credo che verrà or *che venga domani.*
I do not think that he will come to-morrow.

4) After verbs denoting fear, lamentation, sorrow, astonishment, rapture, etc., as: *temere, aver paura, tremare* (to tremble), *essere sorpreso, rapito, maravigliarsi, rallegrarsi,* etc. Ex.:

Temo che piova, I am afraid it will rain.

Mi maraviglio ch'egli non sia ancora giunto.
I am surprised that he is not yet arrived.

5) After impersonal verbs like *bisogna, conviene, importa, basta, è meglio,* and likewise after *è* when forming adverbial expressions like *è peccato,* it is a pity, *è possibile, è naturale, è giusto,* etc. Ex.:

Bisogna ch'egli ***venga*** *domani.*
He must come to-morrow.

Basta che mi ***dica*** *una parola.*
(*Lit.* It is sufficient that he tell me one word). If he'll only tell me one word.

È peccato che non ***sia*** *venuta ieri.*
Is it a pity that you did not come yesterday.

6) In relative clauses, beginning with *il quale, che, dove (ove), donde (onde),* and depending on principal sentences importing expectation, purpose, choice, etc. Ex.:

Prenderò qualcheduno che ***conosca*** *bene la strada.*
I shall take some one who knows the street well.

Scelga un alloggio dove (Ella) ***possa*** *stare più tranquilla.*
Choose a lodging where you may live more at your ease.

If, however, the relative sentence expresses something certain, its verb appears in the Indicative, as:

Mostrátemi la casa dove ***sta*** *il conte B.*
Thow me the house where Count B. is living.

7) Moreover, the Subjunctive is used after the Superlative*), after *il primo, l'último, único, solo, nessuno, niente,* etc., if the sentence expresses something uncertain, doubtful, etc., as:

Tu sei l'unico amico di cui ***possa*** *fidarmi.*
You are the only friend on whom I may depend.

Questa è una delle ultime lettere che abbia scritte San Paolo.
This is one of the last letters St. Paul has written (that is to say: he may perhaps have written others, but we do not know them).

Note. Here also the Indicative Mood is employed, when the action is represented as an *historical fact,* as:

Nerone è il primo imperatore che ***ha*** *perseguitato i cristiani.*
Nero is the first emperor that has persecuted the Christians.

8) Finally, the *Soggiuntivo* is used, as in English, after all adverbs and pronouns that denote something vague or indistinct, as:

Chiunque sia, non voglio vederlo.
Whoever it be, I won't see him.

---

*) After the Superlative of an adverb, on the contrary, the Indicative is used. Ex.: *Ci vado il più spesso che* ***posso,*** I go there as often as I can.

Qualunque sia la tua sorte.
Whatever be your fate ...

9) An absolute Subjunctive Mood is found in sentences denoting desire, permission, invitation, apprehensive questions, and anger, as:

***Volesse** Iddio!* Heaven grant!
***Venga** pure!* Do but come!
***Favorisca** entrare!* Please to walk in!

***Fosse** mai egli quel tremendo tiranno?*
Should he indeed be that terrible tyrant?

Ma che) non **possano** mai vivere in pace queste due creature! (Gold.)*
Cannot these two creatures live in peace!

Traduzione. 111.

1. Napoleon requested on his death-bed, that his bones should be brought back to Paris. The laws require (*vogliono*) that by his wisdom and moderation one man should serve (conduce) to the happiness of many, but not that many men should serve to flatter the pride and effeminacy of a single one. Cæsar! can you allow that too great [a] severity be reproached (fr. *rimproverarsi*) to you?**) (The) Providence has allowed that the barbarians (should destroy) destroyed the Roman empire, and thus revenged the conquered universe. It is enough for me to know that you are poor; I shall provide for you. It is fitting that one (should esteem) esteems old people. I should be sorry (*m'increscerebbe*) if you departed without bidding me farewell. Nobody was found that would kill Marius.

2. (The) Marshal (of) Biron said to Henry IV, (when) surrounded at Dieppe: Now, Sire, that you are in France, they would (*Condiz.*) that your Majesty left (*uscire di*) the country, and your friends are of opinion, that you should do it voluntarily. But your Majesty will never (let it be said) allow that one may say, a junior member (*un cadetto*) of the house of Lorraine (*Lorrena*) had driven you out of the land. Name any master to me, whose instruction is as useful as that of (the) experience. (The) youth is the only time of life when (the) man may easily correct himself. (The) man is the only being that destroys himself in a state of absolute

---

*) These sentences are always introduced with *ma che.*
**) The sense is: Can you allow yourself to be reproached with too much severity? — For the convenience of the pupil, we occasionally prefer writing the English so that a literal translation will make it good Italian.

liberty. I should like to find a book that could serve me as a guide in my travels. (The) Don Quixote (*Chisciote*) of Miguel (*Michele*) Cervantes de Saavedra is the finest book that (the) humor ever inspired to (the) genius. Espronceda, Zorilla, and Hartzembusch are the greatest poets that modern Spain can boast (*gloriarsi*) of.

112.

1. My body, said (the) Marshal (of) Biron to his judges, has no vein that has not bled for you. It would be very hard, if (*di* with Infin. follow.) *one should* begin with me to punish thoughts. Why will you die, when I wish you to (*transl.* when I will that you) live? I'll give you your life, but you must be dead for the whole world. If even but a few men had been deceived by (the) superstition, [it] nevertheless is to be desired (*sarebbe a . . .*) that they might begin to root it out. [It] is time that we go home, for it begins to rain.

2. [It] is evident that Greece could not defend herself any longer, so much she had then decayed. Do you think he will execute your orders? I do not think he will do so (*transl.* it). [It] is sufficient to (*transl.* that you . . .) tell (him so) it him. [It] is a pity that you did not come with us, you would have had much pleasure. Are you sure (*È ella sicura*) that it is so late? I am sure it is already 12 o'clock. The contemporaries of Columbus (were not aware) did not know that there was still a fourth part of the world. The Americans were convinced that Columbus and his companions could make thunder and lightning. I doubt whether riches can give happiness. That is the most amusing book I have ever read.

— — —

10) Conjunctions that govern the *Soggiuntivo.*

The Italian language has a great many conjunctions that require the Subjunctive Mood after them. We here give those most in use:

Benchè *Abbenchè* *Sebbene* *Quantunque* *Tutto che* *Non ostante che* *Con tutto che*	though, although.	*Malgrado che* *Avvegna che* *Ancorchè*	though, although.
		Quand' anche,	even if, though.
		Acciocchè *Affinchè*	so that . . .

Purchè, *Solamente che*, *Solochè* } provided.
Posto che, *Supposto che*, *Dato che* } suppose that.
Anzi che, still before.
*Finchè**), *Sinchè**), *Finattantochè* } till.
Fin a tanto che, *Sin a tanto che* } till.
In caso che, *(Caso che)*, *Posto il caso che* } in case that . . .
Senza che, without . . .
Non che, not as if . . ., not as though.
A meno che, unless.

*Supposto ch'egli l'**abbia** fatto*, suppose he has done it.

*Quand' anche non l'**avessi** detto*, even if I had not said so.

*Benchè me l'**abbia** promesso.*
Though he has promised it to me.

*Supposto che questo racconto **sia** vero.*
Provided this tale be true.

*Affinchè voi lo **sappiate**.*
That you may know it.

*Senza ch'io ci **pensassi***, without my thinking of it.**)

*Purchè me lo **dia***, he will but give it me.

*In caso ch'egli **muoia***, in case he should die.

*Non vogliam fargli del male, purchè **abbia** guidizio* (M.).
We will not do him any harm, provided he be reasonable.

As we hinted Less. 21, V. 3, Note 1, the *Indicative Mood* should be used after these conjunctions, if the action or state is represented as beyond all doubt, as:

*Sebbene mi **rispose** francamente, non gli potei credere.*
Although he answered me freely, I could not believe him.

11) Frequently in the subordinate sentence the simple conjunction *chè* replaces its compound, in order to avoid repetition. Ex.:

***Benchè** mi abbia detto la verità e **chè** gli creda perfettamente . . .*
Though he have told me the truth, and though I perfectly believe him.

Note. Chè loses its accent when written *separately*. Thus: *acciocchè*, but: *accio che*. If, however, *che* is used instead of

*) These words may also be followed by the Indicative, if the sentence relates to a bygone time. Ex.: *Combattemmo finchè potemmo*, we fought as long as we could.

**) If in English the *pres. partic.* is found after one of these conjunctions, it should always be rendered by the *Soggiuntivo*.

a compound conjunction, as in the above sentence, it is written *with* the accent.

Traduzione. 113.

1. I can't depend on your promise, unless you give me the necessary security. This impudent fellow has not ceased to annoy me with his letters, though he knew I was not able to do anything for him. A thoughtless man knows nothing, though he have read a great many books: in the same manner a great many persons continue to be (*restare*) ignorant, though they have travelled through the most civilized countries.

2. In whatever country and (in whatever) state a man be, he is quite free, provided he fear the Gods. I cannot pardon you, unless you have freely confessed your faults and given me the promise to amend your behaviour. Provided he give me the slightest notice of his state, I will no longer complain of his silence. Wait till (*chè*) we come! I shall wait till you have done.

Traduzioni promiscue. 114.

We don't deny that you are right, but we doubt whether (*che*) you will gain your cause. I am afraid he will not keep his word, though I do not doubt (that) he has had the best intentions. Your father does not doubt (that) you will take all possible pains to answer his expectations. I don't deny (that) you have written to me, but I could not answer you, because I was ill (*transl.* by (*per*) reason of illness). Please God, my presentiment may be fulfilled! This great man has died at a very advanced age; may he rest (*riposare*) in peace! He hid himself, because he was afraid he would be detained by force. Whoever stands may (take) care that he do not fall. The Mussulmans don't deny that Jesus is a great prophet, but they deny him to be (*Sogg.*) the Son of God.

115.

A big cheesemonger who had the habit (*il vezzo*) of talking (*Infin.* with *di*) to himself, one day went on his mare to town. The weather was very hot, and he became [*tr. had* (Def.) *thirst*] thirsty. Near the road he perceived a cherry-tree hanging full of ripe cherries. He had an appetite (*voglia*, f.) to eat some of them, though in general he was no great friend of cherries. In order to get up at the fruit, he placed himself upright (*in piedi*) in the saddle. The cherry-tree stood in the middle of a large thorn-hedge. The good man, looking round about him, admired the patience of his mare. "I should be in a nice predicament", thought he, "if now somebody would cry: gee ho! to my horse." Unfortunately he pronounced the word so loud, that the mare began to go at a trot, and left the cheesemonger in the midst of the thorns.

116.

Anaxamenes saved his native town, by a device, from (a) great danger. The inhabitants of Lampsacus had always taken the part of Darius against Alexander. After having conquered Darius, Alexander, full of anger, prepared to (*andava*) take a dreadful vengeance on (*di*) the Lampsacenians. Anaxamenes, who had been Alexander's teacher, went to meet him, with the intention to prevent, if (it were) possible, the destruction of Lampsacus. Alexander hearing of this design, turned round to his army and swore by all the Gods, he would do just the contrary of (that) what Anaxamenes should demand (*Impf. Sogg.*). Informed of this oath, Anaxamenes presented himself to Alexander, and was, as usually, kindly received. Being asked by the king, what news he brought, and what he had (*essere*) resolved to do, he said: "I come, oh invincible (*invittissimo*) king, to beg thee, (that) thou mightst order Lampsacus to be*) destroyed from the summit to its very foundations (*infino dalle fondamenta*), and every house [to be] plundered (*Infin.*), that thou mightst respect (*aver riguardo a . . .*) neither temples, nor men, nor women, nor age, but destroy all with fire and sword (*mettere a ferro e fuoco*)!" It is said (*si dice*) that Alexander, surprised by this device and bound by his oath, humanely pardoned (*Def.*) the Lampsacenians.

Reading Exercise. 117.

Fine della lettera del Ganganelli.

Genova Le proverà essere ella[1]) realmente superba nelle sue chiese e nei suoi palazzi. Vi si osserva un porto famoso pel suo commercio e per l'affluenza degli stranieri: vi si vede un doge che si cangia appress' a poco siccome i superiori della comunità e che non ha un' aurorità molto maggiore.

Torino finalmente, residenza di una corte ove da lungo tempo abitan le virtù, l'incanterà[2]) colla regolarità degli edifizi, colla bellezza delle piazze, colla dirittura[3]) delle sue strade, collo spirito de' suoi abitanti; e quì in tal guisa[4]) terminerà il piacevolissimo suo viaggio.

Ho fatto, com' Ella ben vede, prestissimamente tutto il giro dell' Italia e con pochissima spesa, col fine[5]) d'invitarla in realtà a venirci[6]). Non Le *staro* a *dir*[7]) cosa alcuna dei nostri costumi; questi non sono niente[8]) più corrotti di quelli

1) that it is. 2) *incantare,* to charm. 3) straightness. 4) so' thus, in this way. 5) with the intention. 6) to come here. — 7) I will not tell you. 8) by no means.

*) order . . . to be, *fare* with the Infinitive following, without the preposition *di* or *da*.

delle altre nazioni, checchè ne dicano i maligni[9]); soltanto váriano nel chiaroscuro[10]) secondo la diversità dei governi, poichè il romano non rassomiglia al genovese, nè il veneziano al napoletano: si può dir dell' Italia come del mondo intiero, che, salva[11]) qualche piccola differenza, ci è quì come altrove, un po' di bene e un po' di male.

Non La prevengo[12]) su la grazia degl' Italiani nè tampoco sull' amor loro per le scienze e per le belle arti, essendo questa una cosa che conoscerà[13]) ben presto nel trattarli[14]), ed Ella specialmente sopra d'ogni altro[15]), con cui tanta soddisfazione si prova[16]) nel conversare, ed a cui*) sarà sempre un piacere il potersi dire umilissimo ecc.

9) malevolent. 10) *variare nel chiaroscuro,* here: to be modified. 11) except. 12) *non La prerengo,* I tell you nothing. 13) you will learn. 14) in treating them = in living among them. 15) *sopra d'ogni altro,* sooner than any other. 16) *si prova,* one feels.

Dialogo.

Che soprannome porta la città die Genova?
Perchè è famoso il porto della città?
Che dice il G. del già (See p. 138, 2) doge di Genova?
Qual è l'aspetto di Torino?
Che dice l'autore della corte di Torino?
Quale osservazione fa egli intorno ai costumi degl' Italiani?
Quale è, al suo dire (*as he says*), la consequenza della diversità dei governi?
Che paragone fa il G. tra l'Italia e il mondo intiero?
Che s'imparerà a conoscere nel trattar gl'Italiani?

Twenty second Lesson.

On the Infinitive Mood.

In all languages the Infinitive is the most general form of the verb, and therefore imports *action* or *being,* without any reference to *person* and *number.* This mood has much of the character and use of substantives, and like these appears either as the *subject* of the sentence or as a *complement* governed by a preceding word.

If used as a *substantive,* the Italian Infinitive entirely corresponds with the English *present participle,* as:

Writing is an art, ***Lo scrivere è un' arte.***

*) The construction of this sentence is inverted; it should be translated thus: and *whose* (*lit.* to whom) most humble servant to be, will always be a pleasure, etc.

We distinguish:

I. The Absolute Infinitive.

The Infinitive is called absolute, if it is the subject of a sentence, or if it is governed by a preposition. Even then, this Mood, though used as a substantive and sometimes preceded by the article, does not lose its *verbal* nature, and may, therefore, govern any complement like a real verb. In English the absolute Infinitive is rendered by the *Infinitive* Mood, or by the *present participle.* Ex.:

***Promettere e dare** son cose differenti.*
To promise and to give are different things.

***Il leggere buoni** libri*) è utile alla gioventù.*
Reading (of) good books is useful for young people.
(*Liter.* To read good books etc.)

*Nell' **andare** a scuola perdei il mio libro.*
On my way to school I lost my book.

*Collo **studiare** i classici ho ammeliorato il mio stile.*
By studying the classics, I have improved my style.

*Non mi potei contener **dal ridere.***
I could not help laughing.

*Quel vago **impallidir.** (Petr.)*
That charming turning pale = how charmingly she turned pale.

***Il tramontar** del sole.*
The setting of the sun.

***Il far** del giorno.*
Daybreak (*liter.* the making of the day).

*È **pazzia il voler** saper tutto.*
It is foolish if a person will know everything.
(*Liter.* it is foolery to be willing to know etc.)

Note. Very rarely the absolute Infinitive is found in the Plural, as:

***Gli anitriri** in voce di cavalli* (Bocc.).
The repeated neighing of horses.

This form, however, belongs exclusively to the ancient Italian.

II. The Dependent (oblique) Infinitive.

After verbs importing *opinion, belief, supposition,* the conjunction *che* is often omitted (like *that* in English), and the verb of the *subordinate* sentence is put

*) Here the Infinitive Mood governs *buoni libri* as its *direct complement.*

in the *Infinitive Mood.* The *subject* or *Nominative* case of the accessory sentence is changed into the *Accusative**) case, as will be seen by the following examples:

*Credendo lui***) (Acc.) *essere galantuomo . . .*
Thinking him to be an honest man = as I think (thought) he is (was) an honest man.

Supponendo lei (Acc.) *essere partita . . .*
Supposing her to be departed = supposing (that) she had departed.

However:

Credendo essere egli (Nom.) *galantuomo.*
Supponendo essere ella (Nom.) *partita.*

a) Infinitive *without* prepositions.

1) After verbs that require the Infinitive answering the question *what?* (Ex.: *I will . . .* what? *write*), and where consequently this Mood is considered to be a *true complement*, strictly requisite in order to complete the sense of the verb, the *Infinitivo* is used *without* any preposition (as often in English). Such verbs are: *potere, sapere* (to be able), *dovere, conviene, bisogna, occorre, è d'uopo, è di mestieri, fa di mestieri* (to be obliged, one must, to need, to be requisite etc.), *volere,****) *desiderare,*†) *bramare*†) (to wish, to desire, to be willing etc.); *fare, lasciare* (to let, to allow); *parere,*†) *sembrare*†) (to seem); *ardire, osare* (to dare); *solere, usare* (to use, to be wont); *dubitare*†) (to hesitate). Ex.:

Voglio scrivere, I will write.
Devo mangiare, I must eat.

---

*) This construction is the Latin *Accusativus cum Infinitivo.* Yet it should be observed that the *Nominative* case, when a *Personal pronoun* and *following* the Infinitive, remains *unaltered,* without being changed into the *Accusative.*

**) If, however, the *principal* and the *accessory* sentence have the *same* Nominative, *se* should be used instead of *lui* or *lei,* as:
Rispose, se essere pronto. [The same rule as in Latin.]
He answered that **he** was ready.
Or: *rispose di essere* etc. (See Inf. with *di.*)

***) We need not observe that if the principal and the accessory sentence have *different* Subjects, *volere* requires *che.* Thus:
Non vuole parlare, he will not speak.
But: *Non vuole che io parli,* he will not have me speak.

†) See page 344, b.

*Posso **andarmene**,* I may be gone.
*Non so **scrivere**,* I can't write.
*Lo vedo **partire**,* I see him depart.
*Intendo **dire**,* I am told (*liter.* I hear tell).
*Non occorreva **farlo**,* it was not necessary to do it.
*Sento **parlare**,* I hear (somebody) speak.
*Farò **fare**,* I'll get (something) made.
*Lo lascio **andare**,* I let him go.
*Bisogna **aiutare** i poveri*, we ought to assist the poor.
*Basta **dirgli**,* it is sufficient to tell him.
*Egli soleva **dire**,* he used to (he would) say.
*Odo **suonare**,* I hear (f. i. the bells) ringing.
*Sembra **essere** triste*, he seems to be sorry, etc. (See page 158, Note).

2) The Infinitive is used *without* a preposition after *intendere, sentire, udire,* to hear; *vedere,* to see, as:

Lo vidi cadere, I saw him fall.
Mi fece dire, he sent me word.

3) After the words *che,* what; *chi,* who; *dove,* where; *onde (donde),* whence, the Infinitive is often used *elliptically* (without the preposition) (as in French). Ex.:

*Non so ove **rifuggirmi.***
I don't know where to fly to (= *ove **debba** rifugg.*).
*Non sapeva che **rispondere.***
He did not know what to answer.
*Non abbiamo donde **vivere.***
We have nothing to live upon.
*Non sapeva a chi **rivolgermi.***
I did not know to whom I should apply.

4) After *è*, when forming phrases like *è meglio, è peggio, è più difficile, è più facile.* Ex.:

*È **meglio** restar a casa,* it is better to stay indoors.
È più facile criticare che far meglio.

b) Infinitive with the preposition ***di.***

1) After verbs denoting *belief, opinion, hope, desire, pleasure*, etc. the Infinitive is used *with* or *without* the preposition *di,* as:

*Spero **di** vederla* or *vederlà.*
I hope to see you.

Bramo di fare or *bramo fare la sua conoscenza.*
I wish to make his acquaintance.

Gli spiacque di dover or *dover restar soletto.*
He was displeased that he must remain alone.

NB. The construction with *di* is somewhat more elegant, but there is no difference in the signification.

2) As a *complement* of substantives answering the questions *what? what kind of?* Ex.:

L'arte di (dello) scrivere, the art of writing.
Il desio di vederla, the wish (desire) to see you.
Ho l'onore di riverirla, my best compliments.
(*Lit.* I have the honour to salute you.)

Note. When, however, the Infinitive expresses a future action, *da* is used instead of *di,* as: I have three more letters to write, *ho ancora tre lettere da scrivere.*

3) After *adjectives* that require the *Genitive* case answering the questions *whereof? whereabout? wherewith?* Such adjectives are: *desideroso, avido,* desirous; *contento,* satisfied; *malcontento,* discontented; *geloso,* jealous; *impaziente,* impatient; *degno,* worthy; *certo, sicuro,* sure, certain (See Less. 4 and 17, II. P.), etc.

Sono desideroso di vederla.
Im am desirous to see you.

Sono contento d'avergli detto la verità.
I am contented to have told him the truth.

4) After all verbs that require the Genitive after them, as: *godere, rallegrarsi,* to rejoice; *maravigliarsi,* to marvel; *pregare,* to pray; *supplicare,* to beseech (See Lesson 17, C II. P.), and after some *impersonal* verbs like *importa,* it is of importance; *mi tarda, non vedo l'ora di...* I am eager; *conviene,**) it is convenient, etc. Ex.:

Mi sono maravigliato di non trovarla a casa.
I was surprised that I did not find you at home.

Mi pregò di non abbandonarlo.
He begged me not to forsake him.

Si pentirà d'averlo detto.
He will repent having said so.

Egli s'accorse d'aver mancato al suo dovere.
He perceived that he had failed in his duty.

*) After impersonal verbs the Infinitive frequently occurs without *di.*

5) In *contracted* subordinate sentences beginning with one of the following prepositions or conjunctions: *prima, invece, a forza, affine (a fine), di paura, presso,* etc., as:

Prima di partire, before setting out.
Invece di piangere, instead of weeping.
A forza di faticarsi, owing to much fatigue.

Traduzione. 118.

1. Whoever does not *(fare)* his duty, is not worthy to be called a man. Are you sure to obtain the pardon of your parents, when you are not able to take a firm resolution? My poor old mother was much rejoiced (*contento*) at seeing *(Infin.)* me again. He could not remember (having) to have promised me the works of Ariosto. The art of dancing was already known to the most ancient nations. It is a shame (*vergognoso,* adj.) to obey one's passions. The desire to appear clever often hinders [one] to become so. Napoleon had the intention to unite all Europe into one great confederation against England.

2. The surest proof to (have been) be born with great qualities, is not to know envy. It is useless to make him any reproaches. It is the destiny of all human things to be of short duration only. By much working at night my eyes have grown weak. Cæsar had never believed Brutus [to be] able to undertake anything against him. I have always hoped to see you at my house, therefore (*laonde*) I requested my brother to communicate you this news.

119.

1. His whole life was one delusion *(Infin.)* of all that every human heart holds (*transl.* thinks) sacred. To know nothing is no disgrace, but it is an absurdity if a man will *(Infin.)* know everything. The noble mind (*maniera di pensare*) of the prince reconciled him even to his most exasperated enemies. Towards the end *(Infin.)* of the year, one perceived a decrease of the epidemy. At daybreak we weighed anchor, and sailed down the river. One must be very prudent in speaking *(Infin.)*; an old proverb says: speaking *(Infin.)* is silver, but silence *(Infin.)* is gold.

2. As I thought *(Gerund.)* him to be *(Infin.)* a robber, I seized my pistols and cocked them. That only shows that the covetous old sinner cheats (*gabbare*) even *(perfino)* God by his avarice. What is the good (fr. *giovare*) of apologizing *(Infin.)*, when it is too late to repair the damage? Who are the two gentlemen I see coming *(Infin.)* there (*colà*)?

The German poet Zschokke used [to] say *(Infin.)*: Trying *(Infin.)* is better (fr. *sorpassare*) [than] studying *(Infin.)*. You need not tell him that I am at home, because you know very well that I will (*volere*) not see him. Many a man (*Ci sono uomini*) seems to have much intellect; yet it is sufficient to hear him once, in order to be of another opinion.

c) Infinitive with the preposition *da*.

1) We have seen (II. P. Less. 4 II, 6.) that *da* often denotes an *aptnes* or *fitness* for something. Therefore this preposition is often used before the Infinitive Mood, if this latter be governed by *avere* or *essere*, in which case these verbs are no *auxiliaries* (as in the following sentences: What *is**) there *to be* done? He *has* nothing *to say*). In such a case the English often use the *Passive voice*, as:

Che c'è da fare, what is there to be done?
Non è da biasimare, he is not to be blamed.
Non hai niente da dirgli, you need not tell him anything.

NB. Also *dare, ricevere, proporre* etc. often take *da*, as:

*Egli gli dava***) *da intendere*, he gave him to understand.

Questo denaro l'ho ricevuto da conservare.
I have received this money to guard.

Egli è da temere, he is to be feared.

2) The Infinitive with *da* is also met with after *Substantives;* in this case it replaces an *adjective* or an *attributive accessory clause*, as:

Milano si ritrovava in tali termini ***da*** *non vedere.* (M.).
Milan was in such a condition, that nobody could see ...

Una cosa ***da*** *ridere*, a ridiculous thing.
Una casa ***da*** *vendere*, a house to be sold.

---

*) *Avere* and *essere* are considered to be *principal* verbs, when used without the *past participle.*

**) If the *Infinitive* construed with *dare* governs *and precedes* a *Complement, a* should be used instead of *da*, as:

Egli mi diede ***a*** *fare* ***qualchecosa,*** he gave me something to do.

But: *Egli non mi diede* ***niente da*** *fare*, he gave me nothing to do.

3) After *Adjectives*, too, the Infinitive often obtains with *da*, as:

*Un pezzo **difficile da** suonare.*
Lit. A piece difficult to play (on the piano etc.).

Note. In many cases *da* before the Infinitive may be supplied by *a*. Thus:

*Ho **da** fare una visita*, or *Ho una visita **da** fare*, and *Ho **a** fare una visita.*

The question is whether the action expressed by the Infinitive and denoting *futurity*, is to be performed by the speaker himself or not. If it is, as in the above example, *a* may be used instead of *da*. But it would be incorrect to say, *Dateci **a** sedere*, place chairs for us (*lit.* give us to seat), because here the speaker does not place the chairs himself. Therefore we should say: *Dateci **da** sedere.*

Traduzione. 120.

(As the Italian and English expressions often differ greatly, we have been obliged, here and elsewhere, to arrange the English sentences so that the pupil may translate them without difficulty into Italian).

He gave me to eat and to drink, though he had not much to live upon for himself. What is there to be done in such a case? There is nothing to be done with so idle a fellow. — You must do it (even) still to-day: to morrow it is not to be hoped that the opportunity will again be so favourable. It would be (highly desirable) much to desire that at last peace (should return) returned among (*tra*) us. What is there to be seen? My dear friend, you are much to be pitied! The whole day you have nothing to do, and this important occupation prevents you (*dat.*) (from reflecting) to reflect on what you ought to propose (yourself) to do the next day. I don't know what I am to (*ho*) tell him, when he comes. That is all (*Tutto questo va*) very well, but it is only to be feared that people will be of [a] different opinion.

d) Infinitive with the preposition *a*.

1) After adjectives that govern the Dative case, answering the question to what? Such are: *risoluto*, resolute; *buono*, *disposto*, disposed; *facile**), easy; *difficile*, difficult; *lento*, slow; *sensibile*, *pronto*, ready. Ex.:

*) These adjectives but rarely occur with *da*.

Pronto ad eseguir le imposte cose. (Tasso.)
Ready to execute the things ordered.

2) After all verbs governing the Dative case, answering the questions: *wherewith? wherein? whereon? whereupon?* etc. Such verbs are:

Acconsentire, to consent.
Accostumarsi, *Avvezzarsi*, to accustom (one's self).
Costringere, *Forzare*, to oblige, to force.
Attendersi, to expect.
Affaticarsi, *Applicarsi*, to endeavour.
Autorizzare, to authorize.
Condannare, to condemn.
Contribuire, to contribute.
Destinare, to destine.
Disporsi, to prepare.
Aiutare, to help.
Amare, to like.
Adattarsi, to accommodate (one's self).
Insegnare, to instruct, teach.
Dare, to give.
Mettersi, to begin.
Insistere, *Persistere*, to insist.
Offrirsi, to offer (one's s.).
Reggere, to endure, to last.
Passare, to pass.
Incoraggiare, to encourage.
Esortare, to exhort.
Impiegare, to employ.
Esporsi, to expose (one's s.)
Continuare, to continue.
Pervenire, to come, to get to...
Incitare, to excite.
Indurre, to induce.
Invitare, to invite.
Inclinare, to incline.
Determinarsi, *Risolversi*, to determine, to resolve.
Piacersi, to please.
Riuscire, to succeed in ...
Imparare, to learn.
Tardare, to belong to ...
Stimolare, *Spronare*, to stimulate.
Sedurre, to seduce.
Bastare, to be enough, to suffice.
Tornare, to do something once more.
Muovere, to move.
Esitare, to hesitate.
Rinunziare, to renounce.

Note 1. *Stare a* and *essere a* mean to be just now doing something, and, therefore, correspond with the English *present part.*, as: *Mia sorella è a ricamare*, my sister is embroidering; *egli sta a vedere la festa*, he is looking at the festival.

2. *Dare a* forms some Italianisms, like: *dare a vedere a qchn.*, to make anyb. understand; *dare a fare**), to give to do, to occupy; *dare a pensare*, to make one think = to give him material for reflection; *dare ad intendere*, to make anybody understand.

3. *Andare a* and *mandare a* must not be literally translated, as: *andare a ritrovarè qualcheduno*, to call on someb.; *mandare a cercare, a prendere*, to send for somebody. *Tornare*

*) See the Note page 347.

a means to do something once more, as: *tornò a scrivere,* he wrote once more.

As in English, the Infinitive Mood is often found in *contracted subordinate sentences* like the following:

Ad intenderlo direste ch'egli è innocente.
To hear him (= if one hears him), one would say he was innocent.

Era il primo a gettarsi sul nemico.
He was the first to throw (= who threw) himself on the enemy.

Che fare? what am I (are we) to do?

Dove fuggire? where (shall we) flee to?

Io! spargere il sangue de' miei figli!
How could I shed the blood of my children!

Traduzione. 121.

1. Be attentive to seize the good opportunity. The just (man) is slow to punish but ready to reward. Are you disposed to do it? I am just now writing a letter to my shoemaker who delays to bring me my new boots. Accustom yourself betimes to see your fairest hopes deluded (fr. *deludere*). Why don't you help me to get (*salire*) into the carriage? What shall I do? I am authorized to fulfil your desire. Why do not you begin to write?

2. Yesterday already you pleased to tell me disagreeable things, and to-day you induce others to do the same. Why do you hesitate to enter? Usually you are the first to come in. Have you succeeded in confirming yourself in your friends' esteem? You waste your time with reading *(Infin.)* insipid novels; do you not know that reading (of) bad books entirely corrupts the taste of young people? On seeing him, one (*uno*) directly perceives that one has to do with a cheat.

§ 1. As in English, the *Infinitivo* is often used instead of an accessory sentence beginning with *che.* This is the case:

1) When both the *principal* and the *accessory* sentence have *the same subject,* as:

Credo essere ferito.
I think (to be) I am wounded (= I think that I am wounded).

Spero ***meritare*** *la vostra confidenza.*
I hope to deserve your confidence (= (that) I deserve your confidence).

2) Or when the *subject* of the subordinate sentence occurs in the *principal* sentence as a *Dative* or *Accusative* case:

L'ho pregato di non dirne niente.
I have begged *him* to say nothing about it.
Gli *dissi di tacere,* I told *him* to be silent.

§ 2. Accessory sentences importing any particular *circumstance,* and usually beginning with one of the compound adverbs *dopo che, avanti che, prima che,* are also frequently contracted into the *Infinitivo.* But here, too, the Infinitive Mood may only be used, if both the *principal* and the *accessory* sentence have the same subject. [The same rule as in French.] Ex.:

Prima di attaccar *battaglia, Gustavo Adolfo pregava a ginocchia con tutta l'armata* (for ***Prima che*** *attaccasse* etc.)
Before he began (beginning) the battle, Gustavus Adolphus and the whole army prayed on their knees.

Il maresciallo, ***dopo aver letto*** *la lettera, disse . . .*

Or:

Dopo aver letto *la lettera, il maresciallo disse . . .*
After having read the letter the marshal said . . .

§ 3. If, however, the principal and the accessory sentence have *two different* subjects, no Infinitive may be used, but a *conjunction* should be employed. Ex.:

Dopo ***ch'io ebbi*** *ascoltato la querela del mio amico,* ***egli*** *mi disse . . .*
After I had heard the complaint of my friend, he said to me . . .

(*Dopo aver ascoltato* etc. *egli mi disse* would be: After having (= he had) heard etc., he said etc.)

Note. Besides, *anzichè* (sooner than, rather, far from, etc.), *per* (for, as, because), and *oltre a* (not only that) are used with the Infinitive. In English, however, these conjunctions are frequently periphrased, as:

Anzichè *confessare la sua colpa volle ad ogni costo gettarla sopra il povero villico.*

Far from confessing his fault, he would at any cost impute it to the poor peasant.

Oltre all' essere un' infamia, la vostra condotta mérita il più duro risarcimento.

Your behaviour is not only infamous, but it also deserves the severest punishment.

Per non sapere come difendersi, egli ammutolì.

As he did not know how to defend himself, he grew silent.

Traduzione. 122.

1. Take care that you do not fall. After having heard my tale, he told me that he did not believe a single word of the whole story. I must now suffer from ungrateful people *(gl'ingrati)*, after having been ungrateful myself. After Anthony bad been conquered, his followers were persecuted and proscribed. The fairest victory a man may win over himself, is to pardon an injury. The general ordered his officers to say not (another word) a word more about the unfortunate event. Who has courage enough to save the unfortunate *(pl.)*?

2. It would be better you were unfortunate than guilty of a crime. I wish you (had) to have more patience. We (should like) desire to have more money. (The) sleep is as necessary as (the) eating; but too much sleeping is quite as injurious as too much eating. Allow me, Sir, to introduce my friend to you. The conviction to have done wrong to an unfortunate (man), gave him many a sad hour. Galilei was obliged to make amends (do penance) for having taught the motion of the earth round the sun.

Reading Exercise. 123.

Qual fa tal riceve. *)

Un signorino, appena venuto in età, sposò una cittadina ricca di sostanze, ma povera di quello che forma la vera ricchezza, cioè la bontà dell' animo.

Io non voglio dirvi nè il nome nè il paese loro, perchè sarebbe maldicenza; ed anche quando sono costretto a rivelarvi i peccati di alcuno, non voglio che voi prendiate mal animo contro i peccatori.

Il padre di questo signorino era ben innanzi cogli anni, ed aveva lavorato tutta la vita per lasciare molto agiato questo único suo figliuolo. Ma diverse infermità lo avevano ridotto a sì cattiva salute, che pareva fino imbecille. Il figliuolo e la nuora avrebbero dovuto avergli compassione, alleggerirgli

*) by *Cesare Cantù.*

coll' amore il peso degli anni e degli acciacchi, e ricambiarlo delle attenzioni altre volte da lui ricevute. Ma credereste? invece non facéano che maltrattarlo. Se il povero vecchio si metteva al focolaio, e, tráttesi le scarpe, scaldava i piedi, gli davano del villano, e lo cacciavano da banda. Se non capiva quel che gli era detto, gli ridevano in faccia, lo chiamavano balordo e rimbambito. Poi a tavola, se gli cadeva un poco di brodo sulla salvietta, o se rovesciava il bicchiere sulla tovaglia, facevano un rumore da non dire.

E tanto innanzi arrivò l'inumanità di questi due sposi, che non lo vollero più a tavola insieme; ma lo ponevano ad un deschetto in cucina, abbandonato alle celie dei servitori e d'un loro ragazzino. Perchè dovevo dirvi che essi avevano un ragazzino, fra i quattro e i cinque anni, tutto vispo e gagliardo; ma che dal cattivo esempio dei genitori aveva imparato a trattar male col nonno, e farne dispregi.

Ora una volta questo bambino corse nella sala, dove stavano lautamente mangiando padre e madre, e contò loro che il vecchio barbogio aveva lasciato cascare la scodella e mandátala in pezzi. Questi sdegnati sgridarono in cattiva maniera il povero vecchio, ed ordinarono che, d'allora in poi, gli fosse dato a mangiare in una ciòttola di legno, come ai cani.

Che triste lezioni dovevano essere queste pel bambino! E pur troppo ne profittò.

Pochi giorni dopo, i suoi genitori lo trovarono in giardino, affaccendato a metter insieme i cocci della scodella rotta dal nonno: li congegnava, e forándoli con un chiodo, come fa il pentolaio col trapano, li cuciva insieme con un filo di ferro.

Ridendo e vezzeggiando s'accostarono a lui i genitori, e gli chiesero:

Che fai costà, piccino?

Che cosa fo? rispose quegli. Sto rimettendo all' ordine questa scodella, in cui dar da mangiare a voi, quando sarete vecchi.

I due si guardarono in faccia ed impallidirono. Intesero benissimo che »ciascuno deve aspettarsi d'essere trattato da' suoi figliuoli, siccome egli avrà trattato coi genitori.«

Dialogo.

Chi aveva sposato un giovine signore?
Che non vuole fare l'autore, quando è costretto a rivelare i peccati di alcuno?
Che aveva fatto il padre del signorino?
A quale stato lo aveano ridotto diverse infermità?
Quale sarebbe stato il dovere del figliuolo e della nuora?
In che modo adempirono questo loro dovere?

Che fecero, quando il vecchio non capiva quel che gli era detto?
Fin a qual punto andò l'inumanità degli sposi?
Dove era rilegato il vecchio padre?
Avevano figli?
Che raccontò loro una volta il bambino?
Che ordinarono allora gli sposi?
Dove ritrovarono alcuni giorni dopo i genitori il figliuolo?
Che gli chiesero?
Quale fu la risposta del piccino?
Che intesero gli sposi da questa risposta?

Twenty third Lesson.

On the Participio and Gerundio.

Participles derive their name from *participare*, to participate, because they *partake* of the nature of *adjectives* as well as *verbs*. Being *derived* from verbs, they are *used* like adjectives.

There are two Participles in Italian, the *Participio presente* and the *Participio passato*. The former is seldom used as a Participle and commonly appears as a real adjective. Ex.:

Una valle ridente, a smiling (= charming) valley.

Occasionally it obtains in expressions like: ***vivente*** *mia madre*, during my mother's lifetime (*lit.* my mother living). Modern language, however, commonly substitutes the *Gerundio* for it: ***Vivendo*** *ancora mia madre.*

Note. In a very few instances the present participle retains its *verbal* nature, i. e. it governs a Complement, as:

I derident ***ogni credenza.***
Those who deride every belief.

The *Gerundio.*

This *invariable* form of the verb is a peculiar beauty of the Italian language. It either corresponds with the English *present participle* or it is used instead of accessory sentences beginning with one of the conjunctions *because, as, whilst, if*, etc. It *always refers to the subject of the sentence.**) Ex.:

*) With ancient writers some examples may be found where the Gerundio refers to the *Complement* in the Accus. case. Thus (*Dante*, Purg. 15, 124): *Vidi spirti per la fiamma andando*, I saw spirits walking across the flame.

Ella mi disse ***piangendo.***
She told me weeping (with tears in her eyes).

Essendo *ammalato non posso andare a trovarlo.*
Being ill, I can't go to see him.

Non ***volendo*** *rispondergli, ella tacque.*
As she would not (Not willing to) answer him, she was silent.

Note. In English the *pres. part.* often appears preceded by a preposition, as: on seeing him; whilst reflecting; after having said, etc., whereas the Italian *Gerundio* is never governed by prepositions.*) Ex.: in reading, *leggendo* (not ***in*** *leggendo*); whilst speaking, *parlando* (not ***durante*** *parlando*). Yet prepositions may be used with the Infinitive Mood, which often fully replaces the *Gerundio.* Thus:

In reading, ***nel*** *leggere* = *leggendo.*
On going out, ***all'*** *uscire* = *uscendo.*

Uscendo *egli mi slanciò uno sguardo.*
Leaving the room he cast a look at me.

Often the personal pronoun must be added to the *Gerundio* in order to avoid some misconception. Such is the case when the *principal* and the *accessory* sentence have *two different* subjects, as:

Andando ***io*** *a spasso,* ***egli*** *s'avvicinò a me.*
Whilst *I* was taking a walk *he* came up to me.

In this case the pronoun immediately *follows* the *Gerundio.* If, however, the principal and the subordinate sentence have the same subject, the Personal pronoun may *precede* or *follow* or else be *omitted.* Euphony is here the only arbiter. Ex.:

Vedendo ***io*** *il pericolo lo presi per la mano.* Or
Io *vedendo il pericolo lo presi . . .* Or
Vedendo il p. lo presi . . .
Seeing (when seeing) the danger, I seized him by the hand.

Observation, If the principal and the subordinate sentence have two different subjects, the use of a conjunction is preferred to the *Gerundio,* as:

*) With ancient writers, however, the prep. *in* may be found with the Gerundio, thus:

Se l'ardor fallace
Durò molt' anni ***in*** *aspettando un giorno* (Petrarca Son. 21).

***Mentre** io andava a spasso egli dormiva*, rather than ***Andando** io a spasso egli* etc.

Occasionally, the verbs *andare*, *stare*, *venire*, *mandare* are employed with the present participle (especially in poetry), in order to represent an action or state as *lasting*. Ex.:

L'uccelletto va cercando la libertà (for *va a cercare*).
The little bird seeks (is seeking) its liberty.

*Io ti **stava** aspettando.*
I was waiting for thee.

Note. Quite obsolete is the use of *two Gerundios*, of which one belongs to the Participle whilst the other is used in lieu of an *accessory sentence*, as: ***Essendosi** alla fine **piangendo** addormentata*, having finally fallen asleep by much crying.

Observation 1. If the subordinate clause refers to the *object* (Accusative) of the principal sentence, the *Gerundio* is not admissible, thus:

*Lo vidi l'ultima volta, **quando** egli stava per partire.*
I saw him for the last time when he was on the point of setting out.
(*Lo vidi **stando*** etc., would be incorrect.)

2. As we stated in a former note, the Infinitive Mood with *a*, *con*, *in*, *per*, *dopo* is often used instead of the *Gerundio;* thus either:

***Vedendo**lo diresti*, or *al **vedere**lo diresti.*
When seeig him you would say.

*Egli me lo diede **dicendo*** or ***con dire.***
He gave it me saying . . .

Traduzione. 124.

1. A man that loves (*Ger.*) science (*transl.* the sciences) will have more joy(s) than he who spends his days (in idleness) with doing nothing. He answered me laughing, it was all the same to him. When (being) in good health, people seldom think of the physician who has cured them. When reading, I commonly smoke a cigar. Mentor, when hearing (he heard) the voice of the Goddess who called for her nymphs, awakened Telemachus. Trembling (*part. pres.*) at the idea (*pensiero*) to see themselves thrown on the rocks bordering the steep shore, the courageous sailors plunge into the brine, and swimming without cessation, at last attain the land dripping (*part. pres.*) with water, almost dying of weakness and fatigue.

2. After having destroyed Troy, the Greeks returned to their country. Having no money I cannot depart. When

going to school I met him in the street. I have met your brother who went home. Saying these words he fell down on his knees. As he entered (in) the room he ordered me to pay the coachman. As I am to depart to-morrow, I have come to bid you farewell.

125.

1. Franklin seeing all his efforts useless, went back to his country, in order to brave the storm with his countrymen. Seeing one day a little fish in the stomach of a big one, he said: Oh, as you eat one another, I do not see why we should abstain from eating you. Franklin after having looked everywhere for occupation, re-entered (at) (*acconciarsi presso*) the printer's Keimer. Being useful to our country, we are at the same time useful to ourselves. Napoleon seeing that the battle of Waterloo was lost, drew his sword and would (*transl.* in order to . . .) desperately fling himself into the tumult of the fight.

2. Have you been waiting (*transl.* have you waited) for me long? Yes, I have been waiting for you this whole hour. What are your pupils occupied with whilst you correct their translations? The Patriarch soon made his intentions known by laying claim for the church to the riches (that) Tancred had taken from (*togliere a*) Omar's mosque. The ambassadors, when arriving at Troyes, found the Duke of Champagne ill. By hating (the) vice we confirm ourselves in (the) virtue. By attentively reading good authors we learn to write intelligibly (fr. *chiaro*) and elegantly.

Reading Exercise. 126.

Beniamino Franklin.*)

Nella terra scoperta dall' Italiano Colombo e denominata dall' Italiano Americo Vespucci, fu fondata la città di Boston, ove, ai 17 gennaio del 1706, nacque Beniamino Franklin, ultimo di diciassette fratelli. Non essendo suo padre al caso [1]) di tenerlo sulle scuole [2]), come appena ebbe imparato a leggere ed a scrivere, di dieci anni se lo tirò dietro [3]) nel suo mestiero [3]) di far sapone e candele. Il giovinetto vi attendeva [4]), ma pure [5]), fin da quell' età primaticcia [6]), aveva tale avidità di leggere, che, quando non poteva il dì, vegliava [7])

1) *essere al caso,* to be able to afford. 2) *tener sulle scuole,* to send to school. 3) *se lo tirò dietro nel suo mestiero,* he got him to learn his own profession. 4) *attendere a qchs.,* to apply one's self to smth. 5) yet. 6) *età primaticcia,* young age. 7) *vegliare,* to sit up.

*) By *Cesare Cantù.*

la notte, beato[8]) qualora[9]) potesse ottenere qualche bello ed utile libro.

Vedútagli tale disposizione, un fratel suo, che lavorava di stampatore[10]) lo tolse con se a bottega[11]), ove Beniamino, badando[12]) attento ad ogni cosa, presto imparò a perfezione questa nuova arte. Lavorava più degli altri, e perchè lo faceva volentieri riusciva meglio, e gli sopravanzava[13]) tempo da scrivere e discorrere con chi[14]) ne sapeva più di lui: perchè il tempo è come il danaro; chi non lo getta via ne ha sempre a sufficienza.

Disgustato però dei modi[15]) rústici e sgarbati[16]), con cui lo trattava suo fratello, risolse di andare a cercar fortuna e si condusse[17]) a Filadelfia.

Filadelfia è città d'America, che poi divenne capo degli Stati Uniti, e dove Franklin, alcuni anni dopo, fu accolto tra gli spari[18]) dell' artiglieria e l'esultanza[19]) di un popolo intero. Ma per allora il giovinetto vi entrò tutto solo, non conoscendo alcuno nè da alcuno conosciuto, mal in arnese[20]), con cinque lire in tasca e tre pagnotte[21]); una sotto ciascun braccio e la terza in mano sbocconcellando[22]). Recava però con se la voglia di lavorare e di risparmiare; onde[23]) allogátosi[24]) presso uno stampatore si guadagnò[25]) di che vivere[26]) onoratamente. Un buon lavorante è un tesoro al padrone; e questo, se ha giudizio[27]), lo tiene bene da conto[28]).

8) happy. 9) whenever. 10) printer. 11) *togliere a bottega*, to take to the work-shop (here: printing-office). 12) *badare*, to mind. 13) *gli sopravanzava tempo*, he had time left. — 14) *chi*, here: people that. 15) manners. 16) rude. 17) *condursi*, here: to go. 18) *gli spari*, the thunder (of a gun). 19) acclamation. 20) *mal in arnese*, badly dressed. 21) loaves. 22) *sbocconcellare*, to eat by bits. 23) therefore, thus. 24) *allogarsi*, to enter, to take a situation. 25) *guadagnare*, to earn. 26) *di che vivere*, enough to live upon. 27) *aver giudizio*, to be reasonable. 28) *tenere da conto*, to esteem, to appreciate.

Dialogo.

Da chi ebbe nome il continente scoperto da Colombo?
Dov'è nato Beniamino Franklin?
Che mestiere esercitava il padre?
Trovava piacere a quell' occupazione il giovinetto?
Non aveva dunque il tempo di leggere?
Non s'accorse nessuno della disposizione del ragazzo?
Imparò la tipografia?
Gli sopravanzava tempo da studiare?
Come venne trattato da suo fratello?
E sopportava tranquillamente quel cattivo trattamento?
Vi aveva degli amici?
Non aveva danaro?

E quando entrò a Filadelfia per la seconda volta dopo aver sottoscritto a Parigi nel 1783 la pace che assicurava la libertà della sua patria, come venne accolto allora?

Twenty fourth Lesson.

I. On the Participio Passato.

Concerning the *agreement* of the past part. with its *subject* we here state the following principal rules:

§ 1. If coupled with **essere** or with one of the verbs used instead of *essere*, as: *andare*, *restare*, *rimanere*, *stare*, *venire*, the Italian past part. *agrees with the subject of the sentence in gender and number.* Ex.:

Mio padre è partito, my father has departed.
Mia madre è arrivata, my mother has arrived.
Gli scolari ***vengono*** *puniti*, the pupils are punished.
Ella ***rimase*** *sbalordita*, she was quite astonished.

I birbanti ***restarono*** *attoniti.*
The rascals were quite perplexed.

In *intercalated* subordinate clauses the *auxiliary* as well as the *relative pronoun* are often omitted. It makes no difference whether the contracted clause stands at the beginning or in the middle of the whole sentence. Thus:

I re ***amati*** *dai loro popoli méritano la stima del mondo intiero.*
Kings that are loved by their people deserve the esteem of the whole world.

Cacciati *dall' alta Asia, gli Ungheresi si stabilirono nella Pannonia.*
Driven from Asia superior, the Hungarians settled in Pannonia.

La principessa, ***adirata*** *di vedersi ingannata, partì subito.*
The princess, angry to see herself deceived, departed immediately.

§ 2. The *Participio*, when used with the auxiliary **avere**, remains *unaltered* (except. § 3.). Ex.:

Io ***ho*** *veduto mia madre,* I have seen my mother.
(Here the complement *mia madre* follows the verb.)

Voi non avete detto due parole.
You did not utter a single word.

Perchè avete tremato? Why have you trembled?

§ 3. If, however, the *Participio* used with *avere* **follows** its complement, it should agree with it. [The same rule holds good in French.] Ex.:

Che libri (compl.) ***avete letti?***
Which books have you read?

Che lettere (compl.) *hanno scritte?*
Which letters have they written?

Le lettere ***che*** (Acc. compl.) *mi avete mandate.*
The letters you have sent me.

I figli ***che*** (Acc. compl.) *ho veduti.*
The children I have seen.

Observation. The rules we have established are now almost universally observed by good authors. Yet many examples may be found in Italian classical writers, where the *pass. part.*, though coupled with *avere*, agrees with its following complement. Thus *Boccaccio: Aveva la luna perduti i raggi suoi,* the moon had lost her rays. This is the case, when a particular *stress* is laid on the *verb*, and the action is represented as *lasting in its consequence* and forming an *inherent quality* of the complement. The pupil is requested to compare the following sentences:

Ho mutato la mia sorte, and

Ho mutata la mia sorte, I have altered my lot.

In the first example the *verbal* notion predominates, as in English. In the second, however, a particular stress is laid on the *quality* (altered), which is now represented as a *lasting one.* It will be easily understood, that this being so, the concord of the *past participle* used with *avere,* is rather arbitrary in Italian.

§ 4. An exception from § 3 is found in the case where *by Inversion* the *Subject* of the sentence follows the *Participio passato,* as:

I paesi ***che*** (Acc. compl.) *aveva conquistato Alessandro Magno.*

The countries which Alexander the Great had conquered.

When, however, the Subject of the phrase takes its *due* place before the verb, the *Participio passato* agrees; thus:

I paesi che Alessandro Magno aveva conquistati.

§ 5. With the *Pronominal* (or *reflective*) verbs we should carefully distinguish whether the pronouns *mi, ti, si, ci, vi* are *Accusatives*, or whether they are *Datives*. In the former case the past participle *agrees*, in the latter it remains unaltered. Ex.:

We have loved one another (whom? — *ourselves*. Acc.).
Noi ci siamo amat

Whereas:

We have reproached (to) ourselves (to whom? — *to ourselves*. Dat.).
Noi ci siamo rimproverato.

If, however, the Dative is preceded by a complement in the Accusative, the Participle, of course, agrees with this complement. Ex.:

I sigari che (Accus. compl.) *noi ci* (Dat.) *siamo pigliati*, (taken).
(See II. P. Less. 18. II. Pron. verbs.)

Note. Here the Part. is plural, not for the sake of *ci*, with which it has nothing to do, but on account of the foregoing *che* (= *I sigari che . . .*). — In the sentence:

Le ragazze se le sono strappate dalle mani,
The girls have snatched them out of each other's hands,

the Participle appears in the *Plur. fem.*, not for the sake of the subject *ragazze*, but because it is preceded by the Accusat. of the person. pronoun (*le*) referring to a foregoing *fem.* complement, as *le scarpe, le calze* etc. — These rules, however, are often neglected, even by good authors, because the Italians are not over-scrupulous in the concord of their Past. Partic. Thus one may find sentences like: *Le ricchezze ch'egli si era acquistato* (instead of *acquistate*), where the Partic. agrees with the subject, whilst it properly ought to agree with the foregoing complement (here *le ricchezze*).

§ 6. Again, we should carefully distinguish, whether the *preceding Accusative* case is governed by the *Participle* or by an *Infinitive* connected with the Participle. [The same as in French.] Examples:

*) This rule is often neglected; it is not improper to say: *noi ci siamo rimproverati.*

The song (which) I have heard sung.
La canzone ***che*** *ho inteso cantare.* (What have I heard? Answ. singing). Here *che* is the complement of *cantare,* whereas in the next sentence *che* is the complement of *intesa:*

La cantatrice ***che*** *ho intesa cantare.*
The songstress whom I have heard singing. (What have I heard? Answ. the songstress.)*)

§ 7. A Participle coupled with a *neuter* verb never agrees, though ***che*** may precede as a seeming complement. [The same as in French.]- Ex.:

Le due ore ***che*****) *ho dormito.*
The two hours I have slept.

Le cinque miglia ***che*** *siete corsi.***)
The five miles you have run.

Note. When referring to the preceding *ne,* of it, of them, etc. the *Participio* always remains unaltered, as *ne* is never considered to be a direct complement. Thus: Have you eaten some crabs? *Avete mangiato dei gámberi?* No, we have not (eaten any), *No, non* ***ne*** *abbiamo mangiato.*

Likewise, the *Participio passato* of *fare,* when meaning to have, to get, is always invariable. Ex.:

Gli stivali ***che*** *mi sono* ***fatto*** *fare,* [*che* is governed by *fare.*]
The boots which I got made for me.

Whereas:

Gli sbagli ***che*** *avete fatti,* [*che* is governed by *fatti.*]
The faults you have made.

Here *fare* appears in its proper signification.

Note. The Partic. referring to *che cosa?* what? should also remain unaltered, because *che cosa?* is an equivalent for a *neuter pronoun,* thus:

Che cosa avete detto? What have you said?

§ 8. The *Participio passato* of the auxiliary *avere* is invariable, if the sentence is *elliptical,* i. e., if the

*) This rule, too, is often neglected.

) In the former sentence *che* means as much as *durante le quali* = during which; in the latter *corsi* is plural, because it refers to *voi,* wherewith it is connected by the auxiliary ***essere.* (See Reading Exercise 78 the first line, and the second question of the Dialogue of the same Read. Ex.)

Participio passato is followed by an *Infinitive Mood,* or if this Infinitive is understood, as:

Egli mi ha dato i libri che ho voluto (i. e. *avere*).
He has given me the books I wanted.
Gli ho reso tutti quei servizi che ho potuto (i. e. *rendergli*).
I have done him any service I was able (to do).
*Ecco i libri che ho voluto leggere.**)
Here are the books I wanted to read.

§ 9. Whenever the preceding relative pronoun *che* (or *il, la* etc., *quale* etc.) is not the complement of the Participle, this Partic. is *invariable.* Sometimes the *real* complement follows in the form of an *accessory sentence,* as:

Le parole che avete voluto che gli dicessi.

Here the complement of *voluto* is not the preceding *che,* but the following accessory sentence *che gli dicessi,* that I should tell him [*che* before *avete* is the complement of *dicessi*].

Note. We should carefully distinguish from the *absolute Partic.* the construction explained in Less. 15, g, II. P., where the Participle *agreeing with the following complement* precedes and is immediately followed by *che,* as:

Detta che ebbe la parola, no sooner had he said the word.
Trovata che l'avremo, as soon as we shall have found it (i. e. *la pietra,* the stone).

This construction is nothing else but an *Inversion,* where *che* is used instead of one of the compound conjunctions: *tosto che, subito che* or *allorchè* etc., and the Participle agrees with its following complement (See § 3), so that the sentence is properly:

Tostochè ebbe detta questa parola.
Allorchè l'avremo trovata.

II. On the Participio Assoluto.

§ 1. The *Participio passato assoluto* (absolute) often obtains, either with the *Gerundio* or without it, where in English either *accessory* sentences are used, or

*) In these three sentences *che* is not the complement of the partic. (*voluto, potuto*), but of the Infin., expressed or understood (*avere, rendere, leggere*).

a construction with the *present participle* of the auxiliary and the *past participle* of the *principal* verb. Ex.:

***Essendo morto** il re, suo figlio salì al trono.*
After the king had died (the king being dead), his son mounted the throne.

§ 2. In general the *Gerundio* is omitted and the *Participio* alone is used, agreeing, of course, with the word it refers to. Ex.:

Finita) la guerra, l'armata ritornò alla patria.*
After the war was ended, the army returned home.

***Fermátasi,** disse loro.*
Stopping (she stopped and . . .) she said to them.

***Girati** oziosamente gli occhi all' intorno, li fissava.* (M.).
Having looked carelessy about him, he fixed his eyes . . .

***Passata** questa* (i. e. *settimana*) *non m'appagherò più di chiácchiere* (M.).
When this week is over, I shall not be appeased any longer with mere words.

***Udite** queste parole ella scoppiò dalle risa.*
(After) Having heard these words, she burst forth into a loud laughter.

§ 3. With the absolute Participle is sometimes joined the preposit. *dopo* (rarely *senza*), which, if the Partic. were rendered by an accessory sentence, ought to appear under the form of the conjunction *dopo che* (or *senza che*). This construction is easily explained by inserting an *Infinitive Mood*. Examples:

***Dopo** rimasti alquanto lontani.*
After having been away for some time.

*(Dopo **essere** rimasti alquanto lontani).*

*Quella novella che cominciato aveva, **senza finita** lasciò stare (Bocc. Dec. VI, 1.)*
He left unfinished the novel which he had begun.

Or in form of accessory sentences:
Dopo che fummo rimasti etc.
Senza che l'avesse finita etc.

Traduzione. 127.

I have met a great many persons that I have not known. He has lent me every assistance he could. The gentlemen [I have] invited to dinner, have not accepted the invitation. Brought up in all the enjoyments of wealth, she will never

*) Latin *Ablat. absolut.*

learn to accommodate herself to (*transl.* find herself in) a (more humble) lower situation. The pupils we have heard reading (*Infin.*) yesterday, have proved that they have taken all possible pains to acquire a good pronunciation. The wealth has all been dissipated. Penetrated by admiration, the guests all thronged to see the hero sitting at table. The little girl, overwhelmed with joy, took the little lamb in her arms and carried it home to her mother. After the first defeat of the American troops, three commissioners were sent to (the) General Howe; but soon the negotiations were broken off. Soon afterwards New-York was taken, both the Jerseys occupied, Philadelphia threatened, and without the most incredible efforts of Washington, whose army had been diminished to four thousand men, the cause of (the) independence would have been lost for ever. It is a good while since we have (not) seen one another, but we have often (corresponded) written to one another.

128.

Seldom things [one has] long expected correspond with the idea we have formed of them. The long silence you have observed (fr. *custodire*) (*transl.* obs. by you) has made us think (that) you had entirely forgotten (*di*) your promise. Never do anything contrary (*transl.* that be contr.) to the principles I have endeavoured (fr. *cercare*) to inculcate in you. The fleet we have seen arrive belongs to the French. Do you know these ships? I know them well; I have seen them building (as they were built). Look at those trees; I have seen them planting (as they were planted) ten years ago. The society I have seen you frequent, is now dissolved. As this reflection greatly embarrassed (*Gerund.*) our (*il buon*) man, he said: One can't sleep well if one has so much intellect.

129.

After the father was (*Gerund.*) dead, the sons dug up the field in order to find the treasure. Eurymedon being killed, his fleet was taken and burnt. The cause of the contagion being removed, and the booty divided, they proceeded to the election of a king. The coat I have had made does not fit me. If we abstract from (*fatta astrazione di*) the result, we can't but (*non — se non*) approve this enterprise. A carrier had loaded some live calves on his car. The poor animals, packed one upon another, with [their] *) legs tied fast and their heads hanging down, filled the air with plaintive lowing. The frogs demanding a king, Jove gave them a hydra. Epaminondas being at the head of the government

*) transl. *the* legs . . ., *the* heads . . .

of this country, Artaxerxes, king of Persia, sent him rich presents, in order to obtain an alliance with the Thebans.

Reading Exercise. 130.

Continuazione di Beniamino Franklin.

Ma Franklin era giovane ed inesperto[1]); onde[2]) si lasciò sollevare[3]) da uno di quei tristi[4]), i quali sono larghissimi[5]) in parole e scarsi[6]) al fatto[7]). Costui, prometténdogli mari e monti[8]), lo distolse[9]) dal suo quieto mestiere per condurlo a Londra in Inghilterra, assicurándolo che quivi farebbe passata[10]) e troverebbe la cuccagna[11]). Franklin vi andò, ma tutti que' belli castelli in aria[12]) svanirono[13]), e lontano migliaia di miglia dalla patria, consumati nel tragitto i pochi suoi quattrini[14]), sarebbe stato ridotto[15]) a basir di fame[16]), se non avesse ripigliato[17]) il lavoro di stampar libri. Laborioso e sobrio[18]) piaceva al suo principale[19]), ed acquistava riputazione ed una certa autorità sopra i compagni suoi. Questi non sapevano mai risparmiare[20]) qualche soldo, sbevazzavano[21]) tutto il dì, spendevano delle ore[22]) al giuoco e sulla taverna; Beniamino al contrario beveva acqua, non se la sbirbava al lunedì[23]), lavorava delle ore oltre il dovere, guadagnando di più, facendo meglio e stando più bene di salute e di borsa. Aiutávasi anche coll' insegnare il nuoto[24]), col menare[25]) barche, con tutti i modi onesti che gli venivano alla mano.

Perfezionato poi nell' arte sua, tornò in America, ove, conosciuto per giovane attento e temperante, trovò chi[26]) lo sovvenne[27]) di danaro per mettere in piedi[28]) una stampería, e gli procacciò[29]) commissioni[30]).

Desiderando di far bene agli altri, stampava di tempo in tempo libretti e taccuini[31]), alla mano[32]) di tutti, dove esponeva le mássime[33]) della buona condotta e s'ingegnava di abituare i suoi concittadini alla parsimónia, alla fatica, a pensare giusto ed operare[34]) il bene.

1) inexperienced. 2) thus, therefore, so. 3) seduce. 4) rascal, miserable fellow. 5) profuse. 6) poor. 7) *al fatto,* in deeds. — 8) *promettere mari e monti,* to promise mountains of gold. 9) *distorre,* to take away, to get anybody to leave anything. 10) *far passata,* to make one's fortune. 11) *trovare la cuccagna* (a proverbial expression), to lead a delightful life. 12) *castelli in aria,* castles in the air. 13) *svanire,* to vanish. 14) farthings. 15) reduced. 16) *basir di fame,* to starve. 17) *ripigliare qchs.,* to take again, once more to smthg. 18) sober, temperate. 19) master. 20) to save. 21) to carouse. 22) whole hours. 23) *sbirbarsela al lunedì,* to make blue, i. e. to leave work on Monday and go drinking. 24) *il nuoto,* swimming. 25) *menar barche,* to boat. 26) *chi,* people who ... 27) *sovvenire,* to help, to assist. 28) *mettere in piedi,* to establish, set up. 29) to procure. 30) work. 31) almanack. 32) *alla mano,* for the use. 33) principles. 34) to do.

Dialogo.

Che cosa accadde poi a Franklin?
Che gli propose quegli?
Che gli promise il seduttore?
Allorchè Franklin giunse a Londra, trovò che gli fosse stata detta la verità?
Che fece poi lontano migliaia di miglia dalla patria?
Da chi entrò in bottega?
Vi stava bene?
Si occupava anche d'altre cose?
Si fermò per sempre a Londra?
Che intraprese Franklin ritornato in America?
Aveva buon successo la sua impresa?
Che stampava di tempo in tempo per istruire i concittadini suoi?

APPENDIX.

I. MATERIALS FOR CONVERSATION.

1.

Passi! entri!	Come in!
È permesso?	May I be permitted? May I come in?
Felicissima notte!	Good night!
Come sta?	How are you?
Le auguro il buon giorno.	I wish you a good morning.
S'accómodi!	Sit down!
Stia bene!	Adieu! Farewell!
Godo di vederla!	I am glad to see you!
Come va la salute?	How do you do?
Servo suo!	Good b'ye!
Padrone!	Your most obedient (*properly:* you are my master)!
Favorisca!	Be so kind!
La riverisco! / *Addio!*	Good b'ye!

2.

Sulla mia parola.	Upon my word.
Dove va?	Where are you going?
Vado in chiesa.	I go to church.
Abbia la compiacenza di dirmi!	Have the kindness to tell me!
Le sono molto obbligato.	I am much obliged to you.
Che cosa comanda?	What can I do for you?
È un pezzo che non L'ho più veduta.	It is a long while since I saw you last.
Scommetto la mia vita che la (cosa) è così!	I bet you whatever you like, it's a fact!
Che seccatura!	What a bore!
Mi lasci in pace!	Let me alone!
Ha Ella mal di testa?	Have you a headache?
Sì, mi duole la testa.	Yes, my head aches.
Me ne rincresce.	I am sorry for it.
Che c'è da fare?	What is there to be done?
Che premura! Non può fermarsi un momento?	What a hurry! Can't you wait a moment?
Mi vien male!	I feel qualmish.

3.

Parla italiano, Signore?	Do you speak Italian, Sir?
Lo parlo un poco.	I speak it a little.
Come si chiama il suo maestro?	What is the name of your teacher?
È il professore Lepper.	Professor Lepper.
Dove sta egli di casa?	Where does he live?
Contrada San Nicolò, Nr. 76.	No. 76 St. Nicholas street.
Che c'è di nuovo?	What is the news?
Non ho ancora letto la gazzetta.	I have not yet seen the paper.
Che cosa si dice nella città?	What do they say in town?
Corre voce che la regina sia partita per l'isola di Wight.	They talk about the queen having set out for the Isle of Wight.
Qual è il miglior albergo a Venezia?	Which is the best inn at Venice?
L'albergo Danieli.	The Hotel Danieli.
Vuole Ella far una passeggiata?	Will you take a walk?
Volentieri, sono pronto.	With pleasure. I am ready.
Dove andiamo?	Where shall we go?
Andiamo al giardino pùbblico.	Let us go to the park.

4.

Che tempo fa oggi?	How is the weather to-day?
Fa bel tempo.	It is fine.
Fa cattivo tempo.	It is bad weather.
Tira vento.	It is windy.
C'è chiaro di luna.	The moon shines.
Fa un caldo eccessivo.	It is extremely warm.
C'è nebbia.	It is foggy.
Il tempo sta per cambiare.	The weather will soon change.
I giorno créscono.	The days are getting longer.
I giorni cominciano a calare.	The days are getting shorter.
Avremo un temporale.	We shall have a thunder-storm.
Pioviggina.	It rains a little.
Lampeggia.	It lightens.
Diluvia.	It is raining hard.
Fa molto freddo.	It is very cold.
Névica.	It snows.
Lo scioglimento del ghiaccio comincia.	The ice begins to break up.
Non uscirò con questo freddo.	I shan't go out in this cold.

5.

Mi preme di vederla.	I long to see you.
Mi valgo dell' opportunità.	I seize the opportunity.
Farò capitale della sua parola.	I'll depend upon his word.

Non mi darò la briga di scrívergli.	I shall not take the trouble to write to him.
Egli me l'ha dato di giunta.	He has given it me into the bargain.
Tocca a me.	That concerns me.
Un tal discorso non mi va a genio.	Such a discourse does not agree with me.
In somma, vi dico che non voglio.	Briefly then, I tell you, I won't.
Mi si vuol dare ad intendere.	They will make me believe.
Per altro.	Besides.
Non lo dico da burla.	I am in earnest, I am not joking.
Che c'è da fare?	What is there to be done.
Per l'amor di Dio!	For God's sake!
Non lo fare per quanto ti è cara la vita.	Upon my life, you should n't do that!

6.

Una volta per sempre.	Once for all.
Per me, non vorrei farlo.	As for me, I would not do it.
Con questo mezzo.	By this means.
Egli è in cóllera con me.	He is angry with me.
Ho parlato in vostro prò.	I have spoken in your favour.
È fuori di senno.	He is beside himself.
Come dissi poc' anzi.	As I said just now.
Vuol Ella venire con me?	Will you come along with me?
Anzi.	With pleasure.
Fátevi indietro!	Stand back!
Sono bagnato sino alla pelle.	I am wet through.
Al di là del fiume.	On the other side of the river.
Passammo attraverso la foresta.	We went through the forest.
Andiamo lungo il fiume.	Let us go along the river.

7.

Mantengo saldo il mio propósito.	I stand by my word.
Agite secondo i vostri princípj.	Act in conformity with your principles.
Non possiamo andare d'accordo su ciò.	We can't agree on this point.
Mi prevalgo dell' occasione.	I profit by the opportunity.
Ho una grazia da chiédervi.	I have a favour to beg of you.
Spenga la candela.	Put out the candle, if you please.
Egli si fece saltar le cervella.	He blew his brains out.
Le negoziazioni furono troncate.	The negotiations were interrupted.
Non potrà mai venirne a capo.	You will never be able to do it.

8.

Egli ha perduto la metà del suo avere.	He lost half his fortune.
Egli fu accusato d'omicidio.	He was accused of manslaughter.
Il soldato sarà punito di morte.	The soldier will be put to death.
Non vi mi posso risólvere.	I can't make up my mind to do it.
Ciò dipende dalle circostanze.	That depends on circumstances.
Egli la scappò bella.	He had a narrow escape.
La figlia d'un mio amico è morta.	The daughter of a friend of mine has died.
Godo di vedervi in buona salute.	I am glad to see you in good health.
Devo prendere da Lei commiato.	I must bid you farewell.
Véndere al minuto.	To sell by retail.

II. PROVERBS.

Chi fa il conto senza l'oste lo fa due volte.	One should not reckon without one's host.
Chi va al mulino s'infarina.	He that touches pitch will defile himself.
Chi dorme coi cani si sveglia coi pulci.	Bad company spoils good manners.
Bisogna báttere il ferro mentre è caldo.	One must strike the iron while it is hot.
A chi consiglia non duole il capo.	Advising is easier than helping.
Chi la dura la vince.	Patience overcomes any hardship.
La prática val più della grammática.	Experience is the best teacher.
Navigare secondo il vento.	To comply with the times; *or:* to go with the stream.
Tanto ne va a chi ruba che a chi tiene il sacco.	The receiver is as bad as the thief.
I páperi vogliono menare a bere le oche.	Jack Sprat would teach his master.
Invan si pesca se l'amo non ha esca.	You must grease the lawyer's fist, if you will carry your cause.
Cercare il pelo nell' uovo.	To find faults where there are none.

Dimmi con chi vai, e saprò quello che fai.	'Tell me what company you keep, and I'll tell you who you are.
I pensieri non págano gabelle.	Thoughts are free.
Il mondo è di chi se lo piglia.	Boldly ventured is half won.
Molto fumo e poco arrosto.	Much ado about nothing.
Raccomandare il lardo alla gatta.	To set a fox to keep the geese.
Cane scottato ha paura dell' acqua fredda.	A burnt child dreads the fire.
Appetito non vuol salsa.	Hunger is the best sauce.
Quante teste tanti cervelli.	So many men, so many minds.
Chi troppo abbraccia nulla stringe.	He that undertakes too much brings nothing to an end.
Esser tra l'ancúdine e il martello.	To be at the pinch.
Il lupo cangia il pelo ma non il vizio.	A fox will leave his hair but not his tricks.
Una róndine non fa primavera.	One swallows brings no summer.

III. SPECIMENS OF ITALIAN POETRY.

FAVOLE.

1. I due ladri e l'ásino.*)

Un' orribile contesa[1]
Per un asino rubato
Fra due ladri s'era accesa[2];
L'uno e l'altro era ostinato:
L'un dicea: Lo venderemo.
Dicea l'altro: Lo terremo.[3]

Dal gridar vengon all' onte[4],
E da queste a crudel guerra;
E con mani audaci e pronte
Afferrati[5] vanno a terra[6],
Dove dansi**) pugni, schiaffi[7],
Urti[8], calci[9], morsi e graffi[10].

1) quarrel. 2) *accéndersi*, here: to arise. 3) *terremo* fut. of *tenere*, to keep. 4) *venir all' onte*, to say foul things, to injure. 5) *afferrare*, to lay hold; *afferrarsi*, to fight, to box. 6) *andar a terra*, to fall down. 7) blow; box on the ear. 8) *urto*, a hit. 9) *calcio*, a kick. 10) *graffo*, a scratch.

*) By *Luigi Grillo*.
**) instead of *si danno*.

Mentre *stanno* entrambi *attenti*[11]
A dar colpi, a far difese,
Qual[12] due cani d'ira ardenti,
Venne un terzo ladro, e prese
Il somaro[13], e sopra quello
Monta e trotta via *bel bello*[14].

Finalmente quei cessaro[15]
Stanchi e fiacchi[16] dalle risse[17],
E vedendo il lor somaro
Via sparito[18], un di lor disse:
Mentre noi stiamo in *contese*[19],
Ride un terzo a nostre *spese*[20].

11) *star attento a qchs.*, to be occupied with ... 12) like. — 13) the ass. 14) *bel bello*, quite merrily. 15) to cease. 16) fatigued. 17) *la rissa*, the quarrel, fight. 18) *sparir via*, te disappear. 19) *star in contese*, to quarrel. 20) *a spese*, at the cost, expense.

2. Il gallo, il cane e la volpe.

Un tempo[1] il gallo e il cane
Voller, da amici veri,
Per lunghi aspri[2] sentieri[3]
Veder terre lontane.

Partiron in quell' ora,
Che[4] con ridente aspetto
Dall' inamabil letto
Fuggía[5] la bell' Aurora.

In una selva[6] antica
Fur giunti[7], quando in cielo,
Stendeva il fosco (*dark*) velo
La notte a' ladri amica.

Ad una querce[8] allora
I nostri viaggiatori
Insin a' nuovi albori[9]
S'avvisan[10] far dimora[11].

Il cane sott' a quella
Riposo e sonno prende[12];
Il gallo in cima ascende
A star in sentinella[13].

1) One day, once. 2) rough, uneven. 3) path. 4) when. — 5) *fuggía* or *fuggiva*. 6) wood, forest. 7) *giugnere*, to arrive. — 8) oak. 9) *gli albori*, (poet.) the dawn, Aurora. 10) *avvisarsi*, to advise, to resolve. 11) *far dimora*, to dwell, to remain. — 12) *prender sonno* (poet.) to take a good night's rest. 13) *stare in sentinella*, to watch, to keep guard.

Tutto tacéa: soltanto
Qûel vígile cantore
In quel notturno orrore
Apriva il becco[14] al canto.

L'ode una volpe, e pensa:
La sorte, se non sogno[15],
Intende il mio bisogno,
Provvede alla mia mensa[16].

Già corre al gallo in fretta[17]:
Ma che farà? salire[18]
Non può: sa ben mentire;
Onde[19] così l'alletta[20]:

Tu come un cigno[21] canti;
Che voce! pare un' eco;
Deh! scendi, e vieni meco
A stare alcuni istanti.

Sol una canzonetta
Da te sentir vorrei,
E, se cortese[22] sei,
Larga[23] mercede[24] aspetta.

Alla volpina[25] lode[26]
Il gallo non si fida,
E con tal dir[27] confida[28]
Punir frode[29] con frode:

Al tuo desir mi rendo[30];
Ma un mio compagno desta[31]
Che là dormendo resta,
Mentre[32] che a terra scendo.

Egli è cantor perfetto,
Non gallo, ma cappone[33],
E non una canzone
Udrai, ma un bel duetto.

La volpe presta fede[34]
A quel ch'ai denti giova[35],
E cerca e presto trova
Tal altro[36] che non crede.

14) bill, beak. 15) *se non sogno*, if I am not mistaken. — 16) *mensa* prop. table, here: food. 17) hurry. 18) to climb up. 19) therefore. 20) to allure. 21) *cigno*, swan. 22) polite. 23) rich. 24) reward. 25) *volpino*, adj., foxy = of the fox. 26) praise. — 27) *con tal dire*, with these words. 28) *confidare*, to trust. — 29) fraud. 30) *rendersi al desir*, to agree with a request. 31) *destar*, to awaken. 32) *mentre che*, whilst. 33) capon. 34) *prestar fede*, to believe, to trust, 35) *che giova ai denti*, what pleases his teeth (appetite). 36) *tal altro*, quite another one.

Ben tosto alla sua tana[37]
Colei[38] fuggir volea:
Ma il can, che desto[39] avea,
La segue, prende e sbrana[40].

Per breve[41] ha lieta sorte
Chi viver suol d'inganni:
Ne[42] vengon poi gli affanni[43]
E vergognosa morte.

37) *den.* 38) *colei* this, *fem.* because referring to *la volpe.* — 39) *desto*, inst. of *destato.* 40) *sbranare*, to rend. 41) *per breve*, a short time. 42) *ne* referring to *inganni*, from it, from there. 43) anxiety, torment.

3. Il rosignuolo[1] e'l cardellino[2].

Un fanciullino udiva
Del rosignuolo il canto;
E al bosco, donde usciva
La voce, gli occhi intanto
Volgea[3], desioso
Di scorgere[4] dov'era
Quel dolce melodioso
Cantor di primavera[5].
Lo vede tra le fronde (*foliage*),
E vede a lui vicino,
Che ancora si nasconde,
Un vispo[6] cardellino[2];
E questo egli credea
L'augel*) cantor che fosse[7],
Chè**) vaghe[8] piume[9] avea,
E bianche e gialle e rosse,
E disse: L'augelletto
Che *va* col canto *al cuore*[10]
È questo: l'altro inetto[11]
Mi par al brun colore.
Ma questo ha penne belle,
E belle a maraviglia,
E'l dolce canto a quelle

1) nightingale. 2) goldfinch. 3) *volgere gli occhi*, to turn the eyes, to look. 4) *scorgere*, to perceive, to see. 5) spring. 6) merry. 7) Constr. *E egli credeva che questo augel (uccello) fosse il cantore.* 8) charming. 9) feathers. 10) touches the heart. 11) *inetto*, unapt, awkward. Const. *L'altro al color bruno mi pare inetto.*

*) Poetic. for *uccello.*
*) *chè* for *perchè.*

Appunto s'assomiglia[12].
A questo dír[13], *a volo*
Vede l'augel ch'ei vanta
Fuggir[14], e'l rosignuolo
Ode, che dolce[15] canta.
Allor egli si trova
Confuso nel vedere,
Che l'abito non prova
Nè'l merto[16], nè'l sapere.

12) *assomigliarsi*, to resemble. 13) *dire*, word. 14) *fuggir a volo*, to fly away. 15) *dolce* for *dolcemente*. 16) *merto* for

4. La rondinella.*)

Rondinella pellegrina[1]
Che ti posi in sul verone[2]
Ricantando ogni mattina
Quella flébile[3] canzone,
Che vuoi dirmi in tua favella[4],
Pellegrina rondinella?

Solitária[5] nell' obblío[6],
Dal tuo sposo abbandonata,
Piangi forse al pianto mio,
Vedovella sconsolata[7]?
Piangi, piangi in tua favella,
Pellegrina rondinella!

Pur di me manco[8] infelice
Tu alle penne al men t'affidi[9],
Scorri (*to glide along*) il lago e la pendíce[10],
Empi l'aria de' tuoi gridi,
Lui chiamando in tua favella,
Pellegrina rondinella!

Oh, se anch' io ... ma lo contende[11]
Questa bassa, angusta volta[12],
Dove il sole non risplende

1) wandering. 2) a large window. 3) sad. 4) language. — 5) lonely, solitary. 6) oblivion. 7) inconsolable. 8) *manco* = *meno*. Const. *Pure* (yet) *meno infelice di me*. 9) *affidarsi*, to trust to ... *tu t'affidi alle tue penne*, thou trustest to thy wings. 10) the brow of a hill. 11) *contendere*, here: to forbid. 12) *volta*, vault.

*) Taken from *Marco Visconti*, a novel by *Tommáso Grossi*. This little poem, a master-piece of harmony and sentiment, is as well known in Italy as f. i. Th. Moore's *Evening Bells* in England.

Dove l'aria ancor m'è tolta[13]
Donde a te la mia favella
Giunge appena, o rondinella.

Il settembre innanzi[14] viene,
E a lasciarmi ti prepari:
Tu vedrai lontane arene[15],
Nuovi monti e nuovi mari
Salutando in tua favella,
Pellegrina rondinella.

Ed io tutte le mattine
Riaprendo[16] gli occhi al pianto,
Tra le nevi e fra le brine[17]
Crederò d'udir quel canto,
Onde par[18] che in tua favella
Mi compianga, o rondinella!

Una croce in primavera
Troverai su questo suolo;
Rondinella, in su[19] la sera
Sovra a lei raccogli[20] il volo[21],
Dille[22] pace in tua favella,
Pellegrina rondinella!

13) *torre,* to take, to deprive of ... 14) *venir innanzi,* to draw near, to approach. 15) *arene,* (sandy) coasts. 16) *riaprire,* to open once more. 17) *brina,* rime, hoar-frost. 18) Constr. *Onde* (wherewith) *pare* (it seems) *che tu, o rondinella, mi compianga in tua favella.* 19) *in su,* towards. 20) *raccogliere,* here: to stop. 21) *il volo,* the flight. 22) *dille,* contract. of *di',* tell, and *le,* her i. e. to the cross.

5. From Petrarca's Canzone to the holy Virgin.

(Petrarca.)

Vérgine santa d'ogni grazia piena,
Che[1] per vera ed altissima umiltate*)
Salisti al ciel, onde[2] i miei preghi[3] ascolti;
Tu partoristi[4] il fonte[5] di pietate,
E di giustizia il sol,[6] che rasserena[7]
Il secol pien d'errori oscuri e folti[8].
Tre dolci e cari nomi hai 'n[9] te raccolti[10]:
Madre, figliuola e sposa;
Vergine gloriosa,
Donna del re, che nostri lacci[11] ha sciolti[12],

1) *che,* thou that. 2) whence. 3) prayer. 4) *partorire,* to give birth. 5) fount. 6) *sol* for *sole.* 7) *rasserenare,* to clear up, to render clear. 8) innumerable. 9) *'n* for *in.* 10) *raccolto,* united. 11) fetters. 12) broken.

*) Poet for *umiltà.*

E fatto 'l mondo libero e felice,
Nelle cui sante piaghe[13]
Prego, ch'appaghe[14] il cor, vera beatrice[15].
Vergine quante lagrime ho già sparte[16],
Quante lusinghe, quanti preghi indarno[17],
Pur[18] per mia pena, e per mio grave danno!
Da poi[19] ch'i'[20] nacqui in sulla[21] riva d'Arno.
Cercando or questa, ed or quell' altra parte[22],
Non è stata mia vita altro ch'affanno (*sorrow*).
Mortal bellezza, atti[23], e parole m'hanno
Tutta ingombrata[24] l'alma[25].
Vergine sacra ed alma[26],
Non tardar, ch'i' son[27] forse all' ultim' anno.
I dì[28] miei più correnti[29] che saetta[30],
Fra miserie e peccati[31]
Son sen' andati[32] e sol[33] morte m'aspetta.

Il dì s'appressa[34] e non pote[35] esser lunge[36];
Sì[37] corre il tempo e vola,
Vergine única e sola,
E 'l core[38] or coscienza, or morte punge[39];
Raccomándami al tuo figliuol, verace[40]
Uomo e verace Dio,
Ch'accolga[41] 'l mio spirto ultimo[42] in pace!

13) wounds. 14) *appaghe* for *appaghi*, that thou mayest tranquillise, pacify. 15) *beatrice*, the feminine of the antiquated *beatore*, Saviour (*lit.* beatifying; hence the name of Dante's mistress, *Beatrice* = Beatrix. From the Latin *beatus*, blessed.). 16) shed. 17) in vain. 18) only. 19) *Da poi*, since. 20) *i'* for *io*. 21) *in sulla* for *sulla*. 22) *Cercare una parte*, to take (follow) a party. 23) *atti*, deeds. 24) *ingombrare*, to darken, to obscure. 25) *l'alma* for *l'anima*. 26) *alma*, adject. divine, sublime. 27) *ch' i' son* for *perchè io sono*. 28) *i dì miei*, my days (= life). 29) *corrente*, fleeting, swift. 30) arrow. 31) *peccato*, sin. 32) *son sen' andati*, are gone. 33) *sol* for *sola*. 34) draws near. 35) *pote* for *può*. — 36) *lunge*, far. 37) *sì* for *così*, thus. 38) *core* for *cuore*. 39) drives, presses. 40) true. 41) *accogliere*, to receive. 42) *lo spirto (spirito) ultimo*, the last breath.

6. Third Canto of Dante's Inferno.

Dante's immortal poem is written in *Terza rima* (= ternary rhyme; *lit.* third rhyme), i. e. in strophes of *three* lines, each of which consists of *eleven* syllables. The rhymes of a *terzina* thus follow one another: the *first* line rhymes with the *third*, the *second* with the *fourth*, the *fourth* with the *sixth*, the *fifth* with the *seventh* and so on, to the end of the Canto, where a single line (called *Tornello*) rhymes with the *second* line of the *last* Terzina and thus terminates the whole Canto.

For the sake of greater perspicuity we here subjoin an example.

	I. Terzina.	II. Terzina.	III. Terzina.	Last Terzina.	Tornello.
Rhym.:	*a*	*b*	*c*	*y*	*z*
	b	*c*	*d*	*z*	
	a	*b*	*c*	*y*	

The argument of the third Canto is as follows:

Dante with his guide, the shade of Virgil, approaches the gate of hell. Above this gate he reads the terrible inscription which this Canto begins with. In order to encourage the poet, Virgil enters first; Dante follows. In the forecourt he sees the cowards (*gl' ignavi*), those that whilst living were neither good nor wicked. Hence they come to the shores of *Acheron* where *Charon* ferries the condemned souls across in his boat. — Dazzled by a strong light, the poet falls into a profound sleep.

Canto Terzo.

»Per me si va nella città dolente,[1]
Per me si va nell' eterno dolore,
Per me si va tra la perduta gente.[2]

Giustizia mosse il mio alto fattore,[3]
Fécemi la divina potestate,[4]
La somma sapienza e il primo amore.[5]

Dinanzi a me[6] non fur[7] cose create,[8]
Se non eterne,[9] ed io eterno [10] duro:
Lasciate ogni speranza voi ch'entrate.«

Queste parole di colore oscuro[11]
Vid'io scritte al sommo[12] d'una porta;
Perch'io:[13] Maestro, il senso lor m'è duro.[14]

[1] the suffering city, the abode of distress, grief. [2] *la perduta gente,* the lost people = those that are lost for ever. [3] *giustizia mosse il mio alto fattore,* justice moved my sublime creator, add: to create me. [4] *mi fece la divina potestà,* I was created by the Almighty. [5] *il primo amore.* Italian interpreters explain this passage thus: the Holy Ghost *(il primo amore)* created hell as a place of punishment for those that sinned against Christian love. [6] *Dinanzi a me,* before me. [7] *fur,* poet. for *furono.* — [8] *cose create,* created things. [9] *Se non eterne* (i. e. *cose*) only eternal things. [10] *eterno* for *eternamente.* [11] *di colore oscuro,* written in a dark colour. [12] *in sommo* = at the top. [13] *Perch' io,* add: *dissi.* [14] *il senso lor m'è duro,* their sense is hard for me = *mi è aspro, mi spaventa,* terrifies me.

Ed egli a me,[1] come persona accorta:[2]
Quì si convien lasciare ogni sospetto;[3]
Ogni viltà convien che quì sia morta.

Noi sem[4] venuti al loco[5] ov'io t'ho detto
Che tu vedrai le genti dolorose,
C'hanno[6] perduto il ben dell' intelletto.[7]

E poichè[8] la sua mano alla mia pose,
Con lieto volto, ond' i'[9] mi confortai,
Mi mise dentro alle secrete cose.[10]

Quivi sospiri, pianti ed alti guai[11]
Risonavan per l'aer senza stelle,[12]
Perch'io[13] al cominciar ne lagrimai.

Diverse lingue, orribili favelle.
Parole di dolore, accenti d'ira,[14]
Voci alte e fioche,[15] e suon di man[16] con elle,[17]

Facevano un tumulto, il qual s'aggira[18]
Sempre in quell' aria senza tempo,[19] tinta
Come la rena,[20] quando il turbo[21] spira.

Ed io, ch'avea d'error[22] la testa cinta,
Dissi: Maestro, che è quel ch' i' odo?
E che gent' è, che par del duol sì vinta?[23]

---

[1] *Ed egli a me,* add: *disse.* [2] *come persona accorta = come colui che avera bene penetrato la cagione del suo sbigottimento,* like one who well knew the reason of his terror. [3] *Quì si convien lasciare ogni sospetto, ogni viltà convien che quì sia morta,* in this place you must lay aside every suspicion, all unmanly fear (*viltà*) must here disappear *(sia morta),* for this terrible inscription does not concern you. [4] *sem = siamo.* [5] *loco = luogo.* [6] *C' hanno = che hanno.* [7] *il ben dell' intelletto* = God. the highest, the only truth, the human intelligence may be satisfied with. [8] *poichè = dopochè.* [9] *ond' i' = onde io,* whereupon I ... [10] *Mi mise dentro alle secrete cose,* he initiated me into the secret things. — [11] *Guai,* lamentation (*guai* is properly said of dogs that whine). *Guai a voi!* Woe to you! [12] *l'aer senza stelle.* The poet's imagination represents the fore-court of hell as an immense space like the firmament (*l'aer, aria,* air), but no stars are there to be seen. [13] *Perchè,* wherefore. [14] *accenti d'ira,* cries of anger. [15] *Voci alti e fioche,* shrill and groaning voices. [16] *suon di mano.* The condemned souls clasp their hands above their heads (a sign of despair). [17] *con elle, i. e. colle voci.* [18] *s'aggira sempre,* always turns round = never ceases. [19] *senza tempo,* without time = eternal. [20] *la rena* for *l'arena,* the sand. [21] *turbo* for *túrbine,* whirlwind. [22] *Ch' avea d'error la testa cinta,* who had his head girt with error = who was quite puzzled, whose mind was confounded. Others read: *d'orror ... cinta.* [23] *Che par del duol sì vinta,* that seem quite overcome by pain.

Ed egli a me: Questo misero modo
Tengon[1] l'anime triste[2] di coloro
Che visser senza infamia e senza lodo.[3]
Mischiate sono a quel cattivo coro[4]
Degli angeli che non furon ribelli,
Nè fur[5] fedeli a Dio, ma per se foro.[6]
E cacciârli[7] i ciel per non esser men belli,[8]
Nè lo profondo inferno gli riceve,
Chè alcuna gloria i rei avrebber d'elli.[9]
Ed io: Maestro, che è tanto greve
A lor,[10] che lamentar gli fa si forte?
Rispose: Dicerolti[11] molto breve.
Questi[12] non hanno speranza di morte,
E la lor cieca[13] vita è tanto bassa,
Che invidiosi son d'ogni altra sorte.[14]
Fama di lor il mondo esser non lassa;[15]
Misericordia e Giustizia gli sdegna:
Non ragionam di lor,[16] ma guarda e passa.
Ed io, che riguardai, vidi un' insegna,[17]
Che girando correva tanto ratta,[18]
Che d'ogni posa[19] mi pareva indegna:[20]

[1] *questo misero modo tengono,* in this miserable state are. [2] *triste,* here: miserable. [3] *lodo* for *lode,* praise. Dante means those who were lukewarm in the great moral strife between good and bad, neutral in the great political contest between the Guelfs and Ghibellines. Theirs is the same fate as that of those outcast angels that were neutral in the strife between God and Satan. Heaven spurns them, lest its beauty might be tarnished by their presence (see Note 8), and hell does not receive them (see Note 9). [4] *cattivo coro,* the wicked band. Dante often employs the word *coro* [= choir, chorus] to denote a certain number of people that pursue the same occupation or are destined to the same fate. — [5] *Nè fur,* nor were. [6] *foro* = *furono.* [7] *cacciârli* = *li cacciarono.* [8] *Per non esser men belli,* lest they might appear less beautiful. [9] lest the souls of the reprobate might feel glad to see these neutrals exposed to the same punishment they have met with for their crime *(elli* obsolete form for *essi).* [10] *Che è tanto greve (= grave) a lor,* what is there so terrible for them? [11] *Dicerolti* = *te lo dirò.* [12] *Questi,* i. e. those neutral angels and those lukewarm men. [13] *cieca* = *abietta,* miserable, abject. — [14] that they envy any other lot, even that of the condemned souls. [15] *Fama di lor il mondo esser non lassa* = *il mondo non permette che di loro sopravviva la fama* (memory). — [16] *Non ragioniamo di loro,* let us speak no longer of them. Here Dante gives the greatest expression to his contempt. [17] *un' insegna,* a standard. [18] *Che girando correva tanto ratta,* that turning round about ran so quickly = that turned so quickly round about itself. [19] *posa* = *riposo.* [20] *indegna,* does not mean here unworthy, but *sdegnosa,* despising, i. e. it (the standard) seemed to despise any repose; it was in perpetual motion.

E dietro le[1] venia[2] sì lunga tratta[3]
Di gente, ch'io non avrei creduto,
Che morte tanta n'avesse disfatta.[4]

Poscia ch'io v'ebbi alcun riconosciuto,
Guardai e vidi l'ombra di colui[5]
Che fece per viltate il gran rifiuto.

Incontanente intesi,[6] e certo fui
Che quest' era la setta[7] dei cattivi
A Dio spiacenti ed a' nemici sui.[8]

Questi sciaurati,[9] che mai non fur vivi,[10]
Erano ignudi,[11] e stimolati molto[12]
Da mosconi e da vespe ch'eran ivi.

Elle rigavan[13] lor di sangue il volto,
Che mischiato di lagrime, a' lor piedi
Da fastidiosi[14] vermi era ricolto.[15]

E poi che a riguardare oltre mi diedi,[16]
Vidi gente alla riva d'un gran fiume;
Perch'io dissi: Maestro, or mi concedi[17]

Ch'io sappia quali sono, e qual costume[18]
Le fa parer di trapassar si pronte,[19]
Com'io discerno[20] per lo fioco[21] lume.

---

[1] *dietro le,* behind it. [2] *venia* = *veniva.* [3] *tratta* = *seguito,* a procession or train. [4] *disfare,* to undo, to destroy, to snatch away. [5] *l'ombra di colui che per viltate fece il gran rifiuto,* the shade of him that by pusillanimity had made the great refusal. Dante here means the hermit *Pietro Morone,* who, elected as pope by the title of Cœlestine V, did not accept his election. In his stead Bonifacius VIII. was elected, Dante's antagonist. The poet, abandoning the pope's party for that of the emperor, hated Bonifacius, and therefore places the hermit *Pietro Morone* among the cowards *(ignavi)* that he sees in the fore-court of hell. [6] *Incontanente intesi,* I directly understood. [7] *setta,* a sect, here: the band of those miserable ones *(cattivi).* [8] *A Dio spiacenti ed a' nemici suoi,* displeasing to God and to his enemies. [9] *Sciaurati* for *sciagurati,* those wicked, miserable people. [10] *Che mai non fur vivi,* that were never living, i. e. that never gave a sign of life. [11] *ignudi,* naked. [12] *stimolati molto,* dreadfully stung. [13] *rigavan* from *rigare,* to stripe, to streak. The wasps sting them so deeply, that blood runs over their faces and thus: *Elle rigavan lor di sangue il volto,* they (the wasps) streaked their faces with blood. [14] *fastidiosi,* loathsome, tedious. [15] *ricolto* for *raccôlto,* gathered, here: sucked up. [16] *mi diedi,* I began. [17] *mi concedi ch' io sappia,* allow, permit me to know = tell me. [18] *costume,* custom, with Dante often used instead of *legge,* law. [19] *Le fa parer di trapassar sì pronte,* lets them appear so ready to get over (the river). [20] *Com' io discerno,* as I discern = as I can see. [21] *fioco,* dim.

Ed egli a me: Le cose ti fien[1] conte,[2]
Quando noi fermerem li[3] nostri passi
Sulla trista riviera d'Acheronte.[4]

Allor con gli occhi vergognosi e bassi,
Temendo no'l mio dir gli fusse grave,[5]
Infino al fiume di parlar mi trassi.[6]

Ed ecco verso noi venir[7] per nave
Un vecchio bianco per antico pelo,[8]
Gridando: Guai a voi anime prave![9]

Non isperate mai veder lo[10] cielo:
I' vengo per menarvi all' altra riva,
Nelle tenebre eterne, in caldo e in gelo.[11]

E tu che se'[12] costì, anima viva,
Pártiti[13] da cotesti che son morti.
Ma poi ch' ei vide ch' io non mi partiva,

Disse: per altre vie, per altri porti[14]
Verrai a piaggia,[15] non quì: per passare
Più lieve legno convien che ti porti.[16]

E il Duca[17] a lui: Caron non ti crucciare[18];
Vuolsi così colà,[19] dove si puote
Ciò che si vuole,[20] e più non dimandare.[21]

[1] *fien*, obsol. for *saranno*. [2] *conte* for *conosciute*. [3] *li*, obsol. for *i*. [4] *Acheronte*, the Acheron. In Greek Mythology the river which the souls of the deceased must pass. Dante, in his poem, combines pagan and Christian elements. Virgil, his leader through hell and partly through purgatory, represents the ancient world, whereas *Beatrice* who leads him through purgatory and heaven, represents Christianity. [5] *No'l mio dir gli fusse (fosse) grave*, (fearing) my words could displease him. [6] *Di parlar mi trassi (m'astenni)*, I abstained from speaking, i. e. I grew silent. [7] *venir*, historical Infinitive (see II. P. Less. 20. I. § 4). [8] *per antico pelo*, with a white (ancient, old) beard. [9] *prave*, corrupted, wicked. [10] *lo* for *il*. [11] *in caldo e in gelo*, in heat and frost. [12] *se'* for *sei*, thou art. [13] *partirsi*, to depart, to leave. — [14] *porti* for *barche*, boats. [15] *a piaggia*, ashore. [16] *più lieve legno convien che ti porti*, a lighter ship must carry thee, i. e. thou canst not cross the river in the same boat with those that are deceased, and it is not my business to ferry thee over. Charon speaks these words in a somewhat angry tone. [17] *Duca*, here: leader. [18] *Non ti crucciare*, don't be angry. [19] *Vuolsi così colà, lit.* thus it is willed there ... [20] *Dove si puote (può) ciò che si vuole*, where one is able to do what one will (may) = in heaven. Almighty God is alone able to do anything he wishes. [21] *E più non dimandare*, don't ask further questions.

Quindi fur quete le lanose gote[1]
Al nocchier[2] della livida[3] palude,
Che 'ntorno[4] agli occhi avea di fiamme rote.[5]

Ma quell' anime ch' eran lasse e nude
Cangiâr[6] colore e dibattéro i denti,
Ratto che[7] 'nteser le parole crude.

Bestemmiavano Iddio e i lor parenti,
L'umana specie, il luogo, il tempo, e il seme
Di lor semenza[8] e di lor nascimenti.[9]

Poi si ritasser tutte quante[10] insieme,
Forte piangendo, alla riva malvagia[11],
Ch' attende ciascun uom che Dio non teme.

Caron dimonio,[12] con occhi di bragia[13]
Loro accennando[14] tutte le raccoglie;[15]
Batte col remo qualunque s'adagia.[16]

Come d'autunno[17] si levan[18] le foglie
L'una appresso dell' altra infin chè 'l ramo
Rende alla terra tutte le sue spoglie,[19]

Similmente il mal seme d'Adamo:[20]
Gittansi[21] di quel lido ad una ad una
Per cenni[22] com' augel per suo richiamo.[23]

Così sen vanno su[24] per l'onda bruna,
E avanti che sian di là discese,[25]
Anche di quà[26] nova schiera s'aduna.[27]

Figliuol mio, disse il Maestro cortese,
Quelli che muoion nell' ira di Dio
Tutti convengon quì[28] d'ogni paese:

---

[1] *Quindi fur quete le lanose gote*, thereupon grew quiet the hairy cheeks = he grew silent. [2] *nocchier*, the ferry-man. [3] *livido*, dark. [4] *'ntorno* for *intorno*. [5] *avea rote di fiamme*, had wheels of fire = he rolled his fiery eyes. [6] *cangiâr* for *cangiarono*. [7] *ratto che* = *tosto che* (lat. *simulac*), *as soon as* .. [8] *il seme di lor semenza*, the fathers of their fathers. [9] *e di lor nascimenti*, their own birth. [10] *tutte quante*, all together. [11] *malvagia*, properly: wicked, here: unfortunate. [12] *Caron dimonio*, the demoniacal Ch. [13] *bragia* for *brace*, coal-fire, here: fire. [14] *Loro accennando*, beckoning to them. [15] *le raccoglie*, gathers them, takes them in his boat. [16] *qualunque s'adagia*, whoever tarries. [17] *d'autunno*, in autumn. [18] *levarsi*, here: to fall. [19] *le sue spoglie*, its dress (the leaves form the tree's dress). [20] *il mal seme d'Adamo*, Adam's wicked children. [21] *gittansi* (for *si gittano*) they hasten. The plural here refers to the collect. *seme*. [22] *per cenni*, at his beck. [23] *com' augel per suo richiamo*, like a bird at the call (decoy). [24] *sen vanno su*, they drive on. [25] *E avanti che sian di là discese*, before they got out of the boat (at the other side of the river). [26] *di quà*, on this side. [27] *nuova schiera s'aduna*, a new troop comes together, assembles. [28] *Convengon*

E pronti sono a trapassar lo[1] rio:
Chè[2] la divina giustizia li sprona[3],
, Sì che la tema si volge in disio[4].

Quinci non passa mai anima buona;
E però se Caron di te si lagna[5],
Ben puoi saper omai che 'l suo dir suona[6].

Finito questo, la buia campagna[7]
Tremò si forte, che dello spavento
La mente[8] di sudore ancor[9] mi bagna.

La terra lagrimosa[10] diede vento[11],
Che balenò[12] una luce vermiglia,
La qual mi vinse ciascun sentimento[13];

E caddi[14] come l'uom cui sonno piglia[15].

[1] *lo* for *il*. [2] *che* = *perchè*. [3] *sprona*, spurs, stimulates them. [4] *Sì che la tema si volge in disio*, so that their fear turns into (becomes a) desire. [5] *Se Caron di te si lagna*, if Ch. complains of thee = is angry with thee, i. e. because he can't bring thee over the river like the other condemned souls. [6] *Ben puoi saper omai che 'l suo dir suona*, thou wilt now understand the meaning of his angry words. [7] *la buia campagna*, the gloomy field. [8] *Che dello spavento la mente* = *memoria, ricordanza*, that the remembrance of this terrible phenomenon. [9] *ancor*, even now. [10] *la terra lagrimosa*, the ground wet with tears. [11] *diede* = *mandò fuori*, sent forth. [12] *Che balenò* = *che fece balenare*, through which flashed. [13] *la qual mi vinse ogni sentimento*, that conquered in me every feeling, i. e. that made me swoon by its dazzling splendour. [14] *caddi*, I fell down. [15] *Come l'uom cui sonno piglia*, like a man overpowered by sleep.

Le grotte di Catullo.*)

Chi per la grande pianura lombarda muove[1]) da Brescia a Verona, dopo circa venti miglia di dilettévole via s'incontra[2]) in un luogo splèndido delle più care[3]) bellezze di cui la natura fosse mai cortese a questa bellissima Italia. Ivi in ubertosa[4]) campagna è il límpido Benáco**) coronato di leggiadri colli, di lietissimi giardini e di ampie[5]) selvi di ulivi, di aranci e di cedri che rallégrano l'aspetto del paesaggio[6]) e odórano soavemente l'áere coi loro profumi: ivi il cielo sereno, la terra fiorita, e le argéntee[7]) onde sémbrano ricambiarsi[8]) con-

1) moves, travels. 2) *incontrarsi*, to meet with, to arrive. — 3) rich. 4) fertile. 5) vast. 6) landscape. 7) silver. 8) *ricambiarsi*, to exchange.

*) Selected from *Studi storici e morali intorno alla letteratura latina* by *Atto Vannucci*.

**) The lake of Garda, also called *Lago di Salò* (Lat. *Benacus*).

cordemente un saluto di affetto e mandare[9]) un perpétuo sorriso. Le popolose borgate[10]), le biancheggianti[11]) ville sedenti allo specchio del lago o seminate quà e là pei frənzuti[12]) colli fanno gradévole[13]) contrasto colla lieta verzura[14]) delle vigne, dei limoni e dei lauri: e le dirupate montagne coperte di nevi réndono da lungi più pittoresca la vista. Da ogni parte sórgono[15]) turrite[16]) castella, belli abituri[17]) e vaghe[18]) ópere di natura e di arte graziosamente intrecciate[19]): dappertutto la natura resa[20]) più feconda dalle operose indústrie dell' uomo. Frequenti anche i luoghi che commuóvono la fantasia con dolorose e liete memórie. Quì Garda, ove *stette prigione*[21]) la bella Adelaide: là un castello di casa Scalígera[22]), ricetto[23]) un tempo[24]) a giullari[25]) e a magnánimi spiriti: e della banda opposta Manerba, ove la tradizione narra che fu l'Alighieri*) e forse vi compose quei versi famosi in cui descrive il lago e rammenta[26]) Peschiera come bello e forte arnese[27]) di guerra. Se poi la mente si spinge[28]) più lontano in cerca di antiche memorie, vede Virgilio errare sulle rive del lago e osservarne le furiose tempeste e accennarle[29]) in quei versi divini che in brevi parole conténgono il più bell' inno di lode che mai fosse cantato all' Italia. Ma il nome di cui[30]) più[31]) suoni il luogo anche[32]) nella bocca dei pescatori e dei villici[33]) è quello di un altro poeta che quì ebbe stanza gradita[34]) e riposo dopo i viaggi in estránee[35]) regioni e agio[36]) a cantare gli *amori e le delizie di questo suo nido fiorito.* Volgétevi alla bella penísola di Sirmione che siede nella parte orientale del lago, e i poveri abitatori e le antiche rovine vi ricorderanno Catullo e gli avanzi[37]) di un grande edifizio che dícono essere stato l'abitazione di lui.

La penisola si estende a circa tre miglia di giro: al suo principio oggi ha un piccolo borgo[38]) con povere casípole di pescatori, tra le quali sorge sempre in apparenza minacciosa la turrita fortezza degli Scaligeri[22]). Più avanti, ove il terreno si alza in un colle di lieve salita[39]) tutto ricoperto di rigoglioso[40]) e folto uliveto[41]) s'incóntrano vie sotterránee coperte da grandi

9) to offer. 10) borough. 11) white, shining. 12) woody. 13) *gradevole* for *aggradevole.* 14) *verzura,* the verdure. 15) *sorgere,* to rise. 16) *turrite castella,* castles with turrets. 17) cottages. 18) charming. 19) *intrecciare,* to entwine, to unite. 20) *resa* from *rendere.* 21) *star prigione,* to be a prisoner. 22) *la casa Scaligera,* an ancient noble Italian family. 23) *ricetto,* a hospitable house. 24) once, formerly. 25) minstrel. 26) *rammentare,* to mention, to record. 27) bulwark, fortress. 28) *spingersi,* to penetrate, to rove. 29) *accennare,* to mention. 30) *di cui,* whereof. 31) the most. 32) even. 33) peasant. 34) *aver stanza gradita,* to be well received. 35) foreign. 36) *agio,* here: leisure. 37) remnant. 38) borough. 39) *liere salita,* an easy ascent. 40) luxuriant. 41) olive-grove.

*) *Dante.*

volte[42]) che chiamano ancora le grotte di Catullo. Per queste vie tenebrose o illuminate solo a sprazzi[43]) da qualche raggio di sole che ora vi pénetra per le screpolature[44]) delle volte e del sovrapposto terreno, gli abitanti del luogo dícono che Catullo andava a solitario passeggio, quando usciva dal suo palazzo. Così essi danno al gentile poeta un' aria e un fare misterioso quale si addirebbe[45]) a qualche signorotto[46]) del medio evo: ma ciò tóglie nulla alla stima per esso di cui tengono cara m ia. Più oltre[47]) pezzi di grosse mura móstrano gli avanzi di una costruzione[48]) quadrilunga che dicono aver servito di bagno al poeta. Finalmente all' estremità della penísola sono gli avanzi di quella che chiámano la villa di lui. Tutto ora è in piena rovina, e nulla lascia intravedere[49]) con quale órdine fosse architettato[50]) il grande edifizio: ma quelle rovine stesse che si esténdono per largo spazio, quelle solidissime mura composte di strati alternativi[51]) di mattoni[52]), di cemento e di pietre, quei pilastri e quelle volte maestose ricórdano le più stupende costruzioni romane.

Dall' alto di quelle rovine d'onde a un sol colpo d'occhio si preséntano tutte le più deliziose bellezze del lago e degli ameni[53]) colli che gli fanno corona, si comprende come Catullo aveva ragione di chiamare Sirmione*) la pupilla delle ísole e delle penisole, e da quel punto[54]) si sente tutto l'incanto e tutta la verità di quella poesia leggiadrissima.

42) vault. 43) *illuminate a sprazzi*, illuminated by a faint light that streams forth between two near objects (French: *lumière échappée*). 44) chinks, clefts, crevices etc. of a wall. 45) *quale si addirebbe*, that would suit. 46) a baron. 47) farther on. 48) building. 49) perceive. 50) built. 51) *strati alternativi*, alternate layers *(stratum super stratum)*. 52) bricks. 53) agreeable. — 54) *da quel punto*, from that side.

L'addío di Lucía.**)

Addío, montagne sorgenti[1]) dalle acque ed erette[2]) al cielo; cime ineguali, note[3]) a chi è cresciuto[4]) tra voi, e impresse nella sua mente non meno che lo sia l'aspetto dei suoi più famigliari[5]); torrenti dei quali egli distingue lo scróscio[6]), come

1) rising. 2) ascending, towering. 3) known. 4) brought up. 5) *dei suoi più famigliari*, of his nearest relations. 6) the murmuring (of a brook).

*) A little peninsula in the Lake of Garda and a village of the same name.

**) Taken from the *Promessi Sposi*, a novel by *Alessandro Manzoni*.

il suono delle voci domestiche; ville sparse[7]) e biancheggianti sul pendío come branchi[8]) di pécore pascenti; addio! Quanto è tristo il passo di chi cresciuto tra voi, se ne allontana! Alla fantasia di quello stesso, che se ne parte volontariamente, tratto dalla speranza di far altrove fortuna, si disabbellíscono[9]) in quel momento i sogni della ricchezza; egli si maraviglia d'essersi potuto risólvere, e tornerebbe allora indietro, se non pensasse che un giorno tornerà dovizioso[10]). Quanto più s'avanza nel piano[11]) il suo occhio si ritrae[12]) fastidito[13]) e stanco da quella ampiezza uniforme; l'áere gli somiglia[14]) gravoso[15]) e senza vita; s'inoltra[16]) mesto[17]) e disattento[18]) nelle città tumultuose; le case aggiunte a case, le vie che sbóccano[19]) nelle vie pare che[20]) gli tólgano il respiro: e dinanzi agli edifizi ammirati dallo straniero, egli pensa con desiderio inquieto al camperello del suo paese, alla casúccia a cui egli ha già posti[21]) gli occhi addosso da gran tempo, e che comprerà, tornando ricco ai suoi monti.

Ma chi non aveva mai spinto al di là di quelli nè pure un desiderio sfuggévole, chi aveva composti in essi tutti i disegni[22]) dell' avvenire; e ne è sbalzato[23]) lontano da una forza perversa! Chi strappato[24]) ad un tempo[25]) alle più care abitúdini, e sturbato[26]) nelle più care speranze, lascia quei monti per avviarsi in tráccia[27]) di stranieri che non ha mai desiderato di conóscere, e non può colla immaginazione trascórrere[28]) ad un momento stabilito pel ritorno! Addio, casa natale, dove sedendo con un pensiero occulto, s'imparò a distínguere dal romore delle orme[29]) comuni il romore di un' orma aspettata con un misterioso timore. Addío, casa ancora straniera, casa sogguardata[30]) tante volte alla sfuggita[30]), passando[31]), e non senza rossore[32]); nella quale la mente si compiaceva[33]) di figurarsi un soggiorno[34]) tranquillo e perpétuo di sposa. Addio, chiesa, dove l'ánimo tornò[35]) tante volte sereno, cantando le lodi del Signore; dove era promesso, preparato un rito; dove il sospiro segreto del cuore doveva essere solennemente benedetto e l'amore venir[36]) comandato, e chiamarsi[37]) santo; addio! Quegli che dava a voi tanta

7) scattered. 8) *branco*, flock. 9) *disabbellirsi*, to lose its beauty. 10) wealthy. 11) plain. 12) *ritrarsi*, to draw back. — 13) displeased. 14) seems. 15) heavy. 16) *inoltrarsi*, to proceed, to enter. 17) sorrowful. 18) inattentive. 19) *sboccare*, to open into . . . 20) *pare che*, seem to . . . 21) *porre gli occhi addosso a qchs.*, to have an eye upon smth. 22) plans for the future. — 23) driven away. 24) *strappare*, to snatch, to rob. 25) at once. 26) *sturbare*, to trouble. 27) *in traccia*, in search of . . . 28) to get over to . . . 29) foot-step. 30) *sogguardare alla sfuggita*, to look at stealthily. 31) when going by. 32) blushing. 33) *compiacersi*, to be pleased with. 34) a dwelling. 35) *tornare*, to become, to grow. 36) *venire*, here: to be. 37) to be called, declared.

giocondità è da par tutto; ed Egli non turba mai la gioia dei suoi figli[38]), se non per prepararne loro una più certa e maggiore.

Di tal génere, se non tali appunto, erano i pensieri di Lucía, e pochi dissímili i pensieri degli altri due pellegrini, mentre la barca gli andava avvicinando[39]) alla destra riva dell' Adda.

38) children. 39) *gli andava avvicinando*, lit. that (i. e. the boat) went on, bringing them nearer to = whilst they were approaching.

ALCUNE LETTERE.

1.

Caro mio!

Ho avuto la fortuna d'ottenere un palchetto[1]) per l'opera di questa sera. Si rappresenterà la »Cenerèntola« del nostro Rossini. Se vuoi procurarci a mia sorella ed a me il piacere della tua compagnia, fámmelo[2]) sapere per le 4 pom.[3]) al più tardi, affinchè possiamo venirti a prèndere colla nostra carrozza a casa tua verso le $6^{3}/_{4}$.

In attesa[4]) d'una pronta risposta sono —

2.

Mi spiace molto di non poter accettare il gentile tuo invito. L'arrivo inaspettato di mio zio da Berlino m'obbliga d'andargli incontro alla stazione. Se però mi verrà il destro[5]) di lasciarlo per un' ora, non mancherò di approfittarne e mi recherò[6]) in teatro per augurarvi la buona sera. Ti prego di fare i miei complimenti a Madamigella Erminia e di aggradire il cordiale saluto del

tuo affez^{880}[7])

3.

Sono ormai quindici giorni che mi trovo alla campagna a Baden. Sai bene, caro mio, che l'atmosfera di quest' amenissima città sparge in abbondanza il zolfo[8]) e la noia su quelli che hanno la fortuna di abitarla. Ricorro quindi a te per liberarmi dall' último almeno di questi óspiti[9]) poco aggradévoli. Mi rammento d'aver veduto a casa tua una bellissima edizione di Petrarca. Avresti la compiacenza di pre-

1) a box. 2) *fammelo*, contraction of *fa me lo*, let me know it, send me word. 3) *pom.* for *pomeridiane*, an adjective that means: in the afternoon, as: *antimeridiane* means: in the forenoon. [In English A. M. = ante meridiem; P. M. = post meridiem.] 4) *in attesa*, in expectation. 5) *mi verrà il destro*, it will be possible. 6) *recarsi*, to go. 7) = *affezionatissimo*, most affectionate. — 8) brimstone. 9) *ospite*, a guest.

stármela per una settimana o due? Puoi essere convinto che avrò ogni cura possíbile, acciocchè il libro ti sia restituito in buon essere. Se hai tempo, vieni a consolarmi nella mia solitúdine. Il tuo —

4.

Questa lettera ti arriverà unitamente[1]) col libro che mi chiedesti. Esso mi è carissimo, esséndomi stato regalato da un amico defunto. Per ciò solo mi prendo la libertà di raccomandarti d'adoperarlo con ogni possibile riguardo. Se le mie occupazioni me lo permetteranno, verrò a trovarti Doménica ventura. L'amico —

5.

Pregiatissima Signorina!

La prego di scusarmi se quest' oggi non le*) posso dare la consueta[2]) lezione. Un' affare d'importanza mi chiama a N. Mi farà cosa grata[3]) se vorrà continuare la traduzione dei »Promessi Sposi« e fare un piccolo riassunto[4]) delle régole sui verbi. Giovedì venturo mi procurerò senz' altro l'onore di rivederla. Mi creda intanto con tutta la stima

Il suo devot$^{sso}_{u}$ —

6.

Egregio Signore!

La ricorrenza del giorno onomástico della mia cara madre fa sì[5]) ch'io non posso oggi prendere la lezione ch'Ella suole darmi alle 11. La prego invece di voler rallegrare colla sua compagnia la piccola adunanza[6]), colla quale questa sera alle 9 festeggiamo la nostra doméstica solennità. Ho studiato diligentemente il nostro pezzo a quattro mani e sarei contentissima di poterlo suonare con Lei. Nella speranza ch'Ella non vorrà mancare mi protesto

Sua devot$^{ssa}_{u}$ affez$^{ssa}_{u}$ —

7.

Letter of Prince Pius of Savoy to the Abbé Metastasio.**)

Molt' Illustre Signor mio Osservandissimo!

L'applauso comune che V. S. molt' Illustre si recava[7]) nella poesía, e negli altri componimenti[8]), da questo Augustissimo Imperatore approvati, sono la cagione, che io d'órdine della Maestà Sua Le esibisco[9]) il suo Cesáreo[10]) servigio

1) at the same time, together with. 2) usual. 3) *mi farà cosa grata*, you will oblige me. 4) repetition. 5) *fa sì*, is the reason. 6) society. 7) to obtain, to get. 8) works. 9) offer. — 10) Imperial.

*) Nowadays the pronouns *ella, le, lei* etc., employed in the *polite mode* of addressing a person, need no longer be spelled with a capital letter.

**) *Pietro Trapassi*, called *Metastasio*, born at Rome, court-poet of the emperor Charles VI, deceased at Vienna 1782.

nelle circostanze[1]) che a Lei parrà più proprio d'accettarlo. Conviene che Ella mi motivi[1]) ciò che brama annualmente per onorario fisso, poichè pel residuo non vi sarà svario alcuno. Il Signor Apóstolo Zeno*) non desidera altro compagno, che V. S. molt' Illustre, non conoscendo egli in oggi soggetto[3]) più adatto di Lei per servire un Monarca sì intelligente, quale è il nostro. Dalla di Lei risposta e richiesta dipenderà la trasmessa del danaro pel suo viaggio, godendo io intanto di quest' apertura[4]) per attestarle la stima ed affetto, che mi costituiscono Di V. S. molt' Illustre

Vienna 31 Agosto 1729.

Affezionat^mo per servirla di cuore
Principe Pio di Savoia.

8.

Metastasio's Answer.

Eccellenza!

Non prima di[5]) ieri mi giunse il Veneratissimo Foglio di Vostra Eccellenza, tuttochè[6]) scritto in data de' 31 agosto, ed il poco tempo, nel quale sono obbligato a rispóndere, non è sufficiente per riméttermi dalla sorpresa, che deve necessariamente produrre l'onore dei Cesárei[7]) comandi, a' quali non ardívano di salire[8]) i miei voti, non che[9]) le mie speranze. Il dubbio della mia ténue[10]) abilità mi farebbe ricercare con estremo timore la gloria del Cesareo servígio, se l'approvazione augustissima non mi togliesse anche la libertà di dubitar di me stesso: onde non resta a me, che di atténdere i cenni[11]) di Vostra Eccellenza per eseguirli. Mi prescrive l'Eccellenza Vostra replicatamente[12]) nella sua lettera, che io spieghi i miei desideri intorno all' annuo onorario. Questa legge me ne toglie la repugnanza, e giustifica il mio ardire[13]). Mi si dice, che l'onorario sólito dei poeti, che hanno l'onore di servire in cotesta Corte, e che quello che come poeta riceve il Signor Apóstolo Zeno, sia di 4000 annui[14]) fiorini: ond' io regolándomi sull' esempio del medésimo, restringo umilmente le mie richieste fra i términi della sopraccennata[15]) notizia, con le riflessioni, che, abbandonando io la mia patria, sono obbligato a lasciare sufficiente assegnamento[16]) a mio padre cadente[17]) ed alla mia numerosa famiglia, la quale

1) conditions. 2) *motivare*, here: to make known. 3) *soggetto*, subject, person, here: anybody, any one. 4) opportunity. 5) *Non prima di*, no sooner than, only ... 6) although. 7) Imperial. — 8) to rise. 9) much less. 10) little. 11) orders. 12) at once. 13) boldness. 14) a year. 15) above mentioned. 16) providing, enough to live upon. 17) infirm.

*) Born at Venice 1668, deceased 1750, Metastasio's predecessor at the Imperial Court.

non ha altro sostegno, che il frutto, che fortunatamente ricévono in Italia le mie déboli fatiche; che diviso da' miei dovrò vivere nella più illustre Corte d'Europa con quel decoro, che conviene al Monarca, a cui avrò l'onore di servire; finalmente con la certezza, che potrei male applicarmi all' impegno[18]) del mio esercizio, distratto dal contínuo doloroso pensiero degl' incómmodi e bisogni paterni.

Ecco ubbidita la legge di chi richiede[19]), ma in questa richiesta spero l'Eccellenza Vostra non considererà che la mia ubbidienza: potendo per altro Ella essere persuasa, che in qualunque condizione io debbo essere prontissimo ad eseguire quanto piacerà all' Augustissimo Padrone d'impormi. Conosco quanto debbo all' incomparábile signor Apóstolo Zeno, il quale non contento di aver protette finora le mie opere, vuole col peso del suo voto éssermi così generosamente benéfico. Io gliene serbo[20]) per fin[21]) che vivo il dovuto senso[22]) di gratitúdine, ed umilmente raccomandándomi al válido[23]) patrocinio dell' Eccellenza Vostra, Le faccio profondo inchino.

Roma 28 Ottobre 1729.

Umil^{mo} Devot^{mo} Obbl^{mo} Servitore
Pietro Metastasio.

18) duty, execution. 19) *di chi richiede,* of him that commands. 20) to keep. 21) as long as. 22) feeling. 23) powerful.

UNA GIORNATA[1] IN CITTA ED ALLA CAMPAGNA.

1.

A casa.

(Si sente bussare[2].)

Signor Teschini. Avanti!

Signor Ferrer. È permesso?

Sgr. T. Che vedo! Lei carissimo Signore! Per l'amor di Dio, che fu di Lei[3]) dacchè non ho più avuto il piacere di vederla? S'accómodi[4]), La prego.

Sgr. F. Grazie mille, Signore! Ed Ella, come sta?

Sgr. T. Così, così! Or mi dica, perchè non è venuta a trovarmi?

Sgr. F. Mi scuserà, caro amico; fui assente da Vienna.

Sgr. T. Si recò forse a Venezia?

Sgr. F. Appunto. Vi sono andato due mesi fa e sono ritornato solamente ieri l'altro.

Sgr. T. Vi andò per affari?

1) a whole day (French: *journée*). 2) to knock, to rap at the door. 3) where have you been? 4) be seated, sit down.

Sgr. F. No, grazie a Dio, non sono uomo d'affari. Ella conosce la vecchia mia predilezione per la regina védova dell' Adriático. Alquanto stanco della vita viennese mi recai colà per godér un poco di calma e di tranquillità. Ed Ella, come ha passato il suo tempo?

Sgr. T. Sempre alla stessa maniera. Mentre Ella prendeva il suo sorbetto[5]) al caffè Floriani, sulla piazza di San Marco, io stava leggendo, scrivendo, riflettendo a casa, sacrificando le mie ore ad un affaccendato[6]) far niente.

Sgr. F. Ed il nostro amico Giácomo, che cosa fa?

Sgr. T. La settimana scorsa ricevetti una sua lettera da Parigi. Mi dipinge con colori vivissimi la capitale della „belle France" ed i piaceri del soggiorno parigino. Ma a proposito[7])! Ha già fatto colazione?

Sgr. F. No, non ancora.

Sgr. T. In questo caso Le propongo di venir meco al giardin púbblico. Con questo bel tempo sarebbe peccato di chiúdersi in una stanza invece di préndere il caffè all' aria aperta.

Sgr. F. Va bene! Andiamo!

Sgr. T. Andiamo!

5) ice. 6) busy. 7) by the way.

2.

Nel giardino.

Sgr. T. Che bella mattina! Non si vede la ménoma núvola nel cielo. Oggi avremo caldo.

Sgr. F. Per quanto pare[1]). Che cosa prenderemo?

Sgr. T. Io prenderò una chicchera[2]) di cioccolata.

Sgr. F. Ed io del caffè. Olà cameriere[3])!

Cam. Signori! Che cosa comandano?

Sgr. T. Dáteci una chicchera di cioccolata e di caffè.

Sgr. F. M'accorgo che non ho sígari con me; dátemi anche una Regalia.

Cam. Mi scusi, Signore, no ho altro che Virginia.

Sgr. T. Ecco dei sigari! Ne scelga! Spero che saranno di suo gusto.

Sgr. F. Grazie! La prego di darmi anche del fuoco. I suoi sigari sono eccellenti. Dove li prende?

Sgr. T. Ne ho fatto venire due mila da Amburgo[4]). Se li trova buoni, gliene potrei cédere una centina.

Sgr. F. Gliene sarò obbligato. Ecco che comincia la música!

Sgr. T. Sì, per nostra disgrazia[5])! Qui non si può andare in nessun luogo senza esser maltrattato dai signori musicanti.

1) so it seems. 2) a cup. 3) waiter. 4) Hamburgh. 5) bad luck.

Sgr. F. Ha ragione. Io sono amantissimo di musica; ma quegli eterni Valzer mi fanno nausea[6]).

Sgr. T. Credo che non vi sia città al mondo dove un povero mortale abbia tanto a soffrire in questo rapporto quanto in Vienna. La mattina si vien destato da un órgano[7]) ambulante; quando si apre la finestra, una „Medori" in erba[8]) grida il suo „come rugiada al céspite"[9]); se si va per le strade, una pioggia di note più o meno false cade sulla testa del povero passeggiatore. Colla minestra vi vien servita la sinfonia[10]) di Guglielmo Tell; alla frutta: „la donna è móbile"[11]). Di sera andate a trovare una famiglia di vostra conoscenza: ecco Madamigella che si mette al cémbalo[12]) e vi canta l'Adelaide. Verso mezzanotte in fine tornate a casa, e mettendo la chiave nella serratura della vostra porta sentite dal quarto piano un infausto prelúdio di chitarra ed un dilettante che urla[13]) la barcarola dei „due Fóscari"!

Sgr. F. Per Dio! Ella ha ragione. Per guarire il melómano il più furioso non c'è miglior cura che inchiúderlo per due anni in Vienna. Passato questo tempo, egli sarà risanato o morto.

Sgr. T. Ecco in fine la nostra colazione! Come trova il suo caffè?

Sgr. F. Così, così; ed Ella, come trova la cioccolata?

Sgr. T. Buonissima, davvero[14]). Mi piace molto far colazione all' aria aperta.

Sgr. F. Con quest' aria sì pura non c'è niente di più aggradévole. Sa, Signore, che mi è venuta un' idea?

Sgr. T. Dica pure.

Sgr. F. Ha da far qualche cosa quest' oggi in città?

Sgr. T. Nulla d'importante. Ho sempre il mio tempo a libera disposizione.

Sgr. F. In questo caso Le proporrei di passar insieme la giornata alla campagna. Il giorno è troppo bello per restar sepolti in questa buona città di Vienna.

Sgr. T. Benissimo! E dove andremo?

Sgr. F. Dov' Ella vuole.

Sgr. T. Allora proporrei d'andar colla strada ferrata a Vöslau. Colà troveremo una buonissima trattoría[15]), bellissimi contorni ed oltre a ciò le onde cerúlee d' un bagno in mezzo ad un giardino.

6) *far nausea,* to make sick. 7) a street-organ. 8) *in erba,* lit. *in grass,* is said in Italian of persons that aspire to some other and higher state. Thus: *una Medori* (a famous singer of the Italian opera) *in erba,* means a young lady that hopes to become a great singer. [The same as *„en herbe"* in French.] 9) an air of the opera *Ernani;* "as dew on the lawn". 10) overture. 11) an air of the opera *Rigoletto;* "woman is fickle". 12) piano. — 13) bawls. 14) indeed. 15) inn.

Sgr. F. Va bene! E quando partiremo?

Sgr. T. Vediamo. Di qui fino alla stazione abbiamo una mezz' ora di cammino. Adesso sono le 9 1/2. Se ci sbrighiamo presto [16]), potremo partire col convoglio delle 10.

Sgr. F. Dunque paghiamo. Cameriere!

Cam. Signori?

Sgr. F. Abbiamo una chicchera di caffè, una chicchera di cioccolata e pani . . . quanti ne ha lei?

Sgr. T. Due.

Sgr. F. Anch' io ne ho due, dunque quattro.

Cam. Quattordici e venti due fanno trentasei, e quattro pani fanno quaranta quattro soldi [17]).

Sgr. F. Eccoli.

Cam. Grazie, Signori!

Sgr. F. Il resto è per voi.

Cam. Mille grazie, Signori!

Sgr. T. Dunque andiamo!

Cam. Buon divertimento!

16) *sbrigarsi presto,* to make haste. 17) *soldo* kreuzer, an Austrian coin = 1/100 florin = about a farthing.

3.

Sulla strada ferrata.

Sgr. T. Eccoci giunti! Cospetto, come siamo corsi! Mancano ancora dieci minuti alle dieci.

Sgr. F. Prendiamo i biglietti! Quanto costa il biglietto di 2. classe per andare a Vöslau?

Sgr. T. Un fiorino, mi pare. Aspetti, andrò a prendere i biglietti.

Sgr. F. Che folla! Non c'è possibitità di penetrar fino alla cassa.

Sgr. T. Bisogna aspettar un momento! Chi va piano va sano [1])! *(Tornando dalla cassa).* Presto, presto! Il convoglio sta per partire; saliamo!

Sgr. F. Siamo degli ultimi! Tutto il perrone è pieno di gente. Ecco un vagone dove c'è ancora posto [2]). Entriamo in fretta!

Sgr. T. Troviamo ancora buoni posti. Mettiámoci dirimpetto.

Sgr. F. No, io mi porrò al fianco, il sedere dalla parte opposta mi farebbe male.

Sgr. T. Allora prenderò io il suo posto; per me è tutt' uno. Ora si muove il convoglio. Che quantità di vagoni!

Sgr. F. Quanto tempo impiegheremo [3]) per andare a Vöslau?

1) *Chi va piano va sano* (A proverb), Fair and softly goes far. 2) room, place. 3) *impiegare,* here: to want.

Sgr. T. Un' ora ovvero un' ora e mezzo. Non vuol (Ella) aprire un poco la finestra?

Sgr. F. Mi scusi! Io temo un raffreddore[4]) dalla corrente d'aria.

Sgr. T. In questo caso lasciámola chiusa. Ecco la prima stazione.

Sgr. F. Quante ve ne sono fino a Vöslau?

Sgr. T. Credo cinque o sei, ma il convoglio non si ferma che per un minuto o due in ciascuna. Presso Baden passeremo per un Tunnel.

Sgr. F. Lo so. Non c'è che dire[5]), le strade ferrate sono una bellissima invenzione; non mancano però anche i loro incomodi.

Sgr. T. Per esempio?

Sgr. F. Per esempio, è quasi impossíbile di parlar in un vagone, stante[6]) il fracasso della locomotiva.

Sgr. T. È vero che un discorso qualunque è quasi impossibile. Il viaggiar sulle ferrovie[7]) rende i passeggieri tacíturni, e se paragoniamo i viaggi d'oggidì con quelli de' tempi addietro non possiamo non deplorare la pérdita della poesia del viaggiare.

Sgr. F. Almeno si trovássero alle nostre stazioni dei libri a buon mercato come ce ne sono in Germania, in Francia ed in Inghilterra. Il viaggiatore allora unirebbe con un dilettevole passatempo la possibilità d'imparare qualchecosa d'utile e d'istruttivo. Il libraio, il viaggiatore ed anche la letteratura vi troverebbero il loro conto.

Sgr. T. Speriamo che i nostri librái si méttano ad imitare l'esempio dei loro colleghi stranieri e nel frattempo aspettiamo ed annoiámoci.

Sgr. F. Eccoci finalmente arrivati. Il convoglio si ferma. È questa la méta[8]) del nostro viaggio?

Sgr. T. Precisamente!

Sgr. F. Allora scendiamo! Non ha dimenticato niente nel vagone?

Sgr. T. No, ho il mio soprabito[9]) e il mio bastone.

Sgr. F. Anche a me non manca nulla. Andiamo.

4) *un raffreddore,* a cold. 5) *Non c'è che dire, lit.* there is nothing to be said = at any rate. 6) because of, on account of. 7) rail-road. 8) *méta,* the end (of a way). 9) great-coat.

4.

Alla campagna.

Sgr. T. L'abbiamo proprio indovinata oggi. Guardi che bel tempo, e che aria fresca in questi luoghi!

Sgr. F. Il tempo par fatto a bella posta[1]) per una gita[2]). Ma, caro amico, che cosa faremo adesso?

1) *a bella posta,* on purpose. 2) excursion, trip.

Sgr. T. Cominciamo coll' andar al bagno; indi faremo un pranzo campestre. Nel frattempo possiamo riflettere su quel che faremo il dopo pranzo.

Sgr. F. Benissimo! Sa Ella dov' è la scuola di nuoto?

Sgr. F. Quà súbito, a due passi di quì!

Nella scuola di nuoto.

Sgr. F. (Al cassiere.) Quanto costa il biglietto d'entrata[1])?

Il cassiere. Venti soldi, Signori, a colla biancheria trenta.

Sgr. T. C'è molta gente?

Cass. Non troppa. L'ora consueta dei nostri avventori quotidiani è già passata.

Sgr. F. Sa Ella nuotare?

Sgr. T. Non troppo bene.

Sgr. F. Allora la prenderò sotto la mia protezione in caso che Le venisse l'idea di annegarsi.

Sgr. T. Stia tranquilla! Benchè io non sia un Leandro come Lei, non temo però nulla dalla furia delle onde. Ma dov' è il servitore per aprirci le nostre cabine?

Sgr. F. Ehi, cameriere!

Camer. Che cosa comándano, signori?

Sgr. T. Apriteci le nostre cabine!

Camer. Eccoli serviti.

Sgr. F. Come trova l'acqua?

Sgr. T. È freschetta, ma però molto aggradévole.

Sgr. F. Desidera far un salto dal trampolino?

Sgr. T. No, Le ho già detto che sono un meschino[2]) nuotatore. Se Ella vuol saltare, io rimarrò abbasso per ammirare la sua destrezza.

Sgr. F. Dunque badi! Ecco un pezzo da venti soldi che getto nell' acqua. Ella non avrà ancor finito di contare fino al venti che io sarò già ritornato a galla.

Sgr. T. Vada con Dio, e non diméntichi di ricomparire a fior d'acqua.

Sgr. F. Stia tranquilla! Uno, due, tre!

Sgr. T. Bravo! Ella sa star sott' acqua[3]) come il suo collega nella poesia di Schiller, ed anzi con miglior effetto.

Sgr. F. Eh, cospetto! C'è anche una piccola differenza tra il bagno di Vöslau ed il faro di Messina!

Sgr. T. A dire il vero comincio a sentire un po' di fame. Se crede vogliamo vestirci e andare in cerca d'un tetto ospitaliero.

Sgr. F. Volontieri, sarò pronto al momento.

1) ticket. 2) poor. 3) to dive, to plunge.

5.

Dopo pranzo.

Sgr. F. Adesso che abbiamo finito il nostro desinare, dove andremo?

Sgr. T. Per me è tutt' uno; non conosco troppo bene i contorni di Vöslau; mi rimetto[1]) quindi intieramente al suo parere.

Sgr. F. Mi rammento d'aver fatto tempo fa un' amenissima passeggiata attraverso la foresta fino a Baden.

Sgr. T. È lontano di qui?

Sgr. F. Un' ora ovvero un' ora e mezzo andando adagio. Il cammino è ombreggiato ed offre in alcuni luoghi bellissimi punti di vista.

Sgr. T. Benissimo! Ci fermeremo a Baden?

Sgr. F. Quelle núvole che cominciano a levarsi all' occidente presagiscono poco bene. In caso che il tempo variasse, sarebbe meglio di ritornare alla città.

Sgr. T. Sicuro! Una pioggia continua è la cosa più noiosa in campagna. Ma davvero che questa strada è bellissima!

Sgr. F. Magnifica! E quelle rovine che si scórgono sulle cime di que' monti non sono il minor vezzo di queste contrade.

Sgr. T. Amo molto vedere questi monumenti d'un tempo pieno di forza, di fede e di romanticismo, in confronto del quale noi altri uomini d'oggidì facciamo una tristissima figura. Non posso ammirare una di queste rovine senza rammentar quella sublime poesia di Vittore Hugo „Amaury comte de Montfort".

Sgr. F. Non si può negare che l'aspetto d'un castello in rovina farà sempre una grande impressione su chi[2]) non sia del tutto privo di immaginazione, trasportándolo per così dire in quei tempi ormai quasi dimenticati. Sémbrami per altro che non abbiamo fatto una gran pérdita coll' essere nati oggi piuttosto che nei tempi che videro sórgere quei castelli.

Sgr. T. Perchè?

Sgr. F. Perchè se fóssimo passati cinque cento anni fa per questi sentieri, come vi passiamo adesso, senza aver una buona scorta di cavalieri per protéggerci, noi avremmo probabilmente cenato alla Gil Blas in un sotterráneo di queste medesime castella, le cui rovine Ella sta ora piangendo tanto poeticamente.

Sgr. T. Mi vorrà dunque negare la poesia del medio evo?

Sgr. F. Questo no! Credo tuttavia più giusto l'ammirarlo storicamente che il desiderarne il ritorno.

1) yield; in French: *je m'en remets.* 2) *chi,* he who.

Sgr. T. Che fu[3])? Non ha sentito tuonare?

Sgr. F. Tuonare? Infatti le núvole di quaggiù ci téngono la parola. Avremo un temporale.

Sgr. T. Cosa facciamo? Io proporrei di ritornare alla città; forse arriveremo ancora in tempo per andare all' ópera.

Sgr. F. Si rappresenterà il Rigoletto, non è vero?

Sgr. T. Mi pare di sì.

Sgr. F. In questo caso preferisco restar quì. Andrò a trovare un mio amico che ha la sua villeggiatura a Baden. Vuol venire meco? Ci saremo i benvenuti.

Sgr. T. No, grazie, io partirò col próssimo convoglio.

Sgr. F. Allora ho da dirle addio. Ella sa il cammino fin alla stazione?

Sgr. T. Sia tranquilla! La vedrò forse domani in città?

Sgr. F. Spero di esservi a mezzo giorno. Se vuol venire a trovarmi mi farà un piacere.

Sgr. T. Se appena posso, vengo; intanto addio e buon divertimento!

Sgr. F. A rivederci domani a casa mia!

3) what was that? *C. M. S.*

Alphabetical List of poetical and obsolete forms of Verbs.

1) *Avere.*

abbi	*for*	abbia.
abbiendo	=	avendo.
abbiente	=	avente.
ábbino	=	abbiano.
abbiuto	=	avuto.
abbo	=	ho.
abendo	=	avendo.
abeva	=	aveva.
acci	=	ci ha.
aggia	=	abbia.
aggiare	=	avere.
aggiate	=	abbiate.
aggio	=	ho.
aja	=	abbia.
an	=	hanno.
arà	=	avrà.
arai	=	avrai.
aranno	=	avranno.
arei	=	avrei.
aremo	*for*	avremo.
arete	=	avrete.
aresti	=	avresti.
aría	=	avrebbe.
aríano	=	avrebbero.
arò	=	avrò.
aúto	=	avuto.
avavamo	=	avevamo.
avavate	=	avevate.
avé	=	aveva.
áve	=	ha.
ave'	=	aveva.
avei	=	ebbi. / avevi.
avem / avemo	=	abbiamo.
ven / veno	=	avevano.
verò	=	avrò.
averei	=	avrei.
avessi	=	avesti.

avéssimo *for* avemmo.
avéssino, avéssono = avessero.
avestu = avesti tu.
avevi = avevate.
avía = aveva.
aviamo = abbiamo.
aviate = abbiate.
aviè = aveva.
avieno = avevano.
avite = avete.
avrébbamo = avremmo.
avrébbono = avrebbero.
avréssimo = avremmo.
avri = avrete.
avría = avrei, avrebbe.
avriamo = avremmo.
avríano = avrebbero.
avriemo = avremmo.
avrienno = avrebbero.
ébbamo, ébbemo, ébbimo = avemmo.
ébbono = ebbero.
ei = ebbi.
ha' = hai.
habbiendo = avendo.
habbio, habbo = ho.
hae = ha.
haggi = abbi.
haggia = abbia.
haggio = ho.
haja = habbia,
halle = le ha.
halmi = me l'ha,
han = hanno.
hane = ha.
harei = avrei.
haria = avrebbe.
harian = avrebbero.
harò = avrò.
have = ha.
havea = aveva.
havre = avrebbe.
hei = ebbi, ebbe.
holle = le ho.
hollo = l'ho.
holti, hollo ti = te l'ho.
honne = ne ho.
hotti *for* ti ho.
ô = ho.
âi = hai.
â = ha.
ánno = hanno.

2) *Amare.*

amarè *for* amerei.
ameréno = ameremo.
amianlo = l'amiamo.
amorno, amorono = amarono.
amóe = amò.

3) *Andare.*

anda *for* va & vada.
andan = vanno.
andaò = andò.
andassi = andaste.
andavi (voi) = andavate.
andemmo = andammo.
anderébbamo = andremmo.
andéssero = andrebbero
andettamo = andammo.
andette = andò.
andéttero, andéttono = andarono.
andetto = andai.
andi = vai.
andiano = andiamo.
andiede = andò.
andiédero = andarono.
andiédemo = andammo.
andiedi = andai.
ando = vado.
andóe = andó.
andonno, andorno = andarono.
andosse = si andò.
gendo = andando.
gío = andò.
gir, giro = andarono.
gir = andare.
gissi = s'andò.

4) *Cadére.*

cáddono *for* caddero.
cadéo = cadde.
cadrei = caderei.
cadri = caderebbe.

cagge *for* cade.
caggendo = cadendo.
caggio etc. = cado etc.
caggo = cado.

5) *Calére.*

calme *for* mi cale.

6) *Capire.*

cape *for* capisce.

7) *Chiédere.*

cheggio etc., chero etc. *for* chiedo etc.
chesto = chiesto.
chieggio etc., chieggo = chiedo.
chier = chiede. / chiedero.
chiere = chiede.

8) *Compire.*

cómpiere *for* compire.
compiessi = si compiè.
compío = compì.

9) *Conóscere.*

cognosò *for* conosco.
conoscessimo = conoscemmo.

10) *Convenire.*

convenette *for* convenne.
conveníen = convenivano.

11) *Cógliere.*

cor, corr' *for* cogliere.
correm = coglieremo.

12) *Crédere.*

cre, cree *for* crede.
cre' = credo.
credéo = credè.
crederabbo, crederaggio = credéro.
credéro = crederono.
credessate = credeste.
credessi = credesse.

credía, credié *for* credeva.
creggio = credo.
crei = credi.
créo = credo.
cresi = credei.
crese = credè.
crésero = crederono.
creso = creduto.
crette = credè.
cretti = credei.

13) *Dare.*

dae *for* da.
daggi = dai.
daggiamo = diamo.
dan = danno.
daratti = ti darai.
daréssimo = daremmo.
dasse = desse.
dassero = dessero.
dassi = dessi.
dassimo = dessimo. / demmo.
daste = deste.
dasti = desti.
datte = ti da.
davi = davate.
dei = tu dia.
den, denno = diedero.
deo, diè = diede.
die' = diedi.
diè = diedero.
dieiti = te lo diede.
diemi = mi diedi.
diemmi = mi diede.
dienne = ci diede. / mi diede.
dienno, dier, dierno, dieron = diedero.

14) *Dire.*

di, dii, di' *for* dici.
dicén = dicevano.
dicerolti = te lo dirò.
dicestu = dicesti tu.
die = dici.

dille = *for* le di'.
dilmi = me lo di'.
dinne = ne (ci) di'.
diría = direbbe.
diroe = dirò.
ditto = detto.

15) *Essere.*

èe, éne = *for* è.
en, enno = sono.
erám, eramo = eravamo.
eri = eravate.
essi = si è.
essuto = stato.
eve = è.
fia = (tu) sii. / (egli sarà).
fian = siano. / saranno.
fie = (tu) sii. / (egli) sarà.
fien = sieno.
fiéno = saranno.
fii = sii.
fieti = tu sii. / ti sarà.
for, fora = sarei. / saresti. / sarebbe.
foran, forano = sarebbero.
foro = furono.
fossin, fossino = fossero.
fostu = fosti tu.
fu' = fui.
fue = fu.
fulle = le fu.
fummi = mi fu.
fur, furo, furno = furono.
fussi = si fu.
fusse etc. = fosse etc.
issuto = stato.
sare' = sarebbe. / sarei.
sarébbamo = saremmo.
sarébbono = sarebbero.
saréssimo = saremmo.
saríamo = *for* saremmo.
saríeno = sarebbero.
ser = esssere.
sete = siete.
sia = sarà. / siano.
siate = siete.
sie = sii. / sia. / siano.
siei = sei.
sieti = ti sia.
sii (io) = sia (io).
síino = siano.
sò = sono.

16) *Fare.*

face = *for* fa.
facén, facéno = facevano.
faci = fai.
facien = facevano.
faccio = fo.
fallo = lo fa.
famme = mi fa.
fanne = ne fa.
fane = fa.
fara' = farai.
farébbono = farebbero.
farenlo = lo faremo.
faría = farei. / farebbe.
farían, faríano, farién, farieno = farebbero.
faróne = farò.
fe', fe = fece. / feci.
fea = faceva.
féciono = fecero.
féglisi = se gli fece.
fei = feci.
felli = li fece.
femmi = mi fece.
femmo = facemmo.
fene = fece.
fenne = ne fece.
fenn', fenno = fecero.
fensi = si facevano. / si fecero.

feo *for* fece.
fer = fecero.
ferci = ci fecero.
fermi = mi fecero.
fero, feron, ferono = fecero.
fersi = si fecero.
fesse = facesse.
fessi = facessi.
féssono = facessero.
feste = faceste.
festi = facesti.

17) *Ferire.*

fedío *for* ferì.
fedire = ferire.
fedisce = ferisce.
fedíscono = feriscono.
fedito = ferito.
fegga, feggia = ferisca.
feggendo = feriendo.
féggiono, féggono = feriscono.
fera = ferisca.
fero = ferisco.
férono = feriscono.
feruto = ferito.
fiede = ferisce.
fiedi = ferisci.
fiédono = feriscono.
fier = ferisce.
fiera = ferisca.
fiere = ferisce.
fiérono = feriscono.

18) *Godére.*

gode *for* goda.
godéo = godè.
godería = goderei, goderebbe.
goderíano = goderebbero.
goderno = godettero.
goderò = godrò.
godéssino, godéssono = godessero.
godia = godeva.
godíeno = godevano.

19) *Morire.*

mora *for* muoia.
mórano = muoiano.
more *for* muore.
mori = muori.
muoiamo = moriamo.
moríano, moríeno = morivano.
muoiate = moriate.
morío = morì.
morisse = morissi.
morísseno, moríssono = morissero.
moro = muoio.
mórono = muoiono.
morríano, morríeno = morrebbero.
morróe = morrò.
muo' = muori.

20) *Muóvere.*

mosson *for* mossero.
movén, movieno = movevano.

21) *Nuócere.*

nocette *for* nocque.
nocéttero = nocquero.

22) *Parére.*

paj *for* pari (tu).
paji = paia (tu).
pare' = parve.
par = pare.
parémi = mi parev
parén = parevano
párono = paiono.
parríeno = parrebbero.
parse = parve.
parsi = parvi.
parso = paruto.
párvono = parvero.

23) *Pentirsi.*

pentémi *for* mi pentii.
pentere = pentire.
pentuto = pentito.

24) *Pérdere.*

perde' *for* perdetti.
perdési = si perdette.
perse = perdette.
pérsero = perderono.

persi *for* perdei.
perso = perduto.
sperse = perdè.
spérsero = perderono.
spersi = perdei.

25) *Porre.*

pogna *for* ponga.
pognamo = poniamo.
pognate = poniate.
pognendo = ponendo.
pommi = mi pone.
ponevam = ponevamo.
ponghi = ponga (tu).
ponghiamo = poniamo.
ponghiate = poniate.
por = porre.

26) *Potére.*

pon, ponno *for* possono.
poría, porría = potrei, potrebbe.
porían, porrían = potrebbero.
posse = possa (tu).
possendo = potendo.
possuto = potuto.
potavám = potevamo.
potavate = potevate.
pote = può.
potei = potevi.
p no = possiamo.
potén = potevano.
potéo = potè.
potéro = poterono.
poterebbe = potrebbe.
potési = potevasi.
potiemmi = mi potevano.
potiéno = potevano.
potria = potrei, potrebbe.
potríano, potríeno = potrebbero.
puo' = puoi.
puole = può.
puollo = lo può.
puote, puotè, potè, pote = può.

27) *Sapére.*

sa' *for* sai.
saccente = sapiente.
sacci = sappi.
saccia = sappia.
sacciamo = sappiamo.
sacciuto = saputo.
saccio = so.
sallo = lo sa.
salsi = sel sa.
san = sanno.
sanne = ne sa.
sape = sa.
sapei = sapevi.
sapemo = sappiamo.
sapén = sapevano.
sapi = sai.
sapiendo, sappiendo = sapendo.
sappio, sappo = so.
save = sa.
saver = saper.
seppono = seppero.

28) *Sciógliere.*

scio', scioi *for* sciogli.

29) *Sedére.*

sedieno *for* sedevano.
sediero = sederono.
sediési = sedevasi.
segga = sieda.
seggano = siedano.
segge = siede.
seggendo = sedendo.
seggia = sieda.
seggiamo = sediamo.
seggiano = siedano.
seggiate = sediate.
seggiono, seggono = siedono.
seggo, seggio = siedo.
siedean = sedevano.

30) *Stare.*

sta' *for* stai.
stae = sta.
starebbono = starebbero.

stasse *for* stesse. / si sta.
stassero = stessero.
stassi = stessi. / si sta.
stassimo = stessimo.
staste = steste.
stasti = stesti.
statti = ti sta.
stè = stette.
stea = stia.
steano = stiano.
ste' / stei = stetti.
steo = stette.
stero = stettero.
stessono = stessero.
stiede = stette.
stedero = stettero.
stiedi = stetti.
stovvi = vi sto.

31) *Tacére.*

tacette *for* tacque.
tacetti = tacqui.

32) *Tenére.*

te' / tè *for* tieni.
tegnamo = teniamo.
tegnate = teniate.
tenavamo = tenevamo.
tenghi = tieni.
tenghiamo = teniamo.
tenghiate = teniate.
teníanlo = lo teniamo.
terrallo = lo terrà.
tiello = lo tieni.
tiemmi = mi tieni. / mi tiene.

33) *Tógliere.*

to' *for* togli.
toe / tol / tolle = toglie.
tólo = toglilo.
tolletto = tolto.
tollono = tolgono.
tommi = mi togli.
tor = togliere (torre)
torríen = torrebbero.

34) *Vedére.*

ve' *for* vedi.
vedella = vederla.
vedén = vediamo.
vedestu = vedesti tu?
vediéno = vedevano.
vedíesi = si vedeva.
veddè = vide.
veddero = videro.
veddi = vidi.
vedra' = vedrai.
vedrammi = mi vedrai.
vegga = veda.
veggano = vedano.
vegghi = vedi.
veggia = veda.
veggiano = vedano.
vegge = veda (tu).
veggendo = vedendo.
veggiamo = vediamo.
veggiate = vediate.
veggo / veggio = vedo.
veggono / veggiono = vedono.
velle = vedi le.
velli / ve' li = vedi li.
vello / ve' lo = vedi lo.
vidili = vidi lui.

35) *Venire.*

vegna *for* venga.
vegnamo = veniamo.
vegnate = veniate.
vegne = venga (tu).
vegnendo = venendo.
vegnente = venente.
vegno = vengo.
vene = venne.
venesse = venisse.
veníeno = venivano.
viemme = mi viene.
vienne = ne vieni. / te ne vieni.

36) *Volére.*

vo' *for* voglio. / vuole.
vogli = vuoli. / voglia (tu).

vogliendo *for* volendo.
vogliente = volente.
volemo = vogliamo.
volsi = volli.
volsuto = voluto.
vonno = vogliono.
vorebbamo, vorebbemo, vorressimo = vorremmo.
vovvi = vi voglio.

vuo' *for* voglio.
vuo', vuoi, vuogli = vuoli.

37) *Vólgere.*

volgei *for* volsi.
volgénsi = si volgevano.
volve = volge.

Register of words whose signification is altered by the open or closed sound of the vowels e and o.

E.

Closed.

Accetta, axe.
affetta, he cuts.
allega, sets the teeth on edge.
ammezzo, too ripe.
Bei, thou drinkest.
berla, to drink it (*fem.*).
Cera, wax.
cesto, cluster.

cetera, lyre.
colletto, little hill.
creta, chalk.
De' = *dei,* Genit. case.

dessi, the same.

dei, Genit. case.
desti, (*e*), Pl. of *desto,* awakened.
detti, dette, Part. of *dire.*
E = ei, egli, eglino.
esca, bait; lure.
esse, Pl. of *essa,* she.
essi, Pl. of *esso,* he, it.
Fella (fello, felli, felle), contr. of *la* etc. *fece.*
fero = *ferano,* Pres. of *ferire,* to wound.
festi, feste, poet. Def. of *facere.*
Lega, confederation; league.
lesso, lessi, cooked; boiled meat.

Open.

Accetta, accepts.
affetta, he longs for.
allega, he alleges.
ammezzo, I divide.
Bei (Pl. of *bello*).
berla, name of a plant.
Cera (ciera), mien.
cesto, navel of Venus (plant); *id.* club, mace (weapon).
cetera (etcætera), and so forth.
colletto, collected.
Creta, the isle of Candia.
De' = *deve,* shall, ought etc. also *deh,* alas!
dessi = *si deve;* also *dessi,* Impf. Subj. of dare.
dei, Gods.
desti — *deste,* Def. of *dare.*
detti, dette, poet. Def. of *dare.*
È, is; *e,* and; *eh!* alas!
esca, Sogg. of *uscire.*
esse, the letter S.
essi = *si è,* one is.
Fella, fello etc., wicked, mischievous.
fero, poet. for *fiero,* ferocious, proud.
festi, feste, adj. (poet.) festive.
Lega, mile.
lessi, Def. of *leggere,* to read.

Closed.	Open.
Me, me.	*Me'* = *meglio.*
mele, Pl. of *mela*, apple.	*mele* = *miele*, honey.
messe, Pl. of *messa*, mass; also course (of a dinner).	*messe*, harvest.
mezzo, see *ammezzo.*	*mezzo*, half.
Pera, pear.	*Pera* = *perisca*, Sogg. of *perire*, to perish.
pesca, fishing.	*pesca*, peach.
pesco, I am fishing.	*pesco*, peach-tree.
peste, Pl. of *pesta*, foot-print, track.	*peste*, the plague.
Se, if; himself, herself etc.*)	*Se'* = *sei*, thou art.
sete, Pl. of *seta*, silk.	*sete*, poet. for *siete*, you are.
stesso, stessi etc. self.	*stesso, stessi* etc. from *stessere;* id. (poet.) Def. of *stare.*
Te, pron. thee.	*Te'* — *tieni;* id *tè*, tea.
telo, pron. it to thee.	*telo*, poet. arrow.
tema, fear.	*tema*, theme; task.
temi, thou fearest.	*temi*, Pl. of *tema;* id. *Temi*, Themis (goddess).
Veggia, subj. of *vedere.*	*Veggia*, cask (for wine etc.).
veglio, I wake.	*veglio*, (poet.) old.
vena, vein.	*vena* = *avena*, oats.
venti, twenty.	*venti*, winds.
vergola, poet. for *verga*, rod.	*vergola*, a kind of boat.

O.

Accorre, runs to.	*Accorre (accogliere)*, to receive.
accorsi, Def. of *accorrere.*	*accorsi*, Def. of *accorgere.*
accorto, I shorten.	*accorto*, clever.
apporti = *apporre-ti.*	*apporti*, thou bringest.
arroto, P. ps. of *arrogere.*	*arroto* (= *arruoto*), I sharpen.
Botte, cask.	*Botte*, Pl. of *botta*, a hit, stroke.
Cogli = *con gli.*	*Cogli*, from *cogliere*, to gather.
cola, it drops, trickles.	*cola*, Sogg. of *colere.*
colla = *con la.*	*colla*, from *collare*, to torture.
colle = *con le.*	*colle*, hill.
collo = *con lo.*	*collo*, neck.
colto, learned.	*colto*, gathered, seized, from *cogliere.*
coppa, part of the skull.	*coppa*, vase.
corre, he runs.	*corre* = *cogliere.*
corsi, I ran.	*corsi* = *cogliersi;* id. *Corsi*, Corsicans.
corti, Pl. of *corto*, short.	*corti* = *coglierti.*
costa, it costs.	*costa*, rip.
Doglio, cask.	*Doglio*, Pres. of *dolere.*
Folla, crowd.	*Folla* = *la fo'.*
folle, Pl. of *folla.*	*folle*, mad; id. = *le fo'.*

*) Some Ital. Orthoepists (f. i. *Cinonio*) consider the *e* to be open.

Closed.	Open.
fora, he bores.	*fora*, poet. for *sarebbe*.
foro, hole; id. poet. = *furono*.	*foro*, the forum (in Rome).
fosse, that he were.	*fosse*, ditches.
Importi = *imporre-ti*.	*Importi*, of *importare*, to be of importance.
incolto, ill-bred, rude, uncivilised.	*incolto*, Part. of *incogliere*.
indotto, Part. of *indurre*.	*indotto*, ignorant.
Loto, clay.	*Loto*, lotus (a plant).
Morse, bites.	*Morse*, Def. of *mordere*.
Noce, nut, nut-tree.	*Noce* = *nuoce*, he harms.
Ora, now; id. hour.	*Ora*, he prays; id. soft wind.
orno, from *ornare*, to adorn.	*orno*, maple.
Poppa, the stern (of a ship).	*Poppa*, breast.
porci = *porre-ci*.	*porci*, pigs.
porsi = *porre-si*.	*porsi*, Def. of *porgere*.
pose, Def. of *porre*.	*pose*, accents; pauses.
posta, Part. of *porre*.	*posta*, post; *a* —, on purpose.
Ricorre = *ricorrere*.	*ricorre* = *ricogliere*.
riporti = *riporre-ti*.	*riporti*, thou bringest back (from *riportare*).
rocca, spindle.	*rocca*, a fortified castle.
rodano, Sogg. of *rodere*, to gnaw.	*Rodano*, the Rhone (river).
rodi, from *rodere*.	*Rodi*, Rhodes (isle).
rogo, bramble.	*rogo*, pile of fire-wood.
rosa, Part. of *rodere*.	*rosa*, rose.
rozza, unbred.	*rozza*, old horse.
Scola, from *scolare*, to trickle, to drip.	*Scola* = *scuola*, school.
scopo, from *scopare*, to sweep.	*scopo* = *scuopo*, end, intention.
scorsi, from *scorrere*, to flow.	*scorsi*, from *scorgere*, to perceive.
scorta, from *scortare*, to escort.	*scorta*, guard.
scorto, from *scortare*.	*scorto*, from *scorgere*.
sole, Pl. of *sola*, alone (*fem.*).	*sole*, sun.
solo, *sola*, alone.	*solo* = *suolo*, ground; *sola* = *suola*, sole of a shoe etc.
sono, I am.	*sono* = *suono*, I sound.
sonne = *ne sono*.	*sonne* = *ne so*.
sorta, Part. of *sorgere*.	*sorta*, sort, kind.
stolto, stupid, mad.	*stolto* = *distolto* (of *distogliere*).
stoppa, tow, hemp.	*stoppa*, he stops (a bottle).
Tocca, he touches.	*Tocca*, cudgel.
tomo, a tumble head over heels; id. from *tomare*, to tumble head over heels.	*tomo*, volume; id. *tomi* = *togli-mi* (poet.).
torre, tower, turret.	*torre* = *togliere*.
torsi, torsoes.	*torsi* = *toglier-si*.
torta, pie.	*torta*, Part. of *torcere*.
torvi, Pl. of *torvo*, ferocious.	*torvi* = *toglier-vi*.
tosco, Tuscan.	*tosco* = *tóssico*, poison.
Volgo, populace.	*Volgo*, from *volgere*, to turn round.
volto, face.	*volto*, Part. of *volgere*.
voto, promise, wish, desire.	*voto* = *vuoto*, empty.

Alphabetical list

of the verbs of the I Conj. with the stress on the *fourth* syllable in the 3d. Pers. Plur. *Present* Tense of the Indicative and the Subjunctive Mood.

Abitare.
accelerare.
accomodare.
adoperare.
agitare.
alluminare.
alterare.
animare.
annoverare.
anticipare
applicare.
augurare.

Beneficare.
biasimare.

Caricare.
celebrare.
certificare.
chiacchierare.
circolare.
considerare.
coricare.
criticare.

Desiderare.
desinare.
disputare.
dubitare.

Eccitare.
ereditare.
esagerare.
esaminare.
esercitare.
esitare.

Generare.
giubilare.
giudicare.
grandinare.

Illuminare.
imitare.
immaginare.
incomodare.
indicare.
interpretare.
interrogare.

Lacerare.
liberare.
litigare.
logorare.

Masticare.
meditare.
meritare.
militare.
mitigare.

moderare.
mormorare.

Navigare (nevicare).
*nobilitare**).
nominare.
numerare.

Occupare.
operare.
ordinare.

Partecipare.
penetrare.
pettinare.
pizzicare.
praticare.
precipitare.
predicare.
prosperare.

Radicare.
recitare.
regolare.
ricoverare.
rimproverare.
rimunerare.
risicare.
riverberare.

rosicare.
Seminare.
sollecitare.
sollicitare.
solleticare.
spasimare.
stipulare.
strepitare.
stuzzicare.
superare.
supplicare.
suscitare.

Terminare.
tollerare.
trafficare.

Ululare.

Vacuare.
valicare.
variare.
vegetare.
vendicare.
vigilare.
visitare.
vituperare.
vociferare.
vomitare.

Zoppicare.

---

*) with the stress on the 5th syllable from behind.

VOCABULARY,

containing

all the words of the Translations in the

SECOND PART.

A.

a, an, *un (uno)*, m., *una* f.
able, to be able, *potére, sapére.*
abominable, *abbominévole.*
about, *circa, all' incírca, da, di;* at about 10 o'clock, *verso le* 10; to have anyth. about one, *avér séco.*
absence, *assénza* f.
absolute, *assolúto, a.*
abstain, to —, *astenérsi.*
absurdity, *assurdità* f.
abuse, to —, *abusáre.*
Abydos, *Abido.*
academy, *accadémia* f.
accept, to —, *accettáre, ricévere.*
accompany, to —, *accompagnáre.*
accustom, to —, *accostumáre, avezzáre.*
acquaintance, *conoscénza* f.
acquire, to —, *acquistáre.*
act, to —, *agíre.*
actual, *attuále.*
address, to —, *parláre; indirizzáre la paróla.*
administration, *ammirazióne* f.
advanced, *avanzato.*
advantage, *rantággio* m.
adversary, *avversário* m.
Æsop, *Esópo.*
affair, *faccénda* f., *affáre* m.
affirmation, *asserzióne* f.
afraid, to be —, *aver paúra; temére.*
after, *dopo.*
afternoon, *dopo pránzo;* at 2, 3, 4 . . . o'clock in the afternoon, *alle* 2, 3, 4 . . . *pomeridiáne.*
against, *cóntra (cóntro).*
age, *età* f., old age, *vecchiáia* f.
ago, a few days ago, *alcúni giórni fa.*
agree, to —, *convenire.*
aggreeable, adj. *aggradévole,* adv. *aggradevolménte.*
aground, to run —, *naufragáre.*
air, *ária* f.
alas! *Oimè!*
Alexander, *Alessándro;* Alex. the Great, — *Mágno.*
Alfred, *Alfrédo.*
all, *tutto, a,* pl. *tutti, e;* at all, *punto.*
All-Saints'-Day, *Ognissánti.*
alliance, *alleánza* f.
allow, to —, *permèttere.*
almost, *quási.*
alone, *solo, solétto.*
along, *allúngo;* to come — with, *venire con;* get —, *via!*
also, *ánche.*
although, *benchè, ancorchè, quantúnque.*
always, *sémpre.*
ambassador, *ambasciatóre* m.
amend, to —, *emendare.*
amends, to make —, *ritrattársi.*
America, *América;* American, adj. *americáno, a.*
amiable, *amábile* m. & f.
among, *tra, fra, présso.*
amuse, to —, *divertírsi.*
amusing, *dilettévole* m. & f.
anchor, to weigh —, *levar l'ancóra, salpáre.*

ancient, adj. *antíco, a,* pl. *antíchi, e.*
and, *e (ed).*
anger, *cóllera, fúria* f., *sdegno* m.
angry, *adiráto, a.*
animal, *animále* m.
another, *un áltro, un' altra;* one another, *l'un l'altro,* f. *l'una l'altra;* pl. *gli uni gli altri,* f. *le une le altre.*
answer, *rispósta* f., to —. *rispóndere.*
antiquity, *antichità* f.
any (often not translated), *alcúno, a.*
anything, *qualchecósa di . . .*
apartment, *stánza* f.
approach, to —, *avvicinársi.*
approve, to —, *approváre.*
arm, *bráccia* m. pl. *le braccia.*
army, *armáta* f.
around, *intórno a . . .*
arrive, to —, *arrivare, giúgnere.*
art, *árte* f.
Artaxerxes, *Artassérse.*
artist, *artísta* m. & f.
as, *cóme, che, quánto.*
as well — as, *tánto — quánto* (invar.); *così (sì) — come (che); — siccóme;* as — as, *tanto — quanto,* f. *tanta — quanta,* pl. *tanti — quanti,* f. *tante — quante; tanto, a,* pl. *i, e — che (come);* as soon as possible, *quanto prima.*
ashamed, to be —, *arer vergogna.*
ashes, *cénere* m. & f.; pl. f.
ashore, to go —, *approdáre.*
Asia, *Ásia* f.
ask, to —, *domandáre.*
assembly, *assembléa, adunánza.*
assist, to —, *assístere.*
assistance, *assistónza* f., *ajuto* m.
astonishment, *stupóre* m.
at, *a, da, in.*
attack, to —, *assalíre.*
attentive, *attónto, intónto.*
Austria, *Aústria* f.
Austrian, subst. & adj. *austríaco,* f. *a,* pl. m. subst. — *ci;* pl. adj. m. — *chi.*
author, *autóre* m.
authorize, to —, *autorizzáre.*
avarice, *avarízia* f.
avenger, *vendicatóre* m.
awaken, to —, *destáre.*
aware, to be —, *sapére, sentíre.*
away, *vía;* to go —, *andársene.*

B.

back, *diétro, indiétro, addiétro,* (see the *verb* this adj. is used with); to be —, *éssere di ritórno, ritornáre.*
bad, *cattívo, a;* badly, *mále.*
ball, *bállo* m.
banish, to —, *bandíre, esigliáre.*
bank (of a river), *ríva, spónda* f.
barbarian, *bárbaro* m.
basket, *cestéllo, césto, paniére* m.
battle, *battáglia* f.
be, to be, *éssere.* (See begone.)
beard, *bárba* f.
beautiful, *béllo, a.*
because, *perchè, poichè, giacchè.*
become, to —, *divenire, diventáre;* to become = to befit, *convenire a qchd.*
bed, *létto* m.; to go to —, *coricársi.*
beer, *birra* f.
befall, to —, *essere fátto a qchd.*
before, *prima di . . .*
beg, to —, *pregáre.*
beggar, *mendíco, questánte* m.
begin, to —, *cominciáre a . . ., méttersi a . . .*; to — with, *cominciáre con . . .*
begone! *va! váda!*
behaviour, *condótta* f.
behind, *diétro.*
being, the —, *creatúra* f., *essere* m.
believe, to —, *crédere.*
belong, to —, *appartenére, essere di . . .*
bend, to —, *inchináre.*
beside, to be — one's self, *éssere fuóri di se.*
besides, *oltre a ciò, per altro.*
best, *il (la) miglióre.*
Bethlehem, *Betelémme.*
betrothal, *sponsáli* pl. m.
better, *miglióre* m. & f.; to like —, *amár méglio, preferíre;* it is —, *val (è) méglio.*

bid, to —, *comandáre, ordináre;* to — farewell, *dire addío.*
big, *grósso, a; gránde* m. & f.
bind, to —, *legáre.*
bird, *uccéllo* m.
birth, *náscita* f.; to give —, *produrre.*
bleed, to —, *sanguináre.*
blue, *azzúrro, turchíno.*
blush, to —, *arrossíre.*
boast, to — of . . ., *gloriársi di . . .*
body, *córpo* m.
bold, *ardíto, a; audáce* m. & f.
bone, *ósso,* m. pl. *le ossa.*
bonnet, *cappéllo* m., *cúffia* f.
book, *libro* m.
bookbinder, *legatóre di libri.*
boot, *stivále* m.
booty, *préda* f., *bottíno* m.
born, to be —, *náscere;* D. *nácqui,* P. p. *náto;* to be —, i. e. to live, to be, *éssere nato.*
both, *ámbe, ambe dúe, i (le) due.*
bottle, *bottíglia* f.
box, *scátola* f.; (in the theatre) *pálco* m.
boy, *ragázzo* m.
Brasil, *il Brasíle.*
brave, to —, *braváre.*
break, to —, *rómpere;* D. *rúppi,* P. p. *rótto;* to — off, *rómpere.*
breathe, to —, *spiráre, respiráre.*
bride, *spósa* f.
briefly, *in bréve;* briefly then, *tant' è.*
brine, *ácqua* f.; *le ónde* pl. f.
bring, to —, *portáre, recáre, trasportáre;* — up, *educáre, allevváre.*
broad, *lárgo, a.*
brother, *fratéllo* m.
build, to —, *fabbricáre.*
building, *edifízio* m., *fábbrica* f.
burst, to — forth, *prorómpere.*
but, *ma, però.*
butter, *butírro, búrro* m.
buy, to —, *comperáre, compráre.*
by, *da;* by heart, *a ménte;* by (of time), *vérso;* by night, *di notte;* by and by, *présto o tárdi.*

C.

Cæsar, *Césare.*
calf, *vitéllo,* m.
call, to —, *chiamáre;* to — on . . ., *andáre (ventre) a trováre, visitare;* to be called, *chiamársi.*
can, I can, *pósso* [Infin. *potére,* see *(to be) able*].
cap, *berrétta,* f.
capital, the —, *capitále* f. (of a country).
Capitol, *Campidóglio* m.
captain, *capitano* m.
car, *cárro* m.
van, *carována* f.
card, *cárta* f.
care, *cúra* f.; to take —, *badáre, aver cúra.*
carriage, *carrózza* f.
carrier, *vetturíno* m.
carry, — to, *portáre.*
case, *cáso* m.
cause (in law), *líte* f. (reason), *caúsa* f.
cautious, *caúto, a,* adj.
cavern, *cavérna* f.
cease, to —, *cessáre.*
celebrated, *célebre* m. & f., *rinomáto, a.*
certain, *cérto, a,* adj.
cessation, without —, *incessantemènte.*
Champagne, *Sciampágna* f.
charge, to —, *caricáre.*
Charles, *Cárlo.*
charming, adj. *incantante,* m. & f. *vágo, a.*
chatter, to —, *chiacchieráre.*
cheap, cheaply, *a buon mercáto.*
cheat, to —, *ingannáre, gabbáre.*
cheesemonger, *formaggiáio* m.
cherry, *ciriégia* f.
cherry-tree, *ciriégio* m.
chess, *gli scácchi* m.
child, *fanciúllo* m.
Christ, *Crísto.*
Christian, *cristiáno* m.
church, *chiésa* f.
Cicero, *Cicerône.*
cigar, *sígaro* m.
circumference, *circúito* m.
circumstance, *circostánza* f.
citizen, *cittadíno* m.
city, *città* f.
civilisation, *civilisazióne* f., *civiltà* f.

civilized, *civilizzáto, cólto.*
claim, to lay —, *far richiámo di . . .*
clear, *chiáro, límpido* adj.; to see —, *vedér chiáro.*
clever, *ábile* m. & f.
clock, o'—, at 1 o'clock, *ad un' ora, al tocco;* at 2, 3, 4 etc. o'—, *alle* 2, 3, 4 etc.
coachman, *cocchiére, vetturino* m.
coast, *spiággia* f.
coat, *ábito* m.
cock, to — (a pistol), *montáre il cáne.*
coffee, *caffè* m.
coffin, *sarcófago* m.
cold, *fréddo, a,* adj.
colonel, *colonéllo* m.
colour, *colóre* m.
Columbus, *Colómbo* m.
come, to —, *venire;* to — along, *venire con qchd.*
comedy, *commédia* f.
commerce, *commércio* m.
commission, *commissióne* f.
commissioner, *commissário* m.
common, *comúne;* —ly, *ordinariaménte.*
communicate, to —, *comunicáre.*
complain, to —, *laynársi.*
conclude, to —, *conchiúdere.*
condemn, to —, *condannáre.*
condition, *condizióne* f.
conduct, *condótta* f.
confederation, *confederazióne* f.
confess, to —, *confessáre.*
conquer, to —, *conquistáre;* to — smbd., *víncere.*
consequence, *conseguénza* f.
conspiracy, *congiura* f.
Constantinople, *Costantinópoli.*
consul, *cónsole* m.
contagion, *contagióne* f.
contemporary, *contemporáneo* m.
contradict, to —, *contraddíre.*
contrary, *contrário, a.*
convenient, *convenévole, conveniente.*
convince, to —, *convíncere, persuadére.*
cook, *cuóco,* f. *cuóca.*
copy, the —, *cópia* f.
correct, to —, *corrégyere.*
correctness, *giustézza* f.
cost, to —, *costáre.*
counsellor, *consigliére* m.
count, *cónte* m.
countess, *contéssa* f.
country, *pátria* f.; (in contradistinction of *town*) *campágna* f.; = land, *paése* m.
countryman, *concittadíno, compaesáno* m.
courage, *corággio* m.
courageous, *coraggióso, intrépido, a.*
course, of —, *sicúro; naturalménte* adv.
court, *córte* f.
cousin, *cúgino, cugína* f.
covetous (old sinner), *avaráccio,* m.
creation, *creazióne* f.; id. *figúra* f.
crime, *crime* m., *delitto* m.
crown, to —, *incoronáre.*
cruelty, *crudeltà* f.
cry, the —, *lo strído,* pl. *le strída.*
cry, to — (weep), *piángere;* (scream), *gridáre;* to — for mercy, *chiédere grázia.*
cultivate, to —, *coltiváre.*
cup, *chicchera* f.
cure, to —, *curáre, guarire.*

D.

damage, *danno,* m.
damp, *úmido, a.*
dance, to —, *balláre.*
Darius, *Dario* m.
daughter, *figlia* f.
day, *giórno* m., *dì* m.; this — week, *oggi a otto.*
daybreak, *il far del giorno.*
dead, *mórto, a.*
dear, *cáro, a.*
death, *mórte* f.: —bed, *létto di mórte* m.
decay, to —, *decadére.*
deceive, to —, *ingannáre, delúdere.*
declare, to —, *dichiaráre.*
decrease, to —, *decréscere.*
dedicate, to —, *dedicáre.*
deed, the lofty —, *le gésta.*
deep, *profóndo, a.*
defend, to —, *diféndere.*
defeat, the —, *sconfitta* f.

defence, *difésa* f.
deign, to —, *degnársi.*
delivered, *liberáto, a;* Jerusalem —, *la Gerusalémme liberáta.*
delude, to —, *delúdere, beffarsi*
delusion (see *to delude*). [*di.*
demand, to —, *domandáre.*
Demosthenes, *Demóstene* m.
den, *cavérna* f.
deny, to —, *negáre.*
depart, to —, *partíre.*
depend, to —, *fidársi di . . .*
deprive, to —, *priváre.*
deride, to —, *burlársi di . . .*
derive, to —, *deriváre.*
design, the —, *desidério, desío* m.
desire, to —, *desideráre.*
desperately, *disperataménte* adv.
despise, to —, *sprezzáre.*
destiny, *destíno* m.
destroy, to —, *distrúggere.*
destruction, *distruzióne* f.
detain, to —, *ritenére.*
device, *stratagémma* m.
devote, to —, *sacrificáre.*
dialogue, *diálogo* m.
Dido, *Didóne* f.
die, to —, *moríre.*
different, *differénte* m. & f., *áltro, a.*
difficult, *difficile* m. & f.
dig, to — up, *sconvólgere.*
diligent, *diligénte* m. & f., *laborióso, a.*
diminish, to —, *diminuíre, scemáre.*
dine, to —, *pranzáre.*
dining-room, *sala da pranzo.*
dinner, *pránzo* m.
directly, *súbito* adv.
disappear, to —, *disparíre, sparíre.*
discover, to —, *scoprire.*
disgrace, *disgrazia* f., *male* m.
dispense, to —, *dispensáre.*
displease, to —, *spiacére.*
dissipate, to —, *dissipáre.*
dissolve, to —, *dissólvere.*
distinguish, to —, *distínguere.*
ditch, *fósso* m., *fóssa* f.
divine, *divíno, a.*
do, to —, *fáre.* Have done! *finite! finísca (Ella)!*
dog, *cáne* m.
dollar, *scúdo* m.
door, *pórta* f., *úscio* m.
door-keeper, *guardaportóni* m., *portináio,* m.
doubt, to —, *dubitáre.*
down, *abbásso;* to fall — stairs, *cadére dalla scála;* to fall — on one's knees, *cadér ginocchióne.*
dozen, *dozzína* f.
draw, to —, *tiráre;* to — upon (= to attract), *attiráre;* to — the sword, *sguainár la spada.*
dreadful, *orríbile,* adv. *—ménte.*
dress, the —, *la véste.*
dress, to —, *restíre.*
drink, to —, *bére (bévere).*
drip, to —, *grondáre* (with *di*), *sgocciáre.*
drive, to — (out), *cacciáre.*
drunken (man), *ubbriáco* m.
duke, *dúca* m.
duration, *durata* f.
during, *per, duránte, di.*
Dutch, *Olandése* adj. and subst.
duty, *doráre* m.

E.

each, *ognúno, ciaschedúno, ciascúno, ógni.*
earn, to —, *raccórre, miétere.*
earnest, *sério, a* adj.; in —, *da sénno.*
earth, *térra* f.
easily, *facilménte.*
Easter, *Pásqua* f.
easy, *fácile* m. & f.
eat, to —, *mangiáre.*
education, *educazióne* f.
effeminacy, *effeminatézza* f.
effort, *sfórzo* m.
effrontery, *sfrontatézza, impudénza* f.
egg, *nóvo* m. pl. *le nóva.*
Egypt, *Egítto* m.
Egyptian, *egízio, egiziáno, d'Egítto.*
eight, *ótto.*
elder, *maggióre,* see *old.*
elect, to —, *eléggere,* P. p. *elétto.*
Election, *elezióne* f.
elegant, *elegánte* m. & f., —ly, *con elegánza.*
eleven, *úndici.*

else, *áltro.*
embarrass, to —, *imbarazzáre.*
embrace, to —, *abbracciáre.*
emperor, *imperatóre* m.
empire, *impéro* m.
end, *fíne* m. & f., *ésito* m.
end, to —, *finíre.*
endeavour, to —, *ingegnársi, sforzársi, cercare.*
enemy, *nemíco* m.
engaged, see *at stake.*
England, *Inghiltérra* f.
English, *inglése* m & f.
enjoyment, *godiménto* m.
enormous, *enórme* m. & f.
enough, *abbastánza* (invar.).
enter, to —, *entráre.*
enterprise. *intraprésa* f.
entirely, *intieraménte.*
envy, *invídia* f.
epic, *épico, a.*
epidemy, *epidémia* f.
equal, to —, *stimársi del pári.*
erect, to —, *erígere;* D. *erèssi,* P. p. *erétto.*
esteem, the —, *stíma* f.
esteem, to —, *stimáre, apprezzáre.*
eternal, *etérno, a.*
Europe, *Europa* f.
Eurymedon, *Eurimedóne* m.
even, *síno a, pári, ánche.*
evening, *séra* f.
event. *avvenimento, accidénte* m.
ever, *mái;* —since, *sémpre;* for—, *per sémpre.*
every, *ógni* m. & f. (only used in the Sing.).
every one, *ognúno, a.*
everybody, *ciaschedúno, ciascúno,*
everywhere, *dappertútto.* [*a.*
evident, *evidénte* m. & f. *chiáro, a.*
exasperated, *esacerbato, a.*
excellent, *eccellénte* m. & f.
excite, to —, *eccitáre,* to — surprise, *sorpréndere.*
execute, to —, *eseguíre.*
exertion, *sfórzo* m., *fatíca* f.
exile, *esílio* m.
existence, *esisténza* f.
expect, to —, *aspettáre.*
expectation, *aspettazióne* f.
expense, *le spése;* at one's —, *alle spése di qdn.*
experience, *esperiénza* f.
expose, to —, *espórre.*
eye, *ócchio* m.

F.

fabrication, *fábbricazione* f.
fail, to —, *mancáre.*
faint-hearted, *codárdo, pauróso, pusillánimo.*
fair (hair), *bióndo, a;* (fine), *bello, a.*
faithful, *fedéle* m. & f.
fall, to —, *cadére.*
false, *fálso, a.*
family, *famíglia* f.
famous, *famóso, a.*
far, *distánte* m. & f.; how — is it? *quanto c'è?*
farewell, *addío* (invar.).
fashion, *móda* f.
fast (tied), *arrandelláto, a.*
fate, *sórte* f. *destíno* m.
father, *pádre* m.: — -in-law. *suócero* m.
fatigue, *fatíca* f. [
fault (moral), *difétto* m., (error), *erróre* m.; *sbáglio* m.; my — *cólpa mía.*
fear, to —, *temére, aver paúra.*
fear, the —, *paúra* f.
feeling, the —, *sentiménto;* a vague —, *un certo non so che.*
fellow, *ómo* m.
fertile, *fértile* m. & f.
festival, *fésta* f.
few, *póchi, e;* a —, *alcúni, e.*
field, *cámpo* m.
fight, the —, *lótta* f.
fight, to —, *combáttere, lottáre.*
fill, to —, *empíre, riempíre;* to — his place, *disimpegnare i propri doveri.*
find, to —, *trováre.*
fine, *béllo, a;* (refined), *fíno, a.*
fire-arm, *árma da fuóco* f.
firm, *férmo, a.*
first, *primo, a,* adj.; *prima,* adv.
fish, *pésce* m.
fit, to — (of a coat), *andár bene.*
fitting, to be —, *convenire.*
flatter, to —, *lusingáre.*
flee, to —, *fuggíre.*
fleet, *flótta* f.
fling, *gettáre.*
florin, *fioríno* m.
flower, *fióre* m.
fly, to —, *fuggíre.*

follow, to —, *seguíre, tener dietro a qchn.*
follower, *partigiáno* m.
fond, to be —, *amár molto, assái.*
foot, *piè, piéde* m.
footman, *sérvo* m.
for, *per;* as —, *quanto a . . .;* (= because), *perchè.*
force, *fórza;* by —, *per fórza.*
forget, to —, *dimenticáre (dimenticarsi di).*
form, *fórma* f.
form, to —, *formáre.*
formerly, *áltra vólta.*
forth, *avánti* (when used with verbs, as: *to burst forth,* see these verbs).
fortnight, *quíndici giórni.*
fortress, *fortézza* f.
fortunate, *fortunáto, a.*
fortune, *facoltà* f.
forty, *quaránta* pl. m. & f.
found, to —, *fondáre.*
four, *quáttro.*
fowl, *pollástro* m.
fox, *vólpe* f.
France, *Fráncia* f.
Francis, *Francésco* m.
Frankfort, *Francofórte.*
Frederick, *Federíco.*
free, *líbero, a;* —ly, *francaménte.*
freeze, to —, *geláre.*
French, *francése* m. & f.
Frenchman, *francése* m.
frequent, to —, *frequentáre.*
fresh, *frésco, a.*
Friday, *Venerdì.*
friend, *amíco, a.*
friendship, *amicízia* f.
frog, *rána* f.
from, *da.*
fruit, *frútto* m., pl. *le frútta.*
fulfil, to —, *adempíre, verificarsi.*
full, *piéno, a;* at — length (see *length*).
fully, *perfettaménte, intieraménte* adv.
fur-cap, *berrétta* (f.) *di pellíccia.*
furnished, *mobigliáto, a; fornito, a.*

G.

gain, to —, *guadagnáre;* to — cause, *víncere la lite.*
garden, *giardíno* m.
garment, *ábito* m., *véste* f.
gate, *pórta* f., *portóne* m.
gee ho! *arri!*
general, the —, *generále* m.
generous, *generóso, a.*
genius, *génio; ingégno* m.
Genoese, *genovese* m. & f.
gentleman, *signóre* m.
German, the —, *Tedésco* m.
Germany, *Germánia* f.
get, to —, (see p. 318).
girl, *ragázza, fanciúlla, zitélla gióvane;* the little . . . *bimba* f.
give, to —, *dáre.*
glad, *liéto, a; allégro, a;* to be —, *rallegrársi, godére.*
glass (for drinking), *bicchiére* m., (mat.) *vétro* m.
glory, *glória* f.
glove, *guánto* m.
go, to —, *andáre;* to — out, *uscire (di casa);* to — away, *andársene.*
God, *Dío* m.; (after a conson.) *Iddío* m.
goddess, *Déa,* f.
gold, *óro* m., (of gold), *d'óro,* poet. *aúreo, a.*
gone, be — (see *to be*).
good, *buóno, a.*
goodness, *bontà* f.
gooseberry, *ríbes* m.
government, *govérno* m.
gracious, *grazióso, a; cleménte,* m. & f.
grammar, *grammática* f.
grandmother, *nónna, áva* f.
great, *gránde* m. & f.; a — many, *mólti, e.*
greatly, *mólto, assái, grandeménte* adv.
greatness, *grandézza* f.
Greece, *Grécia* f.
Greek, *gréco, a* (see p. 211).
groat, *grósso* m.
ground (earth), *térra* f., (bottom), *fóndo* m.
grow, to —, *créscere;* to — f. i. old etc. *divenire, diventáre.*
guest, *óspite* m.
guide, *guída* m. & f.
guilty, *colpévole.*

H.

habit, to have the—, *solére, usáre.*
hair, *capéllo* m. (usually in the Pl.)
half, *mézzo, a,* by —, *a metà.*
hand, *máno* f.
handsome, *béllo, a.*
hang, to—, *péndere;* — full of..., *essere pieno di.*
happiness, *felicità; ben essere* m.
happy, *felíce* m. & f.
harbour, *pórto* m.
hard, *dúro, a;* hard (words), *brúsco, a.*
harmony, *armonía* f.
hat, *cappéllo* m.
hate, to — *odiáre.*
hatred, *ódio* m.
have, to —, *avere.*
he, *egli, ei, e', esso.*
head, *cápo* m., *tésta* f.; — ache, *mal di tésta* m.
health, *salúte* f.
hear, to —, *sentire, udire, ascoltáre* (see p. 318).
heart, *cuóre;* by —, *a ménte, a memória.*
heaven, *ciélo, paradiso* (Dante) m.
heavy, *pesánte* m. & f.
Hebrew, *ebraico, a.*
hedge, *siépe* f.; thorn —, *siépe* f.
height, *altézza, altúra* f.
hell, *inférno* m.
help, to —, *aiutáre, soccórrere.*
Henry, *Enrico* m.
here, *quì;* — is (are), *écco! c'è, vi è.*
hero, *eróe* m.
hesitate, to —, *esitáre.*
hide, to —, *nascóndere, nascóndersi.*
high, *álto, a.*
him, *gli.*
himself (acc.), *si.*
hinder, *impedíre.*
historian, *stórico* m.
history, *stória* f.
hither, *quà.*
holiday, *fésta* f.; —s, *vacánza* f.
holy, *sánto, a;* the 3 — kings, *i tre Re mági.*
home, *a cása.*
honour, the —, *onóre* m.
honour, to —, *onoráre.*
hope, to —, *speráre.*
horrible, *orríbile* m. & f.
horse, *cavállo* m.
horseback, on —, *a carállo.*
hospitality, *ospitalità* f.
hot, *cáldo, caldíssimo.*
hour, *óra* f.
house, *cása* f.
how, *cóme?* — far, *quanto c'è?*
however, *ma, però;* — (with adj. following) *perquánto.*
human, *umáno, a;* —ly, *umanaménte.*
humiliate, to —, *umiliáre.*
humor, *umóre* m.
hundredweight, *centináio* m.
hungry, to be —, *avér fame.*
Hydra, *ídra* f.

I.

I, *ío.*
idea, *idéa* f., *pensiéro* m.
idle, *pígro, a.*
if, *se.*
ignorant, *ignorante* m. & f.
ill, *ammaláto, a.*
illness, *malattía* f.
imagination, *immaginazióne* f.
immense, *immenso, a.*
immortal, *immortále* m. & f.
important, *importánte* m. & f.
impose, to —, *impórre* (irr.).
impostor, *ingannatóre* m.
impudent, *impudénte* m. & f. *sfacciato, a.*
in, *in, fra.*
incivility, *scortesía* m. & f.
incredible, *incredíbile* m. & f.
inculcate, to —, *inculcare.*
incur, to —, *attirársi.*
independence, *indipendénza* f.
inform, to —, *informáre.*
inhabitant, *abitánte* m.
injurious, *nocévole* m. & f.
injury, *ingiúria* f.
injustice, *ingiustízia* f.
innocent, *innocénte* m. & f.
inquire, after..., *domandáre di...*
insipid, *insípido, sciócco, a.*
inspire, to —, *inspiráre.*
instruction, *istruzióne* f.
intellect, *intelligenza* f.
intelligent, *intelligénte* m. & f.
intelligibly, *intelligibilménte.*
intention, *intenzióne* f.

into, *in.*
introduce, to —, *presentáre, introdúrre.*
invigorate, to —, *fortificare.*
invitation, *invito* m.
invite, to —, *invitáre.*
iron, *férro* m.
irreparable, *irreparábile* m. & f.
island, *ísola* f.
it, *egli, ei, esso* (usually not transIlatian, *italiáno, a.* [lated).
itself, *se* (acc.); *se stésso.*

J.

Jersey, *Gersè* f.
Jerusalem, *Gerusalémme* f.
Jesus, *Gesù.*
jew, *ebréo* m.
Joseph, *Giuséppe* m.
joy, *giòia* f.
Judæa, *Giudéa* f.
judge, *giúdice* m.
July, *Lúglio* m.
jump, to —, *saltáre.*
just, *giústo, a; —, appúnto; —* now, *giustaménte, per l'appúnto.*

K.

keep, to —, *tenére.*
kill, to —, *uccídere.*
kind, *benígno, a; buóno, a.*
king, *re* m.
kingdom, *régno* m., *reáme* m.
kinglike poet, *il re dei poéti.*
knee, *ginócchio* m., pl. *le ginócchia.*
know, to —, *sapére, conóscere.*

L.

laborious, *laborióso, a.*
labour, *fatíca* f.
laden, *cárico, a.*
lady, *dáma* f., *signóra* f.; young
lake, *lágo* m. [—, *zitélla* f.
lamb, *agnello* m.
Lampsacus, *Lánsaco* m.; Lampsacenian, *Lansacéno, a.*
land, to —, *approdáre, pigliár terra.*
land, the —, *il paése* m.
language, *língua* f., *favélla* f.
large, *gránde* m. & f.
last, *último, a; scórso, a;* at —, *alla fine.*
late (dead), *fu* (invar.); adv. *tárdi.*
lately, *ultimaménte, poco fa.*
laugh, to —, *rídere;* to — at, *deridere, burlársi di . . .*
laughter, *il riso* m., pl. *le risa.*
laurel, *láuro* m.
law, *légge* f.
lawyer, *avvocáto* m., *giurisconlead*, to —, *condúrre.* [*súlto.*
learn, to —, *imparáre.*
learned, *dótto, a.*
leave, to —, *lasciáre, abbandoleg, gámba* f. [*náre.*
lend, to —, *prestáre.*
less, *méno* adv.
lesson, *lezióne* f,
let, to —, *lasciáre* (with the verb, *to let* is transl. by the *Imperat.*).
letter, *léttera* f.
levity, *leggerézza, volubilità* f.
Lewis, *Luígi, Lodovíco.*
liar, *bugiárdo* m.
liberty, *libertà* f.
lie, the —, *bugía* f.
lie, to —, *giacére* (irr.); (to tell lies), *mentíre.*
life, *víta* f.
lightning, *lampo* m.
like, adv. *cóme, al pári di . . ., siccóme.*
like, to —, *amáre.*
linen, *téla* f., *bianchería;* to change —, *cambiar la camícia.*
lion, *léone* m.
Lisbon, *Lisbóna.*
listen, to —, *ascoltáre, badáre a.*
little (small), *píccolo, a;* (not much), *póco, a;* a little, *un poco di . . .*
live, to —, *vívere* (irr.); (to reside), *star di casa, abitáre, alloggiáre, dimoráre.*
load, to —, *caricáre.*
loaded, *cárico, a.*
London, *Lóndra* f.
long, *lúngo, a;* no longer, *non — più —;* adv. *lungo tempo.*
look, to —, *guardáre, riguardare;* to — angry etc., *aver l'ária búrbera* etc.; to — for, *cercáre.*
lose, to —, *pérdere* (irr.).
loss, *pérdita* f.
loud, *álto, a;* adv. *ad alta vóce.*

love, to —, *amáre.*
low, *básso, a.*
lowing, the —, *belaménto* m.
Lusiade, *Lusíada* f.

M.

Madam, *Signóra* f.
magazine, *magazzíno* m.
magnificence, *magnificénza* f.
magnificent, *magnífico, a.*
Maine, *Méno* m.
majestic, *maestóso, a.*
Majesty, *Maestà* f.
make, *fáre, réndere;* to — known, *palesáre.*
man, *uómo* m.
manage, to —, *maneggiáre.*
mankind, *l'umanità* f.
manner, *maniéra* f.
many, *mólti, e;* how —? *quánti, e?* so —, *tanti, e;* as — as, *tanti (e) — quanti (e);* — a, *più d'un (d'una).*
marchioness, *marchésa* f.
mare, *giumènta* f.
maritime, *maríttimo, a.*
Marius, *Mário.*
marquis, *marchése* m.
marry, to —, *sposáre;* to be —ied, *maritársi.*
marshal, *maresciállo* m.
Mary, *Maria.*
master, *padróne* m.; *signóre* m., to make one's self — of, *impadronírsi di . . .;* (= teacher), *maéstro* m.
match, *zolfanéllo, fulminánte* m.
matter, *faccénda* f.
may (aux. verb, is always expressed by the *Subj. Mood* of the verb it is used with).
means, *mézzo* m.; by no —, *in* measure, *misúra* f. [*verún modo.*
meet, to —, *incontráre;* to go to —, *andáre incontro a . . .*
melody, *melodía* f.
member, *membro* m., pl. *le membra* f.
mend, to —, *corréggere* (irr.).
mercy, *grázia* f.
mere, *méro, a;* this adj. is frequently rendered by the adverbs *solaménte, non — che, non — se non.*
merit, *mérito* m.
merry, *allégro, a.*
messenger, *messaggiéro* m.
middle, *mézzo* m.; in the —, *in mézzo a . . .*
midnight, *mezzanótte* f.
midst, in the —, *in mezzo a . . ., nel mezzo di . . .*
mighty, *possénte* m. & f.
Milan, *Miláno.*
mile, *míglio* m., pl. *le míglia.*
milk, *látte* m.
milliner, *crestáia* f.
mind, *spírito* m.
mine, *il mío, la mía.*
minister, *minístro* m.
miser, *aváro* m.
misfortune, *disgrázia* f.
Miss, *signorína, madamigélla* f.
moderation, *moderazióne* f.
modern, *modérno, a; odiérno, a.*
modesty, *modéstia* f.
moment, *moménto* m.
monarch, *monárca* m.
Monday, *Lunedì* m.
money, *danáro* m.
month, *mése* m.
monument, *monuménto* m.
more, *più.*
morning, *mattína* f.; in the —, *di (della) mattína.*
mosque, *moschéa* f.
most, *il più;* — men etc., *la maggiór parte degli uómini etc.*
mostly, *per lo più.*
mother, *mádre* f.
motion, *móto* m., *moviménto* m.
move, to —, *muóvere, commovere.*
Mr., *signor* m.*)

*) The Italians invariably use "Signor" before a name (surname or Christian name), and "Signore", when there is no name following, as: *Signor Roberto, Signor Manzoni;* but: no, Sir! = *no, Signore!* — Since "Mr." is always followed by a name, it should be rendered by "Signor", as: Mr. Gladstone, *Signor Gladstone;* Mr. Charles, *Signor Carlo.*

much, *mólto, a,* adj.; *molto* (inv.) adv.; how —, *quánto;* as — as, *tánto — quánto.*
murderer, *omicida, assassíno* m.
music, *música* f.
Mussulman, *Musulmáno* m.
must, I, he etc. —, trnsl. by the impersonal verb *bisógna.*
my, *mío, a; il mío, la mía.*
Myrrha, *Mírra* f.
myself, Nom. *io stésso, io medésimo,* Acc. *me.*

N.

name, the —, *nóme* m.
name, to —, *nomináre.*
Napoleon, *Napoleóne* m.
nation, *nazione* f.
native, *natío, a; natívo, a;* — town, *pátria* f.
near, *vicíno a . . . (di); présso.*
nearly (unless rendered by *pensare,* see p. 316), *per póco.*
necessary, *necessario, a.*
neck, *cóllo* m.
neglect, to —, *negligentáre, trascuráre.*
negotiations, *le trattative.*
neighbour, *vicíno, a; prossimo, a.*
neither — nor, *nè — nè.*
Netherlands, *Paési Bássi* pl. m.
never, *non — mai.*
nevertheless, *nessundiméno, ciò* [*nonostánte.*
new, *nuóvo, a.*
New York, *la Nuóva Jórca.*
news, *nuóva* f.; to bring —, *recár nuóve.*
newspaper, *gazzétta* f., *giornále m.*
next, *prossimo, a;* the — day, *il giórno seguénte (dopo).*
nice, *leggiádro, gentíle, garbáto;* a — predicament, *un bell' im-*
niece, *nipóte* f. [*barázzo.*
night, *notte* f.
no, *no;* — man etc., *néssun*
noble, *nóbile* m. & f. [*uómo etc.*
nobody, *nessúno, a; niúno, a.*
none (usually tr. by *non — ne*).
not, *non.*
nothing, *non — niénte (núlla).*
now, *adésso,* adv.
nymph, *nínfa* f.

O.

oath, *giuraménto* m.
obey, to —, *ubbidíre.*
oblige, to —, *obbligáre.*
obscure, *oscúro, a; sconosciúto, a.*
observe, to —, *osserváre.*
obtain, to —, *ottenére.*
occupation, *occupazióne* f.
occupy, to —, *occupáre.*
odious, *odióso, a.*
of, *di, da.*
offend, to —, *offéndere.*
official, *uffiziále* m.
often, *spésso, sovénte.*
old, *vécchio, a; antíco, a;* to be 20 etc. years old (*avere — anni*).
on, *su, sópra, a;* — Friday, *Venerdì.*
one, *un, úno, úna;* — has, can etc. (see on the *Passive voice*).
only, *soltánto, solaménte;* adj. [*sólo, a.*
open, to —, *aprire.*
opera, *ópera* f.; — tune, *ária d'un' ópera* f.
opinion, *opinióne* f. (s. p. 240, 11).
opportunity, *opportunità* f.
oppress, to —, *opprímere* (irr.).
orator, *oratóre* m.
order, the —, *órdine* m.; in — to . . ., *per.*
order, to —, *comandáre, ordináre, prescrívere;* — to be made, *far fare.*
Oriental, *orientále* m. & f.
orphan, *órfano* m.; — house (asylum), *orfanotrópio, casa degli órfani.*
ostrich, *struzzo* m.
other, *áltro, a.*
ought, usually transl. by the Cond. of *dovére.*
our, *nóstro, a.*
out, *fuóri;* to go —, *uscíre.*
over, *sópra, sóvra;* to reign —, *regnáre in . . .*
overbearing, *superbo, orgoglioso, a.*
overwhelmed, *fuóri di se.*
owe, to —, *dovére.*
own, *próprio, a.*

P.

pack, to —, *affastellare, giacere.*
pain, *péna* f.; to take pains, *dársi péna, ingegnársi.*

paint, to —, *píngere.*
pair, *páio* m., *cóppia* f.
palace, *palázzo* m.
pale, *pállido, a;* to turn —, *impallidíre.*
pardon, to —, *perdonáre.*
parents, *genitóri* m.
Paris, *Parígi* m.
part, *párte* f.; to take —, *prénder párte, assistere.*
pass, to —, *passáre, recársi.*
passion, *passióne* f.
patron, *padróne* m.
Paul, *Páolo* m.
pay, to —, *pagáre;* to — a visit, *andáre a trováre.*
peace, *páce* f.
people, *la génte;* (= one) see on the *Passive voice;* (nation), *nazióne* f., *pópolo* m.; young —, *gioventù* f.
pell-mell, *alla rinfúsa.*
penance, to do —, *fare ammenda.*
pencil, *lápis, toccalápis* m., *matíta* f.
penetrate, *penetráre;* to be — d, *essere compréso di . . .*
perceive, to —, *accórgersi.*
perish, to —, *perire.*
persecute, to —, *perseguíre, perse-*
person, *persóna* f. [*guitáre.*
persuasion, *persuasióne, convinzióne* f.
Pharao, *Faraóne* m.
Phenicia, *Fenícia* f.
Philadelphia, *Filadélfia.*
philosopher, *filósofo* m.
Phrygia, *Frígia* f.
physician, *médico* m.
piece, *pézzo* m.; (a whole — of cloth), *pézza* f.
pistol, *pistóla* f.
pity, to —, *aver compassióne, compiángere.*
pity, it is a —, *è peccáto.*
place, the —, *luógo* m., *pósto* m.
place, to —, *méttere.*
plague, *péste* f.
plaintive, *lamentévole.*
plan, *progétto* m.
planet, *pianéta* m.
plant, to —, *piantáre.*
play, to —, *giuocáre,* (music) *suonáre.*
please, to —, *piacére.*
pleasure, *piacére* m.
plunder, to —, *saccheggiáre.*
plunge, to —, in specul., *pérdersi in ispeculazióni;* to — into the water, *gettársi nell' ácqua.*
poem, *poéma* m., *poesía* f.
poet, *poéta* m.
point, *púnto;* on the —, *nel procínto di . . .;* to be on the —, *stare per . . .*
Polynices, *Polinice* m.
poor, *póvero, a;* the — (pl.), *i póveri.*
portfolio, *tacculno* m., *portafóglio*
portrait, *ritrátto* m. [m.
Portugal, *Portogállo* m.
possession, *possessióne* f., to take —, *impadronírsi di . . .*
possible, *possíbile* m. & f.
post (situation), *pósto* m.; (office), *pósta* f.
pot, *pignátta* f., *péntola* f., flower-—, *vaso da . . .*
pound, *líbbra* f.
poverty, *povertà* f.
power, *potére* m.
praise, to —, *vantáre, lodáre.*
prayer, *preghiéra* f.
predicament, *imbarázzo* m.
prefer, to —, *preferíre.*
presence, *presénza* f.
present, to —, *presentáre.*
present, the —, *dóno* m., *regálo.*
presentiment, *presentiménto* m.
preserve, to —, *preserváre, conserváre.*
president, *presidénte* m.
pretend, to —, *preténdere, far sembiánte di . . .*
pride, *orgóglio* m., *glória* f.
prince, *príncipe* m.
princess, *principéssa* f.
principle, *princípio* m., *mássima* f.
printer, *stampatóre* m.
proceed, to —, *procédere* (irr.).
procure, to —, *produrre, creáre, far náscere.*
production, *prodotto* m.
profit, to —, *approfittáre, prevalérsi.*
promenade, to —, *passeggiáre.*
promise, to —, *prométtere.*

promise, the —, *promessa* f.
pronounce, to —, *pronunciáre.*
pronunciation, *pronúncia* f.
proposal, *proposizióne* f., *proposta* f.
propose, to —, *propórre, propórsi.*
proscribe, to —, *proscrívere* m.
protect, to —, *protéggere.*
protector, *protettóre* m.
prcud, *fiéro, a;* to be —, *gloriársi.*
prove, to —, *prováre.*
proverb, *provérbio* m.
provide, to —, *provvedére.*
province, *província* f.
punish, to —, *punire, castigáre.*
pupil, *scoláre, a; alliévo* m.
purgatory, *purgatório* m.
purpose, for that —, *a tal úopo.*
purse, *bórsa* f.
put, to —, *méttere.*
pyramid, *pirámide* f.

Q.

queen, *regína, reína* f.
quickly, *présto.*
quiet, *tranquíllo, a; chéto, a.*
quite, *affátto, intieraménte.*
Quixote, *Chiscióte* m.

R.

rail-road, *stráda ferráta* f., *ferrovía* f.
rain, the —, *piógqia* f.
rain, to —, *pióvere.*
rainy, *piovóso, a.*
Raphael, *Rafaéllo* m.
rare, *ráro, a.*
rate, at any —, *in ogni cáso.*
read, to —, *léggere.*
reap, to —, *miétere.*
reason, *ragióne, caúsa* f., *motivo* m.
reasonable, *ragionévole* m. & f.
receive, to —, *ricévere, accettáre.*
recollect, to —, *ricordársi.*
reconcile, to —, *riconciliáre.*
re-enter, *rientráre.*
reflection, *riflessióne* f.
refuse, to —, *ricusáre.*
regard, to —, *riguardáre, spettáre.*
regard, the —, *riguárdo* m.
regular, *regoláre* m. & f.
regulated, *regoláto, a.*
reign, to —, *regnáre.*
rejoice, to —, *rallegrársi.*
relation, *paréute* m. & f.
relieve (a sentinel), *cambiáre.*
remember, to —, *ricordársi.*
remove, to —, *rimuóvere, allontanáre.*
render, to —, *réndere.*
repair, to —, *riparáre.*
repeat, to —, *ripétere.*
repent, to —, *pentírsi.*
reproach, the —, *rimpróvero* m.
request, to —, *chiédere.*
requisite, *necessário, a.*
resemble, to —, *rassomigliáre, assomigliáre.*
resolution, *risoluzióne* f.
resolve, to —, *risólvere, risólversi.*
responsibility, *risponsabilità* f.
result, the —, *risultato, ésito* m.
retain, to —, *ritenére, tenére.*
retire, to —, *ritiráre.*
return, to —, *ritornáre.*
return, the —, *il ritórno* m.
revenge, to —, *vendicáre.*
reward, to —, *ricompensáre.*
Rhenish, *del Réno.*
rich, *ricco, a.*
riches, *ricchézza* f.
rid, to get —, *liberársi di . . ., distaccársi di . . .*
ridicule, to —, *burlársi di . . .*
right, *déstro, a;* to be —, *aver ragióne.*
river, *fiúme* m., *riviéra* f.
road, *stráda,* f.
rob, to —, *rubáre;* to — anyb. of smth. *priváre di . . .*
robber, *ladróne* m.
rock, *rócca* f., *rúpe* f.
Roman, *románo, a.*
room, *stánza, cámera* f.
root, to — out, *stermináre, estirpáre, sradicáre.*
round, *rotóndo, a;* — about, *all' intórno;* to turn — to, *tornársi*
royal, *reále* m. & f. [*verso.*
ruin, the —, *rovína* f.; to fall to —, *andár in rovina.*
ruin, to —, *rovináre, distrúggere.*
run, to —, *córrere,* to — the risk, *córrere rischio;* to — together, *accórrere.*
Russia. *Rússia* f.

sacrifice, to —, *sacrificáre.*
sad, *trísto, a.*
saddle, *sélla* f.
sailor, *marinário* m.
sake, for the —, *per.*
same, *stésso, a; medésimo, a;* all the —, *tutt' uno.*
satisfied, *soddisfátto, conténto, a.*
Saturday, *Sábbato.*
Saviour, *Salvatóre* m.
say, to —, *dire.*
scaffold, *pálco* m.
school, *scuóla* f.
science, *sciénza* f.
scissors, *fórbici* f.
seated, *assíso, a;* be —, *s'accómodi!*
secret, adj. *secréto, a;* the —, *secreto* m.
secretary, *segretario.*
see, to —, *redére.*
seem, to —, *parére, sembráre.*
seize, to —, *préndere, afferráre.*
seldom, *raraménte, di rádo.*
sell, to —, *véndere.*
send, to —, *mandáre.*
sentence, *senténza* f.
sentinel, *sentinélla* f.
sergeant, *sergente* m.
serious, *sério, a.*
servant, *servitóre* m.
serve, to —, *servíre.*
service, *servízio,* m.
seven, *sétte.*
several, *parécchi, -ie; alcúni, e.*
severity, *severità* f.
set, to — out, *partíre per.*
shadow, *ómbra* f.
shall, I — etc., translated by the Future Tense.
shame, *vergogna* f.
shape, *fórma* f.
shave, to —, *rádere; far la bárba.*
she, *ella, léi, essa.*
sheet, *lenzuólo* m.
shield-bearer, *scudiéro* m.
ship, *náve* f., *bastiménto* m.
shoe, *scárpa* f.
shoe-maker, *calzoláio.*
shore, *spiaggia* f.
short, *córto, a; bréve* m. & f.
show, to —, *mostráre.*
shut, to —, *chiúdere.*
Sicily, *Sicília.*
sick, *ammaláto, a.*
signification, *significazióne* f.
silence, *silénzio* m.
silly, *stúpido, a.*
silver, *argénto;* —, adj. *d'argénto;* poet. *argénteo.*
simple, *sémplice* m. & f.
since, *chè, dacchè.*
sing, to —, *cantáre.*
single, *sólo, a.*
singular, *singoláre* m. & f.
sinner, *peccatóre;* old covetous —, *avaráccio.*
sister, *sorélla* f.
sit, to —, *sedére, sedérsi.*
situation, *situazióne* f.; (place, office), *pósto* m.
skilful, *ábile* m. & f.
slave, *schiávo* m.
sleep, the —, *sónno* m.
sleep, to —, *dormíre.*
slender, *sciólto, svélto, a.*
slight, *píccolo, a;* — est, *mínimo, a.*
slow, *lénto, a.*
small, *píccolo, a.*
smell, the —, *odóre* m.
smoke, to —, *fumáre.*
snatch, to — away, *portár via, uccídere.*
so, *così;* — and —, *tále e tále.*
sober, *sóbrio, a.*
society, *società* f.
sojourn, *soggiórno,* m.
some, *alcúno, a;* see On the Genit. part.
something, *qualchecósa.*
son, *fíglio, figliuólo* m.
song, *canzóne* f.
songstress, *cantatríce* f.
soon, *tósto, fra póco;* as — as possible, *quánto príma.*
Sophocles, *Sófocle* m.
sorry, *trísto, a;* I am —, *mi spiáce, mi rincrésce.*
soul, *ánima* f.
soup, *zúppa* f.; *minéstra* f.
sour, *ágro, a; ácido, a.*
sow, to —, *semináre.*
space, *spázio* m.
Spain, *Spágna* f. (after a consonant), *Ispágna* f.

Spanish, *Spagnuólo, a; di Spágna.*
speak, to —, *parláre, díre.*
spectacles, *occhiáli* m. pl.
speculation, *speculazióne* f.
sportsman, *cacciatóre* m.
spy, *spía* f.
stand, to —, *stáre.*
stairs, *scála, scalétta* f.
star, *stélla* f.
state, *státo* m.
state, to —, *ordináre, stabilíre.*
steamer, *vapóre* m.
steal, to —, *rubáre.*
steel, *acciáio* m.
steep, *érto, a.*
step, *vestígio* m.
stick, the —, *bastóne* m.
still, adv. *ancóra.*
stomach, *stómaco* m.
storm, *tempésta* f., *burrásca* f.
story, *stória* f.
street, *stráda, contráda* f.
strict, *sevéro, a;* (—truth), *stretto, a; rigoróso, a.*
strong, *fórte* m. & f.
study, the —, *stúdio* m.; to —, *studiáre.*
succeed, to —, *succédere, riuscíre* (with *essere*).
suffer, to —, *soffrire; permèttere.*
sufficient, *sufficiénte* m. & f.
sugar, *zúcchero* m.
sup, to —, *cenáre.*
supercilious, *supérbo, orgoglioso, a.*
superstition, *superstizióne* f.
support, the —, *appóggio* m.
sure, *sicúro, a;* — ly, *sicuraménte.*
surprise, the —, *sorprésa* f.
surprise, to —, *sorpréndere.*
surround, to —, *circondáre, inchiúdere.*
survive, to —, *sopravvívere.*
swear, to —, *giuráre.*
Swedish, *Svedése, di Svézia.*
swim, to —, *nuotáre, galleggiare.*
sword, *spáda* f.
symbol, *símbolo* m.
syrup, *sciróppo* m.

T.

take, to —, *préndere* irr.; to — place, *aver luógo;* to — smthg. to sombd., *portáre;* to — possession, *impadronírsi;* to — the part of, *favorire la parte di . . .*
tale, *raccónto* m.
talk, to —, *parláre* (to chat), *ciarláre, chiacchieráre.*
Tancred, *Tancrédi* m.
tarry, to —, *tardáre.*
taste, the —, *gústo* m.
tea, *tè,* m.
teach, to —, *insegnáre.*
teacher, *maéstro* m.
tell, to —, *dire;* I am told, *mi si dice.*
temple, *témpio* m.
ten, *diéci.*
terminus, (railway —), *staziône* f.
terrible, *terríbile* m. & f.
than, *che.* See on the *Adjective.*
that, conj. *che*
the, *il* m., *lo* m., *la* f.
Theban, *Tebáno* m.
their, *lóro* m. & f.
then, *allóra;* now and —, *di tempo in tempo.*
there, *là, colà;* — is, *vi (ci) è.*
therefore, *quindi, laónde, perciò.*
they, *églino, éssi* m.; *élleno, ésse* f.; — who, *quelli (quelle) che . . .*
thief, *ládro* m.
thing, *cósa* f.
think, to —, *pensáre.*
thirsty, to be —, *aver séte* f.
thirty, *tránta.*
this, *quésto, a.*
thorn, *spína* f.
thorn-hedge, *roréto* m.
though, *benchè, abbenchè.*
thought, the —, *pensiéro* m.
thoughtless, *spensieráto, a.*
thousand, *mílle,* pl. *mila.*
threaten, to —, *minacciáre.*
three, *tre.*
throne, *tróno* m.
throng, to —, *affollársi.*
through, *per.*
throughout, *intieraménte;* — the whole year, *da un anno all' altro.*
throw, to —, *gettáre.*
thunder, the —, *tuóno* m.
thunder, to —, *tuonáre.*
thus, *così, in tal maniéra.*
tie, to —, *legáre.*
till, *chè, finchè.*

time, *témpo* m., this —, *quésta vólta.*
tired, *stánco, a.*
title, *títolo* m.
to, *a, ad; in.*
to-day, *óggi.*
together, *insiéme;* to turn —, *accórrere.*
token, *indízio, ségno* m.
to-morrow, *dománi;* — morning, *domán mattína.*
too, *tróppo;* I —, *ánche io.*
tooth, *dénte* m.; — ache, *mal di..*
towards, *vérso (di).*
town, *città,* f.
translation, *traduzióne* f.
travel, the —, *viággio* m.
travel, to —, *viaggiáre.*
treasure, *tesóro* m.
tremble, to —, *tremáre.*
tribute, the —, *tributo* m.
troop, *trúppa* f.
trot, *trótta* m.; to —, *trottáre.*
Troy, *Tróia* f.
true, *véro, a.*
trust, to —, *fidársi di ...*
truth, *verità* f.
try, *cercáre, prováre, far di maniéra che ...*
tulip, *tulipáno* m.
tumult, *tumúlto* m.
tune, *ária* f. (sound, manner of speaking), *tuóno, suóno; tenóre* m.
Turk, *Túrco* m.
Turkey, *Turchía* f.
turn, to —, *tornáre;* to — pale, *impallidíre.*
tutor, *áio* m., *governatóre* m.
twelve, *dódici.*
twenty, *vénti.*
twice, *dúe vólte.*
two, *dúe.*
Tyre, *Tíro* f.
Tyrian, *Tírio* m.

U.

umbrella, *ombrélla* f.
uncle, *zio* m.
under, *sótto.*
undertake, to —, *intraprénd(e)re.*
unfortunate, *sfortunáto, a.*
unfortunately, *sfortunatamente, per disgrázia.*
ungrateful, *ingráto, a.*
unhappy, *infelice* m. & f.
unite, to —, *unire, riunire.*
universe, *univérso* m.
unless, *a méno che ...*
up, *su.*
upon, *su, sópra;* to draw — *attiráre a ...*
upright, *dritto, a; in piédi.*
use, to —, *usáre;* to — (f. i. to say), *solére.*
use, *uso* m.
useful, *útile* m. & f.
useless, *inútile* m. & f.
usually, *ordinariaménte;* as —, *come all' ordinário.*

V.

vague, *vágo, a;* a — feeling, *un cérto non so che.*
vengeance, *vendétta* f.
Venice, *Venézia* f.
verse, *vérso* m.
very, *mólto.* See p. 246.
vicar, *vicário* m.
victory, *vittória* f.
vinegar, *acéto* m.
virtue, *virtù* f.
virtuous, *virtuóso, a.*
visit, the —, *visita* f.; to pay a —, *andáre a trováre.*
voice, *róce* f.
voluntarily, *volentiéri, volontariaménte.*
vulture, *avoltóio* m.

W.

wait, to —, *aspettáre.*
wall, *múro* m., pl. *le múra.*
want, to —, *volére, domandáre, chiédere;* to — (= to need), *abbisognáre;* (= to be without), *mancáre.*
want, the —, *il bisógno.*
want, for — of, *per mancánza di.*
war, *guérra* f.
warrant, to —, *essere (fare) buono per ... guarentíre.*
warrior, *guerriéro* m.
wash, to —, *laváre.*
watch, *oriuólo* m.
water, *ácqua* f.
way, *cammíno;* in the Turkish —,

alla túrca; in this —, *in tale maniéra; così;* out of the —, *da banda.*
we, *noi.*
weakness, *debolézza* f.
wealth, *facoltà* f.
wear, to —, *portáre.*
weather, *témpo* m.
wedding, *nózze* pl. f.
week, *settimána* f.; to-day —, *oggi otto.*
weigh, to — anchor, *levar l'áncora, salpáre.*
weight, *péso* m.; hundred- —, *centináio* m.
welcome! *sia il (la) benvenúto, a!*
well, *béne.*
wet, *bagnáto, a.*
what? *che? che cosa?*
when, *quándo.*
where, *dóve, óve.*
wherein, *in cui, nel (nella) quále.*
whether, *se.*
which, rel. *che, il (la) quále;* (= who) *chi;* Interr. *quále?* m. & f. *che?*
while, it is a good —, *è un pézzo.*
whilst, *méntre, intánto (che).*
white, *biánco, a.*
Whitsuntide, *Pentecóste.*
who, interr. *chi?* rel. *che, il (la) quále.*
whoever, *chiúnque.*
whole, *tútto, a; intiéro, a.*
why, *perchè.*
win, to —, *riportáre (la vittória); víncere.*
window, *finestra* f.
wine, *víno* m
wing, the —, *ála* f.
winter, *invérno* m.
wisdom, *saviézza* f., *sapiénza* f.
wise, *sávio* m., *sággio* m.
wish, to —, *desideráre, bramáre.*
wish, the —, *desío* m., *desidério* m.
with, *con.*
without, *sénza.*
wizard, *mágo* m.
woe to . . ., *guái a.*
wolf, *lúpo* m.
woman, *dónna* f.
wonder, to — at, *maravigliársi di . . .*
wonderful, *ammirábile* m. & f.
wood, *légno* m.
wool, *lána* f.
word, *vóce* f., *paróla* f., a few —s, *due parole;* to keep —, *tenér la parola a qcd.*
work, the —, *lavóro* m., *ópera* f.
work, to —, *lavoráre.*
workman, *operário* m.
world, *móndo m.*
worth, to be —, *valére.*
worthy, *dégno, a.*
wrath, *cóllera* f.
write, to —, *scrívere,* irr.
wrong, the —, *tórto* m., to be —, *avér tórto.*

X.

Xanthus, *Xánto* m.

Y.

yard, *cortíle* m., *córte* f.
year, *ánno* m.; half a —, *sei mési;* last —, *l'anno scórso.*
yesterday, *iéri;* — 's, *d'ieri.*
yonder, *colà.*
you, *vói;* (polite mode) *Ella.*
young, *gióvine* m. & f.; — man, *giovinótto* m.; — er brother, *fratéllo minóre.*
your, *vóstro, a;* (polite m.), *súo, a; il (la) di Lei.*
yours, *il vóstro, la vóstra;* (polite, m.) *il suo, la sua.*
yourself (polite m.), Nom. *Ella (Lei) stessa (medésima);* Acc. *se stessa, se medésima;* with reflect. verbs: *si.*
yourselves, Nom. *voi stéssi (medésimi);* fem.: *stésse (medésime);* with reflect. verbs: *vi.*
youth (age), *gioventù* f.
youth (man), *giórane* m.

Printed by Julius Groos at Heidelberg.

A LIST
of
EDUCATIONAL WORKS
for the Study of Foreign Languages
by **Dr. EMIL OTTO** and on the Plan of his Conversation-System.

FIRST GERMAN BOOK
containing
Introductory Lessons to the Study of the German Language; with Reading-lessons, a Vocabulary, and Select Phrases for German Conversation
by
Dr. **Emil Otto,**
Professor of Modern Languages; Lecturer at the University of Heidelberg.
8. **bound.** 6th Ed. Price: 1 Mk. 60 Pf.

An Elementary Grammar
of the
German Language
combined with
Exercises, Readings and Conversations
by
Dr. **Emil Otto.**
8. **bound.** 2nd Ed. Price: 2 Mk.

German Conversation-Grammar.
A New and Practical Method of Learning the German Language,
by
Dr. **Emil Otto.**
8. **cloth.** 18th Ed. Price: 5 Mk.

Key to Dr. **E. Otto's**
German Conversation-Grammar.
8. **bound.** 14th Ed. Price: 1 Mk. 60 Pf.

The German Reader.

First Part.

Anecdotes, Fables, Descriptions, Stories, and Tales,
with Explanatory Notes and a Vocabulary
by
Dr. **Emil Otto.**
8. **bound.** 3rd **Ed.** Price: 2 Mk. 40 Pf.

The German Reader.

Second Part.

Select Readings in German Literature.
with Notes and a Vocabulary
by
Dr. **Emil Otto.**
8. **bound.** 2nd Ed. Price: 2 Mk. 40 Pf.

The German Reader.

Third Part.

Select German Comedies
with Explanatory Notes and a Vocabulary
by
Dr. **Emil Otto.**
8. **bound.** Price: 2 Mk. 40 Pf.

Materials for translating **English** into **German**

with Grammatical Notes and a Vocabulary,
by
Dr. **Emil Otto.**
First Part.
8. **bound.** 4th Ed. Price: 2 Mk. 40 Pf.

KEY to these „**Materials**".

8. **bound.** Price: 1 Mk. 60 Pf.

Materials for translating **English** into **German**

with Words and Explanatory Notes.

Second Part

containing

a Series of English Conversations on various Subjects, adapted for Translation into German.

by
Dr. **Emil Otto.**
8. **bound.** Price: 2 Mk. 40 Pf.

German-English Conversations
(Deutsche Conversations-Schule).
A new methodical Guide
for
learning to speak German
by
Dr. **Emil Otto.**
8. **bound.** Price: 1 Mk. 60 Pf.

French Conversation-Grammar
a
New and Practical Method of Learning the French Language
by
Dr. Emil Otto.
8. **cloth.** 7th Ed. Price: 5 Mk.

Key to Dr. E. Otto's French Conversation-Grammar.
8. **bound.** 3rd Ed. Price: 1 Mk. 60 Pf.

Materials for Translating English into French
with Grammatical Notes and a Vocabulary,
by
Dr. **Emil Otto.**
8. **bound.** 2nd Ed. Price: 2 Mk. 40 Pf.

Italian Conversation-Grammar.
A New and Practical Method of Learning the Italian Language,
by
C. M. Sauer.
8. **cloth.** 4th Ed. Price: 5 Mk.

Key to Prof. C. M. Sauer's Italian Conversation-Grammar.
8. **bound.** 2nd Ed. Price: 1 Mk. 60 Pf.

Spanish Conversation-Grammar

by

C. M. Sauer.

8. **cloth.** 2nd Ed. Price: 5 Mk.

Key to Prof. C. M. Sauer's Spanish Conversation-Grammar.

8. **bound.** Price: 1 Mk. 60 Pf.

OUVRAGES

pour

l'enseignement des langues étrangères

par ***Émile Otto*** et d'après sa méthode.

Nouvelle Grammaire allemande.

Contenant

outre les principales règles de la langue allemande, des Thèmes, des Lectures et des Conversations, d'après une méthode à la fois théorique et pratique

par **Émile Otto,**

Docteur en phil. et Professeur de langues à l'université d'Heidelberg.

8. relié. 11me édit. Prix: 4 Mk.

Corrigé des Thèmes

de la

Grammaire allemande

par **Émile Otto.**

8. cartonné. 2me édit. Prix: 1 Mk. 60 Pf.

Petite Grammaire allemande abrégée,

à l'usage des commençants

par **Émile Otto.**

8. cartonné. 4me édit. Prix: 2 Mk.

Lectures allemandes.

1. partie.

Petit Recueil de versions allemandes

contenant

anecdotes, descriptions, fables, traits de caractère, paraboles, historiettes, contes moraux et poésies,

accompagnées de notes explicatives et d'un Vocabulaire,

par **Émile Otto.**

8. carton. 2me édit. Prix: 2 Mk. 40 Pf.

Lectures allemandes.

2. partie.

Second Recueil

de

Versions allemandes,

accompagnées de notes explicatives et d'un Vocabulaire,

par **Émile Otto.**

8. carton. Prix: 2 Mk. 40 Pf.

Lectures allemandes.

3. partie.

Choix de Comédies allemandes,

accompagnées de notes explicatives et d'un Vocabulaire

par **Émile Otto.**

8. carton. Prix: 2 Mk. 40 Pf.

Conversations allemandes.

Nouveau guide méthodique

pour apprendre

à parler allemand

par **Émile Otto.**

8. relié. Prix: 1 Mk. 60 Pf.

Nouvelle grammaire anglaise

avec

de nombreux Exercices de Traduction, de Lecture et de Conversation

par

A. Mauron et **Th. Gaspey.**

Docteur en philosophie et Professeur à Constance.

8. relié. 4me édit. Prix 4 Mk.

Corrigé des Thèmes

contenus dans la **grammaire anglaise**

par **A. Mauron** et **Th. Gaspey.**

8. carton. Prix: 1 Mk. 60 Pf.

Petite grammaire anglaise abrégée,

à l'usage des commençants

par **A. Mauron,**

Docteur en philosophie et Professeur à Constance.

8. carton. Prix: 2 Mk.

Lectures anglaises

ou

Cours de Versions

en prose et en vers, tirées des meilleurs auteurs anglais et américains, accompagnées de questionnaires, de notes explicatives, et suivies d'un vocabulaire complet

par **A. Mauron,**

8. cart. Prix: 3 Mk.

Nouvelle Grammaire italienne

avec des dialogues

par **Charles Marquard Sauer,**

Directeur du Collége Revoltella à Trieste.

8. relié. 5me édit. Prix: 4 Mk.

Corrigé des Thèmes et Versions

contenus dans la **grammaire italienne**

par **C. M. Sauer.**

8. cartonné. Prix: 1 Mk. 60 Pf.

Nouvelle Grammaire espagnole

avec des dialogues

par **Charles Marquard Sauer.**

8. relié. Prix: 5 Mk.

Corrigé des Thèmes

de la **grammaire espagnole**

par **C. M. Sauer.**

8. carton. Prix: 1 Mk. 60 Pf.

Nouvelle Grammaire russe

avec des dialogues

par **Paul Fuchs**, Prof.

8. relié. Prix: 5 Mk.

Corrigé des Thèmes

de la **grammaire russe**

par **Paul Fuchs**, Prof.

8. carton. Prix: 1 Mk. 60 Pf.

Nuova grammatica tedesca

con temi, letture e dialoghi

compilata dai professori

C. M. Sauer e **G. Ferrari.**

8. leg. 2me édit. Prix: 4 Mk.

Nuova grammatica tedesca elementare

con temi, letture e dialoghi,

aggiustata ai bisogni degli allievi principianti,

da **Emilio Otto,**

Prof. di lingue moderne all' università di Heidelberg.

8. leg. Prix: 2 Mk.

Letture tedesche,

Piccola raccolta di traduzioni tedesche

da **Emilio Otto,**

Prof. di lingue moderne all' università di Heidelberg.

8. leg. Prix: 2 Mk. 40 Pf.

Nuova grammatica inglese

con temi, letture e dialoghi

compilata da

Carlo Marquard Sauer.

8. leg. Prix: 5 Mk.

Gramática sucinta de la lengua alemana

acompañada de numerosos

Ejercicios de conversacion y de lectura

para uso de los principiantes

segun un método teórico y práctico

por

Emilio Otto,

Doctor en filosofía y Profesor de lenguas modernas en la universidad de Heidelberg,

arreglada para Españoles

por

Francisco Gaffino,

Prof. de idiomas modernos en la Academia comercial „Concordia" en Zurich.

8. relié. nouvelle édit. Prix: 2 Mk.